VOLVMEN PRIMVM

De Bello Gallico

A

Caio Ivlio Cæsare



De Verbo Tropiceqve Interpretatvs

ab

Andrea Ingle

This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International licence by Andre Inglis.

(CC BY-NC-SA 4.0)

IMPORTANT NOTICE!

This is a **DRAFT COPY** and NOT a final copy; the formatting is incomplete, and the translations and definitions have not been fully edited; and, as I have but one year of experience in Latin, one can expect many errors within.

Document Statistics

Date:	Monday, January 22, 2018
Time:	07:34:28
Revision number:	204 + 1500
Time Editing (hrs/min):	19:25 + 481:00
File Name:	Liber 14 - U to V.odt
Software Used:	LibreOffice Writer (v. 5.4.2.2)
Format:	PDF-1.4
Page Size:	6 x 9" (15.24 cm x 22.86 cm)
Page Type:	Envelope, Portrait
Pages:	793
Paragraphs:	12992
Words:	183076
Characters:	1119851
Tables:	1823
Graphics:	6
Objects:	0
Footnotes (approx.)	3090

TABLE OF CONTENTS

The campaign against Ariovistus.

FORMATTING INDEX

Symbol & Structure		Example Usage
I.I.I.	Book; Chapter; Fragment	I.V.X.
CAPS	Authentic Latin text	GALLIA EST OMNIS DĪVĪSA IN PARTĒS TRĒS
"…"	Direct Latin text translated from indirect text (where applicable)	"MIHI QUIDEM PERSUADETUR"
	Subordinated Latin text	Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit
I, II, II …	Same page grammar and vocabulary footnotes (clickable in PDF version)	Gallia est[I] omnis[II] dīvīsa[III IV V] in partēs[VI] trēs
= …	Ad verbatum translation in English	*=all Gaul is separated into three parts*
~ …	Figurative translation in English	*~all Gaul is divided into three parts*
…	Unbroken English figurative translation	All Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgæ inhabit …
SM. CAPS	Vocabulary type and root	**cōpia, -æ**, F. (CO + OPS)
(…)	Words to smoothen translation	*=the Marne and the Seine separates (them) from the Belgæ*
[…]	Missing or necessary words	*=one [part] of which the Belgæ inhabit*
< … >	Hints of grammar which are helpful but not necessary for translation	*=it was a great <source of> hiderance to the Gauls for fighting*
~~text~~	Text considered redundant in the English language	*=~~routes~~ in which … they could be able to go forth from (their) home*
/ … /	Words inserted from another location in the text	*=and /they (the Belgæ) import/ those (things)*
bold	Uncertain or unreliable text/translations	***sē præsente***
§ …	References numbers to Allen & Greenough's New Latin Grammar	ABL. OF MEANS. §409
CLICK	Clickable links (only available in PDF version)	… IS EXPRESSED BY AD OR APUD WITH THE ACCUSATIVE. §428

Abbreviations

abl.	absolute	intr.	intransitive
abs.	absolute	irr.	irregular
acc.	accusative	Lit.	literal
adj.	adjective	loc.	locative
adv.	adverb	m.	masculine
alt.	alternative	meton.	by metonymy
char.	characteristic	milit.	military sense
coll.	collective, collectively	n., neut.	neuter
comp.	comparative, compound	neg.	negative
conj.	conjunction	nom.	nominative
const.	construction	num.	numeral
dat.	dative	obj.	object
decl.	declension	opp.	opposed to, opposite
def.	defective	P. a.	participle adjective
dif.	difference	part.	participle, partitive
dem.	demonstrative	pass.	passive
dep.	deponent	pers.	person, personal
Esp.	especially	perf.	perfect
ex.	example	pl.	plural
dim.	diminutive	plup.	pluperfect
e.g.	exempli gratia, for example	pos.	positive
Eng.	English	poss.	possessive
etc.	et cetera, and so forth	ppp.	perfect past participle
equiv.	equivalent	præp.	preposition
excl.	exclamation	pred.	predicate
expr.	expressed	pres.	present
f.	feminine	pron.	pronoun, pronominal
Fig.	figuratively	prop.	proper, -ly, in a proper sense
fut.	future	purp.	purpose
gen.	genitive	reflex.	reflexive
in gen.	in general	rel.	relative
id.	idem, the same	semi-dep.	semi-deponent
i.e.	id est, that is	sg.	singular
imp.	imperative	signif.	significance.
impers.	impersonal, impersonally	spec.	specification
imperf.	imperfect	subj.	subjunctive, subject
inch.	inchoative, inceptive	subst.	substantive
indecl.	indeclinable	sup.	superlative
indef.	indefinate	t. t.	technical term
indic.	indicative	trans.	transitive
indir.	indirect	Trop.	in a tropical or figurative sense
inf.	infinitive	usu.	usually
intens.	intensive	v.	verb
inter.	interoggative	voc.	vocative
interj.	interjection		

Referenced Works

Harpers' Latin Dictionary: A New Latin Dictionary Founded on the Translation of Freund's Latin-German Lexicon

Edited by E.A. Andrews An Elementary Latin Dictionary with Brief Helps for Latin Readers Charlton T. Lewis

Cæsar's Gallic War (Allen & Greenough's Edition)

Julius Cæsar, James B. Greenough, Benjamin L. D'ooge, M. Grant Daniel

Allen and Greenough's New Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges

J. B. Greenough, G. L. Kittredge, A. A. Howard, Benjamin. L. D'ooge

Commentaries on the Gallic War – Cæsar Completely Parsed with Interlinear and Marginal Translations

Julius Cæsar, Rev. James B. Finch

C. Iulii. Cæsaris Commentarii Rerum Gestarum. Cæsar's Commentaries – The Gallic War, Books I-IV, With Selections From Books V-VII and from The Cival War

Julius Cæsar, Kelsey W. Frances

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic war: Literally Translated, with Explanatory Notes

Julius Cæsar, Hinds & Noble

De Bello Gallico – Libri VII : Cæsar's Gallic War, with a Life of Cæsar, Geography and People of Gaul, History of the Military Art in Cæsar's Commentaries; Historical and Grammatical Notes; Vocabulary and an Index

Julius Cæsar, Lowe Corneluis Marshall, Ewing J. T

College Cæsar: Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Julius Cæsar, Geoffrey Steadman

A Latin Reader for the Second Year, with Notes, Exercises for Translation into Latin, Grammatical Appendix, and Vocabularies

Julius Cæsar, John Carew Rolfe, Walter Dennison

Cæsar's Bellum Gallicum Book 1, with Vocabulary, Notes, and Clause Subordination

Julius Cæsar, James A. StephensThe campaign against the Helvetians.

The campaign against the Helvetii.

I.I

Divisions and peoples.

I.I.I

GALLIA EST OMNIS DIVISA IN PARTES TRES, QVARVM VNAM INCOLVNT BELGÆ, ALIAM AQVITANI, TERTIAM QVI IPSORVM LINGVA CELTÆ, NOSTRA GALLI APPELLANTVR.

Gallia[I] est[II] omnis[III] [IV] dīvīsa[V] [VI] [VII] in[VIII] partēs[IX] trēs[X]

=all Gaul is divided into three parts *~all Gaul is divided into three parts*

quārum[XI] [partem] ūnam[XII] incolunt[XIII] [XIV] Belgæ[XV]

=one [part] of which the Belgæ inhabit *~one of which the Belgæ inhabit*

I **Gallia, -æ**, F., *Gaul*, the country of the Gaulli, including France, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland, Italy north of the Po, and the Rhine provinces of Germany

II **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** (ES-; FEV-), As a predicate, asserting existence, *to be, exist, live, "flumen est Arar, quod ..."* (I.XII); Of circumstances or condition, *to be, be found, be situated, be placed*; With Dat., *to belong, pertain, be possessed, be ascribed*; With gen. possess., *to belong to, pertain to, be of, be the part of, be peculiar to, be characteristic of, be the duty of*; Of events, *to be, happen, occur, befall, take place*; *Est ut, it is the case or fact, that*, etc.: *"non erat, ut fieri posset, mirarier umquam,"* Lucr. 5, 979: *"futurum esse ut omnes pellerentur,"* (I.XXXI); As a copula, *to be* any thing or in any manner. With abl.: *"esse magnā gratiā,"* (I.VIII); ***fore*** for *futurum esse* (See chart §170)

III **omnis, -e**, ADJ., Pl, *all, every*; Sg., *every, all, the whole*—"*Gallia est omnis divisa," the whole of Gallia* (I.I)

IV ***omnis***, pred., *as a whole*.

V ***est ... dīvīsa***, *is divided.* part. used as adj., not the perf. Passive. Participles are often used as Predicate Adjectives. As such they may be joined to the subject by esse or a copulative verb: "Gallia est dīvīsa" (I.I), Gaul is divided. "locus quī nunc sæptus est" (Liv. 1.8), the place which is now enclosed. "vidētis ut senectūs sit operōsa et semper agēns aliquid et mōliēns" (Cat. M. 26), you see how busy old age is, always aiming and trying at something. "nēmō adhūc convenīre mē voluit cui fuerim occupātus" (Cat. M. 32), nobody hitherto has [ever] wished to converse with me, to whom I have been "engaged." §495

VI ***divisa***, pred. nom. sg.

VII **dīvidus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (DIVIDO), *separated*; in ppp. as adj., *divided*

VIII **in**, PRÆP. with acc. or abl., *in, within, on, upon, among, at; into, to, towards*. With abl. In space. Lit., *in* (with abl. of the place or thing in which): *"T. Labienus ex loco superiore, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus,"* (II.XXVI), Of analogous relations of place or position: *"in eo flumine pons erat," on, over*, (II.V); Esp., *in eo loco*, in that state or condition: so, *"quo in loco, etc.: cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res essent, cognovissent,"* (II.XXVI); With gerunds and fut. pass. participles, to indicate duration of

[partem] aliam[I] Aquītānī[II] [incolunt]

=another [part] the Aquitani [inhabit] *~the Aquitani another*

[partem] tertiam[III] [IV]

=the third [part] *~and the third*

time, *in*: *"ne in quærendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret,"* (II.XXI); With acc. In space, with verbs of motion, *into* or *to* a place or thing (rarely with names of towns and small islands; Rarely with the verbs *ponere, collocare*, etc. (pregn., i. e. *to bring into* ... and *place there*): *"ut liberos, uxores suaque omnia in silvas deponerent,"* (IV.XIX), *"sororem et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse,"* (I.XVIII); Denoting mere direction towards a place or thing, and hence sometimes joined with *versus, towards*: *"Belgæ spectant in septentriones et orientem solem,"* (I.I); In other relations, in which an aiming at, an inclining or striving towards a thing, is conceivable, *on, about, respecting; towards, against*; *for, as; in, to; into*: *"Gallia omnis divisa est in partes tres,"* (I.I)

IX **pars, partis**, F. (PAR-), *a part, piece, portion, share,* etc. In gen.: *"Belgæ pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni,"* (I.I); Acc. absol.: *magnam, maximam partem, in great part, for the most part*: "*maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt,"* (IV.I); In counting or calculating, *a part, fraction; one half, one third*, etc., as the context indicates: *"tres jam copiarum partes," fourths*, (I.XII)

X **trēs, tria,** GEN. **trium,** *card;* num.*, three*

XI **quī, quæ, quod**, GEN. **cuius**, PRON. (CA-), Interrog, *who? which? what? what kind of a?*; sg. n., *what, as far as, as much as, to the extent that* (mostly adj., as subst., *qui* asks the nature or character, *quis* the name); Rel., *who, which, what, that*, referring to a substantive or pronoun as antecedent. As a simple rel. The antecedent is sometimes repeated after the rel.: *"erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus, etc.,"* (I.VI); With an accessory signif., causal or final, joined to the subj. *as, because, seeing that, since*; To express a purpose, design*, in order that, to, "Cæsar equitatum præmisit, qui viderent,"* (I.XV); Indef.*, any one, any;* with *si, num, ne,* v. *quis, "si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat,"* (I.LXVIII) (See chart: §147 & §148)

XII **ūnus, -a, -um**, ADJ., Prop. In gen., *one, a single,* Corresponding to *alter: "Helvetii continentur unā ex parte flumine Rheno, alterā ex parte monte Jurā,"* (I.II)—With gen. part, *"Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres: quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam ..."*, (I.I); *alone*: *"erat omnino in Galliā ulteriore legio una,"* (I.VII); ADV., **ūnā**, *in one and the same place, at the same time, in company, together* (See chart: ūnus, one §113)

[eī] quī[I] ipsōrum[II] [III] linguā[IV] [V] Celtæ[VI] [appellantur][VII] [VIII]

=[those] who in <respect to> the language of themselves [are called] Celts

~those who, in their own language, are called Celts

XIII **incolō, -ere, -luī, —** (IN + COLŌ), *to be at home, abide, dwell*

XIV ***incolunt***, in translation (not in reading the Latin to make out the sense), change the voice to the passive in order to preserve the emphasis in the English idiom. It is well to acquire the habit of making such changes. The natural English form would be: *of which one is inhabited by the Belgians*, etc., but the Latin uses the active voice. The moment you find an accusative beginning a sentence, if it seems from its meaning to be a direct object, you can at once think of it as a subject in the nominative (at the same time noticing that the Latin does not make it such). The verb can then be instantly thought of as a passive and the subject as agent. This inversion is so common in Latin for purposes of rhetoric that such a device is a very helpful one, and if properly used from the start need not obscure the Latin construction. The Latin plays upon the position of words to produce all sorts of shades of rhetorical expression, and it is never too early to observe these shades and try to render them in our own idiom.

XV **Belgæ, -ārum,** M., *the Belgæ* or *Belgians*, a nation of mixed German and Celtic origin, inhabiting northern Gaul

I **alius, -a, -ud**, ADJ. PRONOM. (AL-), *another, other, different; alius ... alius, one ... another*—in pl., *some ... others* (See chart: alius (N. aliud), other §113)

II **Aquitānus, -a, -um,** *of Aquitania, Aquitanian;* In pl., as subst., *the Aquani* or *Aquitanians*, inhabiting south-western Gaul

III **tertius, -a, -um** (TER), num., *third*

IV ***ūnam ... aliam ... [partem] tertiam***, ommission of conj. *et,* due to asyndeton, In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed: c. In coördinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted (asyndeton). In such cases the connection is made clear by some antithesis indicated by the position of words. §601c

I ***quī***, The antecedent is often omitted (sp. *eī*). Error: Reference source not found The antecedent may be omitted, especially if it is indefinite. §307iii

II **ipse, -a, -um**, GEN. **ipsīus**. PRON. DEMONSTR., In gen., to express eminence or emphasis. *Self, in person* (often rendered by an emphatic *he*, or by *very, just, precisely*); To emphasize one of the subjects of a common

nostrā[IX] [linguā][X] Gallī appellantur

=in <respect to> our [language], they are called Gauls

~in our language they are called Gauls

All Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgæ inhabit, the Aquitani another, those who in their own language are called Celts, in our Gauls, the third.

predicate., With *et*, *he too, himself in person, even he*; To make prominent one of two or more subjects of any predicate, *for his part, he too, also, as well* (See Demonstrative Pronoun Charts: §146)

III ***ipsōrum***, etc. The position of words is so significant in Latin, through its indicated emphasis, that it may allow words to be omitted which must be supplied in the thought. In this case, the English idiom is the same: *in their own tongue…in ours.*

IV ***linguā***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. i. To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative expresses that in accordance with which anything is or is done. Note. As the Romans had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the ablative. The ablative of specification (originally instrumental) is closely akin to that of manner, and shows some resemblance to means and cause. §418

V **lingua, -æ**, F., *the tongue, the tongue; A tongue, utterance, speech, language*

VI **Celtæ, -ārum,** M., *Celts, the people of central Gaul*

VII **appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (AD + PELLO), *to address, speak to, apply to, accost; To call by name, term, name, entitle*

VIII ***qui…appellantur***, notice that in Latin any relative may suggest its own antecedent, as with the indefinite relative *whoever* in English. In English we have to supply a demonstrative: *(those) who …* The Antecedent Noun sometimes appears in both clauses, but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted. The antecedent may be omitted, especially if it is indefinite. §307

IX **noster, nostra, nostrum**, PRON. POSS. (NOS), *our, our own; ours, of us*; In partic. *Of* or *belonging to us, one of ours, one of us, our friend, ours*

X ***nostrā [linguā],*** abl. of spec. §418

I.I.II

HI OMNES LINGVA, INSTITVTIS, LEGIBVS INTER SE DIFFERVNT.

Hī[I] omnēs linguā[II], īnstitūtīs[III] [IV], lēgibus[V] [VI] inter[VII] sē[VIII] differunt[IX]

=all these (people) differ among themselves in <respect to> language, in <respect to> customs, (and) in <respect to> laws

~all these differ from one another in language, customs and laws

All these differ from each other in language, customs and laws.

I *hīc, hæc, hōc*, points to something near or present, or which is conceived of as present, this; Opp. to *ille*, *iste*, less freq. to *hic, alter, alius*, etc., *this, the latter*, to indicate the nearer object (which is to be determined not so much by the phraseology as by the thought; so that *hic* may refer to that noun whose position in the sentence is the more remote, but which is the most closely connected with the speaker, and of the most importance to him, in which case it is to be rendered by *that, the former*, etc.). *hīc* (with the enclitic *ne*, written *hīcine* or *hīcin*), adv., *in this place, here*; *In this affair, on this occasion, in this particular, herein, here*

II ***linguā***, abl. of spec. §418

III ***īnstitūtīs***, abl. of spec. §418

IV **īnstitūtum, -ī**, N. (P. OF INSTITUO), *a purpose, intention, design*; *A practice, custom, usage, habit*

V ***lēgibus***, abl. of spec. §418

VI **lēx, lēgis**, F. (LEG-), *a formal proposition for a law, motion, bill* (offered by a magistrate to the people); *A law, precept, regulation, principle, rule, mode, manner*

VII **inter**, PRÆP. WITH ACC. (ANA-), *between, betwixt*; Esp., with pronouns, to express all reciprocal relations, *among, with,* or *between one another; mutually, together*; With a period, *during, in the course of, within, for, by, at*

VIII ***inter sē,*** special use of ref., *from one another*: the preposition inter may be used to show any reciprocal relation. Special uses of the Reflexive are the following: vi. Inter sē (nōs, vōs), among themselves (ourselves, yourselves), is regularly used to express reciprocal action or relation. §301

IX **differo, differre, distuli, dīlātum** (DIF + FERO), *to carry different ways; to spread abroad, scatter, disperse, separate; to differ, be different*

I.I.III

GALLOS AB AQVITANIS GARVMNA FLVMEN, A BELGIS MATRONA ET SEQVANA DIVIDIT.

Gallōs ab[I] Aquītānīs[II] Garumna flūmen[III] [dīvidit]

=the river Garonne [separates] the Gauls from the Aquitani

~the river Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitani

ā Belgīs Matrona[IV] [flūmen] et Sēquana[V] [VI] dīvidit[VII]

=the Marne [river] and the Seine (river) separate (them) from the Belgæ

~the Marne and the Seine separate them from the Belgæ

The river Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitani; the Marne and the Seine separate them from the Belgæ.

I ***ab***, Ā, ab, away from, from, off from, with the ablative. Of place: as, ab urbe profectus est, he set out from the city. §221

II ***ab Aquītānīs…ā Belgīs***, abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §40 1

III **flūmen, -inis**, N. (FLV-), *a flowing, flood, stream, running water*; *river*

IV **Martona, -æ,** M., *the Marne*

V ***ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana***, abl. of separ. §401

VI **Sēquana, -æ,** M., *the Seine*

VII ***ā Belgīs … Sēquana dīvidit***, the verb *dīvidit* is singular because the two rivers make one boundary. Two or more Singular Subjects take a verb in the Plural: ii. If the subjects are connected by disjunctives (§223i), or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is usually singular. Note. Almost always when the subjects are abstract nouns. §317b

I.I.IV

HORVM OMNIVM FORTISSIMI SVNT BELGÆ, PROPTEREA QVOD A CVLTV ATQVE HVMANITATE PROVINCIÆ LONGISSIME ABSVNT, MINIMEQVE AD EOS MERCATORES SÆPE COMMEANT ATQVE EA QVÆ AD EFFEMINANDOS ANIMOS PERTINENT IMPORTANT, PROXIMIQVE SVNT GERMANIS QVI TRANS RHENVM INCOLVNT, QVIBVSCVM CONTINENTER BELLVM GERVNT; QVA DE CAVSA HELVETII QVOQVE RELIQVOS GALLOS VIRTVTE PRÆCEDVNT, QVOD FERE COTIDIANIS PRŒLIIS CVM GERMANIS CONTENDVNT, CVM AVT SVIS FINIBVS EOS PROHIBENT AVT IPSI IN EORVM FINIBVS BELLVM GERVNT.

Hōrum[I] omnium fortissimī[II] [III] sunt Belgæ

=of all these men, the bravest are the Belgæ *~of all these, the Belgæ are the bravest*

I *__horum__*, part. gen. with *fortissimī*. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Nouns or Pronouns. pars mīlitum, part of the soldiers. quis nostrum, which of us? nihil erat reliquī, there was nothing left. "nēmō eōrum" (VII.LXVI), not a man of them. "māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt" (II.XXIII), they killed a large part of them. §346a

II *__fortissimī__*, pred. nom. superl. adj. with *sunt*

III **fortis, -e**, ADJ. (FER-), *strong, powerful, mighty; Strong, vigorous, firm, steadfast, stout, courageous, brave, manly, valiant, bold, fearless*

propterēā[I] quod[II] ā[III] cultū[IV] atque[V] hūmānitāte[VI] prōvinciæ longissimē[VII VIII] absunt[IX]

=on that account because they are the furthest away from the culture and civilization of (our) province

~because they are furthest from the civilization and refinement of our Province

I **propterēā**, ADV. (PROPTER), *therefore, for that cause, on that account*; Esp., in the phrase, *propterea quod, because*

II ***propterēā quod***, *because*; Lit. *because of this/that*, etc. The difference between this and the simple *quod* is only one of greater emphasis—almost as strong as *and the reason is* or *and it is because*

III ***ā***, Ā, ab, away from, from, off from, with the ablative. Idiomatic uses: ā reliquīs differunt, they differ from the others; ā parvulīs, from early childhood; prope ab urbe, near (not far from) the city; līberāre ab, to set free from; occīsus ab hoste (periit ab hoste), slain by an enemy; ab hāc parte, on this side; ab rē êius, to his advantage; ā rē pūblicā, for the interest of the state. §221

IV **cultus, -ūs**, M. (COL-), *labor, care, cultivation, culture; Style, care, way of life, cultivation, civilization, refinement, luxury*

V **atque** OR **ac** (ONLY BEFORE CONSONANTS), CONJ. (AD + QUE), *and* (like *-que*, it connects words or thoughts which form a whole, but unlike *-que* gives prominence rather to what follows, and is rarely repeated); Copulative. Connecting single words and expressions, *and, as well as, together with*; With the dem. pron. *hic, is, and besides, and that, and that too*

VI **hūmānitās, -ātis**, F. (HUMANUS), *human nature, humanity; Civilization, cultivation, good-breeding, elegance, refinement*

VII **longus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (LEG-), *long, extend; Distant, remote, long delayed*; ***longē***, *long, in length*; *To be far away,* i.e. *to be of no assistance, of no avail; Widely, greatly, much, very much, by far*—Esp. with sup. and comp.

VIII ***longissimē***, used as adv. superl.

IX **absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus** (AB + SUM), In general, *to be away from, be absent*

minimēque[I] ad[II] eōs mercātōrēs[III] sæpe[IV] commeant[V]

=and (because) merchants least often travel to those men

~and merchants least often frequent them

atque[VI] ea

=and // those (things)

~and // those things

I **minimē**, ADV. SUP. (MINIMUS), *least of all, in the smallest degree, least, very little*

II ***ad***, Ad, to, towards, at, near, with the accusative (cf. in, into): Ad, to, towards, at, near, with the accusative (cf. in, into): With persons: as, ad eum vēnit, he came to him. §221

III **mercātor, -ōris**, M. (MERCOR)*, a trader, merchant, wholesale dealer*

IV **sæpe**, ADV. (SAC-), *often, oft, oftentimes, many times, frequently*

V **commeō, commeāre, commeāvī, commeatum** (COM + MEO), *visit or travel to; to frequent; to and fro*

VI **atque**, CONJ. INDECLFORM., *and, and also*; After words expressing Similarity, or the Opposite, *atque* or *ac* has the force of *than*, *as*; as, *in parem ... condicionem atque ipsi erant, into the same condition ... as themselves*, Lit. as (*and*) *they themselves were* (I.XXVIII)

quæ ad[I] effēminandōs[II] [III] animōs[IV] pertinent[V]

=which tend to <the purpose of> effeminating minds *~which tend to enervate the mind*

important[VI]

=/and/ import /those (things)/ *~import*

I ***ad***, Ad, to, towards, at, near, with the accusative (cf. in, into): Idiomatic uses: ad supplicia dēscendunt, they resort to punishment; ad hæc respondit, to this he answered; ad tempus, at the [fit] time; adīre ad rem pūblicam, to go into public life; ad petendam pācem, to seek peace; ad latera, on the flank; ad arma, to arms; ad hunc modum, in this way; quem ad modum, how, as; ad centum, nearly a hundred; ad hōc, besides; omnēs ad ūnum, all to a man; ad diem, on the day. §221

II ***ad effēminandōs animōs.*** acc. of gerundive expressing purpose. When the Gerund would have an object in the Accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have had. §503 & The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

III **effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (EX + FEMINA), *to make feminine, represent as feminine;* Fig., *to make womanish, effeminate, enervate*

IV **animus, -ī**, M. (AN-), *the rational soul*; Of the mind, *the mental powers, intelligence, reason, intellect, mind*

V **pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —** (PER + TENEO), *to stretch out, reach, extend; To have a tendency, tend, lead, conduce; To have a tendency, to tend* or *lead to* an object or result

VI **importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (IN + PORTŌ), *to bring in, introduce, bring from abroad, import*

proximīque[I] sunt Germānīs[II] [III]

=and they are the nearest to the Germans	*~and they are the nearest to the Germans*

quī trāns[IV] Rhēnum incolunt

=who dwell across the Rhine	*~who dwell beyond the Rhine*

quibuscum[V] continenter[VI] bellum[VII] gerunt[VIII]

=(those men) with whom they are continuously bearing war	*~with whom they are continuously waging war*

I **proximus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (PROPE), *the nearest, next*; Subst. n., *the neighborhood, vicinity, nearest place*

II ***Germānīs***, dat. with adj. of nearness, *proximī*. The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites. Adjectives of this kind are accommodātus, aptus; amīcus, inimīcus, īnfestus, invīsus, molestus; idōneus, opportūnus, proprius; ūtilis, inūtilis; affinis, fīnitimus, propinquus, vīcīnus; pār, dispār, similis, dissimilis; iūcundus, grātus; nōtus, īgnōtus, and others. §384

III **Germāni, -ōrum**, M., (ΓΕΡΜΑΝΟΊ), *the Germans*, between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea; the eastern neighbors of the Gauls

IV **trāns**, PRÆP. WITH ACC. (TER-), Of motion, *across, over, to the farther side of*; Of Position, *across, beyond, on the other side of*

V ***quibuscum*** = *cum quibus*

VI **contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus** (COM- + TENEO), *to hold together, bound, limit, comprise, enclose, surround, environ*; Of places, *to bound, limit, enclose*; With the access. idea of hindering, preventing motion, *to keep, keep still, detain, restrain, repress, enclose*; Trop., *to hold back, detain, repress, hold in check, curb, check, stay, stop, tame, subdue*, etc.; Adv., ***continenter***, In time, *continuously, without interruption*

VII **bellum, -ī**, N. (DVA-, DVI-), *war*

VIII **gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus** (GES-), *to bear about, bear, carry, wear, have, hold, sustain; To carry out, administer, manage, regulate, rule, govern, conduct, carry on, wage, transact, accomplish, do, perform*

Quā dē causā[I] [II] Helvētiī[III] quoque[IV] reliquōs[V] [VI] Gallōs virtūte[VII] [VIII] præcēdunt[IX]

=concerning which cause the Helvetii also preceed the remaining Gauls in <respect to> valor

~for which reason the Helvetii also surpass the rest of the Gauls in valor

I ***quā dē causā,*** In the use of Relatives, the following points are to be observed:—The relative is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English:—liber quem mihi dedistī, the book you gave me.is sum quī semper fuī, I am the same man I always was.eō in locō est dē quō tibi locūtus sum, he is in the place I told you of.§308

II **causa, -æ**, F. (CAV-), *that by, on account of,* or through which any thing takes place or is done; *a cause, reason, motive, inducement, "ob eas causas,"* (I.X)*;* also, in gen.*, an occasion, opportunity*; Esp. *"iusta causa," good reason, just cause, full right*: *"sine causā," without good reason* (I.XIV); *a feigned cause, a pretext, pretence* (= prætextus)

III **Helvētius, -a, -um,** ADJ., *of the Helvetii* (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine)

IV **quoque**, CONJ. (QUE + QUO), *also, too*

V ***reliquōs***, trans. as, "*the rest of,"* Superlatives (and more rarely Comparatives) denoting order and succession—also medius, [cēterus], reliquus—usually designate not what object, but what part of it, is meant. §293

VI **reliquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (RE- + LIC-), *left, left over, remaining*

VII ***virtūte***, abl. of spec. §418

VIII **virtūs, -ūtis**, F. (VIR), *manliness, manhood,* i.e. the sum of all the corporeal or mental excellences of man, *strength, vigor; bravery, courage; aptness, capacity; worth, excellence, virtue,* etc.; Milit. *talents, courage, valor, bravery, gallantry, fortitude*

IX **præcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus** (PRÆ + CĒDŌ), *to go before, precede, lead the way, lead;* Trop., *to surpass, outstrip, outdo, excel, be superior*

quod ferē[I] cottīdiānīs[II] prœliīs[III] [IV] cum[V] Germānīs contendunt[VI]

=because they are contending with the Germans in almost daily battles

~as they contend with the Germans in almost daily battles

cum[VII] aut[VIII] suīs fīnibus[IX] [X] eōs prohibent[XI] [XII]

=when they either hold those men, (away) from their own borders

~when they either repel them from their own territories

I **ferē**, ADV. (FER-), *closely, quite, entirely, fully, altogether, just;* Of degree, *nearly, almost, well-nigh, within a little, for the most part, about*

II **cottīdiānus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (COTTIDIE; QUOT + DIES), Prop. In gen., *of every day, daily*: *"labor,"* (III.XVII); Esp., abl. adv.: *cottīdiāno = cottidie, daily*; Meton., *every day, daily, usual, ordinary, common*

III ***cotīdiānīs prœliīs.*** abl. of means. §409

IV **prœlium, -ī**, N, *a battle, combat*

V **cum**, PRÆP. WITH ABL. (SEC-), *with, together with, in the company of, in connection with, along with, together, and, "qui unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant,"* (II.III); In designating the relations, circumstances, way, and manner with which any act is connected, by which it is accompanied, under or in which it takes place, etc., *with, in, under, in the midst of, among, to, at*: *"cum magno provinciæ periculo,"* (I.X), *"multis cum lacrimis aliquem obsecrare," amid many tears*, (I.XX); In partic. Completing the meaning of verbs; With verbs of union, connection, and agreement: *"cum veteribus copiis se conjungere,"* (I.XXXVII); Of intercourse, traffic, etc.: *"is ita cum Cæsare egit," to deal with* (I.XIII), Of strife, difference, etc.: *"quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt,"* (I.I); *Cum* in anastrophe. So always with the pers. pron.: *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum*, etc.; and in gen. with the rel. pron.: *"quocum (quīcum), quacum, quibuscum, quīcum (for quocum)" "interea ea legione quam secum habebat militibusque"* (I.VIII)

VI **contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus** (CON + TENDO), *to stretch, stretch out vigorously, to draw tight, strain;* Trop. (freq. in prose and poetry); act., *to strain eagerly, to stretch, exert, to direct one's mental powers to something, to pursue or strive for earnestly;* or neutr., *to exert one's self, to strive zealously for something, etc.,* In partic., *To direct* or *bend one's course eagerly somewhere;* or, neutr., *to strive to get to a place, to seek to arrive at, to go, march,* or *journey hastily to, etc.,* With inf. (freq.)*: "Bibracte ire,"* (I.XXIII)*, so, "ire cum his legionibus,"* (I.X)*, "in Britanniam proficisci,"* (IV.XX)*, "in provinciam reverti,"* (III.VI); Neutr. (so most freq.)*: "in Italiam magnis itineribus,"* (I.X)*,* cf.*: "huc magnis itineribus,"* (I.XXXVIII)*, "huc magno cursu,"* (III.XIX)*, "inde in Italiam,"* (I.XXXIII)*, "in fines Sigambrorum,"* (IV.XVIII)*, "in castra,"* (IV.XXXVII)*, "ex eo loco ad flumen," (II.IX), "ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum,"* (I.XXVII)*, "ad*

aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt[I]

=or (when) they themselves wage war in their territories *~or themselves wage war on their frontiers*

oppidum Noviodunum," (II.XII), *"ad castra,"* (II.XIX), *"ad hostes,"* (V.IX), *"domum,"* (II.XXIV).(Neutr.)*; To measure* or *try one's strength with,* with weapons, by words, in action*, etc.; to strive, dispute, fight, contend against, vie with;* constr. with *cum aliquo, contra* or *adversus aliquem*, the dat., *inter se*, or absol.*, Contra aliquem: "contra populum Romanum armis,"* (II.XIII)*; Inter se: "hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent,"* (I.XXXI)*, "interim prœlio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur," the contest was carried on,* (II.IX)*, "prœlio,"* (I.XLVIII)*, "non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam prœlio contendissent."* (I.L)*; "ut magis virtute contenderent quam dolo aut insidiis niterentur.,"* (I.XIII)

VII **cum**, CONJ. (CA-), conj. Of time, *when, as, while*, sometimes = *after, since*. In adverbial clauses dependent on non-preterite predicates. The time designated by *cum* being indefinite, *when, if, whenever*, almost always with indic., *cum* with pres. indic., often equivalent to *si*; With principal predicate in pres. (very freq.), the perf. translated either by English pres. perf. or by pres.: *omnia sunt incerta cum a jure discessum est, when we (once) disregard the law*, (Cic. Fam. 9, 16), *"cum ejus generis copia defecit, ad innocentium supplicia descendunt,"* (VI.XVI); In adverbial anterior clauses dependent on preterite predicates, the time of the *cum* clause preceding that of the principal sentence (always with subj., except in the instances mentioned, *when, after*., With pluperf. subj. (so generally): *"eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram ripam magnas esse copias hostium,"* (V.XVIII); With principal predicate in imperf. indic., *whenever*: *"(Cassi vellaunus) cum equitatus noster se in agros ejecerat, essedarios ex silvis emittebat,"* (V.XIX); Peculiarly, *cum* referring to an action which was to be done after a period of time, *before, at the end of which*: *"omnino biduum supererat cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret,"* (I.XXIII); Prop., of time, constr. with indic. in an independent assertion; with subj. in a subordinate statement—Fixing a point of time, *when, at the time when*; Fixing or defining a period of time, *when, while, during the time that, as, as long as, after*; Prægn., giving a cause or reason (*cum* causale), *when, since, because, inasmuch as, seeing that, in that, in view of the fact that*

VIII **aut**, CONJ., introducing an antithesis to what precedes, *or*; So introducing successive alternatives, *or ... or*; Introducing two alternatives, *aut ... aut, either ... or*

Of all these, the Belgæ are the bravest, because they are furthest from the civilization and refinement of [our] Province, and merchants least frequently resort to them, and import those things which tend to effeminate the mind; and they are the nearest to the Germans, who dwell beyond the Rhine, with whom they are continually waging war; for which reason the Helvetii also surpass the rest of the Gauls in valor, as they contend with the Germans in almost daily battles, when they either repel them from their own territories, or themselves wage war on their frontiers.

I.I.V

EORVM VNA PARS, QVAM GALLOS OBTINERE DICTVM EST, INITIVM CAPIT A FLVMINE RHODANO; CONTINETVR GARVMNA FLVMINE, OCEANO, FINIBVS BELGARVM; ATTINGIT ETIAM AB SEQVANIS ET HELVETIIS FLVMEN RHENVM; VERGIT AD SEPTENTRIONES.

Eōrum ūna pars

=one part of these (territories) *~one part of these*

IX ***suīs fīnibus,*** abl. of separ. §401

X **fīnis, -is**, M. (FID-), that which divides, *a boundary, limit, border; Borders, territory, land, country*

XI ***cum…prohibent,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum, when, and some past tense of the Indicative dates or defines the time at which the action of the main verb occurred. §545

XII **prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** (PRO + HABEO), *to hold before, hold back, keep away, check, restrain, hinder, prevent, avert, keep off, debar; To keep away, keep, preserve, defend, protect*

I ***cum…gerunt,*** *cum* clause. §545

quam Gallōs obtinēre[I II]

=which /it has been said/ that the Gauls occupy	*~which /it has been said/ that the Gauls occupy*

dictum est[III IV]

=it was said	*~it has been said*

I ***Gallōs obtinēre.*** indir. disc. dep. on *dictum est.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

II **obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus** (OB + TENEŌ), *to hold fast, have, occupy, possess, preserve, keep, maintain*

III ***quam ... obtinēre ... dictum est,*** subst. clause. A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive Clause. A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive, or as a Predicate Nominative or Accusative. §561 & A clause which is used as a noun may be called a Substantive Clause, as certain relative clauses are sometimes called' adjective clauses. But in practice the term is restricted to clauses which represent a nominative or an accusative case, the clauses which stand for an ablative being sometimes called adverbial clauses. Even with this limitation the term is not quite precise. The fact is rather that the clause and the leading verb are mutually complementary; each reinforces the other. The simplest and probably the earliest form of such sentences is to be found in the paratactic use (see §268) of two verbs like volō abeās, dīcāmus cēnseō, adeam optimum est. From such verbs the usage spread by analogy to other verbs, and the complementary relation of the clause to the verb came to resemble the complementary force of the accusative, especially the accusative of cognate meaning (§390). §560 & A Substantive Clause used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when the verb is put in the passive (Impersonal Construction.) ii. Some verbs that take an infinitive instead of a subjunctive are used impersonally in the passive, and the infinitive becomes the subject of the sentence. §566ii

IV **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus** (DIC-), *to say, speak, utter, tell, mention, relate, affirm, declare, state, assert*; *To appoint, set apart, fix upon, settle*

initium[I] [II] capit[III] ā flūmine Rhodanō[IV] [V]

=takes (its) entrance from the river Rhone

~takes its beginning at the river Rhone

attingit[VI]

=it borders on

~it borders

I **initium, -ī,** N. (IN + EO), *a going in, entrance;* Fig., *a beginning, commencement*

II ***initium***, acc. sg. obj. of *capit*

III **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus** (CAP-), *to take in hand, take hold of, lay hold of, take, seize, grasp*; In partic. Of living objects. *To take into possession, take captive, seize, make prisoner*—Of persons. *"ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est,"* (I.XXVI)—Of places. *To occupy, choose, select, take possession of, enter into*—mostly milit. t. t., *to take up a position, select a place for a camp*, etc.; of position on the battle-field: "*quod mons suberat, eo se recipere cœperunt. Capto monte ...*" (I.XXV),—Of things of value, property, money, etc. In gen., *to take, seize, wrest, receive, obtain, acquire, get*, etc.—With abstr. objects: *"quare non committeret, ut is locus ex calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet,"* (I.XIII)—Of regular income, revenue, etc., rents, tolls, profits, etc., *to collect, receive, obtain, "stipendium iure belli"* (I.XXVIII); In gen., of any occupation, work, or undertaking, *to begin, enter upon, take, undertake*, etc.—Transf. of place, *"eorum (finium) una pars, quam Gallos optinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano,"* (I.I)

IV ***ā flūmine Rhodanō.*** abl. of source. The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists. §403

V **Rhodanus, -ī,** M., *the Rhone*

VI **attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus** (AD + TANGO), *to touch, come in contact with*; Of places, *to be near, border on, adjoin, touch*

etiam[I] ab[II] Sēquanīs[III] et Helvētiīs[IV] flūmen Rhēnum[V]

=/it borders on/ also the river Rhine on (the side of) the Sequani and on (the side of) the Helvetii

~too, on the side of the Sequani and the Helvetii, upon the river Rhine

continētur Garumnā[VI] flūmine, Ōceanō[VII], fīnibus[VIII] Belgārum

=it is bound by the river Garonne, by the ocean, and by the territories of the Belgæ

~it is boumded by the river Garonne, the ocean, and the territories of the Belgæ

vergit[IX] ad septentriōnēs[X]

=(and) it turns toward the seven stars near the north pole

~and lies toward the northern regions

I **etiam**, ADV. (ET + IAM), Of time, *now too, yet, as yet, even yet, still, even now*; conj. Freq. with comp. (such as *quīn*) for the sake of intensity, *yet, still*

II **ab, ā, abs**, PRÆP. with abl., *from, away from*; To denote the side or direction from which an object is viewed in its local relations (=*a parte*), *at, on, in—Gallia Celtica attingit ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum, on the side of the Sequani,* i.e. their country

III ***ab Sēquanīs,*** *ab* + abl. = place from where. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: Often in indefinite words, such as locō, parte, etc.Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with ab (rarely ex), properly meaning from. §429

IV ***ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs.*** abl. of source. §403

V **Rhēnus, -ī,** M., *the Rhine*

VI **Garumna, -æ,** *river of S. W. Gaul*—now the *Garonne*

VII **Ōceanus, -ī**, M., *the great sea, outer sea, ocean*

VIII ***Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus,*** abl. of means. §409

IX **vergō, -ere, —, —** (VERG-), *to bend, turn, be inclined, lie, be situated;* Neut., *to bend, turn, incline itself;* Of places*, to lie, be situated in any direction*

X **septentriōnes, -um**, PROP. (SEPTEMTRIO), *the seven plough-oxen;* hence*, a constellation;* Lit., *the seven stars near the north pole* (called also *the Wain,* and *the Great* or *Little Bear*); Transf. *The northern regions, the north* (as a quarter of the heavens)

One part of these, which it has been said that the Gauls occupy, takes its beginning at the river Rhone; it is bounded by the river Garonne, the ocean, and the territories of the Belgæ; it borders, too, on the side of the Sequani and the Helvetii, upon the river Rhine, and stretches toward the north.

I.I.VI

BELGÆ AB EXTREMIS GALLIÆ FINIBVS ORIVNTVR; PERTINENT AD INFERIOREM PARTEM FLVMINIS RHENI; SPECTANT IN SEPTENTRIONEM ET ORIENTEM SOLEM.

Belgæ ab extrēmīs[I] Galliæ fīnibus[II] oriuntur[III]

=the Belgæ descend from the furthest frontiers of Gaul

~the Belgæ rises from the extreme frontier of Gaul

pertinent ad īnferiōrem[IV] partem flūminis Rhēnī

=(and) they extend toward the lower part of the river Rhine

~extend to the lower portion of the river Rhine

spectant[V] in septentriōnē et orientem[VI] sōlem[VII]

=(and) they look toward the seven stars near the north pole and the rising sun

~and look toward the north and the rising sun

I **extrēmus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (EXTER), *outermost, utmost, extreme, farthest, last*

II ***ab extrēmīs…finibus***, abl. of source. §403

III **orior, orīrī, ortus, —** DEP. (OL-), *to arise, rise, stir, get up*; Fig., *to rise, come forth, spring, descend, grow, take origin, proceed, start, begin, originate*

IV **īnferus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CF. INFRA), *below, beneath, underneath, lower*

V **spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (SPECIO), *to look on, look at, behold, gaze at, watch, observe, inspect, attend;* Of localities, *to look, face, lie, be situated towards any quarter*

VI **oriēns, -entis**, M. (PPP. OF ORIOR), *the rising sun, morning sun; The East, Orient*

VII **sōl, sōlis**, M. (SER-), *the sun*

The Belgæ rises from the extreme frontier of Gaul, extend to the lower part of the river Rhine; and look toward the north and the rising sun.

I.I.VII

AQVITANIA A GARVMNA FLVMINE AD PYRENÆOS MONTES ET EAM PARTEM OCEANI QVÆ EST AD HISPANIAM PERTINET; SPECTAT INTER OCCASVM SOLIS ET SEPTENTRIONES.

Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine[I] ad Pyrēnæōs[II] montēs[III] et eam partem Ōceanī

=Aquitania /extends/ from the river Garonne to the Pyrenæan mountains and to that part of the ocean

~Aquitania /extends/ from the river Garonne to the Pyrenæan mountains and to that portion of the ocean

I ***ā Garumnā flūmine.*** abl. of source. §403

II **Pyrēnæus, -a, -um,** ADJ., *of Pyrene—"Pyrēnæōs montēs," the Pyrenees Mountains*

III **mōns, montis**, M. (MAN-), *a mountain, mount, range of mountains*

quæ est ad[I] Hispāniam[II] [III]

=which is toward Spain | *~which is near Spain*

pertinet

=extends | *~extends*

spectat inter occāsum[IV] sōlis et septentriōnēs

=it looks between the setting of the sun, and the seven stars near the north pole | *~it looks between the setting of the sun, and the north star*

Aquitania extends from the river Garonne to the Pyrenæan mountains and to that part of the ocean which is near Spain: it looks between the setting of the sun, and the north star.

I **ad**, PRÆP. with acc., In space, *to, toward;* Nearness or proximity in gen. (= apud)*, near to, by, at, close by*; In number or amount, *near, near to, almost, about, toward;* With verbs which designate going, coming, moving, bearing, bringing near, adapting, taking, receiving, calling, exciting, admonishing, etc., when the v. is compounded with *ad,* the præp. is not always repeated, but the constr. with the dat. or acc. employed—*lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit, he undertakes the office of ambassador to the states* (I.III); In other relations,, *with regard to, in respect of, in relation to, as to, to, in*; With names of towns after verbs of motion, *ad* is used in answer to the question *Whither?* instead of the simple acc., but commonly with this difference, that *ad* denotes to *the vicinity of, the neighborhood of*

II ***ad Hispāniam***, special use of place to which. Special uses of place from which, to which, and where are the following: With the name of a country, ad denotes to the borders; in with the accusative, into the country itself. Similarly ab denotes away from the outside; ex, out of the interior. Thus ad Ītaliam pervēnit would mean he came to the frontier, regardless of the destination; in Ītaliam, he went to Italy, i.e. to a place within it, to Rome, for instance. So ab Ītaliā profectus est would mean he came away from the frontier, regardless of the original starting-point; ex Ītaliā, he came from Italy, from within, as from Rome, for instance. §428 & Ad, to, towards, at, near, with the accusative (cf. in, into): Of place: as, ad urbem vēnit, he came to the city; ad merīdiem, towards the south; ad exercitum, to the army; ad hostem, toward the enemy; ad urbem, near the city. §221

III **Hispānia, -æ,** F., *Spain;* Pl., *Spanish provinces;* referring to the division into the two parts, *"Hispānia citerior," Hither Spain, "Hispānia ulterior," Further Spain*

IV **occāsus, -ūs**, M. (OB + CAD-), *a falling, going down, setting*

I.II

ORGATORIX PERSUADES HIS PEOPLE TO MIGRATE.

I.II.I

APVD HELVETIOS LONGE NOBILISSIMVS FVIT ET DITISSIMVS ORGETORIX.

Apud[I] Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus[II] fuit et dītissimus[III] Orgetorīx[IV]

=Among the Helvetii, Orgetorix was by far the most well-known and (the most) wealthy

~he~Among the Helvetii, Orgetorix was by far the most noted and wealthy

Among the Helvetii, Orgetorix was by far the most distinguished and wealthy.

I **apud**, PRÆP. INDECFORM., præp. gov. acc., *with, at, by, near*; In respect of persons, *in* (*whose*) *presence* or *before* whom any thing is done or takes place; Of persons, of inhabitants of cities or countries, among whom one is, or something is, is done or happens, *among* (= inter)

II **nōbilis, -e**, ADJ. (GNA-), *that is known, well-known, famous, noted, celebrated, renowned; High-born, of noble birth, noble* (usu. of families from which the high offices of state had been filled)

III **dīves, -itis**, ADJ. (DIV-), *rich, wealthy, opulent*

IV **Orgetorix, -īgis,** M., *a Helvetian nobleman who formed a plot to seize supreme power*

I.II.II

IS, M. MESSALA ET M. PVPIO PISONE CONSVLIBVS, REGNI CVPIDITATE INDVCTVS CONIVRATIONEM NOBILITATIS FECIT ET CIVITATI PERSVASIT VT DE FINIBVS SVIS CVM OMNIBVS COPIIS EXIRENT: PERFACILE ESSE, CVM VIRTVTE OMNIBVS PRÆSTARENT, TOTIVS GALLIÆ IMPERIO POTIRI.

Is

=he (Orgetorix) *~he*

M[arcō][I] [Valeriō][II] Messālā[III] [IV] et M[arcō] Pupio[V] Pīsōne[VI] [Calpurnianō] cōnsulibus[VII] [VIII] [IX]

=with M[arcus] [Valerius] Messala and M[arcus] Pupius [Calpurnianus] Piso (being) consuls (e.g. 61 B.C.) *~when Messala and Piso were consuls*

I **Mārcus, -ī,** M., *a Roman first name*, equiv. to english *Mark*

II **Valerius, -ī,** M., *a Roman name*

III **Messāla, -æ,** M., *a Roman name*

IV ***Marcō Valeriō Messālā,*** *Mārcus Valerius Messāla*, consul in 61 B.C.

V **Pupius, -ī,** M., *a Roman name*

VI **Pīsō, -ōnis,** M., *a Roman name*

VII ***M. Messālā et M. Pupio Pīsōne cōnsulibus.*** abl. abs. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. i. An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the Ablative Absolute construction §419i

VIII **cōnsul, -ulis**, M. (COM- + SAL-), *a consul*—the highest magistracy of the Roman republic was vested in two consuls, chosen annually; In dates, defining the year; usu. abl absol.—*Messalā et Pisone consulibus, in the consulship of*

IX ***Marcō Pupio Pīsōne Calpurnianō***, consul with M. Valerius Messala in 61 B.C.

rēgnī[I] [II] cupiditāte[III] [IV] inductus[V] coniūrātiōnem[VI] nōbilitātis fēcit[VII]

=<having been> led by desire of kingship, made a swearing together of the nobility

~seduced by lust of sovereignty, formed a plot among the nobility

et cīvitātī[VIII] [IX] persuāsit[X] [XI]

=and persuaded the state

~and persuaded the people

I ***rēgnī***, obj. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. §348

II **regnum, -i**, N. (REX), *kingly government, royal authority, kingship, royalty; Dominion, sovereignty, rule, authority, supreme power*

III ***cupiditāte***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

IV **cupiditās, -ātis**, F. (CUPIDUS), *a longing, desire, passion, eagerness*

V **indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** (IN + DUCŌ), *to lead in, bring in, introduce, conduct, lead up, bring forward; To move, excite, persuade, induce, mislead, seduce*

VI **coniūrātio, -ōnis**, F. (CONIŪRO), *a swearing together;* In a bad sense, *a conspiracy, plot*

VII **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus** (FAC-), *to make, construct, fashion, frame, build, erect, produce, compose*; In pass., *to make*; in all senses, *to do, perform, accomplish, prepare, produce, bring to pass, cause, effect, create, commit, perpetrate, form, fashion,* etc.; Of actions, *to do, perform, make, carry on, execute*; **factus, -a, -um**, P. A. As adjective ante-class. and very rare: IN THE NEUTR. AS SUBST.: **factum, -i**, *that which is done, a deed, act, exploit, achievement*

VIII ***cīvitātī,*** dat. with special v. *persuāsit***.** Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

IX **cīvitās, -ātis**, F. (CIVIS), *the condition of a citizen, citizenship, freedom of the city, membership in the community*; *A community of citizens, body-politic, state*

X ***persuāsit***, dir. obj. to the clause. *ut…exirent*

XI **persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus** (PER + SUĀDEŌ), *to convince, persuade*

ut[I] dē fīnibus suīs[II] cum[III] omnibus cōpiīs[IV] exīrent[V VI]

=that they should go out from their own territories with all (their) possessions	*~to go forth from their territories with all their possessions*

perfacile[VII VIII] esse[IX] [dīxit][X]

=[he said] that it was very easy	*~(saying) that it would be very easy*

I **ut**, CONJ. AND ADJ. (UT), conj., with subj., Of effect or result, *that, so that;* Adv. Rel. adv. of manner (=*eo modo quo*), *as;* Causal, *as,* = *prout, pro eo ut.* Introducing a general statement, in correspondence with the particular assertion of the principal clause, *ut* = *as, considering ... that, in accordance with*; Of manner. Interrog., *how, in what way, in what manner*——Usu. in dependent questions, with subj.——After verbs of fearing, *how, in what way, lest ... not, that ... no*

II ***dē fīnibus suīs***, abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

III ***cum***, Of place: as,—vāde mēcum, go with me; cum omnibus impedīmentīs, with all [their] baggage. §221

IV **cōpia, -æ**, F. (CO + OPS), Of material objects. Of possessions, *resources, wealth, supplies, riches, prosperity*; Milit. *copia*, and far more freq. in pl. **copiæ, -ārum**, *men, troops, forces, army*

V ***ut…exīrent***. subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563.

VI **exeō, -īre-, -iī, -itus** (EX + EO), *to go out, go forth, go away, depart, withdraw, retire*

VII ***perfacile***, pred. with *esse*, Neuter Adjectives are used substantively in the following special senses: iv. A neuter adjective may be used as an attributive or a predicate adjective with an infinitive or a substantive clause. §289iv

VIII **perfacilis, -e**, ADJ. (PER + FACILIS), *very easy*

IX ***perfacile esse,*** indir. disc. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. i. The verb of saying etc. is often not expressed, but implied in some word or in the general drift of the sentence: §580i

X ***perfacile esse [dīxit],*** inf. in indir disc. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time

cum virtūte[I] omnibus[II] præstārent[III] [IV]

=since they excelled all men in <respect to> valor

~since they excelled all in valor

tōtīus[V] Galliæ imperiō[VI] [VII] potīrī[VIII] [IX]

=to take possession of the command of the whole of Gaul

~to acquire the supreme power of the whole of Gaul

He, when Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso were consuls [61 B.C.], incited by lust of sovereignty, formed a conspiracy among the nobility, and persuaded the people to go forth from their territories with all their possessions, [saying] that it would be very easy, since they excelled all in valor, to acquire the supremacy of the whole of Gaul.

indicated is present, past, or future with reference to the verb of saying etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced, such as: i. All varieties of past time are usually expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Perfect Infinitive, which may stand for the Imperfect, the Perfect, or the Pluperfect Indicative of the Direct. See chart §584

I ***virtūte***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

II ***omnibus***, dat. with comp. v. *præstārent***.** Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

III ***cum…præstārent,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

IV **præstō, -āre, -itī, -itus** (PRÆ + STŌ), *to stand out, stand before, be superior, excel, surpass, exceed, be excellent*; Impers. with subject-clause, *it is preferable, is better*

V **tōtus, -a, -um,** GEN. **tōtīus** (TV-), *all, all the, all at once, the whole, entire, total* (See chart: tōtus, whole §113)

VI ***imperiō***, obj. of dep. v. *persuāsit***.** The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

VII **imperium, -ī**, N. (IMPERO), With abl., *a command, order, direction, injunction; Supreme power, sovereignty, sway, dominion, empire, supremacy, authority*

VIII ***potīrī***, subj. of v. *esse*

IX **potior, -īrī, -ītus, —** DEP. (POTIS), *to become master of, take possession of, get, obtain, acquire, receive*

I.II.III

ID HOC FACILIVS EIS PERSVASIT, QVOD VNDIQVE LOCI NATVRA HELVETII CONTINENTVR: VNA EX PARTE FLVMINE RHENO LATISSIMO ATQVE ALTISSIMO, QVI AGRVM HELVETIVM A GERMANIS DIVIDIT; ALTERA EX PARTE MONTE IVRA ALTISSIMO, QVI EST INTER SEQVANOS ET HELVETIOS; TERTIA LACV LEMANNO ET FLVMINE RHODANO, QVI PROVINCIAM NOSTRAM AB HELVETIIS DIVIDIT.

Id[I] hōc[II] facilius eīs[III] persuāsit[IV]

=<because of> this (thing), he more easily persuaded those men (to adopt) that (course)

~to this he the more easily persuaded them

quod undique[V] locī[VI] [VII] nātūrā[VIII] Helvētiī continentur

=because the Helvetii are held together from all parts by the nature of (their) place

~because the Helvetii are confined on every side by the nature of their situation

I ***id***, obj. of *persuasit*. Some verbs ordinarily intransitive may have an Accusative of the direct object along with the Dative of the indirect. §369

II ***hōc***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

III ***eīs***, dat. with special v. *persuāsit*. §367

IV **persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus** (per + suādeō), *to convince, persuade*

V **undique**, ADV. (UNDE + QUE), *from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides, all around, on every part, everywhere*

VI **locus, -ī**, M. (LOCA), *a place, spot*; Fig. *Place, position, situation, condition, relation, state*

VII **nātūra, -æ**, F., *birth*; *Nature, natural constitution, property, quality*

VIII ***nātūrā***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

ūnā ex[I] parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō[II] atque altissimō[III] [IV]

=from one part by the very broad and very deep Rhine river

~on one side by the Rhine, a very broad and deep river

quī[V] agrum[VI] Helvētium ā Germānīs[VII] dīvidit

=(the Rhine) which divides the territory of the Helvetii from (that of) the Germans

~which separates the Helvetian territory from the Germans

I ***ex*** OR ***ē***, PRÆP. with abl. denotes *out from the interior* of a thing (in opposition to *in*), *out of, from*. In space. Prop.: In a downward direction, *from, down from, from off*: *"equestribus prœliis sæpe ex equis desiliunt,"* (IV.II); In an upward direction, *from, above*: *"collis paululum ex planitie editus,"* (II.VIII); Transf. To indicate the country, and, in gen., the place *from* or *out of* which any person or thing comes, *from*: *"Q. Junius ex Hispania quidam,"* (V.XXVII); To indicate the place *from* which any thing is done or takes place, *from, down from*: *"T. Labienus ... ex loco superiore conspicatus ..."* (II.XXVI), Hence the adverbial expressions, *ex adverso, ex diverso, ex contrario, e regione, ex parte, e vestigio*, etc.; v. the words *adversus, diversus*, etc.—Also, *ex itinere, during* or *on a journey, on the march, without halting*, *"id ex itinere magno impetu Belgæ oppugnare cœperunt."* (II.VI), *"ex fuga," during the flight,"* (VI.XXXV); In time. From a certain point of time, i. e. *immediately after, directly after, after* (in this sense more freq. than *ab*): So, too, *diem ex die exspectabam, one day after another, from day to day*, *"diem ex die ducere,"* (I.XVI); In specifying a multitude from which something is taken, or of which it forms a part, *out of, of*; To indicate the cause or reason of any thing, *from, through, by, by reason of, on account of*: *"cum esset ex ære alieno commota civitas,"* (Cic. Rep. 2, 33); *Ex (e) re, ex usu* or *ex injuria, to* or *for the advantage* or *injury* of any one: *"tamen eam rem non minus ex usu [terræ] Galliæ quam populi Romani accidisse"* (I.XXX), *"utrum prœlium committi ex usu esset necne"* (I.L); To designate the measure or rule, *according to, after, in conformity with* which any thing is done: *"ex consuetudine"* (I.LII)

II **lātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (STER-), *broad, wide, extensive*

III ***flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō***, abl. of means. §409

IV **altus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (P. OF ALO), *nourished, grown great, high, lofty, tall; deep*

V ***quī***, takes its gender not from *flumine*, but from *Rheno.* A Relative generally agrees in gender and number with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number. § 306

VI **ager, -grī**, M. (AGO), *productive land, a field, farm, estate, arable land, pasture; A territory, district, domain*

alterā[I] ex[II] parte monte Iūrā[III] altissimō[IV]

=from the second part by the Jura, a very high mountain	*~on a second side by the Jura, a very high mountain*

quī est inter Sēquanōs et Hēlvetiōs

=(the Jura mountain) which is (situated) between the Sequani and the Helvetii	*~which is (situated) between the Sequani and the Helvetii*

tertiā [ex parte] lacū[V] Lemannō[VI] et flūmine Rhodanō[VII]

=from the third [part] by the Lake of Geneva, and by the river Rhone	*~on a third by the Lake of Geneva, and by the river Rhone*

quī prōvinciam[VIII] nostram ab Helvētiīs[IX] dīvidit

=(the Lake of Geneva) which divides our province from the Helvetii	*~which separates our province from the Helvetii*

VII ***ā Germānīs***, abl. of separ. §401

I **alter, -tera, -terum**, PRONOM. ADJ. (AL-), *one, another, the one, the other* (of two); Esp., as a numeral, *the second, next* (See chart: alter, -terīus, the other §113)

II ***ex***, Ex, ē, from (the midst, opposed to in), out of, with the ablative (cf. ab and dē). Of place: as, ex omnibus partibus silvæ ēvolāvērunt, they flew out from all parts of the forest; ex Hispāniā, [a man] from Spain. §221

III **Iūra, -æ**, M., *a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone*

IV ***Iūra altissimō,*** apposition. A noun used to describe another, and standing in the same part of the sentence with the noun described, is called an Appositive, and is said to be in apposition. §282

V **lacus, -ūs**, M. (LAC-), *an opening, hollow, lake, pond, pool*

VI **Lemammus, -ī,** M., with *lacus, Lake Geneva*

VII ***lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō,*** abl. of means. §409

VIII **prōvincia, -æ**, F., *A province*, i.e. a territory out of Italy, acquired by the Romans (chiefly by conquest), and brought under Roman government; also, to be rendered *provincial administration, employment*, etc.

IX ***ab Helvētiīs,*** abl. of separ. §401

To this he the more easily persuaded them, because the Helvetii, are confined on every side by the nature of their situation; on one side by the Rhine, a very broad and deep river, which separates the Helvetian territory from the Germans; on a second side by the Jura, a very high mountain, which is [situated] between the Sequani and the Helvetii; on a third by the Lake of Geneva, and by the river Rhone, which separates our Province from the Helvetii.

I.II.IV

HIS REBVS FIEBAT VT ET MINVS LATE VAGARENTVR ET MINVS FACILE FINITIMIS BELLVM INFERRE POSSENT: QVA EX PARTE HOMINES BELLANDI CVPIDI MAGNO DOLORE ADFICIEBANTVR.

Hīs rēbus[I] [II] fīēbat[III]

=by <means of> these things, it was made

~from these circumstances, it came to pass

I *hīs rēbus,* abl. of means. §409

II **rēs, reī**, F. (RA-), *a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case*

III ***fīēbat***, impf. tense expresses the continued effect of the causes. The Imperfect denotes an action or a state as continued or repeated in past time. Note. The Imperfect is a descriptive tense and denotes an action conceived as in progress or a state of things as actually observed. Hence in many verbs it does not differ in meaning from the Perfect. Thus rēx erat and rēx fuit may often be used indifferently; but the former describes the condition while the latter only states it. The English is less exact in distinguishing these two modes of statement. Hence the Latin Imperfect is often translated by the English Preterite. §470

ut et minus[I] lātē[II] vagārentur[III]

=that both they roamed less broadly

~that they could range less widely

et minus facile fīnitimīs[IV] bellum īnferre[V] possent[VI]

=and (that) they were less easily able to make an attack upon (their) neighbors

~and could less easily make war upon their neighbors

I **parvus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PAV-), Of magnitude, *little, small, petty, puny, inconsiderable*; Sup. adj., **minimus, -a, -um**, *very small, very little; least, smallest,* etc.*: "quā minima altitudo fluminis erat,"* (I.VIII); Adv., Comp., **minus**, *less*; Comp., **minor, -us**., *less, lesser, smaller, inferior*

II **lātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (STER-), *broad, wide, extensive*; **lātē**, adv., *broadly, widely, extensively; with longe, on all sides, far and wide, everywhere*

III **vagor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP., *vagus, to stroll about, go to and fro, ramble, wander, roam, range, rove*

IV **fīnitimus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FINIS), *bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring*; Subst., **fīnitimi, -ōrum**, M., *neighbors*

V **īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus** (ĪN + FERŌ), *to bring in, introduce, bring to, carry in*; Milit., *signa (arma) in hostem*, or *hosti, to bear the standards against the enemy, to attack, make an attack upon*; in phrases, with *bellum, gradum,* or *pedem, to make an attack*; Fig., *to bring forward, adduce, introduce, produce, make, excite, occasion, cause, inflict*

VI ***ut…vagārentur…possent,*** subst. clause of result. Substantive Clauses of Result with ut (negative ut nōn) are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort—Such are especially faciō and its compounds (efficiō, cōnficiō, etc.) Verbs and phrases taking an ut-clause of result as subject or object are accēdit, accidit, additur, altera est rēs, committō, cōnsequor, contingit, efficiō, ēvenit, faciō, fit, fierī potest, fore, impetrō, integrum est, mōs est, mūnus est, necesse est, prope est, rēctum est, relinquitur, reliquum est, restat, tantī est, tantum abest, and a few others. § 568

quā[I] ex parte hominēs[II] bellandī[III] [IV] cupidī magnō[V] dolōre[VI] [VII] adficiēbantur[VIII] [IX]

=from which part (partly because), (these) men, desirous of waging war, were affected with great pain

~for which reason men fond of war (as they were) were affected with great regret

I ***quā***, a rel. pron. is often used at the beginning of an independent clause, connecting it with the preceding sentence. A relative pronoun (or adverb) often stands at the beginning of an independent sentence or clause, serving to connect it with the sentence or clause that precedes.— "Cæsar statuit exspectandam classem; quæ ubi convēnit" (III.XIV), Cæsar decided that he must wait for the fleet; and when this had come together, etc. quæ quī audiēbant, and those who heard this (which things). quæ cum ita sint, and since this is so. "quōrum quod simile factum" (Cat. 4.13), what deed of theirs like this? quō cum vēnisset, and when he had come there (whither when he had come). Note.--This arrangement is common even when another relative or an interrogative follows. The relative may usually be translated by an English demonstrative, with or without and. §308f

II **homō, -inis**, M. AND F., *a human being, man, person*

III ***bellandī***, objective gen. of the gerund with adj. *cupidī*. Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the Objective Genitive include: Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites govern the genitive. §349i & The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. §504

IV **bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (BELLUM), *to wage war, carry on war, war*

V **magnus, -a, -um**, Lit., of physical size or quantity, *great, large*; Of things, *vast, extensive, spacious*, etc.; Trop. In gen., *great, grand, mighty, noble, lofty, important, of great weight or importance*; Esp. Of measure, weight, quantity, *great, much, abundant, considerable*, etc.; In plur. subst., **māiōres**, **-um**, m., *ancestors, forefathers*

VI **dolor, -ōris**, M. (DAL-), *pain, smart, ache, suffering, anguish; dolor*; Esp, *indignation, wrath, animosity, anger, resentment*

VII ***magnō dolōre,*** abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

VIII **afficio, -ere, affēci, affectum** (AD + FACIO), *to do something to one*, i.e. *to exert an influence on body or mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state*; With acc. and abl., *to affect* a person or (rarely) thing *with something*;

From these circumstances it resulted, that they could range less widely, and could less easily make war upon their neighbors; for which reason men fond of war [as they were] were affected with great regret.

In a good sense, *to bestow upon, grace with*; In a bad sense, *to visit with, inflict upon*; or the ablative and verb may be rendered by the verb corresponding to the ablative, and if an adjective accompany the ablative, this adjective becomes an adverb

IX **adficio, adficere, adfēci, adfectum** (AD + FACIO), *to do something* to one, i.e. *to exert an influence on body* or *mind*, so that it is brought into such or such a state; With acc. and abl., *to affect a person* or (rarely) *thing with something*; In a good sense, *to bestow upon, grace with*; In a bad sense, *to visit with, inflict upon*

I.II.V

PRO MVLTITVDINE AVTEM HOMINVM ET PRO GLORIA BELLI ATQVE FORTITVDINIS ANGVSTOS SE FINES HABERE ARBITRABANTVR, QVI IN LONGITVDINEM MILIA PASSVVM DVCENTA QVADRAGINTA, IN LATITVDINEM CENTVM OCTOGINTA PATEBANT.

Prō[I] multitūdine[II] autem[III] hominum

=that, however, in comparison with the multitude of men

~considering the extent of their population

I **prō**, PRÆP. WITH ABL. (PRO-), Of place, *before, in front of, in face of*; Prep. with abl., *before, in front of.*; With verbs of motion, *"Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit," before the camp*, (I.XLVIII); *On account of, for the sake of*; Of relation or proportion, *for, in proportion, in comparison with, in accordance with, according to, conformably to, by virtue of*; Of equivalence, *for, the same as, just as, as*; *Pro* is used in its most general sense in stating the relation between two objects or actions, *in proportion, in comparison with, according to* or *as*, *conformably to, by virtue of, for*, etc.:—Esp. freq.: *pro ratā parte* and *pro ratā, in proportion, proportionably*; v. *ratus*: "*pro se quisque," each according to his ability, each one for himself*, (II.XXV)

II **multitūdo, inis**, F. (MULTUS), *a great number, multitude*; In partic. Of people, *a great number, a crowd, multitude, "tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjiciebat, ut,* etc.,*"* (II.VI); Of the common people, *the crowd, the multitude*

III **autem**, CONJ., an adversative particle which regularly follows an emphatic word, or two or more closely connected words, *but, on the other hand, on the contrary, however*

et prō glōriā[I] bellī atque fortitūdinis[II] angustōs[III] sē fīnēs habēre[IV V]

=and in comparison with (their) renown of warfare and of bravery, they had narrow borders

~and their renown for warfare and bravery, they had but narrow limits

arbitrābantur[VI]

=they were thinking

~they thought

I **glōria, -æ**, F. (CLV-), *glory, fame, renown, praise, honor*—with gen.

II **fortitūdo, -inis**, F. (FORTIS), *strength*; Mentally, *firmness, manliness* shown in enduring or undertaking hardship; *fortitude, resolution, bravery, courage, intrepidity*

III **angustus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (ANG-), *narrow, strait, contracted*

IV ***habere arbitrābantur***, inf. in indir. disc. §584

V ***angustōs sē fīnēs habēre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *arbitrabantuir*. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

VI **arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum**, DEP. (ARBITER), In law, of witnesses, *to testify on information and belief, depose to one's best knowledge*; In gen., *to be of an opinion, believe, consider, think*

qui in longitūdinem[I] mīlia[II] [III] passuum[IV] [V] ducenta quadrāgintā

=(the territories) which (were extending) in length two-hundred forty thousands of paces

~although they (extended) in length 240 miles

in lātitūdinem[VI] centum octōgintā patēbant[VII]

=(and) they were lying open in breadth one-hundred eightly (thousands of paces)

~=and in breadth 180 (Roman miles)

They thought, that considering the extent of their population, and their renown for warfare and bravery, they had but narrow limits, although they extended in length 240, and in breadth 180 [Roman] miles.

I **longitūdo, -inis**, F. (LONGUS), *length*

II ***mīlia***, acc. of extent of space. Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative. §425

III **mīlle,** pl. **mīlia**, NUM. ADJ. (MIL-), *a thousand, ten hundred*; In the phrase, *mille passuum, a thousand paces* (a Roman mile, about 1618 English yards)

IV ***passuum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

V **passus, -ūs**, M. (PAT-), *a step, pace*

VI **lātitūdō, -inis**, F. (LATUS), *breadth, width*

VII **pateō, -ēre, -uī, —** (PAT-), *to stand open, lie open, be open; To stretch out, extend*

I.III

They make preparations.

I.III.I

HIS REBVS ADDVCTI ET AVCTORITATE ORGETORIGIS PERMOTI, CONSTITVERVNT EA QVÆ AD PROFICISCENDVM PERTINERENT COMPARARE, IVMENTORVM ET CARRORVM QVAM MAXIMVM NVMERVM CŒMERE, SEMENTES QVAM MAXIMAS FACERE VT IN ITINERE COPIA FRVMENTI SVPPETERET, CVM PROXIMIS CIVITATIBVS PACEM ET AMICITIAM CONFIRMARE.

Hīs rēbus[I] adductī[II] et auctōritāte[III] [IV] Orgetorīgis permōtī[V] cōnstituērunt[VI]

I ***hīs rēbus***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II **addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** (AD + DŪCŌ), *to lead to, bring to, bring along*; *To bring, lead, prompt, move, induce, prevail upon, persuade, incite*

III ***auctōritāte***, abl. of means. §409

IV **auctōritās, -ātis**, F. (AUCTOR), *origination, production*; Of persons, *influence, weight, dignity, reputation, authority*

V **permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus** (PER + MOVEŌ), *to move deeply, rouse, excite, agitate, influence, lead, induce, prevail on*

VI **cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (COM- + STATUO), *to put, place, set, station*; *To fix, appoint, determine, define, decide, decree*; *To establish, set in order, organize, manage, administer, regulate, arrange, dispose;* Milit. *To station* or *post* troops somewhere, *to draw up, set in order*

=(the Helvetii), <having been> led by these things and <having been> moved deeply by the influence of Orgetorix, decided

~induced by these considerations, and influenced by the counsel of Orgetorix, they determined to provide

ea

=that those things

~such things

quæ ad proficīscendum[I] [II] pertinērent[III]

=(those things) which extended to <the purpose of> setting forward

~which pertained to setting out

comparāre[IV] [V]

=to prepare

~to prepare

I ***ad proficīscendum.*** acc. of gerundive expressing purpose. When the Gerund would have an object in the Accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have had. §503 & The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

II **proficīscor, -ī, -fectus**, DEP. (PROFICIO; PRO + FACIO), *to set forward, set out, start, go, march, depart; To set out, begin, commence, start*

III ***quæ…pertinērent,*** rel. clause of char. The mood shows that its clause expresses not the writer's statement, but that of the speaker or actor or some other person concerned. Always bear in mind that Cæsar uses the subjunctive to express something different from the indicative, whether you can find the technical rule for it or not. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined. §535 & A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. §592

IV ***comparāre***, inf. depending on *cōnstituērunt*. Many verbs take either a Subjunctive Clause or a Complementary Infinitive, without difference of meaning. Such are verbs signifying willingness, necessity, propriety, resolve, command, prohibition, effort, and the like. §457

V **comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (COM + PARŌ), *to prepare, make ready, set in order, furnish, provide*

iūmentōrum[I] et carrōrum[II] quam maximum[III IV] numerum[V] cœmere[VI VII]

=to buy up as great a number as possible of beasts of burden and wagons

~to purchase as great a number as possible of beasts of burden and wagons

sēmentēs[VIII] quam maximās[IX] facere

=to make (their) sowings as large as possible

~to make their sowings as large as possible

ut in itinere[X] cōpia[XI] frūmentī[XII] suppeteret[XIII XIV]

=<in order> that in the journey, an ample supply of corn might be present

~so that on their march plenty of corn might be in store

I **iūmentum, -i**, N., *a beast used for drawing or carrying, draught-cattle, a beast of burden*, Esp. *a horse, mule, or ass*

II **carrus, -ī**, M., *a wagon for freight, baggagewagon* (with four wheels)

III **quam** + super = *as ... as possible.* Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows: With quam, vel, or ūnus the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree. §291iii

IV **māximus, -a, -um**, SUP. (MAC-), Of size, *large, great, big, high, tall, long, broad, extensive, spacious*

V **numerus, -ī**, M. (NEM-), *a number*; In partic. A certain collective quantity, *a body, number of persons or things*

VI ***cœmere***, obj. of *cōnstituērunt*

VII **coëmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus** (COM- + EMO), *to purchase, buy up, forestall*

VIII **sēmentis, -is**, F. (SEMEN), *semen, a seeding, sowing*

IX ***quam*** + super = *as ... as possible.* §194iii

X **iter, -itineris**, N. (I-), *a going, walk, way*; *A going, journey, passage, march, voyage*; *quam maximis itineribus contendere, forced marches*

XI **cōpia, -æ**, F. (COM- + OPS), *an abundance, ample supply, plenty*

XII **frūmentum, -ī**, N. (FVG-), *corn, grain, harvested grain*; with *loca, abounding in corn*

XIII ***ut suppeteret***, clause of purp. The Subjunctive in the clause of Purpose is hortatory in origin, coming through a kind of indirect discourse construction. §529

XIV **suppetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus** (SUB + PETO), *to be at hand, be in store, be present, be available*

cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem[I] et[II] amīcitiam[III] cōnfirmāre[IV] [V] [VI]

=(and) to strengthen (relations of) peace and friendship with the nearest states

~and to strenghten peace and friendship with the neighboring states

Induced by these considerations, and influenced by the authority of Orgetorix, they determined to provide such things as were necessary for their expedition-to buy up as great a number as possible of beasts of burden and wagons-to make their sowings as large as possible, so that on their march plenty of corn might be in store-and to establish peace and friendship with the neighboring states.

I **pāx, pācis**, F. (PAC-), *a compact, agreement, treaty, peace, treaty of peace, reconciliation*

II ***et***, When more than two words stand in the same relation, the Copulative Conjunction may be expressed with all, or omitted with all, or the last two words may be joined by *-que*; in each case English usage generally prefers *and* between the last two words. Thus, *Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis, the Rauraci, Tulingi, and Latobrigi* (I.V); *lingua, institutis, legibus, in respect to language, institutions, and laws* (I.I); *pueri, senes mulieresque, children, old men, and women* (I.XXIX)

III **amīcitia, -æ**, F. (AMICUS), *friendship*

IV ***cōnfirmāre***, inf. depending on ***cōnstituērunt***. §457

V **cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (CŌN + FĪRMŌ), *to make firm, make strong, establish, strengthen; To confirm, give full assurance of* a fact, *corroborate* an assertion, *settle, fix, establish, to prove, demonstrate* the truth of a thing, etc

VI ***coëmere…facere…confirmare***: notice that the Latin more easily dispenses with connectives than we do

I.III.II

AD EAS RES CONFICIENDAS BIENNIVM SIBI SATIS ESSE DVXERVNT: IN TERTIVM ANNVM PROFECTIONEM LEGE CONFIRMANT.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās[I] [II] [III] biennium[IV] sibi[V] satis[VI] esse[VII]

=that a period of two years is enough for them for <the purpose of> completing those things

~that a term of two years would be sufficient for them to execute their designs

I ***ad eās rēs cōnficiendās.*** acc. of gerundive expressing purp. §506

II **cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (COM- + FACIO), *to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil; To make a thing completely ready, to make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute,* etc; *to write, draw up*

III ***conficiendas***, *completing*: *con* in composition, may mean *together*; or, as here, may be simply intensive

IV **biennium, -ī**, N. (BI- + ANNUS), *a period of two years, two years*

V ***sibi***, dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed. §376

VI **satis**, ADJ. N. INDECL. (SA-), Only nom. and acc, *enough, sufficient, satisfactory, ample, adequate*; **satis**, adv., *enough, sufficiently,* With adjectives*:—Sometimes,* like the Engl. *enough,* it denotes diminution, *tolerably, moderately*

VII ***biennium…esse***, ind. disc. dep. on *dūxērunt.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

dūxērunt[I] [II]

=(The Helvetii) calculated *~they reckoned*

in tertium[III] annum[IV] [V] profectiōnem[VI] lēge[VII] cōnfirmant[VIII]

=they make firm by law (their) departure for the third year *~they fix by decree their departure for the third year*

They reckoned that a term of two years would be sufficient for them to execute their designs; they fix by decree their departure for the third year.

I ***esse dūxērunt***, implied indir. disc.

II **dūcō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctus** (DVC-), *to lead, conduct, guide, direct, draw, bring, fetch, escort; To calculate, compute, reckon*; With regard to time, *to draw out, extend, protract, prolong—put off, delayed*; *to lead* a person, as regards his will or opinions, in any direction—In a bad sense, *to cheat, deceive*; *to move, incite, induce, allure,* in a good or bad sense; *uxorem*, *to lead a wife home*, i. e. *to marry*: *"filiam Orgetorigis in matrimonium,"* (I.IX), *"Duæ fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum eduxerat"* (I.LIII); In milit. lang. Said of a commander, *to lead, to cause to move*, *to march* his army in any direction: *"locis apertis exercitum ducere,"* (I.XLI), et sæp.—In pass., of the soldiers, *to march, move: "quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur,"* (I.XL); With regard to time, *to draw out, extend, protract, prolong*: *"bellum,"* (I.XXXVIII), *"diem ex die,"* (I.XVI); and of persons who are *put off, delayed*: *"ubi se diutius duci intellexit,"* (I.XVI)—Less freq. (mostly poet.); In gen., *to reckon, consider, hold, account, esteem* as any thing, *"Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt"* (I.III)

III **tertius, -a, -um**, NUM. ORD. ADJ. (TER), *the third*

IV ***in tertium annum,*** *'for' the third year*; *in* + acc. in constructions of time. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the Accusative with ad, in, or sub is used. Such are the following. §424v

V **annus, -ī**, M. (AC-), *a year*

VI **profectiō, -ōnis**, F. (PRO + FAC-), *a going away, setting out, departure*

VII ***lēge***, abl. of means. §409

VIII ***cōnfirmant***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

I.III.III

AD EAS RES CONFICIENDAS ORGETORIX DELIGITVR.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās[I] Orgetorīx dēligitur[II] [III]

=Orgatorix is chosen <for the purpose of> completing those things

~Orgetorix was chosen to complete these plans

Orgetorix is chosen to complete these arrangements.

I ***ad eās rēs cōnficiendās.*** acc. of gerundive expressing purp. §506

II ***dēligitur***, hist. pres. §469

III **dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus** (DE + LEGO), *to choose, pick out, select, elect, designate, single out*

I.III.IV

IS SIBI LEGATIONEM AD CIVITATES SVSCIPIT.

Is sibi[I] [II] lēgātiōnem[III] ad cīvitātēs suscipit[IV]

=he (Orgatorix) undertakes for himself the office of ambassador to the states

~he took upon himself the office of embassador to the states

He took upon himself the office of embassador to the states.

I ***sibi***, dat. with comp. v. *suscipit*. Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

II **suī** (GEN.), DAT. **sibi** OR **sibī**, ACC. AND ABL. **sē** or (more emphatic) **sēsē**, PROP., as pron. reflex., of an object considered as receiving or affected by its own act, *himself, herself, itself, themselves.* In all clauses, referring to the grammatical subject of the clause. As direct obj. of verb; With prepp. *pro se quisque = unusquisque, every one, each one singly*, etc., *pro se quisque = unusquisque, every one, each one singly*, etc., "*Boiosque receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt,*" (I.V); In partic., in reported words or thoughts (orat. obliqua) referring to the person to whom they are ascribed. As subj. or obj., direct or indirect, with inf, "*nuntium mittit ... sese diutius sustinere non posse,*" (II.VI); Esp., in subordinate clauses (sub-oblique), with subj. expressing the assertion or view of the person reported as speaking: *"magnam Cæsarem injuriam facere, qui vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret,"* (I.XXXVI); Pron. recipr., *each other, one another,* so very rare, except in phrase: *inter se, one another, each other, mutually, reciprocally, "inter se differre"* (I.I); Idiomatic uses. *Sibi* pleonast. as dat. of the interested person: *"ipse autem Ariovistus tantus sibi spiritus sumpserat"* (I.XXXIII)

III **lēgātiō, -ōnis**, F. (LEGO), *the office of ambassador, embassy, legation*

IV **suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** (SUB + CAPIO), *to take, catch, take up, lift up, receive*; Fig., *to undertake, assume, begin, incur, enter upon* (voluntarily)

I.III.V

IN EO ITINERE PERSVADET CASTICO CATAMANTALŒDIS FILIO SEQVANO, CVIVS PATER REGNVM IN SEQVANIS MVLTOS ANNOS OBTINVERAT ET A SENATV POPVLI ROMANI AMICVS APPELLATVS ERAT, VT REGNVM IN CIVITATE SVA OCCVPARET QVOD PATER ANTE HABVERIT; ITEMQVE DVMNORIGI ÆDVO FRATRI DIVICIACI, QVI EO TEMPORE PRINCIPATVM IN CIVITATE OBTINEBAT AC MAXIME PLEBI ACCEPTVS ERAT, VT IDEM CONARETVR PERSVADET, EIQVE FILIAM SVAM IN MATRIMONIVM DAT.

In eō itinere persuādet[I] Casticō[II] [III] Catamantalœdis[IV] fīliō[V] Sēquanō

=on this journey, he persuades Casticus, the son of Catamantaledes, a Sequanian

~on this journey he persuaded Casticus, the son of Catamantaledes

I *persuādet*, hist. pres. §469

II *Casticō*, dat. with special v. *persuādet*. Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

III **Casticus, -ī,** M., a certain prominent Sequanian

IV **Catamantālœdis, -ī,** M., a leader among the Sequanians before Cæsar's time

V **fīlius, -ī**, M. (FE-), *a son*

cuius pater[I] rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs[II] annōs[III] obtinuerat[IV]

=of whose father had held the royal authority among the Sequani for many years

~whose father had held the sovereignty among the Sequani for many years

et ā senātū[V] [VI] populī[VII] Rōmānī amīcus[VIII] [IX] appellātus erat

=and he had been called "friend" by the senate of the Roman people

~and had been called "friend" by the senate of the Roman people

I **pater, -tris**, M. (PA-), *a father, sire*

II **multus, -a, -um,** ADJ., Pl., with subst., or with adj. used as subst, *many, a great number*

III ***multōs annōs,*** acc. of dur. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423 & Time during which or within which may be expressed by the Accusative or Ablative of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral. §424

IV ***obtinuerat***, *had held*: The pluperfect implies that he had held it formerly, but had been ousted by some popular movement

V ***ā senātū***, abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action. Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy. Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule. §405

VI **senātus, -ūs**, M. (SEN-), In Rome, *the council of the elders, council of state, Senate, body of senators*

VII **populus, -ī**, M. (PLE-), *a people, nation*; In Rome, *the whole body of citizens, people*

VIII ***populī Rōmānī amīcus***, pred. n. of the v. *appellātus erat.* With sum and a few other intransitive or passive verbs, a noun or an adjective describing or defining the subject may stand in the predicate. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective. The verb sum is especially common in this construction, and when so used is called the copula (i.e. connective). Other verbs which take a predicate noun or adjective are the socalled copulative verbs signifying to become, to be made, to be named, to appear, and the like. §283

IX **amīcus, -ī**, M. (AMICUS), *a loved one, loving one, friend*

ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret[I]

=that he (Casticus) might take into possession the royal authority in his own state

~to seize the sovereignty in his own state

quod pater ante[II] habuerit[III]

=(the Royal authority) which (his) father had held before

~which his father had held previously

itemque[IV] Dumnorīgī[V] Æduō frātrī[VI] Dīviciācī[VII]

=and (he), likewise // to Dumnorix, an Æduan, the brother of Divitiacus

~and he also /prevailed on/ Dumnorix, an Æduan, the brother of Divitiacus

I ***ut … occupāret,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

II **ante**, PREP. with acc., *before*—In space, or Trop. in regard to estimation, judgment, or rank (usu. only of objects at rest. while *præ* is used of those in motion); *Ante diem* (abbrev. *a.d.*) with an ordinal number gives the date, not of the foregoing, but of the present day—*"ante diem quintum (a.d. V.) Kalendas Apriles," the fifth day before the calends of April*

III ***quod…habuerit,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

IV **item**, ADV. (I- + TAM), *likewise, besides, also, further, moreover, too, as well*

V **Dumnorix, -īgis,** M., an Æduan, brother of Diviciacus, and son-in-law of Orgatorix; a bitter enemy of Cæsar, and leader of an Æduan anti-Roman party; slain by Cæsar's orders while trying to escape from him, 54 B.C.

VI **frāter, -tris**, M., *a brother*; Transf., Like our word *brother*, as a familiar appellation of friends and lovers.

VII **Dīviciācus, -ī,** M., an Æduan of influence, loyal to Cæsar, who at his intercession pardoned Dumnorix and the Bellovaci

quī eō tempore[I] [II] prīncipātum[III] in cīvitāte obtinēbat

=(Divitiacī) who, in that time, was occupying the chief part in the state (the Æduan state)

~who at that time possessed the chief command in his state

ac maximē[IV] plēbī[V] [VI] acceptus erat[VII]

=and he was exceedingly accepted to the common people

~and was exceedingly beloved by the plebeians

I ***eō tempore***, abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. Ablative:— cōnstitūtā diē, on the appointed day; prīmā lūce, at daybreak. quotā hōrā, at what o'clock? tertiā vigiliā, in the third watch. §423

II **tempus, -ōris**, N., a portion of time, *time, period, season, interval*

III **prīncipātus, -ūs**, M. (PRINCEPS), *a beginning, origin; The first place, pre-eminence, chief part, supremacy, leadership; The chief command, post of commander-in-chief*

IV **māximē**, ADV. SUP. (MAXIMUS), *in the highest degree, most particularly, especially, exceedingly, altogether, very*

V ***plēbī***, dat. with adj. *acceptus.* The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites. Adjectives of this kind are accommodātus, aptus; amīcus, inimīcus, īnfestus, invīsus, molestus; idōneus, opportūnus, proprius; ūtilis, inūtilis; affīnis, fīnitimus, propinquus, vīcīnus; pār, dispār, similis, dissimilis; iūcundus, grātus; nōtus, īgnōtus, and others. §384

VI **plēbs, plēbis**, F. (PLE-), *the common people, commons, commonalty, plebeians, folk*

VII **accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** (AD + CAPIO), *to take without effort, receive, get, accept*; Of voluntary taking, *to take, accept, take into possession, receive; To bear, endure, suffer* any thing disagreeable or troublesome

ut idem[I] cōnārētur[II III IV]

=that he might attempt the same (thing)	*~to make a like attempt*

persuādet[V]

=he persuades	*~prevailed on*

eīque fīliam[VI] suam in mātrimōnium[VII] dat[VIII]

=and he gives to him his own daughter into matramony	*~and gave him his daughter in marriage*

On this journey he persuades Casticus, the son of Catamantaledes (one of the Sequani, whose father had possessed the sovereignty among the people for many years, and had been styled *"friend"* by the senate of the Roman people), to seize upon the sovereignty in his own state, which his father had held before him, and he likewise persuades Dumnorix, an Aeduan, the brother of Divitiacus, who at that time possessed the chief authority in the state, and was exceedingly beloved by the people, to attempt the same, and gives him his daughter in marriage.

I **īdem, eadem, idem**, PRON. (I- + -DEM), *the same*

II ***ut ... cōnārētur,*** subst. clause of purpose. §563

III **cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP., *to undertake, endeavor, attempt, try, venture, seek, aim, make an effort, begin, make trial of*

IV ***ut idem conaretur***: i.e. put down the constitutional authority, and establish a rule of military chiefs. The expression here is a striking example of the tendency of the Latin to say things by verbs which we say by nouns; Lat. *attempt the same thing*, Eng. *make the same attempt*

V ***persuādet***, hist. pres. §469

VI **fīlia, -æ**, F. (FE-), *a daughter*

VII **mātrimōnium, -ī**, N. (MATER), *wedlock, marriage, matrimony*

VIII **dō, -are, dedī, datus** (DA-), *to give*; and hence, with the greatest variety of application, passing over into the senses of its compounds, derivatives, and synonyms (*edere, tradere, dedere; reddere, donare, largiri, concedere, exhibere, porrigere, præstare, impertire, suppeditare, ministrare, subministrare, præbere, tribuere, offerre*, etc.), as, *to give away, grant, concede, allow, permit; give up, yield, resign; bestow, present, confer, furnish, afford; offer*, etc.; Designating the effect, *to cause, make, bring about, inflict, impose*

I.III.VI

PERFACILE FACTV ESSE ILLIS PROBAT CONATA PERFICERE, PROPTEREA QVOD IPSE SVÆ CIVITATIS IMPERIVM OBTENTVRVS ESSET: NON ESSE DVBIVM QVIN TOTIVS GALLIÆ PLVRIMVM HELVETII POSSENT; SE SVIS COPIIS SVOQVE EXERCITV ILLIS REGNA CONCILIATVRVM CONFIRMAT.

Perfacile factū[I] [II] esse[III]

=that it is easy in the doing *~that it was very easy*

illīs probat[IV] [V]

=he (Orgatorix) makes good to those men *~he showed them*

I ***factū***, abl. supine. The Supine in -ū is used with a few adjectives and with the nouns fās, nefās, and opus, to denote an action in reference to which the quality is asserted. The only common supines in -ū are auditū, dictū, factū, inventū, memorātū, nātū, vīsū. In classic use this supine is found in comparatively few verbs. It is never followed by an object-case. Note 1. The supine in -ū is thus in appearance an Ablative of Specification (§418). §510

II **faciō, -ere, fēcī, fectus** (FAC-), *to do*; Supine (ppp. stem + *ū*), **factus, -ūs**, m., *in doing*

III ***Perfacile factū esse***, indir. disc. dependent on *probat*. §580

IV **probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (PROBUS), *to make good, esteem good, approve, esteem, commend; To make credible, show, prove, demonstrate*

V ***illis probat***, *undertakes to show them*, conative present., i.e. to Casticus and Dumnorix The Present sometimes denotes an action attempted or begun in present time, but never completed at all (Conative Present). §467

cōnāta[I] perficere[II III]

=that to accomplish (their) undertakings *~to accomplish the venture*

propterea quod ipse suæ cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset[IV]

=on this account because he himself (Orgatorix) was about to obtain command of his own state *~as he personally was about to seize the supreme power in his own state*

nōn esse[V] dubium[VI VII]

=that it is not doubtful *~that there was no doubt*

I **cōnāta, -ōrum**, N. (CONATUS), *an undertaking, attempt, venture, hazard, plan*

II **perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (PER + FACIO), *to achieve, execute, carry out, accomplish, perform, despatch, bring about, bring to an end, finish, complete*

III ***perfacile factū***, in predicate agreement with *conata perficere*, which is subject of *esse*

IV ***propterea quod…obtentūrus esset***, subordinate clause in indir. disc. Causal Clauses take either the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to their construction; the idea of cause being contained, not in the mood itself, but in the form of the argument (by implication), in an antecedent of causal meaning (like propterea), or in the connecting particles. Quod is in origin the relative pronoun (stem quo-) used adverbially in the accusative neuter (cf. §214. d) and gradually sinking to the position of a colorless relative conjunction (cf. English that and see §222). Its use as a causal particle is an early special development. Quia is perhaps an accusative plural neuter of the relative stem qui-, and seems to have developed its causal sense more distinctly than quod, and at an earlier period. It is used (very rarely) as an interrogative, why? (so in classical Latin with nam only), and may, like quandō, have developed from an interrogative to a relative particle. §539 & §583

V ***nōn esse***, indir. disc. §580

VI **dubius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (DVA-), *moving two ways, fluctuating*; Fig., *wavering in opinion, doubting, doubtful, dubious, uncertain*

VII ***non esse dubium quin***, *there was no doubt,* (sc. *he said*), *that*: here *esse* is infin. of indir. disc.

quīn[I] [II] tōtīus Galliæ[III] plūrimum[IV] Helvētiī possent[V] [VI]

=that the Helvetians were the most able of the whole of Gaul

~that the Helvetii were the most powerful of all the Gauls

I **quin,** CONJ., As an interrog. particle, *why not? wherefore not?*; Transf. As a rel. particle, prop. *quī* or *qui ne*, and mostly where the rel. stands for a nom. masc. or for abl. of time, *who ... not, that not, but that, but, often* = Eng. *without* and a participial clause; Lit. used after negatives, *that* or *but that*

II ***quin***, A subjunctive clause with quīn is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negatived, either expressly or by implication. i. Quīn is especially common with nōn dubitō, I do not doubt, nōn est dubium, there is no doubt, and similar expressions. §558

III ***tōtīus Galliæ***, part. gen. with plurimum. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Nouns or Pronouns. pars mīlitum, part of the soldiers. quis nostrum, which of us? nihil erat reliquī, there was nothing left. "nēmō eōrum" (VII.LXVI), not a man of them. "māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt" (II.XXIII), they killed a large part of them. §3461

IV **plūrimus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (PLUS), *most, very much, very many*; Adv., **plūrimum**

V ***quīn…possent,*** a *quīn* clause. A subjunctive clause with quīn is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negatived, either expressly or by implication. i. Quīn is especially common with nōn dubitō, I do not doubt, nōn est dubium, there is no doubt, and similar expressions. §558i

VI **possum, posse, potuī, —** IRREG. (POTIS + SUM), *to be able, have power, can*; In partic. *To be able, to have influence* or *efficacy, to avail*; In gen. With gen., *able, mighty, powerful, potent*

sē suīs[I] cōpiīs suōque exercitū[II] [III] illīs[IV] rēgna[V] conciliātūrum [esse][VI] [VII] [VIII]

=that he, with his own forces and his own army, would win over the kingship for those men

~that he will, with his own resources and his own army, win over the sovereignty for them

cōnfirmat[IX]

=he (Orgatorix) gives assurance (to them)

~he assured them

He proves to them that to accomplish their attempts was a thing very easy to be done, because he himself would obtain the government of his own state; that there was no doubt that the Helvetii were the most powerful of the whole of Gaul; he assures them that he will, with his own forces and his own army, acquire the sovereignty for them.

I ***se suis***: begin as soon as possible to master the use of the reflexive in Latin, to which we have nothing that exactly corresponds in English. Our forms with self are emphatic and not ordinarily reflexive. The forms of *se* and *suus* refer (without emphasis) to the subject of their clauses, and in indir. disc. to the speaker. They take the place of an I or mine of the direct. Where no ambiguity would arise in English translate them by he and his. In case of ambiguity some device must be used to avoid it. Here there is an emphasis on *se*, but it comes from position

II **exercitus, -ūs**, M. (EXERCEO), *a disciplined body of men, army*

III ***suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū,*** abl. of means. §409

IV ***illīs***, dat. of ref. §376

V ***regna***: translate by the singular—To a Roman each man's power would be a separate *regnum*, hence the plural here

VI **conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (CONCILIUM), *to bring together, unite, reconcile, make friendly, win over, conciliate; To procure, purchase, obtain, acquire, win, gain*

VII ***sē…conciliātūrum***, indirect disc. dep. on *cōnfirmat.* §580

VIII ***conciliaturum***: sc. *esse*, which is often omitted with the fut. infin.

IX ***cōnfirmat***, hist. pres. §469

I.III.VII

HAC ORATIONE ADDVCTI INTER SE FIDEM ET IVS IVRANDVM DANT, ET REGNO OCCVPATO PER TRES POTENTISSIMOS AC FIRMISSIMOS POPVLOS TOTIVS GALLIÆ SESE POTIRI POSSE SPERANT.

Hāc ōrātiōne[I II] adductī inter sē[III] fidem[IV] et iūs[V] iūrandum[VI VII] dant[VIII]

=(the Helvetians) <having been> led in by <means of> this discourse, give a promise and a sworn oath between themselves

~influenced by this speech, they gave a pledge and oath to one another

et

=and

~and

I ***hāc ōrātiōne,*** abl. of means. §409

II **ōrātiō, -ōnis**, F. (ORO), *a speaking, speech, discourse, language, faculty of speech, use of language; A set speech, harangue, discourse, oration*

III ***inter sē***, The Reciprocal Relation is expressed by *inter se* (Lit. *among themselves*), which must be translated in accordance with the requirements of English idiom; as, *inter se dant, they gave* (Lit. *give*) *to one another* (I.III); *inter se differunt, they differ from one another* (I.I); *inter se collocuti, having conferred with one another* (IV.XXX); *cohortati inter se, urging one another on* (IV.XXV); *inter se contenderent, they strove together* (I.XXXI); *inter se,* referring to two persons, *with each other* (V.XLIV)

IV **fidēs, —**, USU. (FID-), *trust, faith, confidence, reliance, credence, belief; An assurance that produces confidence, a promise, engagement, word, assurance, confirmation*

V **iūs, iūris**, N. (IV-), *that which is binding, right, justice, duty*; Abl. As adv., *by right, rightfully, with justice, justly*

VI ***fidem et ius iurandum,*** i.e. assurance confirmed by oath. hendiadys. Hendiadys (hen dia duoin): the use of two nouns, with a conjunction, instead of a single modified noun. §640

VII **iūs, iūrandum, -ris -i**, *an oath*

VIII ***dant***, hist. pres. §469

rēgnō occupātō[I] [ab ēis]

=with the supreme power in <having been> seized [by these men]

~when they had seized the sovereignty

per[II] trēs potentissimōs[III] ac firmissimōs[IV] populōs tōtīus Galliæ[V] sēsē potīrī posse[VI] [VII]

=that they, through <the agency of> three very powerful and very steadfast peoples, are able to become masters of the whole of Gaul

~they will, by means of the three most influential and very powerful nations, be enabled to obtain possession of the whole of Gaul

I ***rēgnō occupātō,*** abl. abs. expressing condition. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. §419

II **per**, PRÆP. with acc., In space, *through, across, through the midst of, from side to side of, traversing*; Of agency, *through, by, by the hands of, by the agency of; Through, by, under pretence of, by the pretext of*

III **potēns, -entis**, ADJ. (PART. OF POSSUM), *able, mighty, strong, powerful, potent; To be able, be strong, be powerful, have influence, be efficacious, avail, accomplish*

IV **firmus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FER-), *firm* (in opp. to *frail, destructible*), *steadfast, stable, strong, powerful;* Trop., *firm in strength or durability, also in opinion, affection,* etc., *fast, constant, steadfast, immovable, powerful, strong, true, faithful*

V ***Galliæ***, governed by *potīrī.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. i. Potior sometimes takes the Genitive, as always in the phrase potīri rērum, to get control or be master of affairs (§357i). §410i

VI ***posse***, equiv. to a fut. inf. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is present, past, or future with reference to the verb of saying etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced, such as: The present infinitive posse often has a future sense—“totīus Galliæ sēsē potīrī posse spērant” (I.III), they hope that they shall be able to get possession of all Gaul. §584ii

VII ***sēsē ... posse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *spērant*. §580

spērant[I II]

=they hope *~hope that*

Incited by this speech, they give a pledge and oath to one another, and hope that, when they have seized the sovereignty, they will, by means of the three most powerful and valiant nations, be enabled to obtain possession of the whole of Gaul.

I **spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (SPES), *to hope, look for, trust, expect, promise oneself*

II ***spērant***, hist. pres. §469

I.IV

The conspiracy is revealed.

I.IV.I

EA RES EST HELVETIIS PER INDICIVM ENVNTIATA; MORIBVS SVIS ORGETORIGEM EX VINCLIS CAVSAM DICERE CŒGERVNT; DAMNATVM PŒNAM SEQVI OPORTEBAT VT IGNI CREMARETVR.

Ea rēs[I] est Helvētiīs per[II] indicium[III] ēnūntiāta[IV]

=this thing (the plan) was spoken out to the Helvetii through information

~this conspiracy was disclosed to the Helvetii by an informer

I **rēs, reī**, F. (RA), *a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case*

II ***per***, Per, through, over, with the accusative. Figuratively, of persons as means or instruments: as, —per hominēs idoneōs, through the instrumentality of suitable persons; licet per mē, you (etc.) may for all me. Hence, stat per mē, it is through my instrumentality; so, per sē, in and of itself. §221

III **indicium, -ī**, N. (IN + DIC-), *a notice, information, discovery, disclosure, charge, evidence*

IV **ēnuntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (Ē + NUNTIO), *to say out* (Esp. something that should be kept secret), *to divulge, disclose, to report, tell*

Mōribus[I] suīs[II] Orgetorīgem ex[III] vinclīs[IV] [V] causam dīcere coēgērunt[VI]

=in their own customs, they drove together Orgatorix to speak (his) cause from chains

~they, in accordance with their custom, compelled Orgetorix to plead his cause standing in chains

I **mōs, mōris**, M. (MA-), *manner, custom, way, usage, practice, fashion, wont*, as determined not by the laws, but by men's will and *pleasure, humor, self-will, caprice*

II ***mōribus suīs***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

III ***ex***: *a, ab,* and sometimes *ex*, are often used to indicate a Local Relation, where we use *on, in,* or *at*; as, *a dextro cornu, on the right wing*, Lit. *from* (the point of view of) *the right wing* (I.LII); *a novissimo agmine, on the rear* (I.XXIII); *a fronte, in front* (II.XXIII)

IV **vinclum, -ī**, N. (VINCIO), *a means of binding, fastening, band, bond, rope, cord, fetter, tie*; Fig., *a bond, fetter, restraint*

V ***ex vinculis***, *out of chains*, i.e. *(standing) in chains*—a Latin idiom

VI **cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus** (COM- + AGO), *to drive together, collect, crowd, bring together, summon, congregate, convene; To urge, force, compel, constrain*; Esp. with acc., inf., *ut*, *ad*, *in* or absol., to urge one to any action, *to force, compel, constrain*

[eum] Damnātum[I II] pœnam[III] sequī[IV V]

=that [he], (if) <having been> condemned /it was necessary/ to follow the penalty

~he, if found guilty /it was necessary/ to follow the penalty

oportēbat[VI VII]

=it was necessary

~it was necessary

ut ignī[VIII IX] cremārētur[X XI]

=that he should be burned by fire

~that he should be consumed burned by fire

I ***[eum] damnātum***: In the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence an Ablative Absolute, a Participle, or other form of expression implying a Condition, may be used in place of the clause with *si*; as, *data facultate*, taking the place of *si facultas data esset, if an opportunity should have been granted*, in the Direct Form, *si facultas data erit* (I.VII); *damnatum* (*eum*), *him, if condemned, damnatum* taking the place of *si damnatus esset* (I.IV)

II **damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DAMNUM), *to adjudge guilty, condemn, convict*

III **pœna, -æ**, F., *indemnification, compensation, recompense, retribution, satisfaction, expiation, punishment, penalty, price*

IV ***damnatum pœnam sequi***, indir disc. dependent on *oportebat*. Verbs of motion, compounds of circum, trāns, and præter, and a few others, frequently become transitive, and take the accusative. §388ii & In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

V **sequor, -ī, secūtus, —** DEP. (SEC-), *to follow, come after, follow after, attend, accompany*

VI ***damnatum…sequi***. indir. disc. dependent on ***oportebat***. §388ii & §580

VII **oportet, -ēre, -uit, —** IMPERS. (OB + PAR-), *it is necessary, is proper, is becoming, behooves*

VIII ***ignī***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

IX **īgnis, -is**, M. (AG-), *fire*

X ***ut ignī cremārētur***, subst. clause of purpose after *ut*. A Substantive Clause used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when the verb is put in the passive (Impersonal Construction.). §566

XI **cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (CAR-), *to burn, consume by fire*

When this scheme was disclosed to the Helvetii by informers, they, according to their custom, compelled Orgetorix to plead his cause in chains; it was the law that the penalty of being burned by fire should await him if condemned.

I.IV.II

DIE CONSTITVTA CAVSÆ DICTIONIS ORGETORIX AD IVDICIVM OMNEM SVAM FAMILIAM AD HOMINVM MILIA DECEM VNDIQVE CŒGIT, ET OMNES CLIENTES OBÆRATOSQVE SVOS, QVORVM MAGNVM NVMERVM HABEBAT, EODEM CONDVXIT: PER EOS NE CAVSAM DICERET SE ERIPVIT.

Diē[I] cōnstitūtā[II] causæ[III] dictiōnis[IV]

=on the day set of speaking of (his) cause

~on the day appointed for pleading his cause

I **diēs, diēī**, M. F. (DIV-), Lit. In gen., *the civil day* of twenty-four hours; "postridie ejus diei," a favorite expression of Cæsar," (I.XXIII), (I.XLVII), (I.XLVIII); *"diem ex die exspectabam," from day to day*, cf.: *"diem ex die ducere,"* (I.XVI); In partic. *a set day, appointed time*, term in the widest sense of the word (for appearing before court, in the army, making a payment, etc.), *"dies colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus,"* (I.XLII)

II ***diē cōnstitūtā***, abl. of time when. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

III ***causæ***, obj. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. §348

IV **dictio, -ōnis**, F. (DICO), *a saying, speaking, uttering, delivery*; In gen. *"causæ," a defending, pleading*

Orgetorīx ad iūdicium[I] omnem suam familiam[II] ad hominum[III] mīlia decem undique coēgit

=Orgatorix drove together all his own family servants from all parts towards the jugement towards 10,000 of men

~Orgetorix drew together from every quarter to the court, all his domestics to the number of ten thousand persons

et omnēs clientēs[IV] obærātōsque[V] suōs

=and /he led together ... / all the clients and his own debtors

~and /he led together ... / all his dependents and debtor-bondsmen

quōrum magnum numerum habēbat[VI]

=(his own debtors) of whom he was having a great number

~of whom he had a great number

I **iūdicium, -ii,** N., *a judgment,* i.e. a judicial investigation, *trial; a judicial sentence*

II **familia, -æ,** F., *the slaves in a household, a household establishment, family servants, domestics* (not family, i.e. wife and children)

III ***hominum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

IV **cliēns, -entis**, M. (P. OF CLUEO), *a personal dependant, client*; *A client, retainer, follower*

V **obærātus, -a, -um,** ADJ. (OB + ÆS), *involved in debt*; pl. m. as subst., *debtors*

VI **habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** (HAB-), *to have, hold, support, carry, wear; To hold, to make, do, perform, prepare, utter, pronounce, produce, cause; To hold* or *keep* a person or thing in any condition; *to have, hold,* or *regard* in any light; With a double object, Esp. freq. with the part. perf. pass., *to have, hold*, or *possess* a person or thing in any quality or capacity, as any thing; *to have, hold*, or *possess* an action as completed, finished; *To hold, account, esteem, consider, regard* a person or thing in any manner or as any thing; *to think* or *believe* a person or thing *to be so* or *so*

eōdem[I] condūxit[II]

=he led together (his family servents, clients, and debtors) in the same (place)

~he led together to the same place

per[III] eōs

=by means of those men

~and with their help

nē[IV V] causam dīceret

=that he might not speak (his) cause

~from the necessity of) pleading his cause

I ***eōdem***, abl. OF PLACE WHERE. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: Often in indefinite words, such as locō, parte, etc. §429

II **condūcō -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,** (CON + DŪCŌ), *to draw together, assemble, collect, gather, unite*

III ***per***: personal agent expr. by *per.* The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. ii. The personal agent, when considered as instrument or means, is often expressed by per with the accusative, or by operā with a genitive or possessive. §405ii & Per, through, over, with the accusative. Figuratively, of persons as means or instruments: as, —per hominēs idoneōs, through the instrumentality of suitable persons; licet per mē, you (etc.) may for all me. Hence, stat per mē, it is through my instrumentality; so, per sē, in and of itself. §221

IV ***nē…dīceret,*** neg. clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

V **nē**, ADV. AND CONJ., adv., the primitive Latin negative particle, *no, not*; whereas the negative particle *non* is a derivative; *Ne … quidem*, applies the negation with emphasis to the word between them, *not even*; In intentional clauses, and after verbs of fearing and avoiding, *ne* becomes a conjunction. In intentional clauses for *ut ne, that not, lest*

sē ēripuit[I]

=he tore himself away *~he rescued himself*

On the day appointed for the pleading of his cause, Orgetorix drew together from all quarters to the court, all his vassals to the number of ten thousand persons; and led together to the same place all his dependents and debtor-bondsmen, of whom he had a great number; by means of those he rescued himself from [the necessity of] pleading his cause.

I **ēripiō, -ere, -ipuī, -eptus** (EX + RAPIO), *to snatch, tear, or pull out; to snatch away, take away* (freq. and class.; cf.: *capio, prehendo, sumo, demo, adimo, rapio, furor*). In gen.: *"vela, armamenta, copias,"* (III.XIV), cf.: *"aliquem e manibus hostium,"* (I.XLIII), With *se*, *to take one's self off, to flee, escape*: *"per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit,"* (I.IV), *"se latebris,"* (VI.XLIII), cf.: *"se ex manibus militum,"* (VII.XLVI); Trop., *to take away, snatch away*: *"omnem usum navium,"* (III.XIV)

I.IV.III

CVM CIVITAS OB EAM REM INCITATA ARMIS IVS SVVM EXSEQVI CONARETVR, MVLTITVDINEMQVE HOMINVM EX AGRIS MAGISTRATVS COGERENT, ORGETORIX MORTVVS EST; NEQVE ABEST SVSPICIO, VT HELVETII ARBITRANTVR, QVIN IPSE SIBI MORTEM CONSCIVERIT.

Cum[I] cīvitās ob[II] eam rem incitāta[III] armīs[IV] [V] iūs suum exsequī[VI] cōnārētur[VII]

=while, the state, <having been> urged on, on account of this thing, attempted to follow enforce their own law by <means of> arms

~while the state, incensed at such action, attempted to enforce its right by arms

I *Cum ... cōnārētur*, *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

II **ob**, PRÆP., with acc. With verbs of motion, *towards, to*; Transf., to indicate the object or cause, *on account of, for, because of, by reason of,* etc

III **incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (IN + CITŌ), *to set in rapid motion, urge on, hurry, hasten, accelerate, quicken*; Fig, *to put in motion, rouse, disturb*

IV ***armīs***, abl. of means. §409

V **arma, -ōrum**, N., Lit. What is fitted to the body for its protection, *defensive armor*, as the shield, coat of mail, helmet, etc.; *Implements of war, arms, both of defence and offence* (but of the latter only those which are used in close contest, such as the sword, axe, club; in distinction from tela, which are used in contest at a distance); Trop., *means of protection, defence, weapons*; *war*

VI **exsequor, -ī, -cūtus, —** DEP. (EX + SEQUOR), t*o follow to the grave; To follow up, prosecute, carry out, enforce, perform, execute, accomplish, fulfil*

VII ***cōnārētur***: *Iubeo, order, bid*, and *veto, forbid*, are regularly used with the Infinitive and Subject Accusative; *conor, attempt*, with the Infinitive; as, *quemque effere iubent, they gave* (Lit. give) *orders that each person carry away ...* (I.V); *exsequi conaretur, attempted to enforce* (I.IV)

multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs[I] cōgerent

=and the magistrates were driving together a multitude of men from the countries

~and the magistrates were convening a large body of men from the country

Orgetorīx mortuus est[II]

=Orgatorix died

~Orgetorix died

neque[III] abest suspīciō[IV]

=and it is not away from suspicion

~and there is not wanting a suspicion

ut Helvētiī arbitrantur[V]

=as the Helvetii testified

~as the Helvetii believed

I **magistrātus, -ūs**, M. (MAGISTER), *the office of master, magisterial office, civil office, magistracy*; Collect., *the body of magistrates, the municipal administration*

II **morior, -ī, mortuus, —** DEP. (MAR-), *to die, expire*

III **neque** (OR **ne que**), CONJ. OR ADV., conj. In gen. = *et non, and not, also not; In contrasts, but not, not however*

IV **suspīciō, -ōnis**, F. (SUB + SPEC-), *mistrust, distrust, suspicion*

V ***ut*** + indic. = *as.* Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar constructions, and are regularly followed by the same case or mood that precedes them. §323

quīn[I] ipse sibi mortem[II] cōnscīverit[III]

=that he himself approved of death to himself *~that he committed suicide*

While the state, incensed at this act, was endeavoring to assert its right by arms, and the magistrates were mustering a large body of men from the country, Orgetorix died; and there is not wanting a suspicion, as the Helvetii think, of his having committed suicide.

I ***quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit***, *quin* clause. The original meaning of quīn is how not? why not? (quī-nē), and when used with the Indicative or (rarely) with the Subjunctive it regularly implies a general negative. Thus, quīn ego hōc rogem? why shouldn't I ask this? implies that there is no reason for not asking. The implied negative was then expressed in a main clause, like nūlla causa est or fierī nōn potest. Hence come the various dependent constructions introduced by quīn. §557 & A subjunctive clause with quīn is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negatived, either expressly or by implication. §558

II **mors, -tis**, F. (MAR-), *death*

III **conscisco, -ere, -scīvi, -scītum** (CON + SCISCO), Publicists' t. t., *to approve of, decree, determine* or *resolve upon something in common*; Transf. from the sphere of state affairs; *aliquid sibi* or absol.; Lit., *to adjudge, appropriate to one's self*; hence, with the access. idea of personal action, *to inflict* or *bring upon one's self* (most frequently death); With *sibi*, "*mortem*," *to kill one's self*

I.V

The Helvetians prepare to migrate.

I.V.I

POST EIVS MORTEM NIHILO MINVS HELVETII ID QVOD CONSTITVERANT FACERE CONANTVR, VT E FINIBVS SVIS EXEANT.

Post[I] eius mortem nihilō[II] minus Helvētiī id

=after the death of him, less by nothing, the Helvetii // the thing	*~after his death, the Helvetii nevertheless // that*

quod cōnstituerant

=/the thing/ which they had arranged	*~/that/ which they had resolved on*

I **post**, ADV. (POS-), Of place, *behind, back backwards*; Of time, *afterwards, after, later*

II **nihil**, (OR CONTR. **nīl**), N. INDECL. (NE + HILUM; NOT THE LEAST), *nothing*; **nihilo**, with comp., *by nothing, no—nihilō minus, none the less, no less, nevertheless, notwithstanding*; Adv., *not* (as a strengthened *non*), *in nothing, in no respect, not at all*

facere cōnantur[I]

=they attempt to do	*~attempted to do*

ut ē fīnibus suīs[II] exeant[III]

=(namely,) that they go forth from their own territories	*~namely, to go forth from their territories*

After his death, the Helvetii nevertheless attempt to do that which they had resolved on, namely, to go forth from their territories.

I ***cōnantur***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

II ***ē fīnibus suīs,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

III ***exeant***, subst. clause of purpose after *ut.* Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

I.V.II

VBI IAM SE AD EAM REM PARATOS ESSE ARBITRATI SVNT, OPPIDA SVA OMNIA, NVMERO AD DVODECIM, VICOS AD QVADRINGENTOS, RELIQVA PRIVATA ÆDIFICIA INCENDVNT; FRVMENTVM OMNE, PRÆTERQVAM QVOD SECVM PORTATVRI ERANT, COMBVRVNT, VT DOMVM REDITIONIS SPE SVBLATA, PARATIORES AD OMNIA PERICVLA SVBEVNDA ESSENT; TRIVM MENSVM MOLITA CIBARIA SIBI QVEMQVE DOMO EFFERRE IVBENT.

Vbi[I] iam[II]

=when now *~when by this time*

I **ubī**, ADV. (QUO + BI), Lit. A relative local particle, denoting rest in a place, *in which place, in what place, where*; Transf. Most freq. of time, *when, whenever, as soon as, as*, *"ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt,"* (I.VII)

II **iam**, ADV. (IA), Of time, denoting a point or moment of time as coinciding with that of the action, etc., described. Of present time, *at this time, now, just now, at present*; In contrast with the time at which something was expected. Of that which occurs sooner, *already, so soon;* As continued from the past, *already, by this time, ere now, till now, hitherto;* Like English *now, by this time, already*; With negatives, denoting cessation of previous condition, *iam non, no more, no longer*

sē ad eam rem parātōs esse[I] [II]

=that they were prepared for that thing

~that they were prepared for this undertaking

arbitrātī sunt

=they (the Helvetii) thought

~they thought

oppida[III] sua omnia, numerō[IV] ad duodecim, vīcōs[V] ad quadringentōs reliqua prīvāta[VI] ædificia[VII]

=all their own towns—in a number towards twelve; (their) villages—toward (a number of) four-hundred, (and) the remaining private edifices

~all their towns—about twelve in number; to their villages— about four hundred, and to the private buildings that remained

I ***sē…parātōs esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *arbitrātī sunt.* The essential character of Indirect Discourse is, that the language of some other person than the writer or speaker is compressed into a kind of Substantive Clause, the verb of the main clause becoming Infinitive, while modifying clauses, as well as all hortatory forms of speech, take the Subjunctive. The person of the verb necessarily conforms to the new relation of persons. The construction of Indirect Discourse, however, is not limited to reports of the language of some person other than the speaker; it may be used to express what any one—whether the speaker or some one else—says, thinks, or perceives, whenever that which is said, thought, or perceived is capable of being expressed in the form of a complete sentence. For anything that can be said etc. can also be reported indirectly as well as directly. (add. info. §577)

II **parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (PRA-), *to make ready, prepare, furnish, provide, arrange, order, contrive, design*; Transf., *to procure, acquire, get, obtain*

III **oppidum, -ī,** N. (OB + PED-), *a town, city, collection of dwellings*

IV ***numerō***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

V **vīcus, -ī**, M. (VIC-), *a row of houses, street, quarter, ward; A village, hamlet*

VI **prīvātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (P. OF PRIVO), *apart from the State, peculiar, personal, individual, private*

VII **ædificium, -ī**, N. (ÆDIFICO), *a building, edifice, structure*

incendunt[I]

=(the Helvetii) set fire to | *~they set fire to*

frūmentum omne

=all the grain | *~all the corn*

præter[II] quod sēcum[III] portātūrī erant[IV V]

=except (that) which they were about to bear with them | *~except what they intended to carry along with them*

combūrunt[VI]

=they burn up | *~they burned up*

ut

=<in order> that | *~so that*

I **incendō, -ere, -dī, -sus** (CANDI-), *to set fire to, kindle, burn*

II **præter**, ADV. (PRO-), *except, besides, unless, save, other than, not*

III ***sēcum***, With the Ablative of the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns *cum* is ordinarily joined; *thus vobiscum, with us* (V.XVII); *secum, with him* (I.VIII), *with himself* (I.XXXVI); *quibuscum, with whom* (I.I)

IV **portō, -are, -āvī, -ātus** (PAR-), *to bear, carry, convey, take*

V ***portaturi erant***, *intended to carry*. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, known respectively as the First (or Active) and the Second (or Passive). The First Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Future Active Participle with the forms of sum, and denotes a future or intended action. §194

VI **combūrō, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstus** (PVR-), *to burn up, consume*

domum[I] [II] reditiōnis[III] [IV] spē[V] sublātā[VI] [VII]

=with the hope of going back home <having been> taken away	*~after destroying the hope of a return home*

parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula[VIII] subeunda essent[IX] [X]

=they might be more prepared for <the purpose of> undergoing all dangers	*~they might be the more ready for undergoing all dangers*

I ***domum***, acc. of place which. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place to which, by the Accusative without a preposition. §427ii

II **domus, -ūs**, F. (DOM-), *a house, dwelling-house, building, mansion, palace*; *A home, dwelling, abode, residence*

III ***reditiōnis***, objective. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Cæsar, as odium, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as hate. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase amor patris, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive). §348

IV **reditiō, -ōnis**, F. (RED- + I-), *a going back, coming back, returning, return*

V **spēs, speī**, F. (SPA-), *hope*

VI **tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus** (TAL-), *to lift, take up, raise, elevate, exalt; To take up, take away, remove, carry off, make way with*

VII ***spē sublātā,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

VIII **perīculum, -i**, N. (PAR-), *a trial, experiment, attempt, test, proof, essay*; *Risk, hazard, danger, peril* (which acompanies an attempt)

IX ***ut…essent***. clause of purpose after *ut*. §531

X **subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus** (SUB + EŌ), *to come under, go under, enter*; Hence, with *tectum,* i.e. *enter a house; to subject oneself to, take upon oneself, undergo, submit to, sustain, accept, endure, suffer*

trium mēnsum[I II] molita[III] cibāria[IV] sibi[V] quemque[VI] domō[VII] efferre[VIII IX]

=each (man) to bear three of months ground food, for himself, from home

~every man to carry forth from home for himself three months ground rations

iubent[X]

=(and) they order

~they ordered

I ***trium mēnsium***, gen. of quality. §326

II **mēnsis, -is**, M. (MA-), *a month*

III **molō, -ere, -uī, -itus**, *to grind*

IV **cibāria, -ōrum**, N., *food, nutriment, victuals, provisions, fare, ration, fodder*

V ***sibi***, dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed. §376

VI **quisque, quæque, quidque**, AND (ADJ.) **quodque**, PRON. INDEF. (QUIS, QUÆ, QUID ... + QUE), *whoever it be, whatever, each, each one, every, everybody, every one, everything* (of more than two); With sup., to express universality (*quisque* is then placed after the sup.; with sg. and neut. pl.; rare with pl. m. and f.)

VII ***domō***, abl. from place which. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition. §427i

VIII ***quemque…efferre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *iubent*. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

IX **efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus** (EX + FERO), *to carry out, take out, bring forth, take away, remove*; Fig., *to set forth, spread abroad, utter, publish, proclaim, express*

X **iubeo, -iusse, -iussi, -iussum**, *to order* one to do something, *to bid, tell, command*

When they thought that they were at length prepared for this undertaking, they set fire to all their towns, in number about twelve-to their villages about four hundred-and to the private dwellings that remained; they burn up all the corn, except what they intend to carry with them; that after destroying the hope of a return home, they might be the more ready for undergoing all dangers. They order every one to carry forth from home for himself provisions for three months, ready ground.

I.V.III

PERSVADENT RAVRACIS ET TVLINGIS ET LATOVICIS FINITIMIS, VTI EODEM VSI CONSILIO, OPPIDIS SVIS VICISQVE EXVSTIS, VNA CVM IIS PROFICISCANTVR, BOIOSQVE, QVI TRANS RHENVM INCOLVERANT ET IN AGRVM NORICVM TRANSIERANT NOREIAMQVE OPPVGNABANT, RECEPTOS AD SE SOCIOS SIBI ADSCISCVNT.

Persuādent Rauracīs[I] [II] et Tulingīs[III] et Latovicīs[IV] fīnitimīs[V] suīs

=they persuade the Rauraci, and the Tulingi, and the Latobrigi, their neighbors	*~they persuaded the Rauraci, and the Tulingi, and the Latobrigi, their neighbors*

utī[VI]

=that	*~to*

I **Rauracī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a people along the upper Rhine, north of the Helvetians

II ***persuādent ... Rauracīs***., Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

III **Tulingī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a people near the Helvetians

IV **Latobrīgī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a people near people near the Helvetians

V ***Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs***. dat. with special v. *persuādent*. Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

VI ***utī***, the older form for *ut*, commonly used in Cæsar.

eōdem ūsī[I] [II] cōnsiliō[III] [IV]

=(those men) to use the same plan *~adopt the same plan*

oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs[V] [VI]

=(and) with their towns and villages <having been> burned down *~and after burning down their towns and villages*

ūnā cum iīs[VII] proficīscantur[VIII]

=to set forward together with them *~to set out with them*

I **ūtor, -ī, ūsus, —** DEP. takes abl., *to use, make use of, employ, profit by, take advantage of, enjoy, serve oneself with*

II ***ūsī***, ppp. pl. masc. NOM.

III ***cōnsiliō***, abl. with special v. *ūsī.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

IV **consilium, -ii**, N. (CON + SAL-), *deliberation, consultation, a considering together, counsel*; Meton. In abstr., *A conclusion made with consideration, a determination, resolution, measure, plan, purpose, intention*

V ***oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs***, abl. abs. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolūtus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause. §419 The Latin has no Perfect Participle in the active voice. The deficiency is supplied— In deponents by the perfect passive form with its regular active meaning. "nam singulās [nāvīs] nostrīcōnsectātīexpūgnāvērunt" (III.XV), for our men, having overtaken them one by one, captured them by boarding. Note.--The perfect participle of several deponent verbs may be either active or passive in meaning (§ 190. b). §493

VI **exūrō, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstus** (EX + ŪRŌ), *to burn out, burn up, consume*; *To consume, destroy*

VII ***una cum eis***, *along with them.* The use of *eis* avoids ambiguity, though *secum* would be more regular, referring to the subject of the main clause.

VIII ***utī…proficīscantur,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

Boiōsque[I] [II]

=and the Boii	*~and the Boii*

quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant

=who had dwelt on the across the Rhine	*~who had dwelt across the Rhine*

et in agrum[III] Nōricum[IV] trānsierant[V]

=and (the Boii) had gone over into the territory of the Norici	*~and had crossed over into the Norican territory*

Nōreiamque oppugnābant[VI] [VII]

=and they (the Boii) were fighting against Noreia	*~and had stormed Noreia*

I **Boiī, -ōrum,** M. pl., *Boians, Boii,* a Celtic people once widely diffused over Europe

II ***Boios***, (from whom the name Bohemia is derived): a Celtic tribe, whom the great German advance had cut off from their kinspeople towards the west, and who were now wandering homeless, some of them within the limits of Gaul.

III **ager, agrī**, M., *productive land, a field, farm, estate, arable land, pasture; A territory, district, domain*

IV **Nōricus, -ī,** M., *of the Norici, Norican*—now Neumarks

V **trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus** (TRĀNS + EŌ), *to go over, go across, cross over, pass over, pass by, pass*

VI **oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (OB + PUGNO), *to fight against, attack, assail, assault, storm, besiege, war with*

VII ***oppugnarant***, *oppugnaverant*, In tenses formed upon the Perfect Stem, v between two vowels is often lost and contraction takes place. a. Perfects in -āvī, -ēvī, -ōvī, often contract the two vowels into ā, ē, ō, respectively: as, amāsse for amāvisse; amārim for amāverim; amāssem for amāvissem; cōnsuērat for cōnsuēverat; flēstis for flēvistis; nōsse for nōvisse. So in perfects in -vī, where the v is a part of the present stem: as, commōrat for commōverat. Note.--The first person of the perfect indicative (as, amāvī) is never contracted, the third very rarely. §181

receptōs[I] [Helvētiī] ad sē sociōs[II] sibi[III] adscīscunt[IV] [V]

=[the Helvetii] accepted to themselves (the Boii) <having been> received again, as allies to themselves

~and they received to their number and united to themselves as allies

They persuade the Rauraci, and the Tulingi, and the Latobrigi, their neighbors, to adopt the same plan, and after burning down their towns and villages, to set out with them: and they admit to their party and unite to themselves as confederates the Boii, who had dwelt on the other side of the Rhine, and had crossed over into the Norican territory, and assaulted Noreia.

I **recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** (RE + CAPIO), *to take back, bring back, carry back, retake, get back, regain, recover; to get back, receive again, regain, recover, repossess;* With *se, to draw back, withdraw from* or *to any place, to betake one's self* anywhere; Milit., *to retire, retreat*

II **socius, -ī**, M., *a fellow, sharer, partner, comrade, companion, associate*

III ***sibi***, dat. with comp. v. *adscīscunt.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

IV **scīscō, -ere, scīvī, scītus**, INCH. (SCIO), Of the people, *to accept, approve, assent to, enact, decree, ordain*

V ***receptos…adsciscunt***, in English, in a sentence like this, we should use a separate verb instead of the participle. The Present and Perfect Participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be more natural. In this use the participles express time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic (or description), manner, means, attendant circumstances. "damnātum pœnam sequī oportēbat" (I.IV), if condemned, punishment must overtake him. [Condition.] Note 2.--A coördinate clause is sometimes compressed into a perfect participle:— "ut hōs trāductōs necāret" (V.VI), that he might carry them over and put them to death. §496Nii

I.VI

Two possible routes through the Province

I.VI.I

ERANT OMNINO ITINERA DVO, QVIBVS ITINERIBVS DOMO EXIRE POSSENT: VNVM PER SEQVANOS, ANGVSTVM ET DIFFICILE, INTER MONTEM IVRAM ET FLVMEN RHODANVM, VIX QVA SINGVLI CARRI DVCERENTVR; MONS AVTEM ALTISSIMVS IMPENDEBAT, VT FACILE PERPAVCI PROHIBERE POSSENT: ALTERVM PER PROVINCIAM NOSTRAM, MVLTO FACILIVS ATQVE EXPEDITIVS, PROPTEREA QVOD INTER FINES HELVETIORVM ET ALLOBROGVM, QVI NVPER PACATI ERANT, RHODANVS FLVIT, ISQVE NON NVLLIS LOCIS VADO TRANSITVR.

Erant omnīnō[I] itinera duo

=*there were altogether two routes* ~*there were only two routes*

I **omnīnō**, ADV. (OMNIS), *altogether, wholly, entirely, utterly, at all*; In partic. With numerals, *in all, altogether, only, but, just*

quibus itineribus domō[I] exīre possent[II]

=routes in which (of such a character that by them) they (the Helvetii) could be able to go forth from (their) home

~by which they could go forth from their country

ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum[III] et difficile[IV], inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum

=one (route), through the Sequani, narrow and difficult, between Mount Jura and the river Rhone

~one through the Sequani, narrow and difficult, between Mount Jura and the river Rhone

vix[V] quā singulī[VI] carrī dūcerentur[VII]

=by which (way) with difficuly single carts (only) would be led

~where scarcely one wagon at a time could be led

mōns autem altissimus impendēbat[VIII]

=there was, moreover, a very high mountain overhanging

~there was, moreover, a very high mountain overhanging

I ***domō***, abl. place from which. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition. §427

II ***quibus itineribus…possent***, rel. clause of char. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined. §535

III **angustum, ī**, N. (ANGUSTUS), *a narrow place*

IV **difficilis, -e**, adj. (dis- + facilis), *hard, difficult, troublesome, impracticable, laborious, perilous*

V **vix**, ADV., *with difficulty, scarcely, barely*

VI **singulus, -a, -um**, *single; apiece; every; one each, one at a time*

VII ***quā…dūcerentur***, rel. clause of char. §535

VIII **impendeō, -ēre, —, —** (IN + PENDEŌ), *to hang over, overhang*

ut facile [eōs] perpaucī[I] prohibēre[II] possent[III]

=so that a very few men might be able to easily intercept (those men)

~so that a very few men might easily intercept them

alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō[IV] facilius atque expedītius[V]

=another (route) through our province, more easy and more disengaged (from obstacles) by much

~the other, through our Province, much easier and freer from obstacles

propter eā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum[VI]

=on account of which // between the boundaries of the helvetii and of the Allobroges

~because // between the boundaries of the Helvetii and those of the Allobroges

quī nūper[VII] pācātī erant[VIII]

=(the Helvetii and Allobroges) who were newly pacified

~who had lately been subdued

Rhodanus fluit[IX]

=the Rhone flows

~the Rhone flows

I **perpaucus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PER + PAUCUS), *very little, very few*

II ***prohibēre***, dir. obj. of *prohibēre* is omitted

III ***ut ... possent***, clause of result. Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by ut, so that (negative, ut nōn), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb. Pure Clauses of Result, with ut or ut nōn, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §537

IV ***multō***, abl. deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

V **expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus** (EX + PES), *to extricate, disengage, let loose, set free, liberate*; **expedītus, -a, -um**, (P. a.), *unimpeded, unincumbered, disengaged, free, easy, ready, at hand*

VI **Allobrogēs, -um,** M., a Gallic people in the northern part of the province—Acc. sg., **Allobrogem,** *an Allobrogian*

VII **nūper**, ADV. (NV-), *newly, lately, recently, freshly, not long ago, just*

VIII **pāco, -āre, -avi, -ātum** (PAX), *to bring into a state of peace and quietness, to make peaceful, to quiet, pacify, subdue, soothe*

IX **fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus** (FLV-), *to flow, stream*

isque nōn nūllīs[I] [II] locīs vadō[III] [IV] trānsītur

=and it (the Rhone) in not not any places is crossed by <means of> a shallow place

~and is in some places crossed by a ford

There were in all two routes, by which they could go forth from their country one through the Sequani narrow and difficult, between Mount Jura and the river Rhone (by which scarcely one wagon at a time could be led; there was, moreover, a very high mountain overhanging, so that a very few might easily intercept them; the other, through our Province, much easier and freer from obstacles, because the Rhone flows between the boundaries of the Helvetii and those of the Allobroges, who had lately been subdued, and is in some places crossed by a ford.

I **nūllus, nūllīus**, ADJ. (NE + ULLUS), *not any, none, no* (See chart: nūllus, no, none §113)

II ***nōn nūllīs locīs,*** two negatives make an affirmative. as, *in not not any places = in several places*. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative. nōn nūllus, some; nōn nūllī (=aliquī), some few. §326i

III ***locīs vadō***, abl. of means. Means, Instrument, Manner, and Accompaniment are denoted by the Instrumental Ablative (see §398), but some of these uses more commonly require a preposition. As they all come from one source (the old Instrumental Case) no sharp line can be drawn between them, and indeed the Romans themselves can hardly have thought of any distinction. Thus, in omnibus precibus ōrābant, they entreated with every [kind of] prayer, the ablative, properly that of means, cannot be distinguished from that of manner. §408

IV **vadum, -ī**, N. (BA-), *a shallow place, shallow, shoal, ford*

I.VI.II

EXTREMVM OPPIDVM ALLOBROGVM EST PROXIMVMQVE HELVETIORVM FINIBVS GENAVA.

Extrēmum[I] oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus[II] Genava[III]

=the outermost town of the Allobroges, and the nearest to the territories of the Helvetii, is Geneva

~the farthest town of the Allobroges, and the nearest to the territories of the Helvetii, is Geneva

The furthest town of the Allobroges, and the nearest to the territories of the Helvetii, is Geneva.

I.VI.III

EX EO OPPIDO PONS AD HELVETIOS PERTINET.

Ex eō oppidō pōns[IV] ad Hēlvetiōs pertinet

=out from this town a bridge extends to the Helvetii

~from this town a bridge extends to the Helvetii

From this town a bridge extends to the Helvetii.

I **extrēmus, -a, -um** ADJ. SUP. (EXTER), *outermost, utmost, extreme, farthest, last*

II ***finibus***, abl. with *proximum* used as a præp. Certain Adverbs and Adjectives are sometimes used as Prepositions: The adverbs prīdiē, postrīdiē, propius, proximē, less frequently the adjectives propior and proximus, may be followed by the Accusative. §432i

III **Geneva, -æ,** M., a city of the Allobroges, on the Lacus Lemanus, now Geneva

IV **pōns, -ontis**, M. (PAT-), *a bridge*

I.VI.IV

ALLOBROGIBVS SESE VEL PERSVASVROS, QVOD NONDVM BONO ANIMO IN POPVLVM ROMANVM VIDERENTVR, EXISTIMABANT VEL VI COACTVROS VT PER SVOS FINES EOS IRE PATERENTVR.

Allobrogibus[I] sēsē vel[II] persuāsūrōs [esse]

=that they (the Helvetians) would either persuade the Allobroges

~that they should either persuade the Allobroges

quod nōndum[III] bonō[IV] animō[V] [VI] in populum Rōmānum vidērentur[VII] [VIII]

=because they not yet seemed in good rational soul toward the Roman people

~because they did not seem as yet in a good mind toward the Roman people

I **_Allobrogibus_**, dat. with special v. *persuāsūrōs.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

II **vel,** conj., *or*; *and ... or*

III **nōndum**, ADV. (NON + DUM), *the while, a while, now, yet, not yet*

IV **bonus, -a, -um,** ADJ., as comp. in use **melior**, **-ōris**, better; as SUP. **optimus**, *best*. (AP-, OP-), *good*; With *animus, good spirits, kindly*

V **animus, -ī**, M. (AN-), *the rational soul*; Of the mind, *the mental powers, intelligence, reason, intellect, mind*

VI **_bonō animō,_** abl. of quality. The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality. In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but physical qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative. §415

VII **_quod…vidērentur,_** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

VIII **videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus** (VID-), *to see, discern, perceive*; Pass, *to be looked upon, be regarded, seem, appear*

exīstimābant[I]

=they were estimating	*~they thought*

[sēsē] vel vī[II] [III] [eos] coāctūrōs [esse]

=or [those men (the Helvetians)] would drive together [those men] (the Allogbroges) by <means of> strength	*~or compel them perforce*

ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur[IV]

=<in order> that they might bear those men (the Helvetians) to go through their own (the Allobroges') territories	*~to permit them to pass through their territories*

They thought that they should either persuade the Allobroges, because they did not seem as yet well-affected toward the Roman people, or compel them by force to allow them to pass through their territories.

I **exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (EX + ÆSTIMO), *to value, estimate, reckon; To appreciate, value, esteem, judge, consider, suppose, think, expect*

II ***vī***, abl. of means. §408

III **vīs, —,** ABL. **vī**, F., *strength, force, vigor, power, energy, virtue*; *Hostile strength, force, violence, compulsion*

IV ***ut…paterentur,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

I.VI.V

OMNIBVS REBVS AD PROFECTIONEM COMPARATIS DIEM DICVNT, QVA DIE AD RIPAM RHODANI OMNES CONVENIANT.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs

=with all things <having been> prepared for <the purpose of> departing

~having provided everything for departure

diem dīcunt[I] [II]

=they say a day

~they appoint a day

quā[III] diē ad rīpam[IV] Rhodanī omnēs conveniant[V] [VI]

=~~a day~~ in which all (the men) would come together toward the bank of the Rhone

~they should all meet on the bank of the Rhone

Having provided every thing for the expedition, they appoint a day, on which they should all meet on the bank of the Rhone.

I **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus** (DIC-), *to say, speak, utter, tell, mention, relate, affirm, declare, state, assert*; *To appoint, set apart, fix upon, settle*

II ***dīcunt***, hist. pres. §469

III ***quā***, redundant pron. and may be omitted in english translation

IV **rīpa, -æ**, F. (RIC-), *a bank, margin* (of a river)

V ***quā diē…conveniant,*** rel. clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

VI **conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus** (CON + VENIŌ), *to come together, meet, assemble, gather, come in a body; To address, accost, meet, visit, obtain an interview with*; Trop, *to come to a decision, be concluded, be agreed on, be settled*

I.VI.VI

IS DIES ERAT A.D. V. KAL. APRIL., L. PISONE A. GABINIO CONSVLIBVS.

Is diēs erat a[nte][I] d[iem] quīntum Kal[endās][II] Aprīl[ēs][III] [IV] L[ūciō][V] Pīsōne, A[ulō][VI] Gabīniō[VII] cōnsulibus[VIII] [IX]

=this day was the fifth day before the April kalends (i.e. the 28th of March), with Lucius Piso (and) Aulus Gabinius being consuls (B.C. 58.)

~this day was the fifth before the kalends of April, in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius

This day was the fifth before the kalends of April [i.e. the 28th of March], in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius [B.C. 58.]

I **ante**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (ANT-), Adv., of space, *before, in front, forwards*; Præp. with acc, *before*

II **Kalendæ, -ārum**, F. (CAL-), Prop. the day when the order of days was proclaimed; hence, *the Calends, the first day of the month*

III **april, -is**, *the month of April, April*

IV ***a.d. quīntum Kal. Aprīl***, acc. of time. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the Accusative with ad, in, or sub is used. Such are the following. In Dates the phrase ante diem (a.d.) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition. §424

V **Lūcius, -ī,** M., a Roman first name; Abr., *L.*

VI **Aulus, -ī,** M., a Roman first name

VII **Gabīnius, -ī,** M., *Aulus Gabinius,* consul with Lucius Calpurnius Piso, 58 B.C.

VIII ***L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus,*** abl. abs. trans. with *being*. §420

IX ***L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus***, abl. of time. The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute, usually without a conjunction. §427

I.VII

Cæsar hastens to Geneva.

I.VII.I

CÆSARI CVM ID NVNTIATVM ESSET, EOS PER PROVINCIAM NOSTRAM ITER FACERE CONARI, MATVRAT AB VRBE PROFICISCI ET QVAM MAXIMIS POTEST ITINERIBVS IN GALLIAM VLTERIOREM CONTENDIT, ET AD GENAVAM PERVENIT.

Cæsarī cum id nūntiātum esset[I]

=when it had been reported to Cæsar *~when it was reported to Cæsar*

eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī[II]

=that those men are attempting to make a journey through our Province *~that they were attempting to make their route through our Province*

I ***cum…nūntiātum esset***, *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

II ***eōs…cōnārī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *nūntiātum esset.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

mātūrat[I] [II] ab urbe proficīscī

=he (Cæsar) makes haste to depart from the city (Rome) *~he hastened to set out from the city*

et quam maximīs[III] potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem[IV] contendit[V] [VI]

=and, by as great marches as he (Cæsar) is able, strives into Further Gaul *~and, by as great marches as he can, pressed on to Further Gaul*

et ad Genavam pervenit[VII]

=and he arrives at Geneva *~and arrived at Geneva*

When it was reported to Cæsar that they were attempting to make their route through our Province he hastens to set out from the city, and, by as great marches as he can, proceeds to Further Gaul, and arrives at Geneva.

I ***mātūrat***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

II **mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (MATURUS), *to make ripe, ripen, bring to maturity*; Fig., *to make haste, hasten, accelerate, quicken, despatch, expedite*

III ***quam*** + super = *as ... as possible.* Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows: With quam, vel, or ūnus the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree. §291iii

IV **ūlterior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP., *farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote*

V ***contendit***, hist. pres. §469

VI **contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus** (CON + TENDŌ), *to stretch, bend, draw tight, strain; To strive for, press, pursue, prosecute, hasten, exert oneself; to march, press on, seek, journey hastily, hasten*

VII ***pervenit***, hist. pres. §469

I.VII.II

PROVINCIÆ TOTI QVAM MAXIMVM POTEST MILITVM NVMERVM IMPERAT (ERAT OMNINO IN GALLIA VLTERIORE LEGIO VNA), PONTEM, QVI ERAT AD GENAVAM IVBET RESCINDI.

Prōvinciæ[I] tōtī quam maximum[II] potest mīlitum[III] [cōgendum] numerum imperat[IV]

=he orders the whole Province as great a number of soldiers as it is able [to be gathered]

~he ordered the whole Province [to furnish] as great a number of soldiers as possible

erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna

=(as) there was altogether one legion in Further Gaul

~as there was in all only one legion in Further Gaul

pontem

=the bridge

~the bridge

I ***Prōvinciæ***, dat. of special v. *imperat.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

II ***quam*** + super = *as ... as possible*. §291iii

III ***mīlitum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §346b

IV ***imperat***, hist. pres. §469

quī erat ad[I] Genavam[II]

=which was toward Geneva *~at Geneva*

iubet[III]

=he orders *~he orders*

rescindī[IV V]

=to be broken down *~to be broken down*

He orders the whole Province [to furnish] as great a number of soldiers as possible, as there was in all only one legion in Further Gaul: he orders the bridge at Geneva to be broken down.

I **ad**, PRÆP. with acc., Of approach. In space, *to, toward*; Of nearness or proximity in gen., *near to, by, at, close by*

II ***ad Genavam***, acc. of place to which. With names of towns and small islands ab is often used to denote from the vicinity of, and ad to denote towards, to the neighborhood of. "ut ā Mutinā discēderet" (Phil. 14.4), that he should retire from Modena (which he was besieging). "erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra" (VII.XLV), there was from about Gergovia a view into the camp. "ad Alesiam proficīscuntur" (VII.LXXVI), they set out for Alesia. "ad Alesiam perveniunt" (VII.LXXIX), they arrive at Alesia (i.e. in the neighborhood of the town). "D. Lælius cum classe ad Brundisium vēnit" (B. C. 3.100), Decimus Lœlius came to Brundisium with a fleet (arriving in the harbor). §428a

III ***iubet***, hist. pres. §469

IV **rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus** (RE + SCINDŌ), *to cut off, cut loose, cut down, tear open*: *pontem*, i.e. *break down*

V ***pontem…rescindī***, indir. disc. dependent on *iubet.* §580

I.VII.III

VBI DE EIVS ADVENTV HELVETII CERTIORES FACTI SVNT, LEGATOS AD EVM MITTVNT NOBILISSIMOS CIVITATIS, CVIVS LEGATIONIS NAMMEIVS ET VERVCLŒTIVS PRINCIPEM LOCVM OBTINEBANT, QVI DICERENT SIBI ESSE IN ANIMO SINE VLLO MALEFICIO ITER PER PROVINCIAM FACERE, PROPTEREA QVOD ALIVD ITER HABERENT NVLLVM: ROGARE VT EIVS VOLVNTATE ID SIBI FACERE LICEAT.

"NOBIS EST IN ANIMO SINE ULLO MALEFICIO ITER PER PROVINCIAM FACERE, PROPTEREA QUOD ALIUD ITER HABEMUS NULLUM; ROGAMUS, UT TUA VOLUNTATE ID NOBIS FACERE LICEAT."

Vbi dē eius adventū[I] Helvētiī certiōrēs[II] [III] factī sunt

=when the Helvetii were made more certain concerning his arrival

~when the Helvetii were informed of his arrival

I **adventus, -ūs**, M. (AD + BA-, VEN-), *a coming, approach, arrival*

II ***certiōrēs***, pred. adj. With sum and a few other intransitive or passive verbs, a noun or an adjective describing or defining the subject may stand in the predicate. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective. The verb sum is especially common in this construction, and when so used is called the copula (i.e. connective). §283

III **certus, -a, -um**, ADJ. POS. (PPP. OF CERNO), *determined, resolved, fixed, settled, purposed, certain*; With *facere*, *to inform, apprise one of a thing*

lēgātōs ad eum mittunt[I] nōbilissimōs[II] cīvitātis

=they send to him the most well-known men of (their) state as ambassadors

~they sent to him, as embassadors, the most celebrated men of their state

cuius lēgātiōnis Nammeius[III] et Veruclœtius[IV] prīncipem[V] locum obtinēbant

=of which embassy Numeius and Verudoctius were holding the chief place

~in which embassy Numeius and Verudoctius possessed the chief place

quī dīcerent[VI]

=who should say

~to say

I ***mittunt***, hist. pres. §469

II ***nōbilissimōs***, Adjectives and Participles are used as Substantives, frequently in the Plural, less often in the Singular; as, *veri* (Neuter) *simile, probable*, lit, *like truth* (III.XIII); *nostri, our men* (I.LII); *novissimis* (Masculine), *for the rear*, Lit. *for those last* (I.XXV); *sua, their possessions* (I.XI); *pro viso, as seen,* Lit. *for (that which was) seen* (I.XXII)

III **Nammeius, -ī,** M., a Helvetian sent as envoy to Cæsar

IV **Veruclœtius, -ī,** M., a Helvetian who went as envoy to Cæsar

V **prīnceps, -cipis**, ADJ. POS. (PRIMUS + CAP-), *first in order, foremost; The first, chief, most eminent, most noble*

VI ***quī dīcerent***, rel. clause of purp. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause. §531

sibi[I] esse[II] in animō sine[III] ūllō[IV] maleficiō[V] iter per prōvinciam facere

=that there is in mind for those men to make a journey through (their) province without (doing) any evil-doing

~that it was their intention to march through the Province without doing any nefarious activities

propterea quod aliud iter habērent[VI] nūllum

=on this account of which another route they were having none

~because they had, according to their own representations, no other route

[se] rogāre[VII]

=(and) that [they] are asking

~that they requested

I *sibi*, dat. of poss. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote Possession. Note. The Genitive or a Possessive with esse emphasizes the possessor; the Dative, the fact of possession: as,—liber est meus, the book is MINE (and no one's else): est mihi liber, I HAVE a book (among other things). §373

II *esse,* indir. disc. dependent on *dicerent.* §580

III **sine**, PRÆP. with abl. (SI + NE), *without*

IV **ūllus, -a, -um**, ADJ. POS., With a negation, expressed or implied, *any, any one* (See chart: ūllus, any §113)

V **maleficium, -ī**, N. (MALEFICUS), *evil-doing, nefarious, vicious, wicked, criminal*

VI ***propterea quod...habērent***, subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

VII **rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (ETYM. DUB.), *to ask, question, interrogate; To invite, ask a visit from*; Transf., *to ask, beg, request, solicit* one for a thing; With *ut* or *ne*, *"transisse Rhenum sese non suā sponte sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis,"* (I.XLIV); With a simple final clause without *ut, "Caesar consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat,"* (I.XX)

ut eius voluntāte[I] [II] id sibi[III] facere liceat[IV] [V]

=that it might be allowed to do it (i.e. cross their territories) with his (Cæsar's) will

~to be permitted to do so with his consent

When the Helvetii are apprized of his arrival they send to him, as embassadors, the most illustrious men of their state (in which embassy Numeius and Verudoctius held the chief place), to say *"that it was their intention to march through the Province without doing any harm, because they had"* [according to their own representations,] *"no other route: that they requested, they might be allowed to do so with his consent."*

I.VII.IV

CÆSAR, QVOD MEMORIA TENEBAT L. CASSIVM CONSVLEM OCCISVM EXERCITVMQVE EIVS AB HELVETIIS PVLSVM ET SVB IVGVM MISSVM, CONCEDENDVM NON PVTABAT; NEQVE HOMINES INIMICO ANIMO, DATA FACVLTATE PER PROVINCIAM ITINERIS FACIENDI, TEMPERATVROS AB INIVRIA ET MALEFICIO EXISTIMABAT.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

I **voluntās, -ātis**, F. (VOL-), *will, free-will, wish, choice, desire, inclination*; Abl., *of one's own will, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily*

II ***eius voluntāte,*** abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

III ***sibi***, dat. with impers. v. *liceat.* The Dative is used: With the impersonals libet (lubet), it pleases, and licet, it is allowed. §368

IV ***ut…liceat***, subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

V **licet, -ēre, -cuit** (AND CITUM EST), IMPERS. (LIC-), *It is lawful, is allowed, is permitted*, with or without dat. of person—Without subject

quod memoriā[I] tenēbat[II] [III]

=which thing he was holding in (his) memory

~inasmuch as he kept in remembrance

L[ūcium] Cassium[IV] cōnsulem occīsum [esse][V] [VI] [VII]

=that L[ucius] Cassius, the consul, had been cut down

~that Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain

I **memoria, -æ**, F. (MEMOR), *memory, remembrance*

II ***quod…tenebat,*** causal clause. indic. as it is given on the authority of the speaker. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. §540

III **teneō, -ēre, tenuī, —** (TA-), *to hold, keep, have, grasp, hold fast*; Fig., *to hold in mind, take in, understand, conceive, comprehend, know*

IV **Cassius, -ī,** M., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, prætor 111 B.C.; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the Tigurians in the territory of the Allobroges, and was defeated and slain

V ***occīsum [esse]***, perf. pass. inf; in indir. disc. dependent *on memoria tenebat.* §580

VI **occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus** (OB + CÆDO), *to strike down, knock down; To cut down, cut off, kill, slay*

VII ***L. Cassium…occisum [esse]***: object of *memoria tenebat*, as a phrase of knowing, The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used with verbs and other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (Indirect Discourse, § 579):— "dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī" (I.XXII), he says that the hill is held by the enemy. [Direct: mōns ab hostibus tenētur.] §459

exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs[I] pulsum [esse][II III]

=and his army had been propelled // by the Helvetii

~and his army routed // by the Helvetii

et sub[IV] iugum[V] missum [esse][VI]

=and (they) were sent under a yoke

~and made to pass under the yoke

I ***ab Helvētiīs,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action. Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy. Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule. §405

II ***pulsum [esse]***, perf. pass. inf; in indir. disc. dependent on *memoria tenebat.* §580

III **pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus** (PAL-), *to beat, strike, knock, push, drive, hurl, impel, propel*; In partic. *To drive out or away, to thrust or turn out, expel, banish*; Esp. milit., *to drive back, discomfit, rout* the enemy—constr. with abl., with *ex*, rarely with *de*; also with *ab* and abl. of the place from which one is repelled or driven back, but has not entered

IV **sub**, PRÆP. with acc. and abl., With abl., of position in space, *under, below, beneath, underneath, behind*; Transf., of lofty objects, at the foot of which, or in whose immediate neighborhood, any thing is situated, *under, below, beneath, at the foot of, at, by, near, before*; Of time, *in, within, during, at, by*; In gen., of subjection, domination, stipulation, influence, effect, reason, etc., *under, beneath, with;* Trop., *under, subject to, in the power of; during, in the time of, upon,* etc.; With acc., to point out the object under which a thing comes, goes, extends, etc., *under, below, beneath*; Of space, usu. with verbs of motion; Of time, denoting a close approximation, *Before, towards, about, shortly before, up to, until*

V **iugum, -i**, N., *a yoke for oxen, a collar for horses*; Esp. as the symbol of humiliation and defeat, a yoke (consisting of two upright spears, and a third laid transversely upon them, under which vanquished enemies were made to pass)

VI ***missum [esse]***, perf. pass. inf; in indir. disc. dependent on *memoria tenebat.* §580

concēdendum non [sibi] [esse][VII]

=that it is not <having> to be granted [by him]	*~that (their request) ought not to be granted*

putābat[II]

=was thinking	*~thought*

neque hominēs inimīcō[III] animō[IV]

=nor /was he thinking/ that men with hostile mind	*~nor /was he of the opinion/ that men of hostile intellect*

datā facultāte[V] [VI] per prōvinciam itineris faciendī[VII]

=with the capability <having been> given of making a journey through the province	*~if an opportunity of marching through the Province should have been granted to them*

VII **concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus** (CON + CĒDŌ), Intrans, *to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove*; *To yield, submit to one's will, comply with one's wishes*—impers.

II **putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (PUTUS), *to clean, cleanse, trim, prune*; *To judge, suppose, account, consider, suspect, believe, think, imagine*

III **inimīcus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IN + AMICUS), *unfriendly, hostile, inimica*

IV ***inimīcō animō***, abl. of quality. The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality. In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but physical qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative. §415

V **facultās, -ātis**, F. (FACILIS), *capability, possibility, power, means, opportunity, skill, ability*

VI ***datā facultāte,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

VII ***itineris faciendī,*** obj. gen. of the gerundive. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. §504

temperātūrōs [esse][I] [II] ab iniūriā[III] et maleficiō[IV]

=would abstain from injury and misdeed | *~would abstain from outrage and mischief*

exīstimābat

=/nor/ was he thinking | *~/nor/ was he of the opinion*

Cæsar, inasmuch as he kept in remembrance that Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain, and his army routed and made to pass under the yoke by the Helvetii, did not think that [their request] ought to be granted: nor was he of opinion that men of hostile disposition, if an opportunity of marching through the Province were given them, would abstain from outrage and mischief.

I.VII.V

TAMEN, VT SPATIVM INTERCEDERE POSSET DVM MILITES QVOS IMPERAVERAT CONVENIRENT, LEGATIS RESPONDIT DIEM SE AD DELIBERANDVM SVMPTVRVM: SI QVID VELLENT, AD ID. APRIL. REVERTERENTVR.

"AD DELIBERANDUM SUMAM; SI QUID VULTIS, AD. ID. APR. REVERTIMINI."

I **temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (TEMPUS), *to observe proper measure, be moderate, restrain oneself, forbear, abstain, be temperate, act temperately*

II ***hominēs…temperātūrōs,*** indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimābat.* §580

III **iniūria, -æ**, F. (INIURIUS; IN + IŪS), any thing that is done contrary to justice and equity, *injury, wrong, violence;* Transf., *injurious, unlawful, or unjust conduct;* Act., *injustice, wrongdoing*

IV ***ab iniūriā et maleficiō,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

Tamen[I]

=nevertheless	*~yet*

ut spatium[II] intercēdere[III] posset[IV]

=<in order> that a space (of time) might be able to come between	*~in order that a period might intervene*

dum[V] mīlitēs[VI]

=until the soldiers	*~until the soldiers*

quōs imperāverat[VII]

=whom he had ordered (to be furnished)	*~whom he had ordered (to be furnished)*

convenīrent[VIII]

=should assemble	*~should assemble*

I **tamen**, ADV. (TA-), After a concessive or cond. particle, *notwithstanding, nevertheless, for all that, however, yet, still* (beginning the clause or after its emphatic word)

II **spatium, -ī**, N. (SPA-), *a space, room, extent*; *A portion of time, space, interval, period*

III **intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus** (INTER + CĒDŌ), *to come between, intervene, be between*

IV ***ut…posset,*** clause of purpose. §531

V **dum**, CONJ. (DUM), *while, whilst, at the time that, during the time in which, where*; Of immediate succession, *to the time when, all the time till, until*

VI **mīles, -itis**, M. AND F. (MIL-), *a soldier*

VII **imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (IN + PARO), *to command, order, enjoin, bid, give an order; To exercise authority, command, rule, control, govern*

VIII ***dum…convenīrent,*** *dum* temporal clause; *dum* + pres. or imper. subj. = intention or expectancy. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §553

lēgātīs[I] respondit[II]

=he replied to the ambassadors | *~he replied to the ambassadors*

diem sē ad dēlīberandum[III] [IV] sūmptūrum [esse][V] [VI]

=that he would take up a day for <the purpose of> deliberating | *~that he would take time to deliberate*

sī quid[VII] vellent[VIII]

=if they wanted anything | *~if they wanted anything*

I ***lēgātīs***, dat. with special v. *respondit.* §367

II **respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus** (RE + SPONDEŌ), *to answer, reply, respond, make answer*

III ***ad dēlīberandum,*** acc. of the gerund expressing purpose. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

IV **dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (DE + LIBRA, BALANCE), *to weigh well in one's mind, to consider maturely, deliberate respecting a thing; to take counsel, consult, advise upon*

V **sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus** (SUB + EMO), *to take, take up, take in hand, lay hold of, assume*; Fig., *to take, take up, assume*

VI ***sē…sūmptūrum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *respondit.* §580

VII **quis, quis, quid**, pron indef. (CA-), *any one, anybody, anything, some one, somebody, something; aliquis, aliquid* is a common indefinite pronoun (*anyone, anything*), but *quis, quid* are commonly used after *sī, nisi, num*, and *nē* as an indefinite—*who* = *anyone; what* = *anything* (See Error: Reference source not found §148)

VIII **volō, velle, voluī, —** (VOL-), *to will, wish, want, purpose, be minded, determine*

ad Īd[ūs][I] Aprīl[ēs][II] reverterentur[III] [IV]

=they might return towards the Ides of April

~they might return on the Ides of April (on April 2th)

Yet, in order that a period might intervene, until the soldiers whom he had ordered [to be furnished] should assemble, he replied to the ambassadors, that he would take time to deliberate; if they wanted any thing, they might return on the day before the ides of April [on April 12th].

I **Id, -ūs** (4th decl.), **Ides,** *the 13th of April*—the *Ides* denotes the time of the month when there is a full moon

II ***ad Īd[ūs]1 Aprīl[ēs]***, acc. of time. Distance of time before or after anything is variously expressed. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the Accusative with ad, in, or sub is used. Such are the following. In Dates the phrase ante diem (a.d.) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition. §424

III ***sī…vellent…reverterentur,*** cond. in indir. disc. The apodosis is subjunctive because it would have been imperative in direct discourse. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well. §588 & Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

IV **revertor, revertī, reversus sum, —** (RE + VERTO), *to turn back, turn about; to come back, return*

I.VIII

Cæsar forbids the Helvtians entry.

I.VIII.I

INTEREA EA LEGIONE QVAM SECVM HABEBAT MILITIBVSQVE QVI EX PROVINCIA CONVENERANT A LACV LEMANNO, QVI IN FLVMEN RHODANVM INFLVIT, AD MONTEM IVRAM, QVI FINES SEQVANORVM AB HELVETIIS DIVIDIT, MILIA PASSVVM VNDEVIGINTI MVRVM IN ALTITVDINEM PEDVM SEDECIM FOSSAMQVE PERDVCIT.

Intereā[I] eā legiōne[II] [III]

=*meanwhile, with that legion* ~*meanwhile, with the legion*

quam sēcum habēbat

=*which he was having with him* ~*which he had with him*

I **intereā**, ADV. (INTER + EA), *meanwhile, in the meantime, in the interim*

II ***eā legiōne***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

III **legiō, -ōnis**, F. (LEG-), *a body of soldiers, legion* (containing 10 cohorts of foot-soldiers and 300 cavalry, in all between 4200 and 6000 men. These were Roman citizens; only on pressing necessity were slaves admitted. The legions were numbered in the order of their levy, but were often known by particular names); Pl., *legions, soldiers*

mīlitibusque[I]

=and with the soldiers *~and the soldiers*

quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant

=who had come together from the Province *~which had assembled from the Province*

ā lacū Lemannō[II]

=from the Lake of Geneva *~from the Lake of Geneva*

quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit[III]

=which flows into the river Rhone *~which flows into the river Rhone*

ad montem Iūram

=to Mount Jura *~to Mount Jura*

quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs[IV] dīvidit

=which separates the territories of the Sequani from (those territories of) the Helvetii *~which separates the territories of the Sequani from those of the Helvetii*

I ***mīlitibusque***, abl. of means. §409

II ***ā lacū Lemannō,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426i

III **īnfluō, -ere, -uxī, -uxus** (ĪN + FLUŌ), *to flow in, run in*

IV ***ab Helvētiīs,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

mīlia[I] passuum[II] ūndēvīgintī mūrum[III] in altitūdinem[IV] pedum[V] sēdecim fossamque[VI] perdūcit[VII] [VIII]

=he had draws up for nineteen thousands of paces, into the height of sixteen feet, a wall and a trench

~he constructed, for nineteen miles a wall, to the height of sixteen feet, a wall and a trench

Meanwhile, with the legion which he had with him and the soldiers which had assembled from the Province, he carries along for nineteen [Roman, not quite eighteen English] miles a wall, to the height of sixteen feet, and a trench, from the Lake of Geneva, which flows into the river Rhone, to Mount Jura, which separates the territories of the Sequani from those of the Helvetii.

I ***mīlia ... ūndēvīgintī***, acc. of extent of space. Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative. §425

II ***passuum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. “mīlia passuum sescenta” (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). “Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium” (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. “nūlla eārum” (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

III **mūrus, -ī**, M. (MV-), *a wall, city wall*

IV **altitūdō, -dinis**, F. (ALTUS), *height, altitude*; Meton., *depth*

V ***pedum***, gen. of quality. The Genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective. The genitive of quality, with numerals, is used to define measures of length, depth, etc. (Genitive of Measure.) §345

VI **fossa, -æ**, F. (FOSSUS; TO DIG, FOD-), *a dilch, trench, fosse*

VII **perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** (PER + DŪCŌ), *To lead, bring, conduct, guide* a person or thing to any place

VIII ***perdūcit***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

I.VIII.II

EO OPERE PERFECTO, PRÆSIDIA DISPONIT, CASTELLA COMMVNIT, QVO FACILIVS, SI SE INVITO TRANSIRE CONARENTVR, PROHIBERE POSSET.

Eō opere[I] perfectō[II]

=with that work <having been> completed — *~when that work was finished*

præsidia[III] dispōnit[IV V]

=he arranges defences — *~he distributed the garrisons*

castella[VI] commūnit[VII VIII]

=(and) he fortifies the redoubts — *~and closely fortified the redoubts*

quō facilius[IX]

=in which more easily — *~in order that he may the more easily*

I **opus, -eris**, N. (AP-), *work, labor, toil;* Transf., abstr. in nom. and acc., *need, necessity;* hence, *opus est, it is needful, wanting*; *there is need of, use for—opus est mihi, tibi,* etc., *I* (*thou*, etc.) *have need of, need, want*

II ***eō opere perfectō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

III **præsidium, -ī**, N. (PRÆSES), *defence, protection, guardianship, help, aid, assistance; A guard, escort, convoy, garrison*

IV **dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** (DIS + PŌNŌ), *to place here and there, array, distribute, set in order, arrange, dispose*

V ***dispōnit***, hist. pres. §469

VI **castellum, -ī**, N. DIM. (CASTRUM), *a castle, fort, citadel, fortress, stronghold*

VII **commūnio, -īre, -īvi** OR **-ii, -ītum** (COM + MŪNIŌ), *to fortify on all sides* or *strongly, to secure, barricade, intrench*

VIII ***commūnit***, hist. pres. §469

IX **facilis, -e**, ADJ. (FAC-), *easy to do, easy, without difficulty*

sī[I] sē invītō[II] [III] trānsīre[IV] cōnārentur[V]

=if they should attempt to cross with him <being> unwilling

~if they should attempt to cross over against his will

[eos] prohibēre possit[VI]

=he may be able to prohibit [those men]

~intercept them

I **sī**, CONJ. (SOVO-), as a cond. particle.—With indic., in conditions assumed as true, or (with fut.) which will probably be fulfilled, *if, when, inasmuch as, since*; With *quod, and if, but if, if however, if*

II ***sē ... invītō,*** abl. abs.; add '*being*' for proper translation, as, *with him being unwilling.* A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolūtus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause. §419

III **invītus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IN + VICITUS?), *against one's will, unwilling, reluctant*; As subst. m., *reluctant, unwilling*

IV **trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus** (TRĀNS + EŌ), *to go over, go across, cross over, pass over, pass by, pass*

V ***sī…cōnārentur,*** protasis of fut. less vivid cond. Future Conditions may be more vivid or less vivid. In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what would be the result in the case supposed: In the less vivid future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis. §526 Future Conditions may be more vivid or less vivid. In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what would be the result in the case supposed: In the less vivid future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis. §516ii

VI ***quō facilius…possit,*** rel. clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause. §539 Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause. The ablative quō (= ut eō) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative. §531

When that work was finished, he distributes garrisons, and closely fortifies redoubts, in order that he may the more easily intercept them, if they should attempt to cross over against his will.

I.VIII.III

VBI EA DIES QVAM CONSTITVERAT CVM LEGATIS VENIT ET LEGATI AD EVM REVERTERVNT, NEGAT SE MORE ET EXEMPLO POPVLI ROMANI POSSE ITER VLLI PER PROVINCIAM DARE ET, SI VIM FACERE CONENTVR, PROHIBITVRVM OSTENDIT.

“MORE ET EXEMPLO POPULI ROMANI NON POSSUM ITER ULLI PER PROVINCIAM DARE; SI VIM FACERE CONABIMINI, PROHIBEBO.”

Vbi ea diēs

=when that day	*~when the day*

quam cōnstituerat[I] cum lēgātīs

=which he had appointed with the ambassadors	*~which he had appointed with the embassadors*

vēnit[II]

=came	*~came*

et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt

=and the the ambassadors returned to him	*~=and they returned to him*

I **cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (COM- + STATUO; STA-), *to put, place, set, station; To designate, select, assign, appoint*

II **veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus** (BA-), *to come*; Fig. *to come into, fall into any state or condition*; Pass, *we, they,* etc., *came* or *have come,* etc

negat[I] [II]

=he denies

~he refused

se mōre[III] [IV] et exemplō[V] [VI] populī Rōmānī posse[VII] iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare

=that, by the habit and by the manner of the Roman people, he was able to grant the journey to anyone through the province

~that in accordance with the custom and (in accordance with) precedent of the Roman people, he will grant any one a passage through the Province

et sī vim facere cōnentur

=and if they should attempt to make force

~if they should attempt to execute violence

[se] [eos] prohibitūrum [esse][VIII]

=[he] (Cæsar) would oppose [those men]

~that he would oppose them

I **negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (AG-), *to say no, deny, refuse*

II ***negat***, hist. pres. §469

III ***mōre***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

IV **mōs, mōris**, M. (MA-), *a will, way, habit, manner, fashion, caprice, humor*

V ***exemplō***, abl. of spec. §418

VI **exemplum, -ī**, N. (EM-), *a sample, specimen; A way, manner, kind, nature*

VII ***sē…posse.*** indir. disc. dependent on *negat.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

VIII ***sī…cōnentur…prohibitūrum,*** fut. less vivid cond. in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

ostendit[I]

=he pointed out *~and he gives them to understand*

When the day which he had appointed with the embassadors came, and they returned to him; he says, that he can not, consistently with the custom and precedent of the Roman people, grant any one a passage through the Province; and he gives them to understand, that, if they should attempt to use violence he would oppose them.

I **ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus** (OBS + TENDO), *to stretch out* or *spread before* one; hence, *to expose to view, to show, exhibit, display*; Trop. In partic. *to show, express, indicate* by speech or signs; *to give to understand, to declare, say, tell, make known*, etc. With obj.- or rel.-clause: *"quid sui consilii sit, ostendit,"* (I.XXI)

I.VIII.IV

HELVETII EA SPE DEIECTI, NAVIBVS IVNCTIS RATIBVSQVE COMPLVRIBVS FACTIS ALII VADIS RHODANI, QVA MINIMA ALTITVDO FLVMINIS ERAT, NON NVMQVAM INTERDIV, SÆPIVS NOCTV, SI PERRVMPERE POSSENT CONATI, OPERIS MVNITIONE ET MILITVM CONCVRSV ET TELIS REPVLSI, HOC CONATV DESTITERVNT.

Helvētiī eā spē[I] dēiectī[II], [aliī] nāvibus iūnctīs[III] [IV] ratibusque complūribus factīs[V], aliī vadīs[VI] Rhodanī

=the Helvetii, thrown down from that hope // [some men] with boats <having been> joined together, and with several rafts <having been> made, other men in the fords of the Rhone

~The Helvetii, deprived of this hope // some by means of a bridge of boats and numerous rafts constructed for the purpose, others by the fords of the Rhone

quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat

=in which the depth of the river was least

~where the depth of the river was least

I ***eā spē***, abl. of separ. §401

II **dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus** (DE + IACIO), *to throw down, hurl down, precipitate, prostrate, raze, fell, cut down, tear down, destroy; To prevent from obtaining, deprive, rob of*

III **iungo, -iungere, -nxi, -nctum**, *to join or unite together, connect, attach, fasten, yoke, harness*

IV ***ñāviibus iūnctīs,*** abl. of means. §409

V ***ratibusque complūribus factīs,*** abl. of means. §409

VI ***vadīs,*** abl. of means. §409

nōn numquam[I] interdiū[II], sæpius[III] noctū[IV]

=not never by day, (but) more often by night

~sometimes by day, but more frequently at night

sī perrumpere[V] possent[VI]

=(to see) if they should be able to break through

~to see whether they could break through

I **numquam**, ADV. (NE + UMQUAM), *at no time, never*

II **interdiū**, ADV. (DIV-), *during the day, in the daytime, by day*

III **sæpis, -e**, ADJ., *that happens often, frequent*

IV **nox, noctis**, F. (NEC-), *night—ad multam noctem: (up) to late in the night*

V **perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus** (PER + RUMPŌ; RVP-), *to break through, force a way through, get across*

VI ***sī…possent,*** indir. question. An indirect question is occasionally introduced by sī in the sense of whether. §576i

cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne[I] [II] et mīlitum concursū[III] [IV] et tēlīs[V] [VI] repulsī[VII], hōc cōnātū[VIII] dēstitērunt[IX]

=<having> tried // (those men,) <having been> repulsed by <means of> the fortification of the works, ~~and~~ by <means of> the running together of the soldiers, and by <means of> the spears, they left off from this attempt

~trying // but being kept at bay by the strength of our works, and by the concourse of the soldiers, and by the missiles, they desisted from this attempt

The Helvetii, disappointed in this hope, tried if they could force a passage (some by means of a bridge of boats and numerous rafts constructed for the purpose; others, by the fords of the Rhone, where the depth of the river was least, sometimes by day, but more frequently by night), but being kept at bay by the strength of our works, and by the concourse of the soldiers, and by the missiles, they desisted from this attempt.

I ***mūnītiōne***, abl. of means. §409

II **mūnītiō, -ōnis**, F. (MUNIO), *a defending, fortifying, protecting*; *A defence, fortification, rampart, bulwark, intrenchment, walls*

III ***concursū***, abl. of means. §409

IV **concursus, -ūs**, M. (CON + CURRO), *a running together, concourse, throng, mob, tumult; An assault, onset, attack, charge*

V ***tēlīs***, abl. of means .§409

VI **tēlum, -ī**, N. (TEC-), *a missile weapon, missile, dart, spear, shaft, javelin*

VII **repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus** (RE + PELLŌ), *to drive back, thrust back, drive away, reject, repulse, repel*

VIII ***hōc cōnātū***, abl. of separ. §401

IX **dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus** (DĒ + SISTŌ; TO STAND, STA-), *to leave off, cease, give over, desist from*

I.IX

The Helvetians depart.

I.IX.I

RELINQVEBATVR VNA PER SEQVANOS VIA, QVA SEQVANIS INVITIS PROPTER ANGVSTIAS IRE NON POTERANT.

Relinquēbātur[I] ūna per Sēquanōs via

=there was remaining one path, (namely,) through the Sequani	*~there was left one way, [namely] through the Sequani*

quā[II] [viā][III]

=[~~a way~~] by which	*~where*

I **relinquo, -ere, -līquī, -lictus** (RE + LINQUO), *to leave behind, not take along, not stay with, leave, move away from, quit, abandon*; To leave a thing behind; to leave remaining; *to allow* or *permit to remain, to let remain, leave*; Pass., *to be left, to remain*

II ***quā***, abl. of place. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: Often in indefinite words, such as locō, parte, etc. §429

III ***viā***, sp. *viā*, to agree with *quā*

Sēquanīs invītīs[I]

=with the Sequani <being> unwilling	*~if the Sequani were unwilling*

propter angustiās īre[II] nōn poterant

=on account of the narrowness, they (the Helvetii) were not able to pass	*~on account of its narrowness, they could not pass*

There was left one way, [namely] through the Sequani, by which, on account of its narrowness, they could not pass without the consent of the Sequani

I ***Sēquanīs invītīs,*** abl. abs. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolūtus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause. §419

II **eō, īre, īvī** OR **iī, itūrus** (I-), *to go, walk, ride, sail, fly, move, pass; To go, march, move, advance (against a foe)*

I.IX.II

HIS CVM SVA SPONTE PERSVADERE NON POSSENT, LEGATOS AD DVMNORIGEM ÆDVVM MITTVNT, VT EO DEPRECATORE A SEQVANIS IMPETRARENT.

Hīs[I] cum suā[II] sponte[III] [IV] persuādēre nōn possent[V]

=when they were not able to persuade these men (the Sequani) by their own free will

~as they could not of themselves prevail on them

lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Æduum mittunt[VI] [VII]

=they send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Æduan

~they sent embassadors to Dumnorix the Æduan

ut

=<in order> that

~in order that

I ***hīs***, dat. with special v. *persuādēre*. Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

II ***suā***, When expressed for Clearness, and unemphatically, the Possessive Pronoun follows its Noun, as, *in civitate sua, in his state* (I.III); when used for Emphasis or Contrast, the Possessive Pronoun precedes its Noun, as, *meum officium, my duty* (IV.XXV)

III **spons, spontis**, F., **sponte**, in good prose always joined with *meā, tuā, suā —of free will, of one's own accord, of one's self, freely, willingly, voluntarily, spontaneously*

IV ***suā sponte,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

V ***cum…possent,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

VI ***mittunt***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

VII **mitto, -ere, mīsi, missum**, *to set in motion, to cause to go, let go, send, to send off, despatch*, etc.; *To send, throw, hurl, cast, launch*

eō dēprecātōre[I] [II]

=with that man <being> an intercessor | *~through his intercession*

ā Sēquanīs impetrārent[III] [IV]

=they might acheive (their request) from the Sequani | *~to obtain their request from the Sequani*

As they could not of themselves prevail on them, they send embassadors to Dumnorix the Aeduan, that through his intercession, they might obtain their request from the Sequani.

I ***eō dēprecātōre,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

II **dēprecātor, -ōris**, M. (DEPRECOR), *an averter, intercessor*

III **impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (IN + PATRO; PAT-), *to gain one's end, achieve, bring to pass, effect, get, obtain, procure*

IV ***ut…impetrārent,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

I.IX.III

DVMNORIX GRATIA ET LARGITIONE APVD SEQVANOS PLVRIMVM POTERAT ET HELVETIIS ERAT AMICVS, QVOD EX EA CIVITATE ORGETORIGIS FILIAM IN MATRIMONIVM DVXERAT ET, CVPIDITATE REGNI ADDVCTVS, NOVIS REBVS STVDEBAT ET QVAM PLVRIMAS CIVITATES SVO BENEFICIO HABERE OBSTRICTAS VOLEBAT.

Dumnorīx grātiā[I] et largītiōne[II] [III] apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat

=Dumnorix, because of (his) favor and because of (his) giving freely among the Sequani, was very able

~Dumnorix, by his friendship and generousoty, had great influence among the Sequani

et Helvētiīs[IV] erat amīcus

=and he was a friend to the Helveti

~and was friendly to the Helvetii

I **grātia, -æ**, F. (GRATUS), *favor, esteem, regard, liking, love, friendship, partiality*

II ***grātiā et largītiōne,*** abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

III **largītiō, -ōnis**, F. (LARGIOR), *a giving freely, granting, bestowing, dispensing, generosity, largess*

IV ***Helvētiīs***, dat. with adj. *amīcus.* The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites. Adjectives of this kind are accommodātus, aptus; amīcus, inimīcus, īnfestus, invīsus, molestus; idōneus, opportūnus, proprius; ūtilis, inūtilis; affīnis, fīnitimus, propinquus, vīcīnus; pār, dispār, similis, dissimilis; iūcundus, grātus; nōtus, īgnōtus, and others. §384

quod ex eā cīvitāte[I] Orgetorīgis fīliam[II] in mātrimōnium dūxerat[III]

=because out from that state he had led the daughter of Orgetorix into matrimony

~because out of that state he had married the daughter of Orgetorix

et cupiditāte[IV] rēgnī[V] adductus novīs rēbus[VI] [VII] studēbat

=and <having been> led by desire of reign, he was eager for new things

~and, incited by lust of sovereignty, was devoted to making a revolution

I ***ex eā cīvitāte,*** abl. of source. The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists. §403

II **fīlia, -æ**, F. (FE-), *a daughter*

III ***quod…dūxerat,*** *quod* clause. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. §540

IV ***cupiditāte***, abl. of means. §409

V ***rēgnī***, obj. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Cæsar, as odium, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as hate. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase amor patris, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive). §348

VI **rēs, reī**, F. (RA-), *a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case*; thus, *res* + *novus*, as, *revolution; Effects, substance, property, possessions*

VII ***novīs rēbus,*** dat. with special v. *studēbat.* §367

et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō[I] [II] habēre obstrictās[III] [IV] volēbat

=and he was wishing to have as many states as possible bound (to him) by his own beneficence

~and wished to have as many states as possible obliged to him by his kindness toward them

Dumnorix, by his popularity and liberality, had great influence among the Sequani, and was friendly to the Helvetii, because out of that state he had married the daughter of Orgetorix; and, incited by lust of sovereignty, was anxious for a revolution, and wished to have as many states as possible attached to him by his kindness toward them.

I.IX.IV

ITAQVE REM SVSCIPIT ET A SEQVANIS IMPETRAT VT PER FINES SVOS HELVETIOS IRE PATIANTVR, OBSIDESQVE VTI INTER SESE DENT PERFICIT: SEQVANI, NE ITINERE HELVETIOS PROHIBEANT; HELVETII, VT SINE MALEFICIO ET INIVRIA TRANSEANT.

Itaque[V] rem suscipit

=he, therefore, undertakes the affair

~he, therefore, undertook the affair

I ***suō beneficiō,*** abl. of means. §409

II **beneficium, -ī**, N. (BENE + FAC-), *a favor, benefit, service, kindness*

III **obstringo, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum** (OB + STRINGO), *To bind, bind up, close up by binding*; PPP. **obstrictus, -a, -us**, *bound, obliged*

IV ***habere obstrictas***, *to keep close bound.*, A noun and a passive participle are often so united that the participle and not the noun contains the main idea: The perfect participle with habeō (rarely with other verbs) has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the continued effect of the action of the verb: "cohortīs in aciē LXXX cōnstitūtās habēbat" (B. C. 3.89), he had eighty cohorts stationed in line of battle. §497b

V **ita**, ADV. (I-), In gen., referring to what precedes, *in this manner, in this wise, in such a way, so, thus, accordingly, as has been said*; Referring to what follows, *thus, in the following manner, as follows, in this way*; Of a natural consequence or inference, *so, thus, accordingly, under these circumstances, in this manner, therefore*; Prægn., *of kind or quality, so, such, of this nature, of this kind*

et ā Sēquanīs impetrat[VI]

=and he obtains from the Sequani	*~and procures upon the Sequani*

ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre[II] patiantur[III IV]

=that they bear the Helvetii to go through their own territories	*~to allow the Helvetii to march through their territories*

obsidēsque[V VI] utī inter sēsē dent[VII]

=and /(he) carries out/ that they should give hostages among themselves	*~and /he arranges/ that they should give hostages to each other*

perficit

=(he) carries out	*~he arranges*

Sēquanī

=the Sequani (give hostages)	*~the Sequani (gave hostages)*

VI ***impetrat*** has for object *ut…patiantur,* and, *perficit, uti…dent*: clauses of result. Substantive Clauses of Result with ut (negative ut nōn) are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort—Such are especially faciō and its compounds (efficiō, cōnficiō, etc.) Verbs and phrases taking an ut-clause of result as subject or object are accēdit, accidit, additur, altera est rēs, committō, cōnsequor, contingit, efficiō, ēvenit, faciō, fit, fierī potest, fore, impetrō, integrum est, mōs est, mūnus est, necesse est, prope est, rēctum est, relinquitur, reliquum est, restat, tantī est, tantum abest, and a few others. §568

II **eō, -īre, -īvī** OR **-iī, itūrus** (I-), *to go, walk, ride, sail, fly, move, pass; To go, march, move, advance* (against a foe)

III ***ut…patiantur,*** subst. clause of purpose. §563

IV **patior, -ī, passus, —** DEP., *to bear, support, undergo, suffer, endure*; *To suffer, endure, bear, allow, permit, let*

V ***obsidēs***, These were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact were broken, the hostages, usually children of prominent persons, would be held responsible and punished

VI **obses, obsidis** (OB + SEDEŌ), *a hostage*

VII ***utī…dent,*** subst. clause of result. §563

nē itinere[VIII] Helvētiōs prohibeant[IX]

=(he arranges) <in order> that they may not prohibit the Helvetii from (their) march

~so that they may not obstruct the Helvetii in their march

Helvētiī [obsidēs dant]

=the Helvetii [give hostages]

~the Helvetii (gave hostages)

ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant[III IV]

=<in order> that they may cross over without misdeeds and injury

~to pass without mischief and outrage

He, therefore, undertakes the affair, and prevails upon the Sequani to allow the Helvetii to march through their territories, and arranges that they should give hostages to each other-the Sequani not to obstruct the Helvetii in their march-the Helvetii, to pass without mischief and outrage.

VIII ***itinere***, abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

IX ***nē…prohibeant,*** neg. subst. clause of purpose. §563

III ***ut…trānseant,*** subst. clause of purpose. §563

IV **trānseō, -īre, -iī,** (OR **-īvī**), **-itus** (TRĀNS + EŌ), *to go over, go across, cross over, pass over, pass by, pass*

I.X

Cæsar learns of their plans.

I.X.I

CÆSARI RENVNTIATVR HELVETIIS ESSE IN ANIMO PER AGRVM SEQVANORVM ET ÆDVORVM ITER IN SANTONVM FINES FACERE, QVI NON LONGE A TOLOSATIVM FINIBVS ABSVNT, QVÆ CIVITAS EST IN PROVINCIA.

Cæsarī renūntiātur[I] [II] [III]

=it is being reported back to Cæsar *~it is again told Cæsar*

I **renūntiātur**, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

II **renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (RE + NŪNTIŌ), *to bring back word, carry tidings back, report, give notice, declare, announce*

III ***renuntiatur***, *word is brought back*: i.e. by messengers sent to ascertain, as the prefix *re-* implies; the subject is the clause, *Helvetiis esse*, etc.

Helvētiīs[I] esse[II III] in animō

=that it was to the Helvetians in mind *~that the Helvetii had in mind*

per agrum Sēquanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santonum[IV] fīnēs facere[V]

=to make a journey through the land of the Sequani and of the Ædui into the territories of the Santones *~to march through the country of the Sequani and the Ædui into the territories of the Santones*

I ***Helvētiīs***, dat. of poss. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote Possession. Note. The Genitive or a Possessive with esse emphasizes the possessor; the Dative, the fact of possession: as,—liber est meus, the book is MINE (and no one's else): est mihi liber, I HAVE a book (among other things). §373

II ***Helvētiīs esse in animō***, indir. disc. dependent on *renūntiātur.* The essential character of Indirect Discourse is, that the language of some other person than the writer or speaker is compressed into a kind of Substantive Clause, the verb of the main clause becoming Infinitive, while modifying clauses, as well as all hortatory forms of speech, take the Subjunctive. The person of the verb necessarily conforms to the new relation of persons. §577

III ***renūntiātur ... esse,*** inf. in indir disc. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is present, past, or future with reference to the verb of saying etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced, such as: Error: Reference source not found See chart: §584

IV **Santonēs, -um** (OR PL., **Santonī, -ōrum**), M., *a people north of the Garonne,* on the Bay of Biscay; This is so far from the borders of the province as to show that Cæsar was only searching for a pretext. But the conquest of Gaul was already determined upon, and the warlike Helvetii were too dangerous a people to be allowed to add their strength to that of the present inhabitants

V ***per agrum ... iter..facere***, indir. disc. dependent on *esse*. §577

quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium[I] fīnibus[II] absunt

=(these territories) which are not <by> far away from the boundaries of the Tolosates

~which are not far distant from those boundaries of the Tolosates

quæ cīvitās est in prōvinciā

=which is a state in the province

~which (viz. Tolosa, Toulouse) is a state in the Province

It is again told Cæsar, that the Helvetii intended to march through the country of the Sequani and the Aedui into the territories of the Santones, which are not far distant from those boundaries of the Tolosates, which [viz. Tolosa, Toulouse] is a state in the Province.

I.X.II

ID SI FIERET, INTELLEGEBAT MAGNO CVM PERICVLO PROVINCIÆ FVTVRVM VT HOMINES BELLICOSOS, POPVLI ROMANI INIMICOS, LOCIS PATENTIBVS MAXIMEQVE FRVMENTARIIS FINITIMOS HABERET.

Id[III] sī fieret[IV]

=if it should be done

~if this took place

I **Tolosatium**: *the people of Tolosa*, the modern Toulouse

II ***ā Tolōsātium fīnibus,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

III ***id***, nom. sg. n. subst.; refers to the Helvetii settling among the Santones; subj. of *fieret*

IV ***sī fieret,*** pass. of *facio*; fut. cond. in indirect disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

intellegēbat[I]

=he (Cæsar) was understanding	*~he saw*

magnō cum perīculō[II] prōvinciæ[III] futūrum [esse][IV]

=that (it) would be (attended) with great danger to the province	*~that it would be attended with great danger to the Province*

ut hominēs bellicōsōs[V], populī Rōmānī inimīcōs

=that /[the province] would have/ warlike men, enemies of the Roman people	*~that /to have/ warlike men, enemies of the Roman people*

I **intellegō, -ere -ēxī, -ēctus** (INTER + LEGO; LEG-), *to come to know, see into, perceive, understand, discern, comprehend, gather*

II ***magnō cum perīculō,*** abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

III ***prōvinciæ***, obj. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Cæsar, as odium, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as hate. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase amor patris, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive). §348

IV ***magnō cum perīculō prōvinciæ futūrum [esse]***, indir. statement dependent on *intellegēbat.* §577 A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive Clause. A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive, or as a Predicate Nominative or Accusative. §561

V **bellicōsus, -a, -um**, ADJ. POS. (BELLICUS; BELLUM), *warlike, martial, valorous, given to fighting*

[prōvincia] locīs patentibus[I] [II] maximēque frūmentāriīs[III] fīnitimōs[IV] habēret[V]

=[the province] would have /hominēs bellicōsōs ... / bordering upon laid open places (i.e. vulnerable to attack) and greatly (abounding) with corn

~to have // bordering upon accessible places and greatly abounding in corn

If this took place, he saw that it would be attended with great danger to the Province to have warlike men, enemies of the Roman people, bordering upon an open and very fertile tract of country.

I **pateō, -ēre, -uī, —** (PAT-), *to stand open, lie open, be open*; *To lie open, be exposed*

II ***locīs patentibus***, *in an open country*: the southwest part of Gaul is a broad river valley, giving easy access to the province.

III ***locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs,*** dat. with adj. *fīnitimōs.* The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites. Adjectives of this kind are accommodātus, aptus; amīcus, inimīcus, īnfestus, invīsus, molestus; idōneus, opportūnus, proprius; ūtilis, inūtilis; affīnis, fīnitimus, propinquus, vīcīnus; pār, dispār, similis, dissimilis; iūcundus, grātus; nōtus, īgnōtus, and others. §384

IV ***finitimos***: predicate, *(have) as neighbors,* etc.

V ***ut…habēret,*** a substantive clause of result used as the subject of *futurum [esse]* Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by ut, so that (negative, ut nōn), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb. Pure Clauses of Result, with ut or ut nōn, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §537 Substantive Clauses of Result with ut (negative ut nōn) are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort—Such are especially faciō and its compounds (efficiō, cōnficiō, etc.) Verbs and phrases taking an ut-clause of result as subject or object are accēdit, accidit, additur, altera est rēs, committō, cōnsequor, contingit, efficiō, ēvenit, faciō, fit, fierī potest, fore, impetrō, integrum est, mōs est, mūnus est, necesse est, prope est, rēctum est, relinquitur, reliquum est, restat, tantī est, tantum abest, and a few others. §568

I.X.III

OB EAS CAVSAS EI MVNITIONI QVAM FECERAT T. LABIENVM LEGATVM PRÆFICIT; IPSE IN ITALIAM MAGNIS ITINERIBVS CONTENDIT, DVASQVE IBI LEGIONES CONSCRIBIT, ET TRES QVÆ CIRCVM AQVILEIAM HIEMABANT EX HIBERNIS EDVCIT ET, QVA PROXIMVM ITER IN VLTERIOREM GALLIAM PER ALPES ERAT, CVM EIS QVINQVE LEGIONIBVS IRE CONTENDIT.

Ob[I] eās causās eī mūnītiōnī[II]

=on account of those reasons // (to be a commander) for this fortification

~for these reasons // to the command of the fortification

quam fēcerat

=(the fortification) which he had made

~which he had made

I *ob*, Ob, towards, on account of, with the accusative. Figuratively, in return for (mostly archaic, probably a word of account, balancing one thing against another): as, ob mulierem, in pay for the woman; ob rem, for gain. Hence applied to reason, cause, and the like, on account of (a similar mercantile idea), for: as, ob eam causam, for that reason; quam ob rem (quamobrem), wherefore, why. §221

II ***mūnītiōnī***, dat. with comp. v. *præfēcit.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

T[itum][I] Labiēnum[II] lēgātum præficit[III] [IV]

=he appointed T[itus] Labienus, (his) lieutenant	*~he appointed Titus Labienus, his lieutenant*

ipse in Ītaliam[V] [VI] magnīs itineribus[VII] [VIII] contendit[IX]

=(and) he himself hastens by <manner of> great marches into Italy	*~he himself pressed on to Italy by forced marches*

duāsque ibi[X] legiōnēs cōnscrībit[XI] [XII]

=and there he levies two legions	*~and there levied two legions*

et trēs [legiōnēs]

=and the third [legion]	*~three*

I **Titus, -ī,** M., a Roman first name; Abb., T

II **Labiēnus, -ī,** M., *Titus Labienus,* the most prominent of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic War; in the Civil War he went over to the side of Pompey, but displayed small abilities as commander, and fell at the battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

III **præficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (PRÆ + FACIO), *to set over, place in authority over, place at the head, appoint to command*

IV ***munitioni præfecit***, *he put in command of the fortification*

V **Italia, -æ,** F., *Italy*

VI ***Italiam***, probably only into his province of Cisalpine Gaul, but this was already regarded as a part of Italy

VII ***magnīs itineribus***, abl. of manner. §412

VIII ***magnīs itineribus***, cf. *quam maximis potest itineribus*; It is the usual phrase for forced marches of an army. The ordinary day's march of the Romans was about 15 miles; a magnum iter was from 20 to 25 miles

IX ***contendit***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

X **ibī**, ADV. (I-), in space*, in that place, there*

XI ***cōnscrībit***, hist. pres. §469

XII **cōnscrībō, -ere, -īpsī, -īptus** (CŌN + SCRĪBŌ), Lit., *to write together,* i.e., *To write together in a roll* or *list, to enroll*; very freq. as a milit. t. t., of the levying of troops

quæ circum[I] Aquileiam[II] hiemābant[III]

=(those men (the third legion)) which were wintering around Aquileia | *~which were wintering near Aquileia*

ex hībernīs[IV] [V] ēdūcit[VI] [VII]

=he leads out from (their) winter-quarters | *~and led out from winter-quarters*

et

=and | *~and*

quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem[VIII] Galliam per Alpēs[IX] erat

=in which the closest route into further Gaul was through the Alps | *~where the nearest route across the Alps into Further Gaul*

cum eīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit[X]

=he (Cæsar) hastens to go with those five legions | *~with these five legions marches rapidly*

I **circum**, (ACC. OF CIRCUS), ADV. AND PRÆP., Adv., *around, round about, all around*; Præp. with acc. (sometimes following its case), *around, about, all around*; *In the neighborhood of, around, about, at, near by*

II **Aquileia, -æ,** M., a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea

III **hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus** (HIEMS), *to winter, pass the winter, keep winter-quarters*

IV **hībernus, -a, -um**, ADJ. POS. (HIEMS), *of winter, wintry, winter-*; pl. n. as subst., *winter-quarters*

V ***ex hībernīs,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

VI ***ēdūcit***, hist. pres. §469

VII **ēdūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** (EX + DŪCŌ), *to lead forth, draw out, bring off, take away*

VIII **ūlterior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP, *farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote*

IX **Alpēs, -ium,** F. pl., *Alps*, general term for the mountains separating Cisalpine Gaul from Transalpine Gaul and Germany

X ***contendit***, hist. pres. §469

For these reasons he appointed Titus Labienus, his lieutenant, to the command of the fortification which he had made. He himself proceeds to Italy by forced marches, and there levies two legions, and leads out from winter-quarters three which were wintering around Aquileia, and with these five legions marches rapidly by the nearest route across the Alps into Further Gaul.

I.X.IV

IBI CEVTRONES ET GRAIOCELI ET CATVRIGES, LOCIS SVPERIORIBVS OCCVPATIS, ITINERE EXERCITVM PROHIBERE CONANTVR.

Ibi Ceutronēs[I] et Graiocelī[II] et Caturīgēs[III]

=there the Centrones, ~~and~~ the Graioceli, and the Caturiges

~there the Centrones and the Graioceli and the Caturiges

I **Ceutronēs, -um,** M. pl., A Belgic people, subject to the Nervians; A people in the eastern part of the province

II **Graiocelī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a Gallic people in the Alps

III **Caturīgēs, -um,** M. pl., a Gallic people in the eastern part of the province

locīs superiōribus[I] occupātis[II] [III]

=with the higher lands <having been> seized | *~upon taking possession of the higher parts*

itinere[IV] exercitum prohibēre cōnantur[V]

=try to prohibit the troop from (their) journey | *~attempt to obstruct the army in their march*

Here the Centrones and the Graioceli and the Caturiges, having taken possession of the higher parts, attempt to obstruct the army in their march.

I **superus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (SUPER), Adj. In gen., *that is above, upper, higher*; Comp.: *superior, -ius*. Lit., of place, ***higher, upper***: *"inferiore omni spatio vacuo relicto, superiorem partem collis castris compleverant,"* (VII.XLVI), *"ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis prœliabantur, from a height or eminence,"* (II.XXIII), so, *"ex loco superiore,"* (III.IV), *"loca,"* (I.X), *"qui in superiore acie constiterant,"* (I.XXIV); Trop. Of time or order of succession, *former, past, previous, preceding*: *"refecto ponte, quem superioribus diebus hostes resciderant,"* (VII.LVIII), *"milites superioribus prœliis exercitati,"* (II.XX); Of strength or success in battle or any contest, *victorious, conquering, stronger, superior*: *"Cæsar quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intellegebat,"* (VII.LXV), "*ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint,"* (V.XV); **summus, -a, -um** (FROM SUP-IMUS, SUP-MUS), *uppermost, highest, topmost*; *the top of, highest part of, "locus castrorum,"* (II.XXIII); **summum, -i**, N., *the top, surface; the highest place, the head of the table*, etc.: *"ab ejus (frontis) summo, sicut palmæ, rami quam late diffunduntur,"* (VI.XXVI); Of rank, etc., *highest, greatest, first, supreme, best, utmost, extreme; most distinguished, excellent, or noble; most important, weighty*, or *critical*, etc.: *"qui summo magistratui præerat,"* (I.XVI), "*summum in cruciatum se venire,"* (I.XXXI)

II ***locīs superiōribus occupātis,*** abl. abs. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolūtus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause. §419

III **occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (OB + CAP-), *to take into possession, seize, occupy, master, win*

IV ***itinere***, abl. of separ. §401

V ***cōnantur***, hist. pres. §469

I.X.V

COMPLVRIBVS EIS PRŒLIIS PVLSIS AB OCELO, QVOD EST CITERIORIS PROVINCIÆ EXTREMVM, IN FINES VOCONTIORVM VLTERIORIS PROVINCIÆ DIE SEPTIMO PERVENIT; INDE IN ALLOBROGVM FINES, AB ALLOBROGIBVS IN SEGVSIAVOS EXERCITVM DVCIT.

Complūeribus[I] hīs prœliīs pulsīs[II] [III] [IV]

=with these several battles <having been> repulsed

~after having routed these in several battles

ab Ocelō[V] [VI]

=from Ocelum

~from Ocelum

quod est [oppidum] citeriōris[VII] prōvinciæ extrēmum

=which is the outermost (i.e. the most westerly) [town] of this side of the province

~which is the most furthest town of the Hither Province

I **complūrēs, -ium**, ADJ. (COM + PLŪRĒS), *more than one, not a few, several, a number, many*

II ***complūribus…pulsīs,*** abl. abs. §419 & The main rules for the Order of Words are as follows:— A favorite order with the poets is the interlocked, by which the attribute of one pair comes between the parts of the other (synchysis):— “et superiectō pavidæ natārunt æquore dammæ” (Hor. Od. 1.2.11). Note.--This is often joined with chiasmus: as, arma nōndum expiātīs ūncta cruōribus (id. 2.1.5). §598h & (For more applicable examples, see: The first chapter of Cæsar's Gallic War, if rendered so as to bring out as far as possible the shades of emphasis, would run thus:— §59 7)

III **pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus** (PAL-), *to beat, strike, knock, push, drive, hurl, impel, propel*

IV ***his prœliis,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

V ***ab Ocelō,*** abl. of place from which. §409

VI **Ocelum, -ī**, a town of the Graioceli in the Alps, west of modern Turin

VII **citer, -tra, -trum**, ADJ., *on this side*

in fīnēs Vocontiōrum[I] ulteriōris[II] prōvinciæ[III] diē septimō[IV] pervenit[V VI]

=he arives in the territories of the further side of the privince of the Vocontii on the seventh day

~he arrived in the territories of the Vocontii in the Further Province on the seventh day

inde[VII] in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus[VIII] in Segusiāvōs[IX] exercitum dūcit[X]

=then he (Cæsar) leads (his) army into the territories of the Allobroges, (and) from the Allobroges to the Segusiani

~thence he leads his army into the country of the Allobroges, and from the Allobroges to the Segusiani

After having routed these in several battles, he arrives in the territories of the Vocontii in the Further Province on the seventh day from Ocelum, which is the most remote town of the Hither Province; thence he leads his army into the country of the Allobroges, and from the Allobroges to the Segusiani.

I **Vocontiī, ōrum,** M. pl., a Gallic people in the province

II **ūlterior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP., *farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote*

III ***ulterīoris prōvinciæ*** limits *Vocontiōrum*

IV ***diē septimō,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

V ***pervenit***, hist. pres. §469

VI **perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus** (PER + VENIŌ), *to come up, arrive*

VII **inde**, ADV. (I + IM-), Of place, *from that place, thence*; Of time, *from that time, thenceforward, since; After that, thereafter, thereupon, then*

VIII ***ab Allobrogibus,*** abl. of place from which. §426

IX **Segusiāvī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a Gallic people, subject to the Æduans

X ***dūcit***, hist. pres. §469

I.X.VI

HI SVNT EXTRA PROVINCIAM TRANS RHODANVM PRIMI.

Hī sunt extrā[I] prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum [populī] prīmī[II]

=these [people] are the first beyond the province (and) across the Rhone

~these people were the first beyond the Province on the opposite side of the Rhone

These people are the first beyond the Province on the opposite side of the Rhone.

I **extrā**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (EXTER), adv., *on the outside, without*; præp., with acc., *outside of, without, beyond*

II **prīmus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (PRO-), *the first, first*; First in rank or station, *chief, principal, most excellent, eminent, distinguished, noble*; **prīmum**, *at first, first, in the first place, in the beginning*—In enumerations, following. *deinde, tum*

I.XI

THE ÆDUANS, AMBARRI, & ALLOBROGES SEEK AID.

I.XI.I

HELVETII IAM PER ANGVSTIAS ET FINES SEQVANORVM SVAS COPIAS TRADVXERANT, ET IN ÆDVORVM FINES PERVENERANT EORVMQVE AGROS POPVLABANTVR.

Helvētiī iam[I] per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant[II]

=the Helvetii had, by this time, led their own forces through the narrow (defile) and (through) the territories of the Sequani

~the Helvetii had by this time led their forces through the narrow defile and the territories of the Sequani

et in Æduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant

=and had came through in the territories of the Ædui

~and had arrived at the territories of the Ædui

I **iam**, ADV. (IA-), As opp. *to past or future, at this time, now, just now, at present*; Like English *now, by this time, already*

II **trādūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum** (TRANS + DUCO), *to lead, bring, or conduct across; to lead, bring, or carry over any thing*; In partic. *To lead* or *convey across, to transport over* a stream or bridge

eōrumque agrōs populābantur[I]

=and they were laying waste the lands of those men	*~and were ravaging their lands*

The Helvetii had by this time led their forces over through the narrow defile and the territories of the Sequani, and had arrived at the territories of the Aedui, and were ravaging their lands.

I.XI.II

ÆDVI, CVM SE SVAQVE AB EIS DEFENDERE NON POSSENT, LEGATOS AD CÆSAREM MITTVNT ROGATVM AVXILIVM: ITA SE OMNI TEMPORE DE POPVLO ROMANO MERITOS ESSE VT PÆNE IN CONSPECTV EXERCITVS NOSTRI AGRI VASTARI, LIBERI EORVM IN SERVITVTEM ABDVCI, OPPIDA EXPVGNARI NON DEBVERINT.

"ITA [NOS] ... MERITI SUMUS, UT PÆNE IN CONSPECTU EXERCITUS VOSTRI, ... LIBERI NOSTRI ... NON DEBUERINT."

Æduī

=the Ædui	*~the Ædui*

cum sē suaque ab eīs[II] dēfendere[III] nōn possent[IV]

=as they could not defend themselves and their own (thing) from those men	*~as they could not defend themselves and their possessions against them*

I **populō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (SCAL-), *to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage, spoil*

II ***ab eīs,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

III **dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sus** (DĒ + FENDŌ), *to ward off, repel, avert, keep off; To defend, guard, protect, cover*

IV ***cum…possent,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

lēgātōs ad Cæsarem mittunt[V]

=send ambassadors to Cæsar | *~sent embassadors to Cæsar*

rogātum[II] auxilium[III]

=to ask for assistance | *~to ask assistance*

=ita[IV] sē omnī tempore[V] dē[VI] populō Rōmānō meritōs[VII] esse[VIII] [dīxērunt]

=[(those men) said] that they had in all times to such a degree deserved of the Roman people | *~[they said] that they had at all times so well deserved of the Roman people*

V ***mittunt***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

II ***rogātum***, acc. supine expressing purpose. The Supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case. §509

III **auxilium, -ī**, N. (AVC-), *help, aid, assistance, support, succor*

IV **ita**, ADV. (I-), In gen., referring to what precedes, *in this manner, in this wise, in such a way, so, thus, accordingly, as has been said*; To denote degree, *so, to such a degree, so very, so much*

V ***omnī tempore,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

VI **dē**, PRÆP., with abl., Of separation, in space, *from, away from, down from, out of*; Of duration, *De nocte, de vigilia*, etc., to designate an act which begins or takes its origin from the night time, Eng. *during* or *in the course of the night, at night, by night*, etc.—*"Cæsar de tertia vigilia e castris profectus," in the third night-watch*; Of origin or source, *of, from, from among, out of, proceeding from, derived from;* To indicate the producing cause or reason, *for, on account of, because of*

VII **mereor, -ērī, -itus, —** DEP. (SMAR-), *to deserve, merit, be entitled to*

VIII ***sē…esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *rogātum.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

ut pæne[I] in cōnspectū[II] exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī[III]

=that almost in sight of our army, (their) fields were made empty	*~that almost before the eyes of our army, their fields ought not to have been laid waste*

līberī[IV] eorum in servitūtem[V] abdūcī[VI]

=that the children of those men were led away into slavery	*~their children carried off into slavery*

oppida expugnārī[VII] nōn dēbuerint[VIII] [IX]

=(and) that their towns ought not to have been taken by assault	*~their towns stormed*

The Aedui, as they could not defend themselves and their possessions against them, send embassadors to Cæsar to ask assistance, [pleading] that they had at all times so well deserved of the Roman people, that their fields ought not to have been laid waste-their children carried off into slavery-their towns stormed, almost within sight of our army.

I **pæne**, ADV., *nearly, almost, as I may say*

II **cōnspectus, -ūs**, M. (COM- + SPEC-), *a seeing, look, sight, view, range of sight, power of vision—"pæne in conspectu exercitūs nostri," before the eyes*

III **vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (VASTUS), *to make empty, deprive of occupants, desert, vacate, void, empty, lay 'waste, desolate, ravage, devastate, destroy*

IV **līberī, -erōrum** (LIBER), *free persons*; hence*, the children of a family, children*

V **servitūs, -ūtis**, F. (SERVUS), *the condition of a servant, slavery, serfdom, service, servitude*

VI **abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** (AB + DŪCŌ), *to lead away, take away, carry off, remove, lead aside*

VII **expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (EX + PŪGNŌ), *to take by assault, storm, capture, reduce, subdue*

VIII ***ut…nōn dēbuerint,*** clause of result. Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by ut, so that (negative, ut nōn), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb. Pure Clauses of Result, with ut or ut nōn, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §537

IX **dēbeo, -ēre, -uī, -itus** (DE + HABEO), *to withhold, keep back*; With inf., *to be bound, in duty bound* to do something—*I ought, must, should*, etc., *do it* (in class. prose always in the sense of moral necessity)

I.XI.III

EODEM TEMPORE ÆDVI AMBARRI, NECESSARII ET CONSANGVINEI HÆDVORVM, CÆSAREM CERTIOREM FACIVNT SESE DEPOPVLATIS AGRIS NON FACILE AB OPPIDIS VIM HOSTIVM PROHIBERE.

Eōdem tempore[I] Æduī Ambarrī[II], necessāriī[III] et cōnsanguineī[IV] Hæduōrum

=at the same time the Ambarri, friends and kinsmen of the Ædui | *~at the same time the Ambarri, friends and kinsmen of the Ædui*

Cæsarem certiōrem faciunt[V]

=make Cæsar more certain | *~apprized Cæsar*

sēsē

=that they | *~that they*

I ***eōdem tempore,*** abl. of time. §423

II **Ambarrī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a people east of the Arar (Saone), near its junction with the Rhone

III **necessārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NECESSE), *unavoidable, inevitable, indispensable, pressing, needful, requisite, necessary, compulsory;* Subst. m. and f., *a relation, relative, kinsman, connection, friend, client, patron*

IV **cōnsanguineus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CŌN + SANGUINEUS), *of the same blood, related by blood, kindred, fraternal;* Subst. m., *a brother*, f. *a sister*; pl., *kindred, kinsmen*

V ***faciunt***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

dēpopulātīs[I] agrīs[II]

=with (their) fields <having been> laid waste

~now that their fields had been devastated

nōn facile[III] ab oppidīs[IV] vim hostium[V] prohibēre[VI]

=it was not easy (for them) to prohibit the force of the enemy from (their) towns

~it was not easy for them to ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns

At the same time the Ambarri, the friends and kinsmen of the Aedui, apprize Cæsar, that it was not easy for them, now that their fields had been devastated, to ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns.

I.XI.IV

ITEM ALLOBROGES, QVI TRANS RHODANVM VICOS POSSESSIONESQVE HABEBANT, FVGA SE AD CÆSAREM RECIPIVNT ET DEMONSTRANT SIBI PRÆTER AGRI SOLVM NIHIL ESSE RELIQVI.

Item Allobrogēs

=the Allobroges likewise

~the Allobroges likewise

I **dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus,** — DEP. (DĒ + POPULOR), *to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage*

II ***dēpopulātīs agrīs,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

III **facilis, -e**, ADJ. (FAC-), *easy to do, easy, without difficulty*

IV ***ab oppidīs,*** abl. of separ. §401

V **hostis, -is**, M. AND F. (HAS-), *a stranger, foreigner*; *An enemy* in arms or of one's country (opp. *inimicus*, *a private enemy*, or one who is inimically disposed).

VI ***sēsē…prohibēre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *certiōrem faciunt.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque[VII] habēbant

=who are having villages and possessions across the Rhone | *~who had villages and possessions on the other side of the Rhone*

fugā[II] sē ad Cæsarem recipiunt

=took themselves back in flight towards Cæsar | *~withdrew to Cæsar*

et dēmōnstrant[III IV]

=and they point out (to him) | *~and proved to him*

sibi[V] præter agrī solum[VI] nihil esse[VII] reliquī[VIII]

=that to them there is nothing of remaining except the soil of the land | *~that they had nothing remaining, except the soil of their land*

The Allobroges likewise, who had villages and possessions on the other side of the Rhone, betake themselves in flight to Cæsar, and assure him that they had nothing remaining, except the soil of their land.

VII **possessiō, -ōnis**, F. (SED-), Transf. In abstr., *a possessing, holding, possession, occupation*; In concr., *a thing possessed, a possession, property,* Esp. *an estate*

II **fuga, -æ**, F. (FVG-), *a fleeing, flight, running away*

III **dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DĒ + MŌNSTRŌ), *to point out, indicate, designate, show*; Fig., *to designate, indicate, show, prove, demonstrate, establish*

IV ***dēmōnstrant***, hist. pres. §469

V ***sibi***, dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed. §376

VI **solum, -ī**, *the lowest part, bottom, ground, base, foundation, floor, pavement, site; The ground, earth, soil*

VII ***nihil esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dēmōnstrant.* §580

VIII ***reliquī***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Nouns or Pronouns. pars mīlitum, part of the soldiers. quis nostrum, which of us? nihil erat reliquī, there was nothing left. “nēmō eōrum” (VII.LXVI), not a man of them. “māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt” (II.XXIII), they killed a large part of them. §3461

I.XI.V

QVIBVS REBVS ADDVCTVS CÆSAR NON EXPECTANDVM SIBI STATVIT DVM, OMNIBVS FORTVNIS SOCIORVM CONSVMPTIS, IN SANTONOS HELVETII PERVENIRENT.

Quibus rēbus[I] adductus Cæsar

=Cæsar, <having been> induced by these things	*~Cæsar, induced by these circumstances*

nōn expectandum[II] [esse][III] sibi[IV]

=that it is not <having> to be looked out for by him	*~that he ought not to wait*

statuit[V]

=decides	*~decided*

dum

=until	*~until*

I ***quibus rēbus,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II **exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (EX + SPECTŌ), *to look out for, await, wait for*

III ***expectandum [esse]***, fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. dependent on *statuit.* There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, known respectively as the First (or Active) and the Second (or Passive). The First Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Future Active Participle with the forms of sum, and denotes a future or intended action. §194

IV ***sibi***, dat. of agent. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests. This is the regular way of expressing the agent with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§196). §374

V **statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (STATUS), *to cause to stand, set up, set, station, fix upright, erect, plant*; To decide, determine, with reference to a result, *to settle, fix, bring about, choose, make a decision*; With *cognoscere, to examine* (officially) *and decide*; With indef. obj., generally with in and acc.—*aliquid gravius in aliquem, to proceed severely against*

omnibus fortūnīs[I] sociōrum cōnsūmptīs[II] [III]

=with all the fortunes of the allies <having been> used up

~after destroying all the property of his allies

in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent[IV]

=the Helvetii // should come through into the Santones

~the Helvetii // should arrive among the Santones

Cæsar, induced by these circumstances, decides, that he ought not to wait until the Helvetii, after destroying all the property of his allies, should arrive among the Santones.

I **fortūna, -æ**, F. (FORS), *chance, hap, luck, fate, fortune*

II **cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus** (CŌN + SŪMŌ), *to use up, eat, devour;* Fig., *to consume, devour, waste, squander, annihilate, destroy*

III ***omnibus fortūnīs…cōnsūmptīs,*** abl. abs. §420

IV ***dum…pervenīrent,*** temporal clause implying intention or expectancy. Dum and quoad, until, take the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive in temporal clauses implying intention or expectancy. §553

I.XII

Cæsar cuts to pieces one division

I.XII.I

FLVMEN EST ARAR, QVOD PER FINES ÆDVORVM ET SEQVANORVM IN RHODANVM INFLVIT, INCREDIBILI LENITATE, ITA VT OCVLIS IN VTRAM PARTEM FLVAT IVDICARI NON POSSIT.

Flūmen est Arar[I]

=there is a river (called) the Arar

~there is a river [called] the Saone

quod per fīnēs Æduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit[II], incrēdibilī[III] lēnitāte[IV V] ita

=which flows through the territories of the Ædui and Sequani into the Rhone, with such incredible gentleness

~which flows through the territories of the Ædui and Sequani into the Rhone with such incredible gentleness

I **Arar, -aris,** ACC. -**im**, M., presently known as the Saone; pronounced 'Sōn.' It rises the Vosges (vōzh) Mts., and flows southward into the Rhone

II **īnfluō, -ere, -uxī, -uxus** (ĪN + FLUŌ; FLV-), *to flow in, run in*

III **incrēdibilis, -e**, ADJ. (IN + CRĒDIBILIS), *not to be believed, incredible, beyond belief, extraordinary, unparalleled*

IV ***incrēdibilī lēnitāte,*** ablative of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

V **lēnitās, -ātis**, F. (LENIS), *softness, smoothness, gentleness, mildness*

ut oculīs[I] [II]

=that by <means of> the eyes *~by the eye*

in utram[III] partem fluat[IV]

=in which part it flows *~in which direction it flows*

iūdicārī[V] nōn possit[VI]

=it is not able to be judged *~it can not be determined*

There is a river [called] the Saone, which flows through the territories of the Aedui and Sequani into the Rhone with such incredible slowness, that it can not be determined by the eye in which direction it flows.

I ***oculīs***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II **oculus, -ī**, M. (AC-), *an eye*

III **uter, utra, utrum**, PRON. (CA-), Interrogative, *which of two, which, whether* (See uter, -trīus, which (of two) §113)

IV ***in utram…fluat,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

V **iūdico, -ere, -āvi, -ātum** (IUDEX), *to examine judicially, to judge, be a judge, pass judgment, decide*; Transf. beyond the legal sphere, *To judge, judge of a thing; To determine, resolve, conclude*

VI ***ita ut…nōn possit,*** clause of result. Pure Clauses of Result, with ut or ut nōn, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by ut, so that (negative, ut nōn), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb. §537

I.XII.II

ID HELVETII RATIBVS AC LINTRIBVS IVNCTIS TRANSIBANT.

Id Helvētiī ratibus[I] [II] ac lintribus[III] iūnctīs[IV] trānsībant

=the Helvetii were crossing it (the Arar) by <means of> rafts and boats <having been> joined together

~this the Helvetii were crossing by rafts and boats joined together

This the Helvetii were crossing by rafts and boats joined together.

I.XII.III

VBI PER EXPLORATORES CÆSAR CERTIOR FACTVS EST TRES IAM PARTES COPIARVM HELVETIOS ID FLVMEN TRADVXISSE, QVARTAM FERE PARTEM CITRA FLVMEN ARARIM RELIQVAM ESSE, DE TERTIA VIGILIA CVM LEGIONIBVS TRIBVS E CASTRIS PROFECTVS AD EAM PARTEM PERVENIT, QVÆ NONDVM FLVMEN TRANSIERAT.

Vbi per explōrātōrēs[V] Cæsar certior factus est

=when Cæsar was made more certain through scouts

~when Cæsar was informed by spies

I ***ratibus***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II **ratis, -is**, F. (AR-), A vessel made of logs fastened together, *a raft*

III **linter, -tris**, F., *a trough, vat, tub*; Transf., *a boat, skiff, wherry*

IV ***lintribus iūnctīs,*** abl. of means. §409

V **explōrātor, -ōris**, M. (EXPLORO), *an explorer, spy, scout*

trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse[I]

=that the Helvetii had already led three parts of (their) forces across that river

~that the Helvetii had already conveyed three divisions of their forces across that river

quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam[II] esse[III]

=(but) that the fourth part was mostly remaining on this side of the Arar

~but that the fourth division was, for the most part, remaining on this side of the Saone

dē[IV] tertiā vigiliā[V] [VI] cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs[VII] [VIII] profectus ad eam partem pervēnit

=(he) <having> set forward from the camp with three legions from the third watch, came to that part

~he set out from the camp with three legions during the third watch, and came up with that division

I ***partēs…trādūxisse***, indir. disc. dependent on *certior factus est.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

II **reliquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (RE- + LIC-), *left, left over, remaining*

III ***partem…esse,*** indir. disc. §580

IV **dē**, PRÆP., with abl., Of separation, *from, away from, down from, out of*; Of duration, *during, in the course of, at, by*

V ***dē tertiā vigiliā,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

VI **vigilia, -æ**, F. (VIGIL), *a watching, wakefulness, sleeplessness, lying awake*; In partic. Lit., *a keeping awake* for the security of a place, Esp. of a city or camp*, a watching, watch, guard*; *A watch*, i.e. the time of keeping watch by night, among the Romans a *fourth part of the night* (I.XII.III), (I.XL.XIV); *The watch*, i. e. those standing on guard, watchmen, sentinels (I.XXI.III)

VII ***ē castrīs,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

VIII **castrum, -i**, N. (KINDRED WITH CASA), In sg., any fortified place, *a castle, fort, fortress*; In pl., **castra, -ōrum**, N. Lit., *several soldiers' tents situated together*; hence, *a military camp, an encampment*; among the Romans a square (*quadrata*)

quæ nōndum flūmen trānsierat

=(the division) which had not yet crossed the river	*~which had not yet crossed the river*

When Cæsar was informed by spies that the Helvetii had already conveyed three parts of their forces across that river, but that the fourth part was left behind on this side of the Saone, he set out from the camp with three legions during the third watch, and came up with that division which had not yet crossed the river.

I.XII.IV

EOS IMPEDITOS ET INOPINANTES ADGRESSVS MAGNAM PARTEM EORVM CONCIDIT: RELIQVI SESE FVGÆ MANDARVNT ATQVE IN PROXIMAS SILVAS ABDIDERVNT.

Eōs impedītōs[I] et inopīnantēs[II] adgressus[III] magnam partem eōrum concīdit[IV]

=(he) <having> assaulted those hampered and unaware men, cut to pieces a great part of those men	*~attacking them hindered with baggage, and not expecting him, he cut to pieces a great part of them*

I **impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus** (PED-), *to entangle, ensnare, shackle, hamper, hinder, hold fast; To be in the way, hinder, detain, obstruct, check, prevent, impede*

II **inopīnāns,** gen. **inopīnantis**, ADJ., *unaware, off guard; unexpected, not expecting*

III **aggredior, -ī, aggressus, —** DEP., *to go against, fall upon, attack, assault*

IV **concīdo, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum** (CON + CĪDO), *to cut up, cut through, cut away, cut to pieces, to bring to ruin, destroy*, etc; *To cut to pieces* in war, *to cut down, destroy, kill*

reliquī sēsē fugæ[I] mandā[vē]runt[II]

=the remaining men delivered themselves over to flight

~the rest betook themselves to flight

atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt[III]

=and they put away into the nearest forests

~and concealed themselves in the nearest woods

Attacking them encumbered with baggage, and not expecting him, he cut to pieces a great part of them; the rest betook themselves to flight, and concealed themselves in the nearest woods.

I.XII.V

IS PAGVS APPELLABATVR TIGVRINVS: NAM OMNIS CIVITAS HELVETIA IN QVATTVOR PAGOS DIVISA EST.

Is pāgus[IV] appellābātur Tigurīnus[V]

=that canton (which was cut down) was called the Tigurine

~that district was called the Tigurine

I ***fugæ***, indir. obj. with special v. *mandā[vē]runt.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

II **mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (MANUS + DO), *to put in hand, deliver over, commit, consign, intrust, confide, commission—"fugæ sese," betake himself to flight*

III **abdō, -ere, -idī, -itus** (AB + DŌ), *to put away, remove, set aside*; Prægn., *to hide, conceal, put out of sight, keep secret*

IV **pāgus, -ī**, M. (PAC-), *a district, canton, hundred, province, region*

V **Tigurīnus, -a, -um,** ADJ., *Tigurian.* As a noun, **Tigurīnī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *the Tigurians*, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians

nam[I] omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est

=for the whole Helvetian state is divided into four cantons

~for the whole Helvetian state is divided into four cantons

That canton [which was cut down] was called the Tigurine; for the whole Helvetian state is divided into four cantons.

I.XII.VI

HIC PAGVS VNVS, CVM DOMO EXISSET, PATRVM NOSTRORVM MEMORIA, L. CASSIVM CONSVLEM INTERFECERAT ET EIVS EXERCITVM SVB IVGVM MISERAT.

Hic pāgus ūnus

=this single canton

~this single canton

cum domō[II] exīsset[III]

=when it went forth from (its) home

~having withdrawn their native country

patrum nostrōrum memoriā[IV], L[ūcius] Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat[V]

=in the memory of our fathers, /that single canton/ had put out of the way L[ucius] Cassius, the consul

~within the recollection of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius the consul

I **nam**, CONJ., To introduce a confirmation or explanation, *for* (always in prose beginning the sentence)—Introducing an explanation or fuller statement of something already said

II ***domō***, abl. of place from which. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: Th e place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition. §427

III ***cum…exīsset,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

IV ***patrum nostrōrum memoriā,*** abl. of time. §423

V **interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (INTER + FACIO), *to put out of the way, destroy, bring to naught; To kill, slay, murder*

et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat

=and had sent the army of him under the yoke

~and had made his army pass under the yoke

This single canton having left their country, within the recollection of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius the consul, and had made his army pass under the yoke.

I.XII.VII

ITA SIVE CASV SIVE CONSILIO DEORVM IMMORTALIVM, QVÆ PARS CIVITATIS HELVETIÆ INSIGNEM CALAMITATEM POPVLO ROMANO INTVLERAT, EA PRINCEPS PŒNAS PERSOLVIT.

Ita sīve[I] cāsū[II] sīve cōnsiliō deōrum[III] immortālium

=thus, be it by chance, or be it by the council of the immortal gods

~thus, whether by chance, or by the intention of the immortal gods

I **sīve**, CONJ. (SĪ + VE), *or if*; In the formula, *sive … sive, be it that … or that, if … or if, whether … or*

II ***cāsū…cōnsiliō,*** abl. of means. §409

III **deus, -ī**, M. (DIV-), *a god, deity*

quæ pars cīvitātis Helvētiæ[I] īnsignem[II] calamitātem[III] populō Rōmānō[IV] intulerat

=the part of the Helvetian state which had borne a remarkable calamity to the Roman people

~that part of the Helvetian state which had brought a extraordinary calamity upon the Roman people

ea prīnceps pœnās persolvit[V]

=he was the first to pay the penalty

~was the first to pay the penalty

Thus, whether by chance, or by the design of the immortal gods, that part of the Helvetian state which had brought a signal calamity upon the Roman people, was the first to pay the penalty.

I ***quæ pars cīvitātis Helvētiæ***, The Antecedent Noun sometimes appears in both clauses, but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted. Note.--In this case the relative clause usually comes first (cf. § 308. d) and a demonstrative usually stands in the antecedent clause: "quæ pars cīvitātis calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps pœnās persolvit" (I.XII), that part of the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty. §307

II **īnsīgnis, -e**, ADJ. (IN + SIGNUM), *distinguished by a mark, remarkable, noted, eminent, distinguished, prominent, extraordinary; militaria, ornaments,* probably on the helmets of the officers

III **calamitās, -ātis**, F. (SCAL-), *loss, injury, damage, mischief, harm, misfortune, calamity, disaster*; Esp., *the misfortunes of war, disaster, overthrow, defeat*

IV ***populō Rōmānō***, indir. obj. with comp. v. *intulerat.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

V **persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus** (PER + SOLVŌ), *to unravel, solve, explain; To pay, give, show, render, suffer*

I.XII.VIII

QVA IN RE CÆSAR NON SOLVM PVBLICAS, SED ETIAM PRIVATAS INIVRIAS VLTVS EST, QVOD EIVS SOCERI L. PISONIS AVVM, L. PISONEM LEGATVM, TIGVRINI EODEM PRŒLIO QVO CASSIVM INTERFECERANT.

Quā[I] in rē Cæsar nōn sōlum pūblicās[II], sed[III] etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus[IV] est[V]

=(and) in which thing Cæsar avenged (himself) on not only the public, but also (his own) personal injuries

~and in this Cæsar took vengence on not only the public but also his own personal wrongs

I A Relative is often used at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *Qua de causa, And for this reason, For this reason* (I.I); Q*ui ... prœlium committunt* (Historical Present), *They* (or *And they*) *... joined battle* (I.XV)

II **pūblicus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CONTR. FROM POPULICUS, FROM POPULUS), *of* or *belonging to the people, State,* or *community; that is done for the sake* or *at the expense of the State; public, common*; adv., **publicē**, *On account, at the cost, in behalf,* or *in charge of the State*

III **sed**, CONJ., After a negative clause and introducing a direct opposition, *but, on the contrary, but also, but even, but in fact*; Introducing a climax, usu. in the formula, *non modo or non solum . . . sed* (or *sed etiam*), *not only, not merely . . . but, but also, but even, but indeed*

IV ***ultus***, ppp. of v. *ulcīscor*

V **ulcīscor, -ī, -ūltus, —** DEP., *To avenge one's self on, take vengeance on,* or *punish* for wrong done—With a personal object; *To take revenge for, to avenge, punish* injustice, wrongs, etc.

quod eius socerī[I] L[ūciī] Pīsōnis avum[II], L[ūcium] Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem prœliō[III]

=because the Tigurini /had slain/ L[ucius] Piso the lieutenant (of Cassius), the grandfather of L[ucius] Calpurnius Piso, the father-in-law of him, in the same battle

~because the Tigurini /had slain/ Lucius Piso the lieutenant (of Cassius), the grandfather of Lucius Calpurnius Piso, his (Cæsar's) father-in-law, in the same battle

quō Cassium [interfēcerant]

=(the same battle) in which [they had slain] Cassius

~as Cassius himself

interfēcerant[IV]

=they had slain

~had slain

In this Cæsar avenged not only the public but also his own personal wrongs, because the Tigurini had slain Lucius Piso the lieutenant [of Cassius], the grandfather of Lucius Calpurnius Piso, his [Cæsar's] father-in-law, in the same battle as Cassius himself.

I **socer, -erī**, M., *a father-in-law*

II **avus, -ī**, M. (AV-), *a grandfather*

III ***eōdem prœliō***, abl. of place. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: Often in indefinite words, such as locō, parte, etc. §429

IV ***quod…interfēcerant,*** *quod* introduces a causal clause. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. Note 1. Quod introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Quia regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. Quoniam, inasmuch as, since, when now, now that, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative. §540. *quō* starts a rel. clause with *interfēcerant,* which completes the clause

I.XIII

Cæsar, bridging the Arar, crosses.

I.XIII.I

HOC PRŒLIO FACTO, RELIQVAS COPIAS HELVETIORVM VT CONSEQVI POSSET, PONTEM IN ARARE FACIENDVM CVRAT ATQVE ITA EXERCITVM TRADVCIT.

Hōc prœliō factō[I]

=with this battle <having been> done *~this battle ended*

I *__hōc prœliō factō,__* abl. abs. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolūtus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause. §419

reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī[I] posset[II]

=<in order> that he might be able to follow the remaining forces of the Helvetii

~that he might be able to come up with the remaining forces of the Helvetii

pontem in Arare faciendum[III] [esse] cūrat[IV]

=he sees to it that a bridge is <having> to be made across the Arar

~he orders a bridge must be made across the Saone

atque ita exercitum trādūcit[V]

=and thus he leads (his) army across

~and thus leads his army over

This battle ended, that he might be able to come up with the remaining forces of the Helvetii, he procures a bridge to be made across the Saone, and thus leads his army over.

I **cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus, —** DEP. (CŌN + SEQUOR), *to follow, follow up, press upon, go after, attend, accompany, pursue*

II ***ut…posset,*** clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause. §531

III ***pontem faciendum***, acc. of the gerundive. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

IV **cūrō, -āre, āvī, -ātus** (CURA), *to care for, take pains with, be solicitous for, look to, attend to, regard*; With acc. and gerundive, *to have done, see to, order*

V **trādūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum** (TRANS + DUCO), *to lead, bring,* or *conduct across; to lead, bring,* or *carry over* any thing

I.XIII.II

HELVETII REPENTINO EIVS ADVENTV COMMOTI, CVM ID QVOD IPSI DIEBVS VIGINTI ÆGERRIME CONFECERANT, VT FLVMEN TRANSIRENT, ILLVM VNO DIE FECISSE INTELLEGERENT, LEGATOS AD EVM MITTVNT; CVIVS LEGATIONIS DIVICO PRINCEPS FVIT, QVI BELLO CASSIANO DVX HELVETIORVM FVERAT.

Helvētiī repentīnō[I] eius adventū[II] commōtī

=the Helvetii, <having been> moved by the sudden arrival of his

~the Helvetii, confused by his sudden arrival

cum id

=since this thing (bridge)

~since

quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī[III] ægerrimē[IV] cōnfēcerant[V]

=(this bridge) which they themselves had, with difficulty, made together in twenty days

~what they, themselves had with the utmost difficulty accomplished in twenty days

ut flūmen trānsīrent[VI]

=(namely,) that they crossed the river

~namely, the crossing of the river

I **repentīnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (REPENS), *sudden, hasty, unlooked for, unexpected, impetuous*

II ***adventū***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

III ***diebus vīgintī***, abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

IV **ægre, ægrius, ægerrime**, ADV., *scarcely, with difficulty, painfully, hardly; reluctantly, uncomfortably*

V **confacio, -ere, -fēci, -fectus** (CON + FACIO), *to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil*

VI ***ut…trānsīrent,*** clause of purpose. §531

illum ūnō diē[I] fēcisse[II]

=that he (Cæsar) had made in one day | *~that he had effected in one day*

intellegerent[III]

=they were understanding | *~they found*

lēgātōs ad eum mittunt[IV]

=they send ambassadors to him | *~sent embassadors to him*

cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō[V] prīnceps fuit

=the head of which embassy was Divico | *~at the head of which embassy was Divico*

quī bellō Cassiānō[VI] dūx[VII] Helvētiōrum fuerat

=who had been commander of the Helvetii, in the war with (against) Cassius | *~who had been commander of the Helvetii, in the war against Cassius*

I ***ūnō diē,*** abl. of time. §423

II ***illum…fēcisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *intellegerent.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

III ***cum…intellegerent,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

IV ***mittunt***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

V **Dīvicō, -ōnis,** M., leader of the Helvetians in their war with Cassius, 107 B.C., and head of an embassy to Cæsar, 58 B.C.

VI ***bellō Cassiānō,*** abl. of time. Special constructions of time are the following: Many expressions have in Latin the construction of time when where in English the main idea is rather of place. §424iv

VII **dux, ducis**, *a leader, conductor, guide*; In partic., Milit., *a leader, commander, general-in-chief.*

The Helvetii, confused by his sudden arrival, when they found that he had effected in one day, what they, themselves had with the utmost difficulty accomplished in twenty namely, the crossing of the river, send embassadors to him; at the head of which embassy was Divico, who had been commander of the Helvetii, in the war against Cassius.

I.XIII.III

IS ITA CVM CÆSARE EGIT: SI PACEM POPVLVS ROMANVS CVM HELVETIIS FACERET, IN EAM PARTEM ITVROS ATQVE IBI FVTVROS HELVETIOS VBI EOS CÆSAR CONSTITVISSET ATQVE ESSE VOLVISSET; SIN BELLO PERSEQVI PERSEVERARET, REMINISCERETVR ET VETERIS INCOMMODI POPVLI ROMANI ET PRISTINÆ VIRTVTIS HELVETIORVM.

Is ita cum Cæsare ēgit[I]

=he conducts with Cæsar thus | *~he thus treats with Cæsar*

sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret[II]

=that if the Roman people should make peace with the Helveti | *~that if the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetii*

I **agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus** (AG-), *to put in motion, move, lead, drive, tend, conduct; To pursue, carry on, think, reflect, deliberate, treat, represent, exhibit, exercise, practise, act, perform, deliver, pronounce;* Of public transactions, *to manage, transact, do, discuss, speak, deliberate*; Either in the most general sense, like the Engl. *do*, for every kind of mental or physical employment; or, in a more restricted sense, to exhibit in external action, to act or perform, to deliver or pronounce, etc., so that after the act is completed nothing remains permanent, e.g. a speech, dance, play, etc

II ***sī…faceret,*** protasis of fut. cond. in indir. disc. dependent on *ēgit.* Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

in eam partem itūrōs [esse][I]

=then (those men) (the Helveti) would go into that part

~they would go to that region

atque ibi futūrōs [esse] Helvētiōs

=and there the Helveti would be

~and there remain

ubi eōs Cæsar cōnstituisset

=where Cæsar had set them

~where Cæsar might appoint

atque esse voluisset[II]

=and (where) he (Cæsar) desired (them) to be

~and desire them to be

sīn[III] bellō[IV] [eos] persequī[V] persevērāret[VI] [VII]

=but if he should persist in persecuting [those men] by <means of> war

~but if he should persist in persecuting them with war

I ***in eam partem itūrōs [esse]***, apodosis of fut. condition. in indir. disc. §589

II ***ubi…cōnstituisset…voluisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

III **sīn**, CONJ., an adversative conditional particle, *if however, if on the contrary, but if*—With a preceding *si, nisi, quando, dum.* After *si,* or without a preceding *si*, *nisi*, etc. (where the foregoing particle is usu. clearly implied by the context)

IV ***bellō***, abl. of means. §409

V **persequor, -ī, -cūtus, —** DEP. (PER + SEQUOR), *to follow perseveringly, follow after, follow up, pursue*

VI **persevērō, -are, -āvī, -ātus** (PERSEVERUS), *to abide, adhere strictly, continue steadfastly, persist, persevere*

VII ***sīn…persevērāret,*** protasis of fut. less vivid condition in indir. disc. §589

reminīscerētur[I] [II] et veteris[III] incommodī[IV] populī Rōmānī et prīstinæ[V] virtūtis[VI] Helvētiōrum

=he should remember both the ancient inconvenience of the Roman people and the former valor of the Helvetii

~that he ought to remember both the ancient misfortune of the Roman people and the pristine valor of the Helvetii

He thus treats with Cæsar:-that, *"if the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetii they would go to that part and there remain, where Cæsar might appoint and desire them to be; but if he should persist in persecuting them with war that he ought to remember both the ancient disgrace of the Roman people and the characteristic valor of the Helvetii.*

I ***reminīscerētur ... incommodī ... virtūtis***, apodosis of fut. less vivid condition in indir. disc. §589 & A clause depending upon a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause. §593

II **reminīscor, reminīscī, rementus sum, —** DEP., with gen., *recollect* or *remember*

III **vetus, -a, -um**, ADV., *old, aged, ancient; long-standing; former, previous*

IV **incommodum, -ī**, N. (INCOMMODUS), *inconvenience, trouble, disadvantage, detriment, injury, misfortune, loss*

V **prīstinus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PRIUS + TINUS; PRO-), *former, early, original, primitive, pristine*

VI ***incommodī…virtūtis,*** gen. with the v. *reminīscerētur.* Verbs of remembering and forgetting take either the Accusative or the Genitive of the object: iii. Remīniscor is rare. It takes the Accusative in the literal sense of call to mind, recollect; the Genitive in the more figurative sense of be mindful of. §350iii

I.XIII.IV

QVOD IMPROVISO VNVM PAGVM ADORTVS ESSET, CVM EI QVI FLVMEN TRANSISSENT SVIS AVXILIVM FERRE NON POSSENT, NE OB EAM REM AVT SVÆ MAGNOPERE VIRTVTI TRIBVERET AVT IPSOS DESPICERET.

Quod imprōvīsō[I] ūnum pāgum adortus esset[II] [III]

=because he (Cæsar) had unexpectedly attacked one canton

~the fact that he had attacked one canton by surprise

cum eī

=(at a time) when those men

~(at a time) when those

quī flūmen trānsīssent[IV]

=who had crossed the river

~who had crossed the river

suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent[V]

=were not able to bear assistance to their own men

~could not bring assistance to their friends

I **imprōvīsus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IN + PROVISUS), *not foreseen, unforeseen, unexpected*; Hence, adv., **imprōvīso**, *on a sudden, unexpectedly*

II **adorior, -īrī, -ortus, —** DEP. (AD + ORIOR), *to approach as an enemy, fall upon, assail, assault, attack*

III ***quod…adortus esset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question, expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse. §592

IV ***quī…trānsīssent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

V ***cum…possent***, subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

nē ob eam rem aut suæ magnopere[I] virtūtī tribueret[II] aut ipsōs dēspiceret[III] [IV]

=nor, on account of that thing, should he ascribe with great labor (greatly) to his own valor, or look down on (those men) themselves (the Helvetians)

~he ought not on that account value highly his own valor, or despise them

As to his having attacked one canton by surprise, [at a time] when those who had crossed the river could not bring assistance to their friends, that he ought not on that account to ascribe very much to his own valor, or despise them.

I **māgnoperē** (OR **māgnō opere**), ADV. (ABL. OF MAGNUM OPUS), *very much, greatly, exceedingly, particularly*

II **tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (TRIBUS), *to assign, impart, allot, bestow, confer, yield, give*; With *multum*, *plurimum*, or *magnopere*, *to value highly, set great store by, make much of*

III **dēspiciō, -ere, -ēxī, -ectus** (DE + SPECIO), *to look down upon*; With acc, *to look down upon, despise, disdain*

IV ***nē…tribueret…dēspiceret,*** neg. command in indir. disc. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well. §588

I.XIII.V

SE ITA A PATRIBVS MAIORIBVSQVE SVIS DIDICISSE, VT MAGIS VIRTVTE QVAM DOLO CONTENDERENT AVT INSIDIIS NITERENTVR.

Sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque[I] [II] suīs didicisse[III] [IV]

=(and) that they had so learned from (their) fathers and their ancestors

~that they had so learned from their sires and ancestors

ut magis[V] virtūte[VI] quam dolō[VII] [VIII] contenderent

=that they fought more by <means of> valor than /relied/ by <means of> artifice

~as to fight more on valor than /rely on/ artifice

I ***ā patribus maiōribusque***, abl. of source. The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists. §403

II ***maiōribusque***, see magnus, -a, -um, Lit., of physical size or quantity, great, large; Of things, vast, extensive, spacious, etc.; Trop. In gen., great, grand, mighty, noble, lofty, important, of great weight or importance; Esp. Of measure, weight, quantity, great, much, abundant, considerable, etc.;

III **discō, -ere, didicī, —** (DIC-), *to learn, learn to know, acquire, become acquainted with*

IV ***sē…didicisse,*** indir. disc. §580

V **magis**, ADV. COMP. (MAC-), *more, in a higher degree, more completely*—With adj. or adv.

VI ***virtūte***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

VII ***magis virtūte…quam dolō,*** comparison. Some Prepositions and Adverbs which imply comparison are followed, like comparatives, by quam, which may be separated by several words, or even clauses. Such words are ante, prius, post, posteā, prīdi, postrīdiē; also magis and præ in compounds. §434; abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

VIII **dolus, -ī**, M., *a device, artifice, contrivance*

aut īnsidiīs[I II III] nīterentur[IV V]

=relied // or traps *~rely on // or artifice*

That they had so learned from their sires and ancestors, as to rely more on valor than on artifice and stratagem.

I ***īnsidiīs***, abl. with special v. *nīterentur.* Several verbs are followed by the Ablative. These are acquiēscō, dēlector, lætor, gaudeō, glōrior, nītor, stō, maneō, fīdō, cōnfīdō, cōnsistō, contineor. §431

II **īnsidiæ, -ārum**, F. (SED-), *a snare, trap*; Fig., *artifice, crafty device, plot, snare*

III ***īnsidiīs***, abl. of means, Means, Instrument, Manner, and Accompaniment are denoted by the Instrumental Ablative (see §398), but some of these uses more commonly require a preposition. As they all come from one source (the old Instrumental Case) no sharp line can be drawn between them, and indeed the Romans themselves can hardly have thought of any distinction. Thus, in omnibus precibus ōrābant, they entreated with every [kind of] prayer, the ablative, properly that of means, cannot be distinguished from that of manner. §408

IV **nītor, -ī, nīxus, —** DEP. (CNI-), *to bear upon, press upon, lean, support oneself; To rest, rely, depend upon*

V ***ut…contenderent…nīterentur,*** subst. clause of result. Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by ut, so that (negative, ut nōn), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb. Pure Clauses of Result, with ut or ut nōn, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. § 537

I.XIII.VI

QVARE NE COMMITTERET VT IS LOCVS VBI CONSTITISSENT EX CALAMITATE POPVLI ROMANI ET INTERNECIONE EXERCITVS NOMEN CAPERET AVT MEMORIAM PRODERET.

Quārē[I] nē committeret[II III]

=wherefore, he should not bring to pass

~for which reason, let him not give occasion

ut is locus

=that this place

~that the place

ubi cōnstitissent[IV]

=where they had stood

~where they were standing

I **quārē** (OR **quā rē**) ADV. (QUĀ + RĒ), Interrog., *by what means? how?*; Transf., for joining on a consecutive clause, *for which reason, wherefore, therefore*, Lit. *by which matter* (thing)

II **committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (COM + MITTŌ), *To bring together, join, combine, put together, connect, unite*; With *ut, to be guilty* or *be in fault, so that, to give occasion* or *cause, that, to act so as that;* Transf., of a battle, *war: prœlium, certamen, bellum,* etc., *To arrange a battle* or *contest, to enter upon, engage in, begin, join, commence, "Cæsar cohortatus suos prœlium commisit"* (I.XXV); With *ut, to be guilty* or *be in fault, so that, to give occasion* or *cause, that, to act so as that:* With *cur* or *quare: "neque commissum a se, quare timeret,"* (I.XIV)

III ***nē committerent***, hortatory subj. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an exhortation or a command. The negative is nē. § 439

IV ***ubi cōnstitissent,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne[I] [II] exercitūs nōmen[III] caperet[IV]

=should take (its) name, from the calamity of the Roman people and from the annihilation of the an army (Cæsar's army)

~should inherit a name, from the disaster of the Roman people and the destruction of their army

aut memoriam prōderet[V] [VI]

=or put forth the memory (i.e., of such an event to posterity)

~or hand down the remembrance [of such an event to posterity]

Wherefore let him not bring it to pass that the place, where they were standing, should acquire a name, from the disaster of the Roman people and the destruction of their army or transmit the remembrance [of such an event to posterity]."

I ***calamitāte…interneciōne***, abl. of source. The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists. §403

II **interneciō, -ōnis**, F. (INTER + NEC-), *a massacre, slaughter, carnage, extermination, destruction*

III **nōmen, -inis**, N. (GNA-), *a means of knowing, name, appellation*

IV ***caperet***, subj. of result. after *ut*

V **prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus** (PRO + DO), *to put forth, exhibit, reveal; To put forth, relate, report, record, hand down, transmit*

VI ***ut…caperet…prōderet,*** clause of purpose. §531

I.XIV

Cæsar lays down conditions.

I.XIV.I

HIS CÆSAR ITA RESPONDIT: EO SIBI MINVS DVBITATIONIS DARI, QVOD EAS RES QVAS LEGATI HELVETII COMMEMORASSENT MEMORIA TENERET, ATQVE EO GRAVIVS FERRE QVO MINVS MERITO POPVLI ROMANI ACCIDISSENT: QVI SI ALICVIVS INIVRIÆ SIBI CONSCIVS FVISSET, NON FVISSE DIFFICILE CAVERE; SED EO DECEPTVM, QVOD NEQVE COMMISSVM A SE INTELLEGERET QVARE TIMERET NEQVE SINE CAVSA TIMENDVM PVTARET.

“EO MIHI MINUS DUBITATIONIS DATUR, QUOD EAS RES QUAS LEGATI HELVETII COMMEMORAVERUNT (OR VOS COMMEMORASTIS) MEMORIA TENEO ATQUE EO GRAVIUS FERO, QUO MINUS MERITO, POPULI ROMANI ACCIDERUNT, QUI SI…SIBI CONSCIUS FUISSET, NON FUIT DIFFICILE CAVERE, SED EO DECEPTUS EST, QUOD NEQUE COMMISSUM A SE INTELLEGEBAT QUA RE TIMERET, NEQUE SINE CAUSE TIMENDUM PUTABAT.”

Hīs Cæsar ita respondit

=Cæsar replied to these men (the Helvetian embassy) thus

~to these words Cæsar thus replied

eō[I] [II] sibi minus dubitātiōnis[III] [IV] darī[V]

=that, in this, the less of doubt was given to him

~that on that very account the less of hesitation was brought about to him

quod eās rēs

=(namely,) because /he held in memory/ those things

~because /he remembered/ those circumstances

quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorā[vi]ssent[VI] [VII]

=which the Helvetian ambassadors had recalled to memory

~which the Helvetian embassadors had brought to mind

I ***eō***, abl. of cause. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §404

II **eō**, ADV. abl. of pron. (I-), Locat. and abl. uses, *there, in that place;* In dat. uses, With the idea of motion, *to that place, thither* (=*in eum locum*); In abl. uses., of cause=*eā re.* Referring to a cause or reason before given, *therefore, on that account, for that reason*

III ***dubitātiōnis***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, used as nouns:— "plūs dolōris" (I.XX), more grief. §3463

IV **dubitātiō, -ōnis**, F. (DUBITO), *uncertainty, doubt, perplexity; A wavering, hesitating, hesitancy, irresolution, delay*

V ***minus ... darī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *respondit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

VI ***quās…commemorāssent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

VII **commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (COM + MEMORŌ), *to recall to memory, call to mind, be mindful of, keep in mind, remember; To bring to mind, remind of, recall*

memoriā[I] tenēret[II]

=he held in memory *~he remembered*

I *memoriā*, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II ***quod…tenēret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. Note 1. Quod introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Quia regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. Quoniam, inasmuch as, since, when now, now that, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative. ii. Causal clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see §580). §540ii & §583

atque eō [se] gravius[I] ferre quō minus[II] meritō[III] [IV] populī Rōmānī[V] accidissent[VI] [VII]

I **gravis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. GRAVIOR, AND SUP. GRAVISSIMUS (GAR-), *heavy, weighty, ponderous, burdensome, loaded, laden, burdened*; Trop. In a bad sense, *heavy, burdensome, oppressive, troublesome, grievous, painful, hard, harsh, severe, disagreeable, unpleasant*

II ***eō gravius…quō minus,*** abl. of deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. i. The ablatives quō ... eō (hōc), and quantō ... tantō, are used correlatively with comparatives, like the English the ... the. Note. To this construction are doubtless to be referred all cases of quō and eō (hōc) with a comparative, even when they have ceased to be distinctly felt as degree of difference and approach the Ablative of Cause. §414i

III ***meritō***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §481

IV **meritus, -a, -um** ADJ., **mereor, -ērī, itus, —** DEP., *to deserve, merit, to be entitled to, be worthy of a thing;* constr. with acc., with *ut*, with *ne*, with inf., and absol; **meritō**, adv., *according to desert, deservedly, justly*; **meritum, -ī**, n., (ppp. of mero), *a merit, service, kindness, benefit, favor*

V ***populī Rōmānī,*** obj. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Cæsar, as odium, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as hate. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase amor patris, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive). §348

VI ***quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent***, clause of purpose containing a comp. Conditions are either (i) Particular or (ii) General: A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time. §513i

VII **accidō, -ere, -cidī, —** (AD + CADO), *to fall upon* or *down upon* a thing, *to reach* it *by falling;* In gen., *to fall out, come to pass, happen, occur;* and With Dat. pers., *to happen to, to befall one.* (The distinction between the syn.

=and that by so much the more heavily [he (Cæsar)] was bearing, by how much according to the merit of the Roman people (those circumstances which he was holding in memory) they had fallen

~and was the more indignant at them, the less they had occurred in accordance with the desserts of the Roman people

quī sī alicuius iniūriæ sibi[I] cōnscius[II] fuisset[III]

=which if (the Roman people) had been conscious, to itself, of any wrong-doing

~for if they had been conscious of any wrong-doing

nōn fuisse difficile[IV] cavēre[V]

=it would not have been difficult to guard against

~it would not have been difficult to be on their guard

evenio, *accido*, and *contingo* is this: *evenio*, i.e. *ex-venio*, is used of either fortunate or unfortunate events: *accido*, of occurrences which take us by surprise; hence it is used either of an indifferent, or, which is its general use, of an unfortunate occurrence: *contingo*, i.e. *contango*, indicates that an event accords with one's wishes; and hence is generally used of fortunate events.)

I ***sibi***, dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed. §376

II **cōnscius**, ADJ. (COM- + SCIO), *knowing in common, conscious with, privy, participant, accessory, witnessing*

III ***sī…fuisset,*** protasis of past contrary to fact condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

IV **difficilis, -e**, ADJ. (DIS- + FACILIS), *hard, difficult, troublesome, impracticable, laborious, perilous*

V **caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus** (CAV-), *to be on one's guard, take care, take heed, beware, guard against, avoid*

sed eō[I] [populum Rōmān] dēceptum [esse][II] [III]

=but, in <the cause of> this thing, they [the Roman people] were deceived	*~but on that account they had been deceived*

quod neque

=(namely,) because neither	*~because neither*

[aliquid] commissum [esse][IV] ā sē[V]

=that [anything (i.e. any crime, wrong-doing ...)] was occasioned by themselves	*~that any offense had been given by them*

I ***eō***, abl. of cause. §404

II ***sed eō dēceptum [est]***, apodosis of past contrary to fact condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. ii. In changing a Condition contrary to fact (§517) into the Indirect Discourse, the following points require notice: The Protasis always remains unchanged in tense. The Apodosis, if active, takes a peculiar infinitive form, made by combining the Participle in -ūrus with fuisse. If the verb of the Apodosis is passive or has no supine stem, the periphrasis futūrum fuisse ut (with the Imperfect Subjunctive) must be used. An Indicative in the Apodosis becomes a Perfect Infinitive. §589ii

III **dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** (DE + CAPIO), *to catch, ensnare, entrap, beguile, elude, deceive, cheat*; Fig., *to deceive, elude*

IV ***commissum [esse] ā sē***, indir. disc. dependent on *intellegeret.* §580

V ***ā sē***, abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action. Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy. Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule. §405

intellegeret

=he was aware *~were they aware*

[quicquam][I] quārē timēret[II]

=for which reason [anyone] should fear *~on account of which they should be afraid*

neque

=nor *~nor*

sine causā timendum [esse][III]

=that it is <having> to be feared (by them) without cause *~that they ought to be afraid without cause*

putāret[IV]

=did he think *~did they think*

To these words Cæsar thus replied:-that "on that very account he felt less hesitation, because he kept in remembrance those circumstances which the Helvetian embassadors had mentioned, and that he felt the more indignant at them, in proportion as they had happened undeservedly to the Roman people: for if they had been conscious of having done any wrong, it would not have been difficult to be on their guard, but for that very reason had they been deceived, because neither were they aware that any offense had been given by them, on account of which they should be afraid, nor did they think that they ought to be afraid without cause.

I **quisquam** M., **quicquam**, n. PRON. INDEF. (QUIS, QUID + QUAM), As adj., *any, any one*; As subst., *any man, anybody, any person, any one whatever, anything*

II ***quārē timēret,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

III **timeō, -ēre, uī, —** (TEM-), *to fear, be afraid, be fearful, be apprehensive, be afraid of, dread, apprehend*

IV ***quod…intellegeret…putāret***, subordinate clause in indir. disc. §540 & §583

I.XIV.II

QVOD SI VETERIS CONTVMELIÆ OBLIVISCI VELLET, NVM ETIAM RECENTIVM INIVRIARVM, QVOD EO INVITO ITER PER PROVINCIAM PER VIM TEMPTASSENT, QVOD ÆDVOS, QVOD AMBARROS, QVOD ALLOBROGAS VEXASSENT, MEMORIAM DEPONERE POSSE?

"QUOD SI…OBLIVISCI VELIT (VELIM), NUM ETIAM RECENTIUM INIURIARUM, QUOD ME INVITO ITER … TEMPTASTIS, QUOD HÆDUOS, …VEXASTIS, MEMORIAM DEPONERE POTEST (POSSUM)."

Quod sī veteris contumēliæ[I] [II] oblīvīscī[III] vellet[IV]

=but if he (Cæsar) was willing to forget the old insult

~but if he were willing to forget their former outrage

num[V] etiam recentium[VI] iniūriārum[VII]

=then (could you really believe?) // also, of the recent wrongs

~now, also, of the late wrongs

I ***contumēliæ***, gen. with v. *oblīvīscī.* Verbs of remembering and forgetting take either the Accusative or the Genitive of the object: ii. Meminī takes the Genitive when it means to be mindful or regardful of a person or thing, to think of somebody or something (often with special interest or warmth of feeling). So oblīvīscor in the opposite sense,—to disregard, or dismiss from the mind,—and the adjective oblītus, careless or regardless. §350

II **contumēlia, -æ**, f. (com- + TEM-), *insult, abuse, affront, reproach, invective, contumely*

III **oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus, —** DEP. (OB + LIV-), with gen. of person or thing, *to forget; To forget, disregard, omit, neglect, be indifferent to, cease from*

IV ***quod sī…vellet,*** protasis of simple pres. condition in indir. disc. §589

V **num**, ADV. (NV-), Of time, *now*; As interrog particle. Introducing a direct question, usu. expecting a negative answer, *then, now* (often only rendered by the interrogative form of the sentence): *num videntur convenire hæc nuptiis? dœs this look like a wedding?*

VI **recēns, -entis**, ADJ., *lately arisen, not long in existence, fresh, young, recent*

VII ***iniūriārum***, obj. gen. §348

quod

=because *~in that*

eō invītō[I]

=with him (Cæsar) <being> unwilling *~they had against his will*

iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent[II] [III]

=(namely,) that they had attempted a route through the Province by <the agency of> force *~in that they attempted a route through the Province perforce*

quod Æduōs [vexāssent][IV]

=that [they had harassed] the Ædui *~the Ædui*

quod Ambarrōs [vexāssent]

=that [they had harassed] the Ambarri *~the Ambarri*

quod Allobrogas [vexāssent]

=that [they had harassed] the Allobroges *~and the Allobroges*

I ***eō invītō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

II ***quod…temptāssent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §572 & §583

III **tempto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (TENDO), *to handle, touch, feel* a thing; to try; *to prove, put to the test; to attempt, essay* a course of action, etc—In gen., constr. with acc., with inf., with rel. clause, with *ut*, or absol.

IV **vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (VEHO), *to shake, jolt, toss violently;* Transf., In gen., *to injure, damage, molest, annoy, distress, plague, trouble, maltreat, abuse, vex, harass, disquiet, disturb, torment,* etc.

vexāssent[I]

=they had harassed *~they had plagued*

memoriam dēpōnere[II] posse[III]

=/then/ could (he) lay aside the memory? *~could he also lay aside the memory?*

But even if he were willing to forget their former outrage, could he also lay aside the remembrance of the late wrongs, in that they had against his will attempted a route through the Province by force, in that they had molested the Aedui, the Ambarri, and the Allobroges?

I.XIV.III

QVOD SVA VICTORIA TAM INSOLENTER GLORIARENTVR, QVODQVE TAM DIV SE IMPVNE INIVRIAS TVLISSE ADMIRARENTVR, EODEM PERTINERE.

"QUOD VESTRA VICTORIA…GLORIAMINI, QUODQUE TAM DIU VOS IMPUNE INIURIAS TULISSE ADMIRAMINI, EODEM PERTINET."

I ***quod…vexāssent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A peculiar form of Substantive Clause consists of quod (in the sense of that, the fact that) with the Indicative. The clause in the Indicative with quod is used when the statement is regarded as a fact. Note. Like other substantive clauses, the clause with quod may be used as subject, as object, as appositive, etc., but it is commonly either the subject or in apposition with the subject. §572 & A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

II **dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** (DĒ + PŌNŌ), *to lay away, put aside, set down, lay, place, set, deposit*; Trop. With a predominant notion of putting away, *removing,* etc., *to lay down, lay aside, give up, resign, get rid of*

III ***num…posse,*** question in indir. disc. A question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. A real question, asking for an answer, is generally put in the Subjunctive; a rhetorical question, asked for effect and implying its own answer, is put in the Infinitive. §586

Quod suā victoriā[I] [II] tam[III] īnsolenter[IV] glōriārentur[V] [VI]

=<as to> what they gloried so insolently in their own victory

~that as to their so insolently boasting of their victory

quodque

=and <as to> what

~and that

tam diū[VII] sē impūne[VIII] iniūriās tulisse[IX] [X]

=that for so long to have borne injuries with impunity

~that they had so long conducted their outrages with impunity

I ***suā victoriā***, abl. of cause. §404

II **vīctōria, -æ**, F. (VICTOR), In war, *victory*

III **tam**, ADV. (TA-), correl. with *quam* in comparisons, implying equality of degree, *in such a degree, as much, so, so much*; With a general comp. clause understood (= sic, ita), *so* (*so much*) *as I do, as you do, as he did, as I said before, as he is, as you are*, etc. With adj.—"*tam necessario tempore," tam propinquis hostibus," at so urgent a time as this* (I.XVI.IV)

IV **īnsolenter**, ADV. (INSOLENS), *unusually, contrary to custom; Immoderately, haughtily, insolently*

V **glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (GLORIA), *to boast, vaunt, glory, brag, pride oneself*

VI ***quod…glōriārentur,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §572 & §583

VII **diū**, ADV. WITH COMP. **diūtius**, AND SUP. **diūtissimē** (DIV-), *by day, all day;* Lit., a space of time, *a while*; hence, with intens. signif., *A long time, long while, long, "diu atque acriter pugnatum est,"* (I.XXVI), *"ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare"* (I.XVI); Comp., **diūtius**, *longer*; In the historians freq. = *a long while, very long*, no comparison being intended, "*ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur,"* (I.XLIX)

VIII **impūne**, ADV. (IMPUNIS), *without punishment, unpunished, with impunity*

IX **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** (FER-, TAL-), *to bear, carry, support, lift, hold, take up; To carry, take, fetch, move, bear, lead, conduct, drive, direct*

X ***se … tulisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *admirarentur.* §580

admīrārentur[I] [II]

=they wondered	*~they were being astonished*

eōdem pertinēre[III]

=(both of these things) tend to the same (thing)	*~[both these things] tended to the same point*

That as to their so insolently boasting of their victory, and as to their being astonished that they had so long committed their outrages with impunity, [both these things] tended to the same point.

I.XIV.IV

CONSVESSE ENIM DEOS IMMORTALES, QVO GRAVIVS HOMINES EX COMMVTATIONE RERVM DOLEANT, QVOS PRO SCELERE EORVM VLCISCI VELINT, EIS SECVNDIORES INTERDVM RES ET DIVTVRNIOREM IMPVNITATEM CONCEDERE.

"CONSUERUNT ENIM DI IMMORTALES QUO GRAVIUS HOMINES…DOLEANT, QUOS PRO SCELERE EORUM ULCISCI VOLUNT … HIS IMPUNITATEM CONCEDERE."

Cōnsuē[vi]sse[IV] [V] enim[VI] deōs immortālēs[VII]

=for the immortal gods had been wont	*~for the immortal gods are wont*

I **admīror, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (AD + MĪROR), *to regard with wonder, admire; To regard with wonder, wonder at, be astonished*

II ***quod…admīrārentur,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §572 & §583

III ***eōdem pertinēre***, indir. disc. dependent on *respondit.* §580

IV ***Cōnsuē[vi]sse enim deōs immortālēs***, indir. disc. §580

V **consuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus** INCH., *to become used, accustom oneself*— Hence, perf, *to be wont, be accustomed*

VI **enim**, CONJ. (usu. after the first word in its clause). In explaining or specifying, *for, for instance, namely, that is to say, I mean, in fact*

VII **immortālis, -e**, ADJ., *undying, immortal*

quō gravius hominēs ex[I] commūtātiōne[II III] rērum doleant[IV V]

=<in order> that the men may suffer the more severely from a change of circumstances

~in order that they may suffer the more severely from a reverse of circumstances

quōs prō scelere[VI] eōrum ulcīscī velint[VII VIII]

=(those men) whom, on account of the wickedness of those men, they wish to punish

~to those persons whom they wish to punish for their wickedness

I ***ex***, Ex, ē, from (the midst, opposed to in), out of, with the ablative (cf. ab and dē). Idiomatically or less exactly: ex cōnsulātū, right after his consulship: ex êius sententiā, according to his opinion; ex æquō, justly; ex imprōvīsō, unexpectedly; ex tuā rē, to your advantage; māgnā ex parte, in a great degree; ex equō pūgnāre, to fight on horseback; ex ūsū, expedient; ē regiōne, opposite; quærere ex aliquō, to ask of some one; ex senātūs cōnsultō, according to the decree of the senate; ex fugā, in [their] flight (proceeding immediately from it); ūnus ē fīliīs, one of the sons. §221

II ***ex commūtātiōne,*** abl. of source. §403

III **commūtātiō, -ōnis**, F. (COMMUTO), *a changing, change, alteration*

IV ***quō…doleant,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. The ablative quō (= ut eō) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative. §531 & §583

V **doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus** (DAL-), Corporeally, *to feel pain, suffer, be in pain, ache*; Mentally. Of personal subjects, *to grieve for, deplore, lament, be sorry for, be afflicted at* or on account of any thing—With *de* or *ex*

VI **scelus, -eris**, N. (SCEL-), *a wicked deed, heinous act, crime, sin, enormity, wickedness*

VII ***velint***, *Cupio, malo, nolo, studeo,* and *volo* frequently have the Infinitive without a Subject Accusative (Complementary Infinitive); as, *ulcisci velint, may wish to punish* (I.XIV)

VIII ***quōs…velint,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

eīs[I] secundiōrēs[II] interdum[III] rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem[IV] concēdere

=to sometimes concede to those men // more favorable things and a longer impunity

~to sometimes allow those men // a greater prosperity and longer impunity

For the immortal gods are wont to allow those persons whom they wish to punish for their guilt sometimes a greater prosperity and longer impunity, in order that they may suffer the more severely from a reverse of circumstances.

I.XIV.V

CVM EA ITA SINT, TAMEN, SI OBSIDES AB EIS SIBI DENTVR, VTI EA QVÆ POLLICEANTVR FACTVROS INTELLEGAT, ET SI ÆDVIS DE INIVRIIS QVAS IPSIS SOCIISQVE EORVM INTVLERINT, ITEM SI ALLOBROGIBVS SATISFACIANT, SESE CVM EIS PACEM ESSE FACTVRVM.

"CUM EA ITA SINT, TAMEN SI OBSIDES A VOBIS MIHI DABUNTUR, UTI EA QUÆ POLLICEMINI (VOS) FACTUROS INTELLEGAM, ET SI HÆDUIS DE INIURIIS QUAS… INTULISTIS…SATISFACIETIS, (EGO) VOBIS CUM PACEM FACIAM."

Cum ea ita sint[V], tamen

=though these things are so, yet

~although these things are so, yet

I ***eīs***, dat. with comp. v. *concēdere.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

II **secundus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (SEQUOR), In time or order, *following, next, second*; pl. n. as subst., *favorable circumstances, good fortune*

III **interdum**, ADV. (INTER + DUM), *sometimes, occasionally, now and then*

IV **impūnitās, -ātis**, F. (IMPUNIS), *freedom from punishment, safety, impunity*

V ***cum…sint,*** *cum* concessive clause in indir. disc. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549 & §583

sī obsidēs ab eīs[I] sibi dentur[II]

=if hostages should be given to him by those men | *~if hostages were to be given him by them*

utī

=<in order> that | *~in order that*

ea

=the things | *~the things*

quæ polliceantur[III] [IV]

=which they promised | *~which they promise*

[eos] factūrōs [esse][V]

=[those men] would do | *~these will do*

I ***ab eīs***, abl. of agent. §405

II ***sī…dentur,*** protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. i. The Present Subjunctive in the apodosis of less vivid future conditions (§516ii) becomes the Future Infinitive like the Future Indicative in the apodosis of more vivid future conditions. Thus there is no distinction between more and less vivid future conditions in the Indirect Discourse. §589i

III ***quæ polliceantur,*** rel. clause in indir. disc. §583

IV **polliceor, -ērī, -itus**, DEP. (PRO + LICEOR), *to hold forth, offer, promise*

V ***factūrōs [esse],*** indir. disc. dependent on *intellegat.* §580

intellegat[I]

=*he (Cæsar) may know* ~*he may be assured*

et sī Æduīs dē iniūriīs

=*and if, for the injuries, to the Ædui* ~*for the outrages*

quās ipsīs sociīsque[II] eōrum intulerint[III]

=*(those things) which they had borne upon themselves (Hædui) and allies (the Ambarri) of those men* ~*which they had committed against them and their allies*

I **utī…intellegat,** subordinate clause in indir. disc. The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534). §536 & The relative clause of Characteristic with the Subjunctive is a development peculiar to Latin. A relative clause in the Indicative merely states something as a fact which is true of the antecedent; a characteristic clause (in the Subjunctive) defines the antecedent as a person or thing of such a character that the statement made is true of him or it and of all others belonging to the same class. Thus,— nōn potest exercitum is continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn continet (indicative) means simply, that commander who does not (as a fact) restrain himself cannot restrain his army; whereas nōn potest exercitum is continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn contineat (subjunctive) would mean, that commander who is not such a man as to restrain himself, etc., that is, who is not characterized by self-restraint. This construction has its origin in the potential use of the subjunctive (§445) Thus, in the example just given, quī sē ipse nōn contineat would mean literally, who would not restrain himself (in any supposable case), and this potential idea passes over easily into that of general quality or characteristic. The characterizing force is most easily felt when the antecedent is indefinite or general. But this usage is extended in Latin to cases which differ but slightly from statements of fact, as in some of the examples below. The use of the Subjunctive to express Result comes from its use in Clauses of Characteristic. Thus, nōn sum ita hebes ut hæc dīcam means literally, I am not dull in the manner (degree) in which I should say this, hence, I am not so dull as to say this. Since, then, the characteristic often appears in the form of a supposed result, the construction readily passes over into Pure Result, with no idea of characteristic; as,— "tantus in cūriā clāmor factus est ut populus concurreret" (Verr. 2.47), such an outcry was made in the senate-house that the people hurried together. §534 & §583

II **ipsīs sociīsque,** dat. with comp. v. *intulerint.* §370

III **quās…intulerint,** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

item sī Allobrogibus[I] satisfaciant[II] [III]

=(and) likewise, if they should give satisfaction to the Allobroges

~and provided they will give satisfaction to the Ædui, and likewise to the Allobroges

sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum[IV]

=he (Cæsar) would make peace with those men (the Helvetians)

~he [Cæsar] will make peace with them

Although these things are so, yet, if hostages were to be given him by them in order that he may be assured these will do what they promise, and provided they will give satisfaction to the Aedui for the outrages which they had committed against them and their allies, and likewise to the Allobroges, he [Cæsar] will make peace with them."

I.XIV.VI

DIVICO RESPONDIT: ITA HELVETIOS A MAIORIBVS SVIS INSTITVTOS ESSE VTI OBSIDES ACCIPERE, NON DARE, CONSVERINT: EIVS REI POPVLVM ROMANVM ESSE TESTEM.

Dīvicō respondit

=Divicus responded

~Divico replied

I ***Allobrogibus***, dat. with special v. *satisfaciant.* The Dative is used: With verbs compounded with satis, bene, and male. §368ii

II **satisfaciō** (or ***satis faciō***), **-ere, -fēcī, -factus** (satis + faciō; FAC-), *to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; To give satisfaction, make amends, make reparation, make excuse, apologize*

III ***sī…satisfaciant,*** protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589i

IV ***sēsē…esse factūrum,*** indir. disc. dependent on respondit. §580

ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs[I] īnstitūtōs esse[II] [III]

=that the Helvetii had been fixed by their own ancestors thus *~that the Helvetii had been so taught by their ancestors*

utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint[IV]

=that they have been wont to receive hostages, not to give (hostages) *~that they were accustomed to receive, not to give hostages*

eius reī populum Rōmānum esse[V] testem[VI]

=of that thing the Roman people were witness *~of that fact the Roman people were witness*

Divico replied, that *"the Helvetii had been so trained by their ancestors, that they were accustomed to receive, not to give hostages; of that fact the Roman people were witness."*

I.XIV.VII

HOC RESPONSO DATO DISCESSIT.

Hōc respōnsō datō[VII]

=with this reply <having been> given *~having given this reply*

I ***ā maiōribus suīs,*** abl. of agent. §405

II ***Helvētiōs…īnstitūtōs esse,*** indir. disc. §580

III **īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (IN + STATUO), *to put in place, plant, fix, set; To teach, instruct, train up, educate*

IV ***utī…cōnsuērint,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §536 & §583

V ***populum Rōmānum…esse,*** indir. disc. §580

VI **testis, -is**, COMM., *one who attests* any thing (orally or in writing), *a witness*

VII ***hōc respōnsō datō,*** abl. abs. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolūtus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause. §419

discessit[VIII]

=he departed *~he withdrew*

Having given this reply, he withdrew.

VIII **discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus** (DIS + CĒDŌ), *to go apart, part asunder, divide, separate, disperse, scatter*; (With the notion of *cedere* predominating), *to depart from* any place or person, *to go away from, to leave*—Lit. In gen. constr. with *ab*, *ex*, or absol.; Trop. In gen., *to depart, deviate, swerve from; to leave, forsake, give up*

I.XV

The Helvetians resume their march.

I.XV.I

POSTERO DIE CASTRA EX EO LOCO MOVENT.

Posterō[I] diē castra[II] ex eō locō[III] movent[IV]

=on the day after they (the Helveti) moved (their) camp out from that place

~on the following day they move their camp from that place

On the following day they move their camp from that place.

I **posterus**, ADJ. WITH COMP. **posterior**, -**us**, AND SUP. **postremus** (POST), Posit., *coming after, following, next, ensuing, subsequent, future*

II ***posterō diē***, abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

III ***ex eō locō,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

IV **moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus** (MV-), *to move, stir, set in motion, shake, disturb, remove*

I.XV.II

IDEM FACIT CÆSAR EQVITATVMQVE OMNEM, AD NVMERVM QVATTVOR MILIVM, QVEM EX OMNI PROVINCIA ET ÆDVIS ATQVE EORVM SOCIIS COACTVM HABEBAT, PRÆMITTIT, QVI VIDEANT QVAS IN PARTES HOSTES ITER FACIANT.

Idem facit Cæsar

=Cæsar did the same thing

~Cæsar dœs the same

equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium[I]

=and // all the cavalry, near the number of four of thousands

~and // forward all his cavalry, to the number of four thousand

quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Æduīs atque eōrum sociīs[II] coāctum[III] habēbat

=which (he) <having been> collected from every province and from the Ædui and from the allies of those men, he was having

~which he had drawn together from all parts of the Province and from the Ædui and their allies

I ***mīlium,*** part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. “mīlia passuum sescenta” (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). “Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium” (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. “nūlla eārum” (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

II ***ex omnī prōvinciā…Hæduīs…sociīs,*** abl. of source. The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists. §403

III ***coāctum habēbat***, *habeo* with a ppp. in agreement with its Object may have almost the force of a Perfect or Pluperfect tense; as, *quem … coactum habebat, which he had collected*, Lit. *which, having been collected, he was having* (I.XV)

præmittit[I II]

=he sends forward *~sent*

quī videant[III]

=who might see *~to observe*

quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant[IV]

=into what parts the enemy are making a march *~toward what direction the enemy are directing their march*

Cæsar does the same, and sends forward all his cavalry, to the number of four thousand (which he had drawn together from all parts of the Province and from the Aedui and their allies), to observe toward what parts the enemy are directing their march.

I ***præmittit***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

II **præmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (PRÆ + MITTŌ), *to send forward, despatch in advance*

III ***quī videant,*** rel. clause of purpose. The Subjunctive in the clause of Purpose is hortatory in origin, coming through a kind of indirect discourse construction. §529

IV ***quās…faciant,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

I.XV.III

QVI, CVPIDIVS NOVISSIMVM AGMEN INSECVTI, ALIENO LOCO CVM EQVITATV HELVETIORVM PRŒLIVM COMMITTVNT; ET PAVCI DE NOSTRIS CADVNT.

Quī, cupidius[I] novissimum agmen īnsecūtī[II], aliēnō[III] locō[IV]

=(these men) who, too eagerly followed the (enemy's) most recent battle line // in a strange place	*~these, having too passionately pursued the enemy's rear // in a disadvantageous place*

cum equitātū[V] Helvētiōrum prœlium committunt

=they join together battle with the cavalry of the Helvetii	*~commence battle with the cavalry of the Helvetii*

I **cupidus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CVP-), *longing, desiring, desirous, eager, zealous, wishing, loving, fond; Excessively desirous, passionate, eager, greedy, lustful, covetous*; Hence, **cupidē**, ADV., *eagerly*, in a good and bad sense, *zealously, passionately, vehemently, ardently, warmly, partial*

II **īnsequor, -ī, -cūtus, —** DEP. (ĪN + SEQUOR), *to follow, follow after, come next; To pursue, follow up, press upon*

III **aliēnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (ALIUS). In gen., that belongs to another person, place, object, etc., *not one's own, another's, of another, foreign, alien*; *Averse, hostile, unfriendly, unfavorable to*; Transf. to things, as in the histt., *alienus locus*, *a place* or *ground unfavorable* for an engagement, *disadvantageous*

IV ***locō,*** abl. of place where. §429

V **equitātus, -ūs**, M. (EQUITO), *cavalry*

et paucī[I] dē nostrīs[II] [III] cadunt[IV] [V]

=and a few of our men fall *~and a few of our men fell off*

These, having too eagerly pursued the enemy's rear, come to a battle with the cavalry of the Helvetii in a disadvantageous place, and a few of our men fall.

I.XV.IV

QVO PRŒLIO SVBLATI HELVETII, QVOD QVINGENTIS EQVITIBVS TANTAM MVLTITVDINEM EQVITVM PROPVLERANT, AVDACIVS SVBSISTERE NON NVMQVAM ET NOVISSIMO AGMINE PRŒLIO NOSTROS LACESSERE CŒPERVNT.

Quō prœliō[VI] sublātī Helvētiī

=the Helvetii, <having been> lifted by which (this) battle *~the Helvetii, elated with this battle*

I **paucus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PAV-), *few, little*

II ***dē nostrīs,*** abl. with cardinal numerals. §346ii

III ***dē nostrīs**, de* or *ex* are often used with the Ablative instead of the Genitive of the Whole; so regularly with *quidam* and words referring to Number. Thus, *quidam ex his, some of these* (II.XVII); *pauci de nostris, a few of our men* (I.XV)

IV ***cadunt***, hist. pres. §469

V **cadō, -ere, cecidī, casūrus** (CAD-), *to fall, fall down, descend; To fall off, fall away, fall out, drop off, be shed*; In a pregn. signif. (as in most lang., *to fall in battle, to die*), *to fall* so as to be unable to rise, *to fall dead, to fall, die* (opp. vivere), *"pauci de nostris cadunt,"* (I.XV)

VI ***quō prœliō,*** abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

quod quīngentīs equitibus[I] tantam[II] multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant[III]

=because they had by <means of> five hundred horse drove forward so large a body of horse

~because they had with five hundred horse driven away so large a body of horse

I ***quīngentīs equitibus***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II **tantus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TA-), Fol. by a clause of comp., *of such size, of such a measure, so great, such; to be valued, prized, or esteemed so highly*; *to be of such consequence* or *importance*; Followed by a clause of result.*, so great, such*; Esp. *in phrase* ***tantō opere;*** freq. as one word, **tantopere***, so greatly, in so high a degree, so very,* etc

III **prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus** (PRŌ + PELLŌ), *to drive forward, drive forth, drive away, drive out; To drive away, keep off*

audācius[I] subsistere[II] nōn numquam[III] et novissimō[IV] agmine[V] prœliō[VI] [VII] nostrōs lacessere[VIII] cœpērunt[IX]

=began to stand more boldly, not never with (their) newest battle line to provoke our men by <manner of> battle

~began to take a stand more boldly, sometimes too from their rear to provoke our men by an attack

The Helvetii, elated with this battle, because they had with five hundred horse repulsed so large a body of horse, began to face us more boldly, sometimes too from their rear to provoke our men by an attack.

I **audax, -ācis**, ADJ. (FROM AUDEO), *daring*, in a good, but oftener in a bad sense, *bold, courageous, spirited*; *audacious, rash, presumptuous, foolhardy*; Meton., *violent, fierce, proud*—**audacter**, comp

II **subsistō, -ere, -stitī, —** (SUB + SISTŌ), *to take a stand, take position, stand still, remain standing, stop, halt*

III **numquam**, ADV. (NE + UMQUAM), *at no time, never*

IV ***novissimō***, Certain Adjectives often designate a part of that to which they refer; as, *in colle medio, halfway up the hill* (I.XXIV); *prima nocte, in the first part of the night* (I.XXVII); *summus mons, the top of the height* (I.XXII). The Adjectives thus used by Cæsar are *extremus* (as II.V); *infimus* (II.XVIII); *medius; multus* (I.XXII); *novissimus, in novissimum agmen* (I.XV and often), *the rear of a marching column* as the latest part of a column to pass a given point; *primus and summus*

V ***novissimō agmine,*** abl. of means. §409

VI ***prœliō***, dat. with special v. *lacessere.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

VII ***prœliō,*** abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

VIII **lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus** (LAC-), *to excite, provoke, challenge, exasperate, irritate*

IX **cœpiō, -ere, cœpī, cœptus** (COM- + AP-), *to begin, commence*

I.XV.V

CÆSAR SVOS A PRŒLIO CONTINEBAT, AC SATIS HABEBAT IN PRÆSENTIA HOSTEM RAPINIS PABVLATIONIBVS POPVLATIONIBVSQVE PROHIBERE.

Cæsar suōs ā prœliō[I] continēbat

=Cæsar (however) was restraing his own men from battle

~Cæsar [however] restrained his men from battle

ac satis [esse] habēbat[II] in præsentiā[III] hostem rapīnīs[IV] pābulātiōnibus[V] populātiōnibusque[VI] prohibēre

=and he was held (the defense) [to be] sufficient in the present to prohibit the enemy from rapine, from forage, and from depredation

~thought it sufficient for the present to prevent the enemy from rapine, forage, and depredation

Cæsar [however] restrained his men from battle, deeming it sufficient for the present to prevent the enemy from rapine, forage, and depredation.

I ***ā prœliō,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

II **habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** (HAB-), *to have, hold, support, carry, wear*; *To hold, account, esteem, consider, regard* a person or thing in any manner or as any thing; *to think* or *believe* a person or thing *to be* so or so

III **præsentia, -æ**, F. (PRÆSENS), *a being at hand, presence*

IV **rapīna, -æ**, F. (RAP-), *an act of robbery, robbery, plunder*; Esp. in pl., *robbery, plundering, pillage, rapine*

V **pābulātio, -ōnis**, F. (PABULOR), *pasture*; Transf., milit., *a collecting of fodder, a foraging*

VI ***rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque***, abl. of separ. §401

I.XV.VI

ITA DIES CIRCITER QVINDECIM ITER FECERVNT VTI INTER NOVISSIMVM HOSTIVM AGMEN ET NOSTRVM PRIMVM NON AMPLIVS QVINIS AVT SENIS MILIBVS PASSVVM INTERESSET.

Ita diēs circiter[I] quīndecim iter fēcērunt

=for around fifteen days they made a march in such a manner	*~they marched for about fifteen days in such a manner*

utī[II] inter novissimum hostium agmen

=so that between the newest battle line of the enemy	*~that between the enemy's rear and our van*

I **circiter**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (CIRCUS), adv. of duration or distance, with numerals, *about, not far from*; Præp. with acc., of time, *about, near*

II Clauses of Result are often preceded by a word of Measure or Quality, *tam, tantus, ita, sic*, etc.; as, *tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri ... prœlium redintegrarent, so great a change was brought about that our* (men) *renewed the fight* (II.XXVII); *sic muniebatur, ut magnam ... daret facultatem, was so fortified that it afforded a great resource* (I.XXXVIII)

et nostrum [agmen] prīmum nōn amplius[I] [II] quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus[III] passuum[IV] interesset[V] [VI]

=and our first [battle line], there had been not more than five or six miles between

~and our first [battle line], there had been not more than five or six miles between

They marched for about fifteen days in such a manner that there was not more than five or six miles between the enemy's rear and our van.

I ***amplius***, Adjectives and Participles are used as Substantives, frequently in the Plural, less often in the Singular; as, *veri* (Neuter) *simile, probable*, lit, *like truth* (II.XIII); *nostri, our men* (I.LII); *novissimis* (Masculine), f*or the rear*, Lit. *for those last* (I.XXV); *sua, their possessions* (I.XI); *pro viso, as seen*, Lit. *for* (that which was) *seen* (I.XXII)

II **amplus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (AM- (FOR AMBI-) + PLE-), *of large extent, great, ample, spacious, roomy*; Of external splendor, *great, handsome, magnificent, splendid, glorious*; COMP., **amplius***, more, longer, further, besides*—of time, number, and action (while *plus* denotes more in quantity, measure, etc.; *magis*, *more*, in the comparison of quality, and sometimes of action; and *potius*, rather, the choice between different objects or acts), constr. absol., with comp. abl., and, in the case of numerals, like *minus*, *plus*, *propius*, q. v., without *quam* with the nom., acc., or gen., or rarely with the abl. comp., or with *quam*

III ***quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus,*** abl. of comp. The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative (This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point from which we reckon. Thus, "Cicero is eloquent"; but, starting from him we come to Cato, who is "more so than he.") signifying than. §406

IV ***passuum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships).§3462

V **intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus** (INTER + SUM), *to be between, lie between*

VI ***utī…interesset,*** clause of result. The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534). §536

I.XVI

The Æduans do not bring the promised grain.

I.XVI.I

INTERIM COTIDIE CÆSAR ÆDVOS FRVMENTVM QVOD ESSENT PVBLICE POLLICITI FLAGITARE.

Interim[I] cotīdiē[II] Cæsar Æduōs frūmentum[III]

=meanwhile, Cæsar, daily /keptdemanding/ (from) the Ædui, the grain *~meanwhile, Cæsar, daily // the Ædui for the corn*

I **interim**, ADV. (INTER + I-), *meanwhile, in the meantime*

II **cotīdiē**, ADV. (QUOT- + DIES), *daily, every day*

III ***Æduōs frūmentum,*** two acc.—direct obj. and secondary obj. Some verbs of asking and teaching may take two accusatives, one of the Person (direct object), and the other of the Thing (secondary object). §396

quod essent pūblicē[I] polliciti[II]

=which they had promised in behalf of the State (the Æduans)

~which they had promised in the name of their state

flāgitāre[III] [IV]

=kept demanding

~kept pressing

Meanwhile, Cæsar kept daily importuning the Aedui for the corn which they had promised in the name of their state.

I **pūblicus, -a, -um**, ADJ. CONTR. (FROM POPULICUS, FROM POPULUS), *of* or *belonging to the people, State,* or *community; that is done for the sake* or *at the expense of the State; public, common.*; Hence, adv., **publicē**, *on account, at the cost, in behalf,* or *in charge of the State, "frumentum, quod Aedui essent publice polliciti," for the State, in the name of the State* (I.XVI)

II ***quod essent…polliciti,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. §592

III ***flāgitāre***, hist. inf. The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the Nominative. Note. This construction is not strictly historical, but rather descriptive, and is never used to state a mere historical fact. It is rarely found in subordinate clauses. Though occurring in most of the writers of all periods, it is most frequent in the historians Sallust, Livy, Tacitus. It does not occur in Suetonius. §463

IV **flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (FLAG-), *to demand urgently, require, entreat, solicit, press, importune, dun*

I.XVI.II

NAM PROPTER FRIGORA, QVOD GALLIA SVB SEPTENTRIONIBVS, VT ANTE DICTVM EST, POSITA EST, NON MODO FRVMENTA IN AGRIS MATVRA NON ERANT, SED NE PABVLI QVIDEM SATIS MAGNA COPIA SVPPETEBAT: EO AVTEM FRVMENTO QVOD FLVMINE ARARE NAVIBVS SVBVEXERAT PROPTEREA VTI MINVS POTERAT QVOD ITER AB ARARI HELVETII AVERTERANT, A QVIBVS DISCEDERE NOLEBAT.

Nam propter[V] frīgora[VI]

=for, on account of the cold (weather) *~for, in consequence of the coldness*

quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus

=because Gaul // under the 'constellation of stars in the north' *~as Gaul // toward the north*

ut ante[III] dictum est

=as has been said before *~as previously said*

V **propter**, ADV. AND PREP. CONTR. FOR PROPITER, (FROM PROPE), adv., *near, hard by, at hand*; Trop., in stating a cause, *on account of, by reason of, from, for, because of*

VI **frīgus, -oris**, N. (FRIG-), *cold, coldness, coolness, chilliness*—In pl., *"propter frigora ... frumenta in agris matura non erant,"* (I.XVI)

III ***ante***, Ante, in front of, before, with the accusative (cf. post, after): Of time: as, ante bellum, before the war. §221

posita est[I]

=*was situated* ~*was situated*

nōn modo[II] frūmenta in agrīs mātūra[III] nōn erant

=*not only was the grain in the fields not mature* ~*not only was the corn in the fields not ripe*

sed nē pābulī[IV V] quidem[VI] satis magna cōpia suppetēbat

=*but there was not even a sufficiently great supply of fodder in store* ~*but there was not in store a sufficiently large quantity even of fodder*

I **pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** (PORT- (PRO) + SINO), *to put* or *set down* a person or thing, *to put, place, set, lay,* etc. (syn.: colloco, statuo); constr. with acc. alone, or with in and abl., or with adv. of place; sometimes with in and acc., or absol.; Lit. In gen.: *"milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit,"* (I.XXII); In partic. In milit. lang., *to place, post, set, station* a body of troops: *"ibi præsidium ponit,"* (II.V); *To place, set, appoint* a person as a watch or guard, accuser, etc. (less freq. than apponere): *"Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quæ agat, scire possit,"* (I.XX); *To assume, suppose, put* a case (of mere suppositions; only late Lat.):—Hence, **positus, -a, -um**, (P. a., of localities), *placed, situated; situate, standing, lying* anywhere

II **modo**, ADV. (ORIG. ABL. OF MODUS), Qs., by measure, expressing, like *tantum*, a restriction of the idea, *only, merely, but*; Negatively, *non modo ... sed* (*verum*) *etiam* (*et*, or simply *sed*), *not only ... but also*

III **mātūrus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. **mātūrior**, AND SUP. **mātūrissimus**, OR **mātūrrimus**, *ripe, mature; ripe, mature, of age, proper, fit, seasonable, timely*

IV ***pābulī***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Nouns or Pronouns. pars mīlitum, part of the soldiers. quis nostrum, which of us? nihil erat reliquī, there was nothing left. "nēmō eōrum" (VII.LXVI), not a man of them. "māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt" (II.XXIII), they killed a large part of them. §3 46a

V **pābilum, -i**, N. (PA), *food, nourishment*

VI **quidem**, ADV. Expressing emphasis or assurance, *assuredly, certainly, in fact, indeed*; In the phrase, *ne ... quidem, not even*—*"ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem redimere potuisse"*

eō autem frūmentō[I]

=but // that corn

~however // the corn

quod flūmine[II] Ararī nāvibus[III] [IV] subvexerat[V] propterea

=which he had drawn by <means of> ships up the river Arar (Saone), for this reason

~which he had conveyed in ships up the river Saone

ūtī[VI] minus poterat

=he was less able to use

~he was unable to use

quod iter ab Arare[VII] Helvētiī āverterant[VIII]

=because the Helvetii // had turned away (their) march from the Arar (Saone)

~because the Helvetii // had averted their march from the Saone

I ***eō frūmentō***, abl. with special v. *ūtī.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

II ***flūmine***, abl. of place where. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: Freely in poetry: §429i

III ***nāvibus***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

IV **nāvis, -is**, F. (NA-), *a ship*

V **subvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus** (SUB + VEHŌ), *to bear, carry, convey, draw, to support* and *convey, bring up, transport, conduct, carry up*

VI **ūtor, uti, ūsus, —** DEP., Prop., *to use*; With abl. *To make use of, employ;* Of a form or style of speech*, sentiment,* etc.*, to make, adopt, employ*

VII ***ab Arare,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

VIII **āvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus** (Ā + VERTŌ), *to turn away, avert, turn off, remove; To avert, ward off, turn away*

ā quibus[I] discēdere nōlēbat[II]

=(the Helvetii) from whom he was unwilling to depart	*~from whom he was unwilling to retire*

For, in consequence of the coldness (Gaul, being as before said, situated toward the north), not only was the corn in the fields not ripe, but there was not in store a sufficiently large quantity even of fodder: besides he was unable to use the corn which he had conveyed in ships up the river Saone, because the Helvetii, from whom he was unwilling to retire had diverted their march from the Saone.

I.XVI.III

DIEM EX DIE DVCERE ÆDVI: CONFERRI, COMPORTARI, ADESSE DICERE.

Diem ex[III] diē [eum] dūcere[IV] Æduī

=day from day the Ædui kept leading [him (Cæsar)] (on)	*~the Ædui kept delaying from day to day*

[frūmentum] cōnferrī[V VI]

=that [the grain] was being brought together	*~that it was being collected*

I ***ā quibus,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

II **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —** (NE + VOLO), *to wish ... not, will ... not, not to wish, to be unwilling*

III ***ex***, Ex, ē, from (the midst, opposed to in), out of, with the ablative (cf. ab and dē). Of time: as, ex eō diē quīntus, the fifth day from that (four days after); ex hōc diē, from this day forth. §221

IV ***dūcere***, hist. inf. §463

V ***cōnferrī***, hist. inf. §463; indir. disc. dependent on *dīcere.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

VI **cōnferō, cōnferrē, contulī, conlātus** (CŌN + FERRŌ), *to bring together, collect, gather, unite, join*; With *se, to betake oneself, turn, have recourse*

[id] comportārī[I] [II]

=that [it (the grain)] was being carried together *~brought in*

[id] adesse[III] [IV]

=that [it (the grain)] was present (at hand) *~on the road*

[Æduī] dīcere[V]

=[the Ædui] kept saying *~and saying*

The Aedui kept deferring from day to day, and saying that it was being collected-brought in-on the road.

I ***comportārī***, hist. inf. §463; indir. disc. dependent on *dīcere.* §580

II **comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (COM + PORTŌ), *to bring in, carry together, collect, accumulate, gather*

III ***adesse***, hist. inf. §463; indir. disc. dependent on *dīcere.* §580

IV **adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus** (AD + SUM), *to be at, be present, be at hand*

V ***dīcere***, hist. inf. §463

I.XVI.IV

VBI SE DIVTIVS DVCI INTELLEXIT ET DIEM INSTARE, QVO DIE FRVMENTVM MILITIBVS METIRI OPORTERET, CONVOCATIS EORVM PRINCIPIBVS QVORVM MAGNAM COPIAM IN CASTRIS HABEBAT, IN HIS DIVICIACO ET LISCO, QVI SVMMO MAGISTRATVI PRÆERAT, QVEM VERGOBRETVM APPELLANT ÆDVI, QVI CREATVR ANNVVS ET VITÆ NECISQVE IN SVOS HABET POTESTATEM, GRAVITER EOS ACCVSAT QVOD, CVM NEQVE EMI NEQVE EX AGRIS SVMI POSSIT, TAM NECESSARIO TEMPORE, TAM PROPINQVIS HOSTIBVS, AB EIS NON SVBLEVETVR; PRÆSERTIM CVM MAGNA EX PARTE EORVM PRECIBVS ADDVCTVS BELLVM SVSCEPERIT, MVLTO ETIAM GRAVIVS QVOD SIT DESTITVTVS QVERITVR.

Vbi

=when *~when*

sē diūtius dūcī[I]

=that he was being lead (on) too long *~that he was put off too long*

intellēxit

=he understood *~he saw*

et diem īnstāre[II III]

=and that the day was drawing nigh *~and that the day was approaching*

I *se ... dūcī,* indir. disc. dependent on *intellēxit.* §580

II ***et diem īnstāre***, indir. disc. §580

III **īnstō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus** (ĪN + STŌ), *to stand upon, take a position*; Absol., *to draw nigh, approach; to impend, threaten*

quō diē[I] [sē] frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī[II] oportēret[III]

=~~the day~~ on which it behooved [himself] to measure out the grain for (his) soldiers

~on which he ought to distribute the corn to his soldiers

convocātīs[IV] eōrum prīncipibus[V]

=with their principal leaders <having been> called together

~having called together their chiefs

I **_quō diē,_** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423 & The Antecedent Noun sometimes appears in both clauses, but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted. The antecedent noun may be repeated in the relative clause: "locī nātūra erat hæc quem locum nostrī dēlēgerant" (II.XVIII), the nature of the ground which our men had chosen was this. "locī nātūra erat hæc quem locum nostrī dēlēgerant" (II.XVIII), the nature of the ground which our men had chosen was this. §307

II **mētior, -īrī, mēnsus, —** DEP. (MA-), *to measure, mete; To measure out, deal out, distribute*

III **_quō diē…oportēret,_** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. §583

IV **convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (con + vocō), *to call together, convoke, assemble, summon*

V **_convocātīs…prīncipibus,_** abl. abs. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolūtus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause. §419

quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs[I] habēbat

=(the principle leaders) of whom he was having a great abundance in (his) camp	*~of whom he had a great number in his camp*

in hīs

=among those men	*~among them*

Dīviciācō et Liscō[II] [III]

=Divitiacus and Liscus	*~Divitiacus and Liscus*

quī summō[IV] magistrātuī[V] præerat[VI]

=who presided over the uppermost magistracy	*~who was invested with the sumpreme magistracy*

quem Vergobretum[VII] [VIII] appellant Æduī

=whom the Ædui call as Vergobretus	*~whom the Ædui style the Vergobretus*

I **castrum, -i**, N. (KINDRED WITH CASA), In sg., any fortified place, *a castle, fort, fortress*; In pl., **castra, -ōrum**, N. Lit., *several soldiers' tents situated together*; hence, *a military camp, an encampment*; among the Romans a square (*quadrata*)

II ***Dīviācō et Liscō,*** in apposition with *prīncipibus* and therefore part of the abl. abs.

III **Liscus, -ī,** M., a prominent *Æduan*

IV **summus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP., *uppermost, highest, topmost*; Of rank or degree, *highest, greatest, loftiest, first, supreme, best, utmost, extreme*

V ***summō magistrātuī,*** dat. with comp. v. *præerat.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

VI **præsum, esse, -fuī, præfutūrus** (PRÆ + SUM), *to be before, be set over, preside over, rule, have charge of, command, superintend*

VII ***quem Vergobretum,*** pred. acc. Verbs of naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object. §393

VIII **Vergobretus, -ī,** M., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Æduans

quī creātur[I] annuus[II]

=*(and) who is brought forth annually* ~*and who is elected annually*

et vītæ[III] necisque[IV] in suōs habet potestātem[V]

=*and (whom) has the power of both life and of death over his own men* ~*and has power of life or death over his countrymen*

graviter[VI] eōs accūsat[VII]

=*he severely calls those men to account* ~*he severely reprimands them*

quod

=*because* ~*because*

I **creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (CER-), *to bring forth, produce, make, create, beget, give origin to*; In partic., *to make* or *create for any jurisdiction* or *office*, i.e. *to choose, elect*

II **annuus, -a, -us**, ADJ. (ANNUS), *of a year, lasting a year*; *that returns, recurs,* or *happens every year, yearly, annual*

III **vīta, -æ**, F. (VIV-), *life*

IV ***vītæ necisque,*** obj. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Cæsar, as odium, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as hate. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase amor patris, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive). §348

V **potestās, -ātis**, F. (POTIS), Lit., In gen., *ability, power* of doing any thing; *power, ability, possibility, opportunity—"potestatem sui facere," to give an opportunity of fighting with one*

VI **graviter**, ADV. WITH COMP. **gravius**, AND SUP. **gravissimē** (GRAVIS), *weightily, heavily, ponderously; Vehemently, strongly, violently*; Fig., *vehemently, violently, deeply, severely, harshly, unpleasantly, disagreeably, sadly*

VII **accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (AD + CAUSA), *to call to account, make complaint against, reproach, blame, accuse*

cum [frumentum] neque emī[I] neque ex agrīs sūmī possit[II]

=when [the grain] could neither be able to be bought nor to be taken up from the fields

~and when [corn] could neither be bought nor taken from the fields

tam necessāriō[III] [IV] tempore[V]

=at such a pressing time

~in such a time of need

tam propinquīs[VI] hostibus[VII]

=with the enemy <being> so near

~when the enemy were so close at hand

I **emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus** (EM-), *to buy, purchase*

II ***cum…possit,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

III ***necessario tempore,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

IV **necessārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NECESSE), *unavoidable, inevitable, indispensable, pressing, needful, requisite, necessary, compulsory—"tam necessario tempore," time of need*; Transf., connected with another by natural or moral ties (of blood, friendship, clientship), *belonging, related, connected, bound*—Subst., **necessāriō, -i**, m., *a relation, relative, kinsman, connection, friend, client, patro*

V ***necessāriō tempore***, abl. of time when. §423

VI **propinquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PROPE), *near, nigh, neighboring*; Subst. m. and f., *a relation, relative, kinsman, kinswoman*

VII ***propinquīs hostibus,*** abl. abs. §420 & abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. summā celeritāte vēnit, he came with the greatest speed. §412

ab eīs[I] nōn sublevētur[II]

=he is not assisted by those men

~he is not assisted by them

præsertim[III] cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus[IV] [V] adductus bellum suscēperit[VI]

=especially since he, <having been> led, from a great part by <means of> entreaties of those men, had undertaken war

~particularly as, in a great measure urged by their prayers, he had undertaken the war

multō etiam gravius[VII]

=(and) even more grave by much

~yet much more bitterly

quod sit dēstitūtus[VIII]

=because he had been betrayed

~as he had been forsaken

I ***ab eīs,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action. Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy. Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule. §405

II **sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (SUB + LEVŌ), *to lift from beneath, raise up, hold up, support; To sustain, support, assist, encourage, console, relieve*

III **præsertim**, ADV. (SER-), *especially, chiefly, principally, particularly*

IV ***precibus***, abl. of means. §409

V **prex, precis**, F. (PREC-), *a prayer, request, entreat*

VI ***cum…suscēperit,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

VII ***multō…gravius,*** abl. of deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

VIII **dēstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (DE + STATUO), *to set down, set forth, put away, bring forward, leave alone*; Fig., *to forsake, abandon, desert, betray*

queritur[I] [II]

=does he complain *~he complained*

When he saw that he was put off too long, and that the day was close at hand on which he ought to serve out the corn to his soldiers;-having called together their chiefs, of whom he had a great number in his camp, among them Divitiacus and Liscus who was invested with the chief magistracy (whom the Aedui style the Vergobretus, and who is elected annually and has power of life or death over his countrymen), he severely reprimands them, because he is not assisted by them on so urgent an occasion, when the enemy were so close at hand, and when [corn] could neither be bought nor taken from the fields, particularly as, in a great measure urged by their prayers, he had undertaken the war; much more bitterly, therefore does he complain of his being forsaken.

I ***queritur***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

II **queror, -ī, questus, —** DEP. (QUES-), *to express grief, complain, lament, bewail*

I.XVII

Liscus discloses the treachery.

I.XVII.I

TVM DEMVM LISCVS ORATIONE CÆSARIS ADDVCTVS, QVOD ANTEA TACVERAT PROPONIT: ESSE NON NVLLOS, QVORVM AVCTORITAS APVD PLEBEM PLVRIMVM VALEAT, QVI PRIVATIM PLVS POSSINT QVAM IPSI MAGISTRATVS.

Tum dēmum[I] Liscus ōrātiōne[II] Cæsaris adductus

=then at length, Liscus, <having been> led by <means of> a speech of Cæsar

~then at last Liscus, moved by Cæsar's speech

I **dēmum**, ADV. (DE), *ending, at length, at last, not till then, just, precisely, only; "Tum demum," then at length, then indeed: "tum demum Liscus oratione Cæsaris adductus..," *(I.XVII), *"Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum"* (I.L), *"Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt"* (I.LI)

II ***ōrātiōne***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

quod anteā[I] tacuerat[II]

=(the thing) which he passed over in silence *~what he had previously kept secret*

prōpōnit[III]

=(he) declares *~says*

esse nōn nūllōs[IV]

=that there are not no men *~that there are some*

I **anteā**, ADV., *before, earlier, formerly, aforetime, previously*

II **taceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus** (TAC-), *to be silent, not speak, say nothing, hold one's peace;* Act., *to pass over in silence, be silent respecting a thing* (rare but class.)

III **prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** (PRŌ + PŌNŌ), *to put forth, set forth, lay out, place before, expose to view, display, "proponere vexillum,"* (II.XX); Trop. *To point out, declare, represent, report, say, relate, set forth, publish*, etc.—With object-clause: *"quod ante tacuerat, proponit, esse nonnullos, quorum,.."* (I.XVII)

IV ***esse nōn nūllōs,*** indir. disc. dependent on *prōpōnit*. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum[I] valeat[II III]

=of whose authority among the common folk has much strength

~whose influences with the people is very great

quī prīvātim[IV] plūs possint[V] quam ipsī magistrātūs

=who, privately, are more able than the magistrates themselves

~who, though private men, have more power than the magistrates themselves

Then at length Liscus, moved by Cæsar's speech, discloses what he had hitherto kept secret:-that there are some whose influences with the people is very great, who, though private men, have more power than the magistrates themselves.

I **multus, -a, -um**, ADJ., pl. with subst. or with adj. used as subst, many, a great number; Adv., **plurimum**, *very much indeed*

II **valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus** (VAL-), *to be strong, be vigorous, have strength, be able;* Transf., *to have power, force, or influence; to be powerful, effective, valid; to avail, prevail, be strong, effective,* etc.; Esp. With respect to the source, character, or mode of exercise of the strength ascribed to the subject.; With some definite end expressed, upon or towards which influence or power is exercised or directed, *to be strong enough for, adequate to,* or *capable* of any thing, *to be able to do, to have force* or *efficacy, to be effectual, to avail, to be applicable*.; With *apud* and acc. of pers., *to have influence, be influential, have weight with, influence*: *"utrum apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor plus valeret,"* (I.XL), *"tantum apud homines barbaros valuit, esse repertos aliquos principes belli inferendi,"* (V.LIV), With *pro*: *"quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat,"* (I.LI), With *inter*: *"plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute, et auctoritate, et hominum numero valere,"* (II.IV)

III ***quōrum…valeat,*** rel. clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

IV **prīvātim** ADV. (PRIVATUS), *apart from State affairs, as an individual, in private, privately, in a private capacity, "qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus,"* (I.XVII)

V ***quī…possint,*** rel. clause in indir. disc. §583

I.XVII.II

HOS SEDITIOSA ATQVE IMPROBA ORATIONE MVLTITVDINEM DETERRERE NE FRVMENTVM CONFERANT QVOD DEBEANT: PRÆSTARE, SI IAM PRINCIPATVM GALLIÆ OBTINERE NON POSSENT, GALLORVM QVAM ROMANORVM IMPERIA PERFERRE; NEQVE DVBITARE QVIN, SI HELVETIOS SVPERAVERINT ROMANI, VNA CVM RELIQVA GALLIA ÆDVIS LIBERTATEM SINT EREPTVRI.

Hōs sēditiōsā[I] atque improbā[II] [III] ōrātiōne[IV] multitūdinem dēterrēre[V] [VI]

=that these men by <means of> seditions and violent speech are deterring the populace

~that these by seditions and violent speech are deterring the populace

nē frūmentum cōnferant[VII]

=that they not bring the corn together

~from contributing the corn

quod dēbeant[VIII]

=which they ought (to supply)

~which they ought to supply

I **sēditiōsus**, ADJ. (SEDITIO), *full of discord, factious, turbulent, mutinous, seditious, "seditiosa atque improba oratio,"* (I.XVII)

II **improbus**, ADJ. (IN + PROBUS), *not good, bad, wicked, reprobate, abandoned, vile, base, impious, bold, shameless, wanton*

III ***improbā***, abl. of means. §409

IV ***ōrātiōne,*** abl. of means. §409

V ***hōs…dēterrēre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *prōpōnit.* §580

VI **dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** (DĒ + TERREŌ), *To frighten from any thing; to deter,* —Constr., (Aliquem) *ab aliqua re*: *"eum ab instituto consilio,"* (V.IV), (*Aliquem*) *ne, quin, quominus*—With *quin*: *"deterrere potuerint quin cum iis consentirent,"* (II.III)

VII ***nē…cōnferant,*** neg. clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

VIII ***quod dēbeant,*** rel. clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

præstāre[I]

=(it) is preferable *~it were better*

sī iam prīncipātum Galliæ obtinēre nōn possent[II]

=(by telling them) that, if they were no longer able to hold the supremacy of Gaul *~[by telling them] that, if they can not any longer retain the supremacy of Gaul*

Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre[III]

=to bear through the government of the Gauls than (the government) of Romans *~to submit to the government of Gauls than of Romans*

neque [se] dubitāre[IV] [debeant]

=nor [ought] [they] to doubt *~nor ought they to doubt that*

quīn

=not, that *~not, that*

I ***præstāre ...,*** indir. disc. dependent on *ōrātiōne.* §580

II ***sī…possent,*** protasis of simple pres. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

III **perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus** (PER + FERŌ), *to bear through, bring home; To bear, support, endure to the end*; In gen., *to bear, suffer, put up with, brook, submit to, endure, "omnes indignitates contumeliasque,"* (II.XIV)

IV **dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DUBIUS), *to waver in opinion, be uncertain, be in doubt, be perplexed, doubt, question; de quā (legione) non dubitaret, had full confidence; non dubito, quin* (very freq. and class.): "*neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī,..*" (I.XVII), non *dubito quin,* "*tum dubitandum non existimavit, quin proficisceretur,*" (II.II), Absol. (rare): "*te neque umquam dubitasse, neque timuisse,*" (I.XLI)

sī Helvētiōs superāverint[I] [II] Rōmānī

=if the Romans should conquer the Helvetii

~if the Romans should overpower the Helvetii

ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Æduīs[III] lībertātem[IV] sint ēreptūrī[V]

=they (the Romans) would tear out [their] freedom from the Ædui together with remaining Gaul

~they would wrest their freedom from the Ædui together with the remainder of Gaul

That these by seditions and violent language are deterring the populace from contributing the corn which they ought to supply; [by telling them] that, if they can not any longer retain the supremacy of Gaul, it were better to submit to the government of Gauls than of Romans, nor ought they to doubt that, if the Romans should overpower the Helvetii, they would wrest their freedom from the Aedui together with the remainder of Gaul.

I ***sī…superāverint,*** protasis of fut. more vivid condition in indir. disc. §589

II **superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (SUPERUS), *to go over, rise above, overtop, surmount, transcend*; Trop. (freq. and class.). *To have the upper hand or superiority, to be superior, to overcome, surpass* (syn. *vinco*): *"quā* (sc. *virtute*) *nostri milites facile superabant,"* (III.XIV), *"hos postea armatos ac victores superassent,"* (I.XL); *To be left over, to remain, survive* (syn. *supersum*): *"quæ superaverint animalia capta, immolant,"* (VI.XVII), "*uter eorum vitā superarit," whichever survives,* (VI.IX), *"quæ superaverint animalia,"* (VI.XVII); Act., *to go or pass over, rise above; to mount, ascend; to surmount, overtop*. Lit. In partic., in milit. lang., *to overcome, subdue, conquer, vanquish* (syn. *debello*): *"armatos ac victores,"* (I.XL)

III ***ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Æduīs***, abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

IV **lībertās, -ātis**, F. (LIBER), *freedom, liberty, absence of restraint, permission*

V ***quīn…sint ēreptūrī,*** *quin* clause. A subjunctive clause with quīn is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negatived, either expressly or by implication. i. Quīn is especially common with nōn dubitō, I do not doubt, nōn est dubium, there is no doubt, and similar expressions. §558i

I.XVII.III

AB EISDEM NOSTRA CONSILIA QVÆQVE IN CASTRIS GERANTVR HOSTIBVS ENVNTIARI: HOS A SE CŒRCERI NON POSSE.

Ab eīsdem[I] nostra cōnsilia

=*by these (very) men, (said he), our plans*	~*by these very men, [said he], are our plans*

quæque in castrīs gerantur[II]

=*and what (things) are done in the camp*	~*and whatever is done in the camp*

hostibus ēnūntiārī[III]

=*were disclosed to the enemy*	~*disclosed to the enemy*

hōs ā sē[IV] cœrcērī[V] nōn posse[VI]

=*that they were not able to be restrained by him (Liscus)*	~*that they could not be restrained by him*

I ***ab eīsdem***, abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action. Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy. Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule. §405

II ***quæque in castrīs gerantur***, rel. clause in indir. disc. §583

III ***hostibus ēnūntiārī***, indir. disc. dependent on *prōpōnit.* §580

IV ***ā sē,*** abl. of agent. §405

V **coërceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus** (COM- + ARCEO), *to enclose on all sides, hold together, surround, encompass*; Morally, *to hold* (some fault, some passion, etc., or the erring or passionate person) *in check*, *to curb, restrain, tame, correct*, etc.

VI ***hōs…posse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *ēnūntiārī.* §580

By these very men, [said he], are our plans and whatever is done in the camp, disclosed to the enemy; that they could not be restrained by him.

I.XVII.IV

QVIN ETIAM, QVOD NECESSARIAM REM COACTVS CÆSARI ENVNTIARIT, INTELLEGERE SESE QVANTO ID CVM PERICVLO FECERIT, ET OB EAM CAVSAM QVAM DIV POTVERIT TACVISSE.

Quīn etiam

=aye, indeed *~nay more*

quod necessāriam rem coāctus Cæsarī ēnūntiā[ve]rit[I]

=that he, compelled, announced the unavoidable situation to Cæsar *~that though compelled by necessity, he had disclosed the matter to Cæsar*

intellegere sēsē[II]

=that he (Liscus) was understanding *~he was well aware*

I ***quod ... ēnūntiā[ve]rit,*** *quod* clause in indir. disc. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. Note 1. Quod introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Quia regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. Quoniam, inasmuch as, since, when now, now that, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative. ii. Causal clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see §580). §540 & §583

II ***intellegere sēsē,*** indir. disc. dependent on *prōpōnit.* §580

quantō[I] id cum perīculō[II] fēcerit[III]

=with how much danger he did it *~at how great a risk he had done it*

et

=and *~and*

ob eam causam

=for that reason *~for that reason*

quam[IV] diū[V] potuerit[VI]

=as long as he was able *~as long as he could*

[se] tacuisse[VII]

=[he (Liscus)] had said been silent *~he had been passed over in silence*

I **quantus, -a, -um**, PRONOM. ADJ. (CA-), Relat., correl. with *tantus*, *of what size, how much*, as Interrog or Adj., *how great? how much? of what amount*

II ***quantō…cum perīculō,*** abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. cum celeritāte vēnit, he came with speed. But,—summā celeritāte vēnit, he came with the greatest speed. But cum is often used even when the ablative has a limiting adjective."quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit" (I.XVII), at what risk he did this. §412

III ***quantō…fēcerit,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

IV **quam**, ADV. (QUI), Relat., *in what manner, to what degree, how greatly, how, how much, "quam potuit," as far as he was able,* (Val. Max. 4, 1, 5.)—With *possum* and a sup.: *"concede huc ab isto, quam potest longissime," as far as possible;* With ellips. of *tam*, *as much as, to the extent that, as … as*; In partic. In comparisons, *as, than*

V ***quam-diu***, ADV. INTERROG., *how long ago? how long?*; Rel. Of time, *as long as, until, during* (class.): *"quamdiu potuit, tacuit,"* (I.XVII)

VI ***quam…potuerit,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, as long as, take the Indicative. §555 & §583

VII ***[se] tacuisse***, indir. disc. dependent on *intellegere*. §580

Nay more, he was well aware, that though compelled by necessity, he had disclosed the matter to Cæsar, at how great a risk he had done it; and for that reason, he had been silent as long as he could.

I.XVIII

Cæsar learns that Dumnorix is a traitor.

I.XVIII.I

CÆSAR HAC ORATIONE LISCI DVMNORIGEM DIVICIACI FRATREM DESIGNARI SENTIEBAT; SED, QVOD PLVRIBVS PRÆSENTIBVS EAS RES IACTARI NOLEBAT, CELERITER CONCILIVM DIMITTIT, LISCVM RETINET.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

hāc ōrātiōne[I] Liscī Dumnorīgem Dīviciācī frātrem dēsignārī[II]

=that by <means of> this speech of Liscus, Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was marked out

~that by this speech of Liscus, Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was pointed out

I ***hāc ōrātiōne,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II **dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DĒ + SĪGNŌ), *to mark out, point out, trace, designate, define*; Fig., *to point out, mark, denote, designate, describe, represent*

sentiēbat[I]

=was perceiving *~perceived*

sed

=but *~but*

quod

=because *~as*

plūribus præsentibus[II]

=with several men <being> present *~while so many were present*

eās rēs iactārī[III] nōlēbat

=he was not willing that those things be thrown about (in conversation) *~he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed*

I **sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** (SENT-), Physically. In gen., *to discern by the senses*; *to feel, hear, see,* etc.; *to perceive, be sensible of* (syn. percipio). In partic. *To perceive the effects* (esp. the ill effects) of any thing; *to feel, experience, suffer, undergo, endure*: *"quid ipse ad Avaricum sensisset,* etc.*,"* (VII.LII); Mentally. Lit., *to feel, perceive, observe, notice* (syn. intellego), With acc.: *"de victoriā atque exitu rerum sentire,"* (VII.LII); With de: *"hostes postea quam de profectione eorum senserunt," became aware of their retreat*, (V.XXXII)

II ***plūribus præsentibus,*** abl. abs. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolūtus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause. §419

III **iacto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *to throw, cast, hurl*; Lit.—"*semen*," *to scatter*; Trop. *To torment, disquiet, disturb*; *To consider, examine, discuss*: *"pluribus præsentibus eas res jactari nolebat,"* (I.XVIII)

celeriter[I] concilium[II] dīmittit[III]

=he quickly departs the conference *~he speedily dismisses the council*

Liscum retinet[IV V]

=(but) he holds back Liscus *~but detains Liscus*

Cæsar perceived that by this speech of Liscus, Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was indicated; but, as he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed while so many were present, he speedily dismisses the council, but detains Liscus.

I **celeriter**, ADV. (CELER), *quickly, swiftly, speedily, in haste, immediately, promptly*

II **concilium, -ī**, N. (COM- + CAL-), *a meeting, rendezvous; A collection of people, meeting, assembly*

III **dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (DĪ + MITTŌ), With particular reference to the prep., *to send different ways, to send apart*, i. e., *To send out* or *forth* in different directions, *to send about* (class.). With acc., *"nuntios tota civitate Aeduorum,"* (VII.XXXVIII): *"nuntios in omnes partes,"* (IV.XIX); Without object acc.: *"in omnes partis,"* (VI.XLIII), *To separate* a multitude, *to break up, dissolve*; and subjectively, *to dismiss* (from one's self), *to discharge, disband*: *"celeriter concilium dimittit"* (I.XVIII), *"eo concilio dimisso"* (I.XXXI)

IV ***dīmittit, Liscum retinet***, asyndeton. In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed: c. In coördinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted (asyndeton). In such cases the connection is made clear by some antithesis indicated by the position of words. §601iii

V **retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus** (RE- + TENEO), (With the signif. of the *re* predominating.) *To hold* or *keep back, not let go; to detain, retain; to restrain*; Lit.: *"concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet,"* (I.XVIII), *"ab his fit initium retinendi Silii, etc.,"* (III.VIII); (With the signif. of the verb predominant.) *To hold fast, keep, retain, preserve, maintain*, etc., Lit.: *"oppidum,"* (VII.XXI); Trop.: *"pristinam virtutem,"* (V.XLVIII), *"memoriam suæ pristinæ virtutis, tot secundissimorum prœliorum,"* (II.XXI)

I.XVIII.II

QVÆRIT EX SOLO EA QVÆ IN CONVENTV DIXERAT.

Quærit[VI] ex [ea] sōlō[VII] ea

=he (Cæsar) inquires from [him] <being> alone those things

~he inquires from him when alone, about those things

quæ in conventū[III] dīxerat

=(those things) which he had said in the meeting

~which he had said in the meeting

He inquires from him when alone, about those things which he had said in the meeting.

I.XVIII.III

DICIT LIBERIVS ATQVE AVDACIVS.

Dīcit līberius[IV] atque audācius

=he (Liscus) speaks more freely and boldly

~he [Liscus] speaks more unreservedly and boldly

He [Liscus] speaks more unreservedly and boldly.

VI **quærō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus** (QUÆS-), *to seek, look for; To seek to learn, make inquiry, ask, inquire, interrogate*; Trop. In gen., *to seek*, i. e. *to think over, meditate, aim at, plan* a thing: With *ab*: *"cum ab iis sæpius quæreret," made inquiries*, (I.XXXII), With *ex*: *"quærit ex solo ea, quæ, etc.,"* (I.XVIII)

VII ***ex sōlō,*** *quærit* taking the abl. with præp. Some verbs of asking and teaching may take two accusatives, one of the Person (direct object), and the other of the Thing (secondary object). i. Some verbs of asking take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, always, petō (ab), quærō (ex, ab, dē); usually poscō (ab), flāgitō (ab), postulō (ab), and occasionally others. §396i

III **conventus, -ūs**, M. (COM- +BA-, VEN-), *a meeting, assembly, throng*

IV **līber, -era, -erum**, ADJ. (LIB-), *free, unrestricted, unrestrained, unimpeded, unembarrassed, unshackled*; Hence, adv., **līberē**, *freely, unrestrictedly, without let* or *hinderance; frankly, openly, bold*

I.XVIII.IV

EADEM SECRETO AB ALIIS QVÆRIT; REPERIT ESSE VERA: IPSVM ESSE DVMNORIGEM, SVMMA AVDACIA, MAGNA APVD PLEBEM PROPTER LIBERALITATEM GRATIA, CVPIDVM RERVM NOVARVM.

Eadem sēcrētō[I] ab aliīs[II] quærit

=he inquires in secret the same things from the other men

~he [Cæsar] makes inquiries on the same points privately of others

reperit[III]

=(and) he discoveres

~and discovered

[ea] esse vēra[IV V]

=that [those things] (Lucis' statements) are true

~that it is all true

I **sēcrētum, -ī**, N. (PPP. N. OF SECERNO), *a hidden thing, mystery, secret; A hidden place, hiding-place, retirement, solitude, retreat*

II ***ab aliīs,*** *quærit* taking the abl. with præp. §396i

III **reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus** (PAR-), in gen., *to find, meet with, find out,* either by searching or by accident; Trop. In gen., *to find, find out, discern; to get, procure, obtain*: *"perpauci lintribus inventis sibi salutem reppererunt," found, obtained*, (I.LIII); In partic. With a double predicate, *to find, discover, perceive, learn, ascertain* a thing to be in any manner: *"quorum de moribus Cæsar cum quæreret, sic reperiebat,"* (II.XV), *"neque, quanta esset insulæ magnitudo, reperire poterat,"* (IV.XX), *"hanc reperiebat causam"* (I.L) *"repperit esse vera,"* (I.XVIII)

IV **vērus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (VEL-), *true, real, actual, genuine*; **vērō**, *in truth, in fact, certainly, truly, to be sure, surely, assuredly*; Transf., as a strongly corroborative adversative particle, *but in fact, but indeed, however* (always placed after a word)

V ***esse vēra,*** indir. disc. dependent on *reperit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

ipsum esse[I] Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā[II]

=that Dumnorix was the very man, (a man) with the highest daring

~that Dumnorix is the person, a man of the highest daring

magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem[III] grātiā[IV], cupidum[V] rērum novārum[VI VII]

=(he is) in great favor among the common people on account of (his) liberality; (he is a man) eager of new situations

~in great favor with the people on account of his liberality, a man eager for a revolution

He [Cæsar] makes inquiries on the same points privately of others, and discovered that it is all true; that, "*Dumnorix is the person, a man of the highest daring, in great favor with the people on account of his liberality, a man eager for a revolution.*

I ***ipsum esse,*** indir. disc. §580

II ***summā audāciā,*** abl. of quality. The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality. In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but physical qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative. §415

III **līberālitās, -ātis**, F. (LIBERALIS), a characteristic of a freeman, *ingenuousness, frankness, affability*; In partic., *generosity, liberality*

IV ***magnā…grātiā,*** abl. of quality. §415

V **cupidus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CVP-), *longing, desiring, desirous, eager, zealous, wishing, loving, fond*; Hence, **cupidē**, ADV., *eagerly*, In a good and bad sense, *zealously, passionately, vehemently, ardently, warmly, partially*, etc.

VI ***rērum novārum***, gen. with adj. *cupidum.* Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the Objective Genitive include: Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites govern the genitive. §349i

VII **novus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NV-), *new, not old, young, fresh, recent—novæ res* signifies political innovations, a revolution; Transf., in the SUP., **novissimus, -a, -um**, *the latest, last, hindermost, extreme*——So as subst., **novissimi, -ōrum**, *the rear of an army, the soldiers in the last line*

I.XVIII.V

COMPLVRES ANNOS PORTORIA RELIQVAQVE OMNIA ÆDVORVM VECTIGALIA PARVO PRETIO REDEMPTA HABERE, PROPTEREA QVOD ILLO LICENTE CONTRA LICERI AVDEAT NEMO.

Complūrēs annōs portōria[I]

=that for severval years // the tariffs | *~that for a great many years // tariffs*

reliquaque omnia Æduōrum vectīgālia[II] parvō pretiō[III] [IV] redēmpta[V] habēre[VI]

=(he) had redeemed /the tariffs/ and all the remaining taxes of the Ædui at a small cost | *~he has been in the habit of redeeming // and all the other taxes of the Ædui at a small cost*

propttereā quod

=on account of that because | *~because*

illō licente[VII] [VIII] [IX]

=with that man (Dumnorix) bidding | *~when he bids*

I **portōrium, -ī**, N. (PAR-), *a tax, toll, duty, impost, custom, tariff*

II **vectīgālis, -e**, ADJ. (VECTIGAL), *of imposts, of taxes*

III ***parvō pretiō,*** abl. of price. The price of a thing is put in the Ablative.Note. To this head is to be referred the Ablative of the Penalty. §416

IV **pretium, -ī**, N. (PRA-), *a price, money value, value in exchange—"vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere," for little money, cheaply* (I.XVIII.V)

V **redēmptō, -āre, —, —** (REDIMO), *to ransom, redeem*

VI ***reliquaque omnia ... vectīgāli ... redēmpta habēre***, indir. disc. §580

VII **liceor, -ērī, licitus, —** DEP. (LIC-), *to bid, make a bid*

VIII During the collection of taxes, an individual or group bids to collect taxes, and the state collects from the highest bidder in advance; the winner pays the bid and afterward collects taxes in the hope of collecting extra as profit; without a rival Dumnorix allegedly bids low and therefore a low level of taxes from the people

IX ***illō licente,*** abl. abs. §419

contrā[I] [eum] licērī audeat[II] [III] nēmō[IV]

=no one would dare to bid against [him] *~no one dares to bid against him*

that for a great many years he has been in the habit of contracting for the customs and all the other taxes of the Aedui at a small cost, because when he bids, no one dares to bid against him.

I **contrā**, ADV. AND PRÆP., adv. Of Position, *in opposition, opposite, face to face, in front, on the other side*; Præp., with acc. (in prose before its case, except sometimes a rel. pron.), Of Position, *before, against, facing, towards, opposite to, contrary to, over against; Against, in opposition to, as the opponent of*

II ***contrā [eum] licērī audeat nēmō***, subordinate clause in indir. disc. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. Note 1. Quod introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Quia regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. Quoniam, inasmuch as, since, when now, now that, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative. §540 & A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

III **audeō, -ēre, ausus sum** (AV-), *to venture, dare, be bold, dare to do, risk*

IV **nēmō**, M. AND F. (NE + HOMO), *no man, no one, nobody*

I.XVIII.VI

HIS REBVS ET SVAM REM FAMILIAREM AVXISSE ET FACVLTATES AD LARGIENDVM MAGNAS COMPARASSE; MAGNVM NVMERVM EQVITATVS SVO SVMPTV SEMPER ALERE ET CIRCVM SE HABERE; NEQVE SOLVM DOMI SED ETIAM APVD FINITIMAS CIVITATES LARGITER POSSE ATQVE HVIVS POTENTIÆ CAVSA MATREM IN BITVRIGIBVS HOMINI ILLIC NOBILISSIMO AC POTENTISSIMO COLLOCASSE, IPSVM EX HELVETIIS VXOREM HABERE, SOROREM EX MATRE ET PROPINQVAS SVAS NVPTVM IN ALIAS CIVITATES COLLOCASSE.

Hīs rēbus[I] [eum] et suam rem familiārem[II] auxisse[III] [IV] et [eum] facultātēs[V] ad largiendum[VI] [VII] magnās comparāsse[VIII]

=by these circumstances [he] both has both increased his own personal situation and [he] procured great capabilities for <the purpose of> bribing

~by these means he has both augmented his own private property, and obtained great means for giving largesses

I ***hīs rēbus,*** abl. of means. §409

II **familiāris, -e**, (ABL. SING. REGULARLY FAMILIARI; FAMILIARE), ADJ., *familia.*, *of* or *belonging to a house, household,* or *family; household, domestic, family, private*: *"his rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse"* (I.XVIII), Absol.: *"per C. Valerium Procillum familiarem suum cum eo colloquitur,"* (I.XIX)

III ***Hīs rēbus ... suam rem ... auxisse***, indir. disc. §580

IV **augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus** (AVG-), *to increase, augment, enlarge, spread, extend*

V **facultās, -ātis**, F. (FACILIS), *capability, possibility, power, means, opportunity, skill, ability*

VI **largior, -īrī, -ītus, —** DEP. (LARGUS), *to give bountifully, lavish, bestow, dispense, distribute, impart; To give largesses, bribe*

VII ***ad largiendum,*** acc. of the gerund expressing purpose. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

VIII ***et facultātēs ad largiendum ... comparāsse***, indir. disc. §580

magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū[I II III] semper alere[IV V]

=a great number of cavalry // that (he) (Dumnorix) always feeds at his own expense

~that he maintains constantly at his own expense // a great number of cavalry

et circum sē habēre[VI]

=and (he) (Dumnorix) has around (himself)

~and keeps about his own person

neque sōlum domī[VII] sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter[VIII] posse[IX]

=(and) that not only at home, but even among the neighboring states, (he) is greatly able

~and that not only at home, but even among the neighboring states, he had great influence

I **sūmptus, -ūs**, M. (SUMO), *outlay, expense, cost, charge*

II ***suō sūmptū***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

III ***sūmptū***, abl. of price. §416

IV ***magnum ... suō sūmptū ... alere***, indir. disc. §580

V **alō, -ere, aluī, altus** (AL-), *to feed, nourish, support, sustain, maintain*

VI ***et circum sē habēre***, indir. disc. §580

VII ***domī***, loc. case. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place where, by the Locative. §427

VIII **largiter**, ADV., *in abundance*

IX ***neque ... largiter posse***, indir. disc. §580

[sē] hominī illīc[I] nōbilissimō ac potentissimō[II] [III] collocāsse[IV] [V]

=[he (Dumnorix)] had placed together in marriage // to the most noble and the most able man there

~has given in marriage // to a man the most noble and most influential there

atque huius potentiæ[VI] [VII] causā[VIII] mātrem[IX] in Biturīgibus[X]

=and for the sake of (strengthening) this influence // (his) mother into the Bituriges

~and with the motive of this power // his mother among the Bituriges

I **illīc**, ADV. (ILLI + CE), *in that place, yonder, there*

II **potēns, -entis**, ADJ. (PART. OF POSSUM), *able, mighty, strong, powerful, potent; Strong, mighty, powerful, efficacious, potent, influential*

III ***hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō,*** dat. with comp. v. *conlocāsse.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. § 370

IV ***hominī ... ōbilissimō ... collocāsse***, indir. disc. §580

V **locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (LOCUS), *to place, put, lay, set, dispose, arrange; To place in marriage, give away, give in marriage, marry*

VI ***huius potentiæ,*** gen. construction dependent on *causā.* Peculiar Genitive constructions are the following: The genitive is often used with the ablatives causā, grātiā, for the sake of; ergō, because of; and the indeclinable īnstar, like; also with prīdiē, the day before; postrīdiē, the day after; tenus, as far as. §359

VII **potentia, -æ**, F. (POTEN), *might, force, power*; Fig., *political power, authority, sway, influence, eminen*

VIII ***huius potentiæ causā, causā,*** abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

IX **māter, -tris**, F. (MA-), *a mother*

X **Biturīgēs, -um,** M. pl., a people in Central Gaul

ipsum ex Helvētiīs[I] uxōrem[II] habēre[III]

=that (he) himself is having a wife from the Helvetii

~that he has himself taken a wife from among the Helvetii

sorōrem[IV] ex mātre[V] et propinquās suās nūptum[VI] [VII] in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse[VIII]

=and (he) (Orgatorix) had placed together (his) sister from (her) mother (the mother's side of the family) and his own (female) relations to marry into other states

~and has given his sister by the mother's side and his female relations in marriage into other states

By these means he has both increased his own private property, and amassed great means for giving largesses; that he maintains constantly at his own expense and keeps about his own person a great number of cavalry, and that not only at home, but even among the neighboring states, he has great influence, and for the sake of strengthening this influence has given his mother in marriage among the Bituriges to a man the most noble and most influential there; that he has himself taken a wife from among the Helvetii, and has given his sister by the mother's side and his female relations in marriage into other states.

I ***ex Helvētiīs,*** abl. of source. The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists. §403

II **uxor, -ōris**, F. *a wife, spouse, consort*

III ***ipsum…habēre,*** indir. disc. §580

IV **soror, -ōris**, F. *a sister*

V ***ex mātre,*** abl. of source. §403

VI ***nūptum***, acc. supine expressing purpose. The Supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case. §509

VII **nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum** (NEB-), *to veil oneself, be married, marry, wed*

VIII ***sorōrem ... nūptum ... collocāsse***, indir. disc. §580

I.XVIII.VII

FAVERE ET CVPERE HELVETIIS PROPTER EAM ADFINITATEM, ODISSE ETIAM SVO NOMINE CÆSAREM ET ROMANOS, QVOD EORVM ADVENTV POTENTIA EIVS DEMINVTA ET DIVICIACVS FRATER IN ANTIQVVM LOCVM GRATIÆ ATQVE HONORIS SIT RESTITVTVS.

Favēre[I] et cupere[II] [III] Helvētiīs[IV] propter eam adfīnitātem[V]

=that (he) favores and that (he) desires (success) to the Helvetii on account of that alliance by mariage

~that he favors and wishes well to the Helvetii on account of this connection

ōdisse[VI] [VII] etiam suō nōmine[VIII] Cæsarem et Rōmānōs

=(and) that (he,) in his own name, hated even Cæsar and the Romans

~and that he hates Cæsar and the Romans, by his own account

quod eōrum adventū[IX] potentia eius dēminūta [sit][X]

=that by their arrival his power was diminished

~because by their arrival his power was diminished

I **faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus** (FAV-), *to be favorable, be well disposed, be inclined towards, favor, promote, befriend, countenance, protect*

II ***favēre et cupere,*** indir. disc. dependent on *reperit.* §580

III **cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus** (CVP-), *to long for, desire, wish*; Pregn., *to be well disposed, be favorable or inclined to one, to favor, to wish well, to be interested for,* etc.

IV ***Helvētiīs***, dat. with special v. *favēre.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

V **affīnitas, -ātis**, F. (AFFINIS), *Relationship* or *alliance by marriage*, Esp. *between a father and son-in-law*

VI ***ōdisse suō nōmine ... Rōmānōs***, indir. disc. §580

VII **ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus**, DEFECT. (OD-), *to hate*

VIII ***suō nōmine,*** abl. of spec. §418

IX ***adventū***, can be abl. of cause. §404, or abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

X **dēminuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (DĒ + MINUŌ), *to make smaller, lessen, diminish*

et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum[I] locum grātiæ atque honōris[II] sit restitūtus[III] [IV]

=and (his) brother, Divitiacus, restored into the old place of influence and dignity	*~and his brother, Divitiacus, restored to his former position of influence and dignity*

That he favors and wishes well to the Helvetii on account of this connection; and that he hates Cæsar and the Romans, on his own account, because by their arrival his power was weakened, and his brother, Divitiacus, restored to his former position of influence and dignity.

I.XVIII.VIII

SI QVID ACCIDAT ROMANIS, SVMMAM IN SPEM PER HELVETIOS REGNI OBTINENDI VENIRE: IMPERIO POPVLI ROMANI NON MODO DE REGNO SED ETIAM DE EA QVAM HABEAT GRATIA DESPERARE.

Sī quid[V] accidat[VI] Rōmānīs[VII]

=that, if anything should happen to the Romans	*~that, if any thing should happen to the Romans*

I **antīquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (ANTE), *ancient, former, of old times*

II **honor, -is,** M., *call, honor, repute, esteem* in which a person or thing is held

III ***quod…sit restitūtus,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §540 & §583

IV **restituō, -ere, -ūī, -ūtus** (RE- + STATUO), *to set up again, replace, restore, reconstruct, rebuild, revive, renew, reform, rearrange*; In partic., *to give back, deliver up, return, restore* a thing belonging to a person or place; Trop., *to restore to a former condition, to re-establish*, etc.

V ***sī quid*** = *sī aliquid*

VI ***sī…accidat,*** protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

VII ***Rōmānīs***, dat. with comp. v. *accidat.* §370

summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī[I] venīre[II]

=that (he) comes into the highest hope of obtaining kingship through <the means of> the Helvetii

~he entertains the highest hope of gaining the sovereignty by means of the Helvetii

imperiō[III] populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō sed etiam dē eā

=(but that) by <the cause of> the power of the Roman people // not only concerning the throne but also from that /influence/

~but that under the government of the Roman people // not only of royalty, but even of that

quam habeat[IV]

=which he has

~which he already has

grātiā dēspērāre[V] [VI]

=influence // he despairs

~influence // he despairs

that, if any thing should happen to the Romans, he entertains the highest hope of gaining the sovereignty by means of the Helvetii, but that under the government of the Roman people he despairs not only of royalty, but even of that influence which he already has."

I ***rēgnī obtinendī,*** obj. gen. of the gerundive. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. §504

II ***summam ... rēgnī obtinendī venīre***, indir. disc. §580

III ***imperiō***, abl. of cause. §404

IV ***quam habeat,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

V ***grātiā dēspērāre***, indir. disc. §580

VI **dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DĒ + SPĒRŌ), *to be hopeless, have no hope, despair of, give up,* With de: *"de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia,"* (I.XL), *"de pugna,"* (I.XL), *"de officio imperatoris,"* (I.XL)

I.XVIII.IX

REPERIEBAT ETIAM IN QVÆRENDO CÆSAR, QVOD PRŒLIVM EQVESTRE ADVERSVM PAVCIS ANTE DIEBVS ESSET FACTVM, INITIVM EIVS FVGÆ FACTVM A DVMNORIGE ATQVE EIVS EQVITIBVS (NAM EQVITATVI QVEM AVXILIO CÆSARI ÆDVI MISERANT DVMNORIX PRÆERAT): EORVM FVGA RELIQVVM ESSE EQVITATVM PERTERRITVM.

Reperiēbat etiam in quærendō[I] [II] Cæsar

=Cæsar was finding too, on inquiring *~Cæsar discovered too, on inquiring*

quod prœlium equestre[III] [IV] adversum paucīs ante diēbus[V] esset factum[VI]

=<as to the fact> that an unsuccessful cavalry battle had been made before by a few days *~into the unsuccessful cavalry engagement which had taken place a few days before*

I ***quærendō***, v. sg. gerundive. neut. abl.

II ***in quærendō,*** abl. of the gerund. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used: to express manner, means, cause, etc. after Comparatives. after the propositions ab, dē, ex, in, and (rarely) prō. §507

III ***equestre***, nom. sg. neut., attr. of *prœlium*

IV **equester, -tris, -tre**, ADJ. (EQUES), of a horseman, *equestrian*; In partic. Of or belonging to cavalry—*"prœlium"* (I.XVIII.IX)

V ***paucīs…diēbus,*** abl. of deg. of dif. with adv. *ante.* With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

VI ***quod…esset factum,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question, expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse. §592

initium eius fugæ factum [esse] ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus[I]

=that the beginning of that flight had been made by Dumnorix and his cavalry

~that the commencement of that flight had been made by Dumnorix and his cavalry

nam equitātuī[II]

=for // the cavalry

~for // the cavalry

quem auxiliō Cæsarī[III] Æduī mīserant

=(the cavalry) which the Ædui had sent for <a source of> aid to Cæsar

~which the Ædui had sent as a source of aid to Cæsar

Dumnorīx præerat

=Dumnorix was set over

~Dumnorix was commanding

I ***ā Dumnorīge...equitibus,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action. Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy. Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule. §405

II ***equitātuī***, dat. with comp. v. *præerat.* §370

III ***auxiliō Cæsarī,*** double dat. construction. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected. §382

eōrum fugā[I] reliquum esse equitātum perterritum[II] [III]

=that by <means of> their flight, the remaining cavalry were frightened thoroughly

~that by their flight the rest of the cavalry were dismayed

Cæsar discovered too, on inquiring into the unsuccessful cavalry engagement which had taken place a few days before, that the commencement of that flight had been made by Dumnorix and his cavalry (for Dumnorix was in command of the cavalry which the Aedui had sent for aid to Cæsar); that by their flight the rest of the cavalry were dismayed.

I ***fugā***, abl. of cause. §404

II ***esse…perterritum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *reperiēbat.* §580

III **perterreō, -ēre, —, -itus** (PER + TERREŌ), *to frighten thoroughly, terrify*

I.XIX

Cæsar consults Dumnorix' brother.

I.XIX.I

QVIBVS REBVS COGNITIS, CVM AD HAS SVSPICIONES CERTISSIMÆ RES ACCEDERENT, QVOD PER FINES SEQVANORVM HELVETIOS TRADVXISSET, QVOD OBSIDES INTER EOS DANDOS CVRASSET, QVOD EA OMNIA NON MODO INIVSSV SVO ET CIVITATIS SED ETIAM INSCIENTIBVS IPSIS FECISSET, QVOD A MAGISTRATV ÆDVORVM ACCVSARETVR, SATIS ESSE CAVSÆ ARBITRABATVR QVARE IN EVM AVT IPSE ANIMADVERTERET AVT CIVITATEM ANIMADVERTERE IVBERET.

Quibus rēbus cognitīs[I] [II]

I ***quibus rēbus cognitīs,*** abl. abs. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (absolūtus, i.e. free or unconnected). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause. §419

II **cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus** (COM- + (G)NŌSCŌ), *To become thoroughly acquainted with* (by the senses or mentally), *to learn by inquiring, to examine, investigate, perceive, see, understand, learn*; and, in tempp. perff. (cf. *nosco*) *to know*; constr. with acc., with acc. and inf., or a rel.-clause as object, and with *ex, ab*, the abl. alone, or *per*, with the source, etc., of the information, and with *de*. By the senses: *"per exploratores cognovit,"* (I.XXII), *"Quibus rebus cognitis,"* (I.XIX); Mentally, *to become acquainted with, learn,*

=with these things <having been> learned	*~after learning these circumstances*

cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimæ rēs accēderent[I] [II]

=when most certain things were added to those suspicions	*~since to these suspicions the most certain facts were added*

quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset[III]

=(namely,) that he had led the Helvetii through the territories of the Sequani	*~viz., that he had led the Helvetii through the territories of the Sequani*

recognize, know: "quod Di vitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium cognoverat," (I.XIX), *"id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse," knew by their weapons and insignia* (diff. from *ex* and *ab aliquo*, to learn from any one, v *ab*) (I.XXII); Milit. t. t., *to reconnoitre, to act the part of a scout*: *"qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit,"* (I.XXI)

I ***cum…accēderent,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

II **accēdō, -ere, -cessī, cessūrus** (AD + CĒDŌ), *to go or come to or near, to approach,* Lit. In gen., constr. with ad, in, the local adverbs, the acc., dat., infin., or absol. With *ad*: *"ad oppidum,"* (II.XIII); In partic. *To approach a thing in a hostilemanner* (like *aggredior, adorior*), *to attack*: *"acie instructa usque ad castra hostium accessit,"* (I.LI); In partic. With the accessory idea of increase, *to be added* = *addi*; constr. with ad or dat.: (so, not *accenderet*, is *to be read*).—If a new thought is to be added, it is expressed by accedit with *quod* (*add to this, that*, etc.) when it implies a logical reason, but with *ut* (*beside this, it happens that,* or *it occurs that*) when it implies an historical fact; When several new ideas are added, they are introduced by *res* in the plur.: *"cum ad has suspiciones certissimæ res accederent"*: *"quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset*; quod obsides inter eos dandos curāsset," *"quod ea omnia ..."* (I.XIX)

III ***quod…trādūxisset,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question, expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse. §592

quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs [esse][I] cūrāsset[II]

=that he had took care that (he) the hostages were <having> to be given between those men	*~that he had provided that hostages should be mutually given*

quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū[III] suō et cīvitātis

=that // all these things, not only without his own command (Cæsar's) and of his own state's	*~that // all these things, not only without any orders of his [Cæsar's] and of his own state's*

sed etiam

=but even	*~but even*

īnscientibus[IV] ipsīs[V]

=with (the Æduans) themselves <being> unaware	*~without their [the Ædui] knowing any thing of it themselves*

fēcisset[VI]

=he had done	*~he had done*

I ***obsides inter eōs dandōs,*** acc. of the gerundive. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

II ***quod…cūrāsset,*** informal indir. disc. §592

III **iniussus, -ūs**, M., ONLY IN THE ABL. (IN + JUSSUS), *without command*

IV **īnsciēns, -entis**, ADJ. (ĪN + SCIĒNS), *unknowing, without knowledge, unaware*

V ***īnscientibus ipsīs***, abl. abs. §419

VI ***quod…fēcisset,*** informal indir. disc. §592

quod ā magistrātū[I] Æduōrum accūsārētur[II]

=that he (Dumnorix) was called into account by the (chief) magistrate of the Ædui

~that he [Dumnorix] was reproached by the [chief] magistrate of the Ædui

satis esse[III] causæ[IV]

=that it was enough of (a) reason

~that there was sufficient reason

arbitrābātur

=he was of the opinion

~he [Cæsar] considered

quārē in eum

=from what cause // into him (Dumnorix)

~why // to him

I ***ā magistrātū,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action. Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy. Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule. §405

II ***quod…accūsārētur,*** informal indir. disc. §592

III ***satis esse causæ***, indi. disc. dependent on *arbitrābātur.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

IV ***causæ***, Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Nouns or Pronouns. pars mīlitum, part of the soldiers. quis nostrum, which of us? nihil erat reliquī, there was nothing left. “nēmō eōrum” (VII.LXVI), not a man of them. “māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt” (II.XXIII), they killed a large part of them. §346

aut ipse animadverteret[I] aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret[II]

=either he himself should turn (his) mind /into him/ or he should order the state (of the Æduans) to turn (its) mind (to him)

~he should either punish him himself, or order the state to do so

After learning these circumstances, since to these suspicions the most unequivocal facts were added, viz., that he had led the Helvetii through the territories of the Sequani; that he had provided that hostages should be mutually given; that he had done all these things, not only without any orders of his [Cæsar's] and of his own state's, but even without their [the Aedui] knowing any thing of it themselves; that he [Dumnorix] was reprimanded: by the [chief] magistrate of the Aedui; he [Cæsar] considered that there was sufficient reason, why he should either punish him himself, or order the state to do so.

I **animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus** (ANIMUM + ADVERTO), *to direct the mind, give attention to, attend to, consider, regard, observe*

II ***quārē…animadverteret…iubēret,*** rel. clause of purpose. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause. §531

I.XIX.II

HIS OMNIBVS REBVS VNVM REPVGNABAT, QVOD DIVICIACI FRATRIS SVMMVM IN POPVLVM ROMANVM STVDIVM, SVMMVM IN SE VOLVNTATEM, EGREGIAM FIDEM, IVSTITIAM, TEMPERANTIAM COGNOVERAT; NAM NE EIVS SVPPLICIO DIVICIACI ANIMVM OFFENDERET VEREBATVR.

Hīs omnibus rēbus[I] ūnum repugnābat[II]

=one (thing) (however) opposed itself to all these things

~one thing [however] was opposing in all these situatiins

I **his omnibus rēbus,** indir. obj. with special v. *repugnābat.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

II **repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (RE + PŪGNŌ), *to fight against, oppose; to make resistance, resist, defend one's self* . Lit.: *"nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare,"* (III.IV); Transf., in gen., *to resist, make resistance; to oppose, contend against*. With dat.: *"his omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod ...," one consideration opposed itself*, (I.XIX)

quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium[I], summum in sē[II] voluntātem, ēgregiam[III] fidem, iūstitiam[IV], temperantiam[V] cognōverat

=that he (Cæsar) had learned of the goodwill toward himself (Cæsar), the very high zeal of (his) brother Divitiacus for the Roman people, (of his) extraordinary faith, justice, (and) moderation

~that he had learned by experience his brother Divitiacus's very high affection for the Roman people, his great affection toward him, his distinguished faithfulness, justice, and moderation

nam

=for

~for

I **studium, -ī**, N. (STUDEO), *application, assiduity, zeal, eagerness, fondness, inclination, desire, exertion, endeavor, study*; In partic. *Zeal for any one; good-will, affection, attachment, devotion, favor, kindness*, etc

II ***sē***, acc. sg.

III **ēgregius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (EX + GREX), *extraordinary, distinguished, surpassing, excellent, eminent,* In gen.: *"virtus,"* (I.XXVIII), *"fides,"* (I.XIX)

IV **iustitia, -æ**, F. (IUSTUS), *justice, equity, righteousness, uprightness*

V **temperantia, -æ**, F. (TEMPERANS), *moderateness, moderation, sobriety, discreetness, temperateness, temperance*, as a moral quality: *"(Divitiaci) summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, temperantiam cognoverat,"* (I.XIX)

nē eius suppliciō[I] [II] Dīviciācī animum offenderet[III] [IV]

=lest by <means of> his (Dumnorix') punishment, he might offend the mind of Diviacus	*~lest by the punishment of this man, he should hurt the feelings of Divitiacus*

verēbātur[V]

=he was fearing	*~he was afraid*

One thing [however] stood in the way of all this-that he had learned by experience his brother Divitiacus's very high regard for the Roman people, his great affection toward him, his distinguished faithfulness, justice, and moderation; for he was afraid lest by the punishment of this man, he should hurt the feelings of Divitiacus.

I ***suppliciō***, abl. of means. §409

II **supplicium, -ī**, N. (SUPPLEX), To receive punishment; hence, *punishment, penalty, torture, torment, pain, distress, suffering* (class. and freq.; usu. of the penalty of death; syn. *pœna*). Sing.: *"aliquem hostibus ad supplicium dedere,"* (VII.XXVI): *"supplicio affici," to be put to death*, (I.XXVII), *"gravissimum ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est,"* (VI.XVII), Plur.: *"ad innocentum supplicia descendunt,"* (VI.XVII)

III ***nē…offenderet,*** clause of fearing. Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive, with nē affirmative and nē nōn or ut negative. In this use nē is commonly to be translated by that, ut and nē nōn by that not. §564

IV **offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus** (OB + FENDO), *to hit, thrust, strike, dash against*; *To find fault with, be displeased with, take offence at any thing*: *"nullum ejusmodi casum exspectans, quo . . . in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset,"* (VI.XXXVI); *To shock, offend, mortify, vex, displease one*

V **vereor, -ērī, -itus, —** DEP. (VEL-), *to feel awe of, to reverence, revere, respect; to fear, be afraid of* any thing (good or bad); *to fear* or *be afraid to do a thing*, etc.; constr. with acc., with an inf., the gen., a foll. *ne*, *ut*; With acc.: *"non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum,"* (I.XXXIX), *"periculum,"* (V.XLVIII); a rel.-clause, or absol.—With a rel.-clause, *to await with fear, to fear, dread,* With dat. (very rare): *"eo minus veritus navibus, quod, etc.," for the ships* (V.IX), *"nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur"* (I.XIX), *"vereri se ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur"* (I.XLII), *"primum quod vererentur ne, omni pacata Gallia, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur"* (II.I)

I.XIX.III

ITAQVE PRIVS QVAM QVICQVAM CONARETVR, DIVICIACVM AD SE VOCARI IVBET ET, COTIDIANIS INTERPRETIBVS REMOTIS, PER C. VALERIVM PROCILLVM, PRINCIPEM GALLIÆ PROVINCIÆ, FAMILIAREM SVVM, CVI SVMMAM OMNIVM RERVM FIDEM HABEBAT, CVM EO COLLOQVITVR: SIMVL COMMONEFACIT QVÆ IPSO PRÆSENTE IN CONCILIO GALLORVM DE DVMNORIGE SINT DICTA, ET OSTENDIT QVÆ SEPARATIM QVISQVE DE EO APVD SE DIXERIT.

Itaque prius[I] quam quicquam[II] cōnārētur[III]

=therefore, before that he attempted any thing

~therefore, before he attempted any thing

Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī[IV V]

=that Divitiacus is to be summoned to him

~Divitiacus to be summoned to him

I **prius**, **-ōris**, ADJ. COMP. (PRO-), *former, previous, prior, first*; Adv., *before, sooner, first, previously*; With *quam*, and often joined in one word—*priusquam, before, before that, "neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum pervenerunt,"* (I.LIII)

II **quicquam**, N. PRON. INDEF. (QUIC + QUAM), As adj., *any, any one*; Subst., *any man, any person, any thing;* also emphatic, *any person whoever, any person* or *thing* (even the least, etc.), *"ne quemquam interficiant,"* (VII.XL)

III ***Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur***, clause of time, aka anticipatory subj. Antequam and priusquam take sometimes the Indicative sometimes the Subjunctive: With antequam or priusquam the Imperfect Subjunctive is common when the subordinate verb implies purpose or expectancy in past time, or when the action that it denotes did not take place. §551

IV ***Dīviciācum…vocārī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *iubet.* §580 & Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

V **vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (VOC-), *to call upon, summon, invoke*; *to call together, convoke*, etc. Lit. In gen.: *"Dumnorigem ad se vocat,"* (I.XX)

iubet[VI]

=he orders	*~he ordered*

et

=and	*~and*

cotīdiānīs interpretibus[II] remōtīs[III IV]

=with the daily interpreters <having been> removed	*~when the ordinary interpreters had been withdrawn*

per C[aium] Valerium Procillum[V], prīncipem Galliæ prōvinciæ, familiārem suum

=through C[aius] Valerius Procillus, chief of the province of Gaul, his intimate aquaintance	*~converses with him through Caius Valerius Procillus, chief of the province of Gaul, an intimate friend of his*

cui[VI] summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat

=for whom he had the highest faith of all things	*~in whom he reposed the highest confidence in every thing*

VI ***iubet***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

II **interpres, -etis**, M. AND F. (PRAT-), *an explainer, expounder, translator, interpreter:* Esp., *an interpreter, dragoman: "quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per C. Valerium cum eo (Divitiaco) colloquitur,"* (I.XIX)

III ***cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs,*** abl. abs. §419

IV **removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus** (RE- + MOVEŌ), *to move back, take away, set aside, put off, drive away, withdraw, remove*—Hence, **remōtus, -a, -um**, P. a., *removed,* i.e. *afar off, distant, remote*

V **Procillus, -ī,** M., a Roman name

VI ***cui***, dat. with special v. fidem *habēbat.* §367

cum eō colloquitur[I]

=he converses with that (man) *~converses with him*

simul[II] commonefacit[III]

=at the same time he brings to mind *~at the same time he reminds*

quæ

=(the things) which *~what*

ipsō præsente[IV]

=with himself <being> present (Diviciacus) *~when he himself was present*

in conciliō Gallorum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta[V]

=had been said about Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls *~about Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls*

et ostendit

=and spreads before *~and shows*

I **colloquor, -cūtus, collocūtus sum, —** DEP. (COL- + LOQUOR), *to talk together, converse, to hold a conversation, a parley, or a conference*; constr. commonly *cum aliquo, inter se*, or absol., *"cum aliquo per aliquem,"* (I.XIX), Absol.: *"Ariovistus ex equis ut conloquerentur"* (I.XLIII), *"conloquendi Cæsari causa"* (I.XLVII)

II **simul**, ADV. (SA-), *at the same time, together, at once, simultaneously*; Introducing an independent sentence, *at the same time, also, likewise*, *"hoc proprium virtutis existimant ... simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur,"* (VI.XXIII); More freq. *simul et* (= *etiam*): *"simul commonefacit"* (I.XIX), *"simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigi iubet"* (VI.VIII)

III **commonefaciō, -ere -fēcī, -factus,** 3RD CONJ. IŌ-VAR, IRREG. PASS. VOICE (COMMONEO + FACIO), *to recall, bring to mind; To remind, put in mind, admonish, impress upon*

IV ***ipsō præsente,*** abl. abs. §420

V ***quæ…sint dicta,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

quæ sēparātim[VI]

=(the things) which // separately *~what // privately*

quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit[II]

=each man had said about him // near him (Cæsar) *~each had said of him // in his [Cæsar's] own presence*

Therefore, before he attempted any thing, he orders Divitiacus to be summoned to him, and, when the ordinary interpreters had been withdrawn, converses with him through Caius Valerius Procillus, chief of the province of Gaul, an intimate friend of his, in whom he reposed the highest confidence in every thing; at the same time he reminds him of what was said about Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls, when he himself was present, and shows what each had said of him privately in his [Cæsar's] own presence.

I.XIX.IV

PETIT ATQVE HORTATVR VT SINE EIVS OFFENSIONE ANIMI VEL IPSE DE EO CAVSA COGNITA STATVAT VEL CIVITATEM STATVERE IVBEAT.

Petit[III]

=he begs *~he begs*

VI **sēparātim**, ADV. (SEPARATUS), *asunder, apart, separately*; Absol. *"et item separatim, quot pueri, senes mulieresque"* (I.XXIX)

II ***quæ…dixerit,*** indir. question. §573

III **petō, -ere, -īvī, petītus** (PET-), *to fall, fall upon; hence, to endeavor to reach or attain any thing*; *to fall upon* any thing. Lit. In a hostile sense, *to rush at, attack, assault, assail; to let fly at, aim a blow at, thrust at*, etc.; Trop. *To attack, assail one with any thing*: *To demand, seek, require*; In partic. *To beg, beseech, ask, request, desire, entreat* (syn.: *rogo, flagito, obsecro*); constr with *ab* and abl. of pers. (cf. infra); ante- and postclass., with acc. of pers.: "*pacem ab aliquo,"* (II.XIII); Polit. t. t., *to apply* or *solicit for an office, to be a candidate for office*: *To take, betake one's self to any thing*: *"aliam in partem petebant fugam," betook themselves to flight, fled,"* (II.XXIV)

atque hortātur[IV]

=and he exhorts (him) *~and exhorts him*

ut sine eius offēnsiōne[II] animī[III]

=that without offense of the mind of him *~that, without offense to his feelings*

vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā[IV] statuat

=with the cause <having been> examined, he should either himself decide about that man (Dumnorix) *~he may either himself pass judgment on him [Dumnorix] after trying the case*

vel

=or *~or else*

cīvitātem statuere

=the (Æduan) state to determine *~the [Æduan] state to do so*

IV **hortor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP., *to urge one strongly to do a thing, to incite, instigate, encourage, cheer, exhort;* In gen., constr. aliquem, aliquem ad or in aliquid, ut, ne, with the simple subj., de aliqua re, aliquid, with the inf. or absol.; With *ut, ne*, or the simple subj.: *"petit atque hortatur, ut ..."* (I.XIX), Of inanim. or abstract things: *"multæ res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur,"* (III.XVIII); In partic., in milit. lang., *to exhort soldiers* before a battle: "*Sabinus suos hortatus cupientibus signum dat,"* (III.XIX)

II **offēnsiō, -ōnis**, F. (OFFENDO), *a striking against, tripping, stumbling*; Trop., An offence given to any one, *disfavor, aversion, disgust, dislike, hatred, discredit, bad reputation*; *An offence which one receives; displeasure, vexation*

III ***eius animī***, obj. gen. The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs. §347 & Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Cæsar, as odium, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as hate. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase amor patris, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive). §348

IV ***causā cognitā,*** abl. abs. §420

iubeat[V]

=he should order *~order*

He begs and exhorts him, that, without offense to his feelings, he may either himself pass judgment on him [Dumnorix] after trying the case, or else order the [Aeduan] state to do so.

V ***ut…statuat…iubeat,*** subst. clause of purpose. §563

I.XX

CÆSAR PARDONS DUMNORIX, BUT WARNS HIM.

I.XX.I

DIVICIACVS MVLTIS CVM LACRIMIS CÆSAREM COMPLEXVS OBSECRARE CŒPIT NE QVID GRAVIVS IN FRATREM STATVERET: SCIRE SE ILLA ESSE VERA, NEC QVEMQVAM EX EO PLVS QVAM SE DOLORIS CAPERE, PROPTEREA QVOD, CVM IPSE GRATIA PLVRIMVM DOMI ATQVE IN RELIQVA GALLIA, ILLE MINIMVM PROPTER ADVLESCENTIAM POSSET, PER SE CREVISSET; QVIBVS OPIBVS AC NERVIS NON SOLVM AD MINVENDAM GRATIAM SED PÆNE AD PERNICIEM SVAM VTERETVR.

Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs[I] [II] Cæsarem complexus[III] [eum] obsecrāre[IV] cœpit

I *multīs cum lacrimīs,* abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

II **lacrima, -æ**, F., *a tear*

III **complector, -ī, -plexus, —** DEP. (PARC-, PLEC-), *to entwine around a person or thing*; Of persons, *to clasp, embrace,* as an expression of affection.

IV **obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (OB + SACRO), *to beseech, entreat, implore, supplicate, conjure*

=Divitiacus, <having> embraced Cæsar, begins to beseech [him], by <manner of> many tears

~Divitiacus, embracing Cæsar, begins to implore him, with many tears

nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret[I]

=that he might not decide anything too severe upon (his) brother

~not to pass any very severe sentence upon his brother

scīre sē[II]

=(saying) that he knows

~saying, that he knows

illa esse[III] vēra

=that those things are true

~that those charges were true

I ***nē…statueret,*** neg. subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

II ***scīre sē,*** indir. disc. dependent on *obsecrāre.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

III ***illa esse,*** indirect discourse dependent on *scīre.* §580

nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris[I] capere[II]

=(and) that not anyone on account of that man (Dumnorix) was taking more pain than (he) himself

~and that nobody suffered more pain than he himself did

propter eā quod

=on account of that because

~on that account

I **dolōris**, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, used as nouns:— "plūs dolōris" (I.XX), more grief. §3463

II **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus** (CAP-), *to take in hand, take hold of, lay hold of, take, seize, grasp*; Of persons: *"ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est,"* (I.XXVI); Of places: *To occupy, choose, select, take possession of, enter into*; mostly milit. t. t., *to take up a position, select a place for a camp*, etc.: *"loca capere, castra munire,"* (III.XXIII); of position on the battle-field: "*quod mons suberat, eo se recipere cœperunt. Capto monte ..."* (I.XXV); Of things of value, property, money, etc. In gen., *to take, seize, wrest, receive, obtain, acquire, get*, etc.: *"quare non committeret, ut is locus ex calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet,"* (I.XIII); Of regular income, revenue, etc., rents, tolls, profits, etc., *to collect, receive, obtain*: *"stipendium jure belli,"* (I.XXVIII); Trop. In gen., of any occupation, work, or undertaking, *to begin, enter upon, take, undertake*, etc.:—Transf., of place: *"eorum (finium) una pars, quam Gallos optinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano,"* (I.I); Transf., with the feelings, experience, etc., as subj., *to seize, overcome, possess, occupy, affect, take possession of, move*, etc.; Of injury, damage, loss, etc., *to suffer, take, be subjected to*

cum ipse grātiā[I] plūrimum domī[II] atque in reliquā Galliā[III] [posset]

=when he himself (Diviciacus) [was] most [able] by <means of> (his) kindness at home (in Ædui) and in remaining Gaul

~for when he himself could effect a very great deal by his influence at home and in the rest of Gaul

ille minimum propter adulēscentiam[IV] posset[V]

=that man (Dumnorix) was least able on account of (his) youth

~and he [Dumnorix] very little on account of his youth

I ***grātiā***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II ***domī***, loc. case. Special uses of place from which, to which, and where are the following: Domum denoting the place to which, and the locative domī, may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive. domī meæ, at my house; domī Cæsaris, at Cæsar's house. domī suæ vel aliēnæ, at his own or another's house. §428k

III ***reliquā Galliā,*** abl. of place where. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: Often in indefinite words, such as locō, parte, etc. §429

IV **adulēscentia, -æ**, F. (ADULESCENS), *youth*

V ***cum…posset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

per[I] sē crēvisset[II] [III]

=he (Dumnorix) had grown (in resources and strength) by <means of> himself (Diviticiacus)

~the latter had become powerful with their help

I ***per***, Per, through, over, with the accusative. Figuratively, of persons as means or instruments: as, —per hominēs idoneōs, through the instrumentality of suitable persons; licet per mē, you (etc.) may for all me. Hence, stat per mē, it is through my instrumentality; so, per sē, in and of itself. §221

II **crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus** (CER-), *to come into being, spring up*, Fig., *to grow, increase, be enlarged, be strengthened*; Of things already in existence, *to rise in height, to rise, grow, grow up, thrive, increase*, etc.; Trop. In gen., *to grow, increase, to be enlarged or strengthened*; In partic., *to rise or increase in distinction, honor, courage*, etc., *to be promoted* or *advanced, to prosper, to become great, attain honor*

III ***propter eā quod…crēvisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

quibus[I] opibus[II] ac nervīs[III] [IV] nōn sōlum ad minuendam[V] [VI] grātiam[VII]

=with which power and strength (he used) not only for <the purpose of> minimising (his) (Divitiacus') favor

~and which power and strength he used not only to the lessening of his [Divitiacus] popularity

sed pæne ad perniciem[VIII] suam ūterētur[IX]

=but it was nearly used toward his own destruction

~but it was almost used for his own ruin

I A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *qua de causa, and for this reason, for this reason* (I.I); *qui ... prœlium committuut* (Historical Present), *they* (or *and they) ... joined battle* (I.XV)

II (**ops,**) **opis** (NO NOM. OR DAT. SG.), F. (AP-), *power, might, strength, ability*, in abstr.; In concr., means of any kind that one possesses; *property, substance, wealth, riches, treasure;* military or political resources, *might, power, influence*, etc. (in this signif. mostly in pl.)

III **nervus, -ī**, M., *a sinew, tendon, muscle*; Fig., *a sinew, nerve, vigor, force, power, strength*

IV ***opibus ac nervīs,*** abl. with special v. *ūterētur.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

V ***minuendam***, v. sg. gerundive. f. acc.

VI **minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (MAN-), *to make small, lessen, diminish, divide into small pieces*; Fig., *to lessen, diminish, lower, reduce, weaken, abate, restrict*

VII ***ad minuendam grātiam,*** acc. of the gerundive expressing purpose. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

VIII **perniciēs, -ēi**, F. (PER + NEC-), *destruction, death, ruin, overthrow, disaster, calamity, mischief*

IX ***quibus…ūterētur,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

Divitiacus, embracing Cæsar, begins to implore him, with many tears, that, *"he would not pass any very severe sentence upon his brother; saying, that he knows that those charges are true, and that nobody suffered more pain on that account than he himself did; for when he himself could effect a very great deal by his influence at home and in the rest of Gaul, and he [Dumnorix] very little on account of his youth, the latter had become powerful through his means, which power and strength he used not only to the lessening of his [Divitiacus] popularity, but almost to his ruin.*

I.XX.II

SESE TAMEN ET AMORE FRATERNO ET EXISTIMATIONE VVLGI COMMOVERI.

Sēsē tamen et amōre[I] frāternō[II] [III] et exīstimātiōne[IV] [V] vulgī[VI] commovērī[VII]

=but he (Diviciacus) nonetheless was moved both by <means of> brotherly love and by <means of> the judgement of the masses

~that he, however, was influenced both by fraternal affection and by public opinion

I **amor, -ōris**, M. (AM-), *love* (to friends, parents, etc.; and also in a low sense; hence In gen., like *amo*, while *caritas*, like *diligere*, is esteem, regard, etc.; hence *amor* is used also of brutes, but *caritas* only of men; v. amo init.)

II **frāternus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FRATER), of a brother, *brotherly, fraternal*

III ***amōre frāternō,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

IV **exīstimātiō, -ōnis**, F. (EXISTIMO), *a judging, judgment, opinion, supposition, decision, estimate, verdict*

V ***exīstimātiōne,*** abl. of means. §409

VI **vulgus, -i**. N., *common people/general public/multitiude/common herd/rabble/crowd/mob; flock;*

VII ***sēsē…commovērī,*** indir. disc. §580

I.XX.III

QVOD SI QVID EI A CÆSARE GRAVIVS ACCIDISSET, CVM IPSE EVM LOCVM AMICITIÆ APVD EVM TENERET, NEMINEM EXISTIMATVRVM NON SVA VOLVNTATE FACTVM; QVA EX RE FVTVRVM VTI TOTIVS GALLIÆ ANIMI A SE AVERTERENTVR.

Quod

=that *~but*

sī quid eī[I] ā Cæsare[II] gravius accidisset[III]

=if anything too grave should happen to him (Dumnotix) by (at the hands of) Cæsar *~if any thing very severe by Cæsar should befall him*

cum ipse eum locum amīcitiæ apud eum tenēret[IV]

=since he himself held that place of friendship among him (Cæsar) *~since he himself held such a place in Cæsar's friendship*

I ***eī***, dat. with comp. v. *accidisset.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

II ***ā Cæsare,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action. Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy. Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule. §405

III ***sī quid…accidisset,*** protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. dependent on *scīre*. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

IV ***cum…tenēret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

nēminem exīstimātūrum [esse][I]

=no one would think

~no one would think

nōn suā voluntāte[II] factum [esse][III]

=that (it) was not done by his volition

~that it had been done without his consent

quā ex rē futūrum [esse]

=that from which thing it would be

~from which circumstance it would arise

utī tōtīus Galliæ animī ā sē[IV] āverterentur[V]

=that the feelings of all Gaul would be turned away (i.e. disinclined) from him

~that the affections of the whole of Gaul would be estranged from him

That he, however, was influenced both by fraternal affection and by public opinion. But if any thing very severe from Cæsar should befall him [Dumnorix], no one would think that it had been done without his consent, since he himself held such a place in Cæsar's friendship: from which circumstance it would arise, that the affections of the whole of Gaul would be estranged from him."

I ***quod…nēminem exīstimātūrum,*** apodosis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

II ***suā voluntāte,*** abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. i. To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative expresses that in accordance with which anything is or is done. Note. As the Romans had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the ablative. The ablative of specification (originally instrumental) is closely akin to that of manner, and shows some resemblance to means and cause. §418i

III ***nōn suā voluntāte factum [esse]***, indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimātūrum.* §580

IV ***ā sē,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

V ***quā ex rē futūrum utī…āverterentur***, apodosis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

I.XX.IV

HÆC CVM PLVRIBVS VERBIS FLENS A CÆSARE PETERET, CÆSAR EIVS DEXTRAM PRENDIT; CONSOLATVS ROGAT FINEM ORANDI FACIAT; TANTI EIVS APVD SE GRATIAM ESSE OSTENDIT VTI ET REI PVBLICÆ INIVRIAM ET SVVM DOLOREM EIVS VOLVNTATI AC PRECIBVS CONDONET.

Hæc cum plūribus verbīs[I] [II] flēns[III] [IV] ā Cæsare[V] peteret[VI]

=as he, crying, was begging these things from Cæsar by <means of> several words

~as he was with tears begging these things of Cæsar in many words

Cæsar eius dextram[VII] prēndit[VIII]

=Cæsar takes his (Diviciacus') right (hand)

~Cæsar takes his right hand

cōnsōlātus[IX] rogat

=(and) (Cæsar) <having> comforted (him; Diviciaus), asks

~and, comforting him, begs him

I ***plūribus verbīs***, abl. of means. §409

II **verbum, -ī**, N., *a word*

III ***flēns***, part. sg. pres. masc. nom.

IV **fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētus** (FLA-), *to weep, cry, shed tears, lament, wail*

V ***ā Cæsare,*** abl. of source. The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists. §403

VI ***cum…peteret,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

VII **dextra, -æ**, F. (DEXTER), sc. *manus*, *the right hand* (freq. a sign of greeting, of fidelity; a symbol of strength, courage, etc.)

VIII **prēndo, -ere, -dī, -sus** (HED-), *to lay hold of, grasp, snatch, seize, catch, take*

IX **cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus,** — DEP. (CŌN + SŌLOR), *to encourage, animate, console, cheer, comfort*

finem ōrandi[X] [XI] faciat[XII]

=that he make an end of speaking *~to make an end of entreating*

tantī[IV] eius apud sē gratiam esse[V]

=that the regard of him (Diviciaus) among him is so great *~that his regard for him is of so great account*

ostendit

=(and) he shows *~and makes known*

X ***ōrandi*** after the noun *finem*, subj. gen. of the gerund. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. §504

XI **ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (OS), *to speak; To pray, beg, beseech, entreat, implore, supplicate*

XII ***faciat***, hortatory subj. expressing command in indir. disc. Verbs of commanding, such as *rogat*, in this case, sometimes take the subj. without *ut*. Volō and its compounds, the impersonals licet and oportet, and the imperatives dīc and fac often take the Subjunctive without ut. i. Verbs of commanding and the like often take the subjunctive without ut. Note. The subjunctive in this construction is the hortatory subjunctive used to express a command in Indirect Discourse. §565i & All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well. §588

IV ***tantī***, gen. of quality expressing indefinite value. Certain adjectives of quantity are used in the Genitive to denote indefinite value. Such are māgnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris. Note. These are really Genitives of Quality (§345ii). §417

V ***sē grātiam esse***, indir. disc. dependent on *ostendit.* §580

utī et reī pūblicæ[I] iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet[II] [III]

=that he pardons both the injury of the republic and his own pain, by his volition and entreaties

~that he pardons both the injuries of the republic and his own anguish, at his volition and prayers

As he was with tears begging these things of Cæsar in many words, Cæsar takes his right hand, and, comforting him, begs him to make an end of entreating, and assures him that his regard for him is so great, that he forgives both the injuries of the republic and his private wrongs, at his desire and prayers.

I.XX.V

DVMNORIGEM AD SE VOCAT, FRATREM ADHIBET; QVÆ IN EO REPREHENDAT OSTENDIT, QVÆ IPSE INTELLEGAT, QVÆ CIVITAS QVERATVR PROPONIT; MONET VT IN RELIQVVM TEMPVS OMNES SVSPICIONES VITET; PRÆTERITA SE DIVICIACO FRATRI CONDONARE DICIT.

Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat

=he calls Dumnorix to himself

~he summons Dumnorix to him

frātrem adhibet[IV]

=(and) he summons (his) brother

~he brings in his brother

I ***reī pūblicæ,*** obj. gen. The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs. §347

II **condōnō -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (CON + DŌNŌ), *to give, present, deliver, surrender, abandon; To pardon, remit, overlook, forbear to punish*

III ***utī…condōnet,*** clause of result. The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534). §536

IV **adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** (AD + HABEŌ), *to hold toward, turn to, apply, add to*; Esp. Of persons, *to bring one to a place, to summon, to employ*

quæ in eō reprehendat[I] [II]

=what (things) he censures in that (man) | *~what he censures in him*

ostendit

=he points out | *~he points out*

quæ ipse intellegat[III]

=what (things) he himself knows | *~what he of himself perceives*

quæ cīvitās querātur[IV]

=(and) what (things) the state complains of | *~and what the state complains of*

prōpōnit

=he lays forth | *~he lays before him*

monet[V] [VI]

=he warns (Dumnorix) | *~he warned him*

I ***quæ…reprehendat,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

II **reprehendō, -ere, -endī, -ēnsus** (RE- + PREHENDŌ), *to hold back, hold fast, take hold of, seize, catch*; In partic., *to check, restrain* an erring person or (more freq.) the error itself; hence, by meton., *to blame, censure, find fault with, reprove, rebuke, reprehend*

III ***quæ…intellegat***, indir. question. §573

IV ***quæ…querātur,*** indir. question. §573

V ***monet***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

VI **moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** (MAN-), *to remind, put in mind of, admonish, advise, warn, instruct, teach*

ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet[I] [II]

=that he should avoid all suspicions for the remaining time

~to avoid all grounds of suspicion in the future

præterita[III] sē Dīviciācō frātrī[IV] condōnāre[V]

=that he pardons the bygones for (his) brother Diviciacus

~that he pardons the past, for the sake of his brother, Divitiacus

dīcit[VI]

=he says

~he said

He summons Dumnorix to him; he brings in his brother; he points out what he censures in him; he lays before him what he of himself perceives, and what the state complains of; he warns him for the future to avoid all grounds of suspicion; he says that he pardons the past, for the sake of his brother, Divitiacus.

I **vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (VIC-), *to shun, seek to escape, avoid, evade*

II ***ut…vītet,*** subst. clause of purpose. §563

III **prætereō, -īre, -iī, -itus** (PRÆTER + EŌ), *to go by, go past, pass by, pass*; Subst., **præterita, -ōrum**, N., *things gone by, the past*

IV ***Dīviciācō frātrī,*** dat. with comp. v. *condōnāre.* §370

V ***sē…condōnāre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dīcit.* §580

VI ***dīcit***, hist. pres. §469

I.XX.VI

DVMNORIGI CVSTODES PONIT, VT QVÆ AGAT, QVIBVSCVM LOQVATVR SCIRE POSSIT.

Dumnorīgī[I] custōdēs[II] pōnit[III]

=he places overseers over Dumnorix *~he posted watchers over Dumnorix*

ut

=<in order> that *~so that*

quæ agat[IV]

=what (things) he may do *~what he did*

quibuscum loquātur[V] [VI]

=(and) with whom he may talk *~and with whom he communicated*

scīre[VII] possit[VIII]

=he may be able to know *~to know*

He sets spies over Dumnorix that he may be able to know what he does, and with whom he communicates.

I ***Dumnorīgī***, dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). Th e dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed. §376

II **custōs, -ōdis**, M. AND F. (SCV-), *a guard, watch, preserver, keeper, overseer, protector, defender, attendant*

III ***pōnit***, hist. pres. §469

IV ***quæ…agat,*** indir. question. §573

V ***quibuscum…loquātur,*** indir. question. §573

VI **loquor, -ī, -cūtus, —** DEP. (LAC-), *to speak, talk, say, tell, mention, utter*

VII **sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus** (SAC-), *to know, understand, perceive, have knowledge of, be skilled in*

VIII ***ut…possit,*** clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

I.XXI

CÆSAR PLANS TO CRUSH THE HELVETIANS.

I.XXI.I

EODEM DIE AB EXPLORATORIBVS CERTIOR FACTVS HOSTES SVB MONTE CONSEDISSE MILIA PASSVVM AB IPSIVS CASTRIS OCTO, QVALIS ESSET NATVRA MONTIS ET QVALIS IN CIRCVITV ASCENSVS, QVI COGNOSCERENT MISIT.

Eōdem diē[I] ab explōrātōribus[II] certior factus

=(Cæsar) <having been> made more certain by <agent of> (his) scouts on the same day

~being on the same day informed by his scouts

I **eōdem diē,** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

II **ab explōrātōribus,** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action. Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires ā or ab) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword; but, occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy. Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule. §405

hostēs sub[I] monte cōnsēdisse[II] mīlia[III] passuum[IV] ab ipsīus castrīs octō

=that the enemy had settled at the foot of a mountain eight thousand of paces from his own camp

~that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain eight miles from his own camp

quālis[V] esset[VI] nātūra montis

=what sort of nature was of the mountain

~what the nature of the mountain was

I ***sub***, Sub, under, up to, with the accusative or the ablative. Of rest, with the ablative: as, sub Iove, in the open air (under the heaven, personified as Jove); sub monte, at the foot of the hill. §221

II **cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus** (CŌN + SĪDŌ), v. n.*, to sit down* (esp. of a multitude)*, take a seat, be seated, to settle* (freq. in all periods and species of composition); constr. with *in* and abl., *sub* and abl., *ante*, the simple abl., or absol.; Milit. t. t., *to encamp, pitch a camp, take post somewhere*; with *in* and abl., *"quo in loco Germani consederant,"* (I.XLIX)—With *sub,* "sub monte consedit," (I.XLVIII), *"trans flumen,"* (II.XVI), *"contra eum duūm milium spatio,"* (III.XVII)

III ***mīlia octō***, acc. of extent of space. Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative. ii. Distance when considered as extent of space is put in the Accusative; when considered as degree of difference, in the Ablative (§414). §425ii

IV ***passuum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

V **quālis, -e**, PRONOM. ADJ. (CA-), Interrog. *how constituted, of what sort, of what nature, what kind of a, "qualis esset natura montis, cognoscere,"* (I.XXI)

VI ***quālis esset,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

et quālis in circuitū[I] ascēnsus[II]

=and of what sort of ascent (had been) in a revolution *~and what kind of an ascent on every side*

quī cognōscerent[III]

=(those men) who might learn *~to ascertain*

[explōrātōrēs] mīsit

=he sent [scouts] *~he sent persons*

Being on the same day informed by his scouts, that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain eight miles from his own camp; he sent persons to ascertain what the nature of the mountain was, and of what kind the ascent on every side.

I.XXI.II

RENVNTIATVM EST FACILEM ESSE.

Renūntiātum est

=it was announced *~word was brought back*

facilem esse[IV]

=that (it) was easy *~that it was easy*

Word was brought back, that it was easy.

I **circuitus, -ūs**, M. (CIRCUMEO), *a going round, circling, revolving, revolution; A circuit, compass, way around*

II **ascēnsus, -ūs**, M. (ASCENDO), *a climbing, ascent*

III ***quī cognōscerent,*** rel. clause of purpose. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause. §531

IV ***facilem esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *renūntiātum est.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

I.XXI.III

DE TERTIA VIGILIA T. LABIENVM, LEGATVM PRO PRÆTORE, CVM DVABVS LEGIONIBVS ET EIS DVCIBVS QVI ITER COGNOVERANT SVMMVM IVGVM MONTIS ASCENDERE IVBET; QVID SVI CONSILI SIT OSTENDIT.

Dē tertiā vigiliā[I]

=concerning the third watch

~during the third watch

T[itum] Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prætōre[II], cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus

=T[itus] Labienus, (his) lieutenant in behalf of the leader // with two legions, and with those men (as) guides

~Titus Labienus, his lieutenant with prætorian powers // with two legions, and with those as guides

quī iter cognōverant

=(the two legions and those men as guides) who had became aquainted with the route

~who had examined the road

summum iugum montis ascendere[III]

=to ascend to the highest ridge of the mountain

~to ascend to the highest ridge of the mountain

iubet[IV]

=he orders

~he ordered

I ***dē tertiā vigiliā,*** abl. of time. §423

II **prætor, -ōris**, M. (PRÆ + I-), *a leader, head, chief, president, chief magistrate, chief executive, commander*

III ***T. Labiēnum ... ascendere,*** indir. disc. dependent on *iubet.* §580

IV ***iubet***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

quid suī cōnsilī sit[V]

=what is of his own plan

~what his plan is

ostendit[II]

=he exposes to view

~he explained

During the third watch he orders Titus Labienus, his lieutenant with prætorian powers, to ascend to the highest ridge of the mountain with two legions, and with those as guides who had examined the road; he explains what his plan is.

I.XXI.IV

IPSE DE QVARTA VIGILIA EODEM ITINERE QVO HOSTES IERANT AD EOS CONTENDIT EQVITATVMQVE OMNEM ANTE SE MITTIT.

Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā[III] eōdem itinere[IV]

=he himself, during the fourth watch // by <means of> the same route

~he himself during the fourth watch // by the same route

quō hostēs ierant

=by which the enemy had gone

~by which the enemy had gone

ad eōs contendit[V]

=he hastens toward those men

~hastened to them

V ***quid ... sit,*** indir. question. §573

II ***ostendit***, hist. pres. §469

III ***dē tertiā vigiliā,*** abl. of time. §423

IV ***eōdem itinere,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

V ***contendit***, hist. pres. §469

equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit[I]

=and he sends all the cavalry before himself

~and sent on all the cavalry before him

He himself during the fourth watch, hastens to them by the same route by which the enemy had gone, and sends on all the cavalry before him.

I.XXI.V

P. CONSIDIVS, QVI REI MILITARIS PERITISSIMVS HABEBATVR ET IN EXERCITV L. SVLLÆ ET POSTEA IN M. CRASSI FVERAT, CVM EXPLORATORIBVS PRÆMITTITVR.

P[ūblius][II] Cōnsidius[III]

=P[ublius] Considius

~Publius Considius

quī reī[IV] mīlitāris perītissimus[V] habēbātur

=who was held as the most experienced of military affairs

~who was reputed to be very experienced in military affairs

I ***mittit***, hist. pres. §469

II **Pūblius, -ī,** M., a Roman first name

III **Cōnsidius, -ī,** M., *Publius Considius,* an officer in Cæsar's army

IV ***reī***, obj. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. §348

V **perītus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PAR-), *experienced, practised, trained, skilled, skilful, expert*

et in exercitū L[ūciī] Sullæ[I] et posteā[II] in M[arcī] Crassī[III] fuerat

=and had been in the army of L[ucius] Sulla, and afterward in (that of) M[arcus] Crassus	*~and had been in the army of Lucius Sulla, and afterward in that of Marcus Crassus*

cum explōrātōribus præmittitur[IV]

=is sent forward with the scouts	*~was sent forward with the scouts*

Publius Considius, who was reputed to be very experienced in military affairs, and had been in the army of Lucius Sulla, and afterward in that of Marcus Crassus, is sent forward with the scouts.

I **Sulla, -æ,** M., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla,* born 138 B.C.; consul 88, dictator 81-79 B.C.; leader of the aristocratic party in the first Civil War, enemy of Marius; died 78 B.C.; *Faustus Cornelius Sulla*, son of the dictator; *Publius Cornelius Sulla*, nephew of the dictator, who fought under Cæsar

II **posteā**, ADV. (POST + EĀ), *after this, after that, hereafter, thereafter, afterwards, later*; **posteaquam** (or separately as, **postea quam**), *after that*

III **Crassus, -ī,** M., *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, member of the triumvirate with Cæsar and Pompey, consul in 55 B.C., perished in disastrous Parthian expedition; *Publius Licinius Crassus*, younger son of the triumvir, lieutenant of Cæsar in Gaul, 58-56 B.C., returning to Rome in 55 B.C. he followed his father to the East and fell in the same battle, 53 B.C.

IV ***præmittitur***, hist. pres. §469

I.XXII

Through false information the plan fails.

I.XXII.I

PRIMA LVCE, CVM SVMMVS MONS A LABIENO TENERETVR, IPSE AB HOSTIVM CASTRIS NON LONGIVS MILLE ET QVINGENTIS PASSIBVS ABESSET, NEQVE, VT POSTEA EX CAPTIVIS COMPERIT, AVT IPSIVS ADVENTVS AVT LABIENI COGNITVS ESSET, CONSIDIVS EQVO ADMISSO AD EVM ACCVRRIT, DICIT MONTEM QVEM A LABIENO OCCVPARI VOLVERIT AB HOSTIBVS TENERI: ID SE A GALLICIS ARMIS ATQVE INSIGNIBVS COGNOVISSE.

Prīmā[I] lūce[II III]

=at first light *~at day-break*

I **prīmus, -a, um,** ADJ. SUP. (PRO-), *the first, first*; With *ut*, *ubi*, *simulac*, *cum.*, *as soon as ever, as soon as*; **prīmum**, *at first, first, in the first place, in the beginning*—In enumerations, with a foll. *deinde, tum, "Cæsar primum suo, deinde omnium e conspectu remotis equis,"* (I.XXV)

II ***prīmā lūce,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

III **lūx, lūcis**, F. (LVC-), *light, brightness*; In partic., *the light of day, daylight, day*; *"prīmā luce ad eum accurrit," at daybreak, dawn of day* (I.XXII.I)

cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō[I] tenērētur

=when the top of the mountain was held by <the agent of> (Titus) Labienus

~when the summit of the mountain was in the possession of Titus Labienus

ipse ab hostium castrīs[II] nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus[III] abesset[IV]

=and he himself was not farther than 1000 and 500 of paces from the camp of the enemy

~and he himself was not further off than a mile and half from the enemy's camp

neque

=neither

~nor

I ***ā Labiēnō,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

II ***ab … castrīs,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

III ***mīlle et quīngentīs passibus,*** abl. of comparison. The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative (This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point from which we reckon. Thus, “Cicero is eloquent”; but, starting from him we come to Cato, who is “more so than he.”) signifying than. §406

IV ***cum … tenērētur … abesset,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

ut[I] posteā ex captīvīs[II] [III] comperit[IV]

=as he afterward obtained knowledge from the captives

~as he afterward ascertained from the captives

aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset[V]

=had either the arrival of himself or of Labienus been known

~had either his arrival or that of Labienus been discovered

Cōnsidius

=Considius

~Considius

equō admissō[VI] [VII]

=with (his) horse <having been> let go

~upon giving his horse reins

ad eum accurrit

=he runs up to that (man)

~comes up to him

I ***ut ... comperit***, *ut* + indic. frequently means *as* or *when*

II ***ex captīvīs,*** abl. of source. The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists. §403

III **captīva, -æ**, F. (CAPTIVUS), *a female captive, woman prisoner*

IV **comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertus** (PAR-), *to disclose wholly, lay open* (a fact), without the access. idea of communicating the thing disclosed (which *aperio* expresses; v. *aperio*); *to obtain a knowledge of a thing, to find out with certainty, to have* or *gain certain information, to ascertain, learn,* etc. (class. in prose and poetry), *"ut postea ex captivis comperit,"* (I.XXII), *"per exploratores,"* (IV.XIX)

V ***cognitus esset,*** this is a continuation of the *cum* clause above. §406

VI **admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (AD + MITTŌ), *to send to, let go, let loose, let come, admit, give access*; Of a horse, *to let go, give reins*

VII ***equō admissō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause.Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

dīcit

=(and) says | *~says*

montem

=that the mountain | *~that the mountain*

quem ā Labiēnō[I] occupārī voluerit[II]

=which he (Cæsar) wished to be seized by <agent of> Labienus | *~which he [Cæsar] wished to be seized by Labienus*

ab hostibus[III] tenērī[IV]

=is <being> held by the enemy | *~is in possession of the enemy*

id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus[V] [VI] cognōvisse[VII]

=that he had known it by the Gallic arms and by ensigns | *~that he has discovered this by the Gallic arms and regalia*

I ***ā Labiēnō,*** abl. of agent. §405

II ***quem ... voluerit,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

III ***ab hostibus,*** abl. of agent. §405

IV ***montem ... tenērī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dīcit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

V **īnsīgne, -is**, N. (INSIGNIS), *a mark, sign, signal; a distinctive mark, a badge of office* (class.); *a sign or badge of office or honor, a decoration*:—Esp. in plur., *insignia, attire, uniform, costume, regalia*, etc., *"tectis insignibus suorum," militaria, ornaments, probably on the helmets of the officers*, (VII.XLV)

VI ***ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus,*** abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

VII ***sē ... cognōvisse,*** indir. disc. A question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. §580

At day-break, when the summit of the mountain was in the possession of Titus Labienus, and he himself was not further off than a mile and half from the enemy's camp, nor, as he afterward ascertained from the captives, had either his arrival or that of Labienus been discovered; Considius, with his horse at full gallop, comes up to him says that the mountain which he [Cæsar] wished should be seized by Labienus, is in possession of the enemy; that he has discovered this by the Gallic arms and ensigns.

I.XXII.II

CÆSAR SVAS COPIAS IN PROXIMVM COLLEM SVBDVCIT, ACIEM INSTRVIT.

Cæsar suās copiās in proximum collem[I] subdūcit

=Cæsar leads up his own forces to the nearest hill *~Cæsar leads off his forces to the next hill*

aciem[II] īnstruit[III] [IV]

=(and) he inserts a battle line *~[and] drew up in battle-order*

Cæsar leads off his forces to the next hill: [and] draws them up in battle-order.

I **collis, -is**, M. (CEL-), *an elevation, high ground, hill*

II **aciēs, -ēī**, F. (AC-), *a sharp edge, point, cutting part*; Transf. Of the sense or faculty of sight, *Keenness of look* or *glance, sharpness of vision* or *sight, "ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum ferre potuisse,"* (I.XXIX); Milit., *the front of an army* (conceived of as the edge of a sword), *line of battle, battle-array*; *The battlearray, "aciem instruere,"* (I.XXII), *"dirigere,"* (VI.VIII); *The battlearray*; in concr., *an army drawn up in order of battle, "hostium acies cernebatur,"* (VII.LXII), *"tertiam aciem laborantibus subsidio mittere,"* (I.LII)

III ***īnstruit***, hist. pres. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect. Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.) §469

IV **īnstruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus** (ĪN + STRUŌ), *to build in, insert*; Of troops, *to form, set in order, draw up, array*; Hence, **instructus, -a, -um**, P. a., *ordered, drawn up; furnished, provided* with any thing. Lit., *"acies,"* (I.XLVIII)

I.XXII.III

LABIENVS, VT ERAT EI PRÆCEPTVM A CÆSARE NE PRŒLIVM COMMITTERET, NISI IPSIVS COPIÆ PROPE HOSTIVM CASTRA VISÆ ESSENT, VT VNDIQVE VNO TEMPORE IN HOSTES IMPETVS FIERET, MONTE OCCVPATO NOSTROS EXSPECTABAT PRŒLIOQVE ABSTINEBAT.

Labiēnus

=Labienus *~Labienus*

ut erat eī præceptum[I] ā Cæsare[II]

=as it was ordered to him by <agent of> Cæsar *~as he had been ordered by Cæsar*

nē prœlium committeret[III]

=that he should not join battle *~not to come to an engagement*

I **præcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** (PRÆ + CAPIO), *to take beforehand, get in advance; To give rules, advise, admonish, warn, inform, instruct, teach, enjoin, direct, bid, order*

II ***ā Cæsare,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

III ***nē ... committeret,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

nisi ipsīus cōpiæ prope[I] hostium castra vīsæ essent[II]

=unless his (Cæsar's) own forces should be seen near the camp of the enemy

~unless [Cæsar's] own forces were seen near the enemy's camp

ut undique ūnō tempore[III] in hostēs impetus[IV] fieret[V]

=<in order> that an attack might be made against the enemy from all parts at one time

~that the attack upon the enemy might be made on every side at the same time

monte occupātō[VI]

=with the mountain <having been> seized

~after having taken possession of the mountain

nostrōs [mīlitēs] exspectābat

=he was waiting for our [soldiers]

~waiting for our men

I **prope**, ADV. AND PREP. PRO. AND DEMONSTR. (SUFF. -PE), Adv., *near, nigh*; Prep. with acc., Lit., *in space, near, near by, hard by*

II ***nisi ... vīsæ essent,*** protasis of fut. condition in informal indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589 & A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. §592

III ***ūnō tempore,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

IV **impetus, -ūs**, M. (IN + PET-), *an attack, assault, onset*

V ***ut ... fieret,*** clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

VI ***monte occupātō,*** abl. abs. §420

prœliōque[I] abstinēbat[II]

=and he was refraining from battle

~and refraining from battle

Labienus, as he had been ordered by Cæsar not to come to an engagement unless [Cæsar's] own forces were seen near the enemy's camp, that the attack upon the enemy might be made on every side at the same time, was, after having taken possession of the mountain, waiting for our men, and refraining from battle.

I.XXII.IV

MVLTO DENIQVE DIE PER EXPLORATORES CÆSAR COGNOVIT ET MONTEM A SVIS TENERI, ET HELVETIOS CASTRA MOVISSE, ET CONSIDIVM TIMORE PERTERRITVM QVOD NON VIDISSET PRO VISO SIBI RENVNTIAVISSE.

Multō dēnique[III] diē[IV] per explōrātōrēs Cæsar cognōvit

=and length, at much day, Cæsar learned through scouts

~when, at length, the day was far advanced, Cæsar learned through spies

et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse[V]

=and that the Helvetii had moved (their) camp

~and that the Helvetii had moved their camp

I ***prœliōque***, abl. of separ. §401

II **abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum** (ABS + TENEO), *to keep back, keep off, hold back*; Neutr., *abstinere, to abstain from a thing*—constr. with abl., *ab*, inf., *quin* or *quominus*, the gen., or absol.

III **dēnique**, ADV., *and thenceforward, and thereafter, at last, at length, finally, lastly, only, not until;* In a summary or climax, *in a word, in short, in fact, briefly, to sum up, in fine, even, I may say*

IV ***multō ... diē***, abl. of time, *at much day, e.g. late in the day*—similiar usage to the phrase *"Prīmā lūce," at fight light* (I.XXII.I), also, may be trans. as an abl. abs., "*the day being much,"* i.e., *late in the day.* §423

V ***Helvētiōs ... mōvisse,*** indir. disc. §580

et montem ā suīs[I] [militibus] tenērī[II]

=both that the mountain was held by <agent of> his own [soldiers]

~that the mountain was in possession of his own men

et Cōnsidium timōre[III] [IV] perterritum

=and that Considius, <having been> thoroughly terrified by <means of> fear

~and that Considius, struck with fear

quod nōn vīdisset[V]

=what (thing) he had not seen

~that which he had not seen

prō vīsō[VI] sibi renūntiā[vi]sse[VII]

=(he) had reported to him, as seen

~had reported to him, as seen

When, at length, the day was far advanced, Cæsar learned through spies, that the mountain was in possession of his own men, and that the Helvetii had moved their camp, and that Considius, struck with fear, had reported to him, as seen, that which he had not seen.

I ***ā suīs,*** abl. of agent. §405

II ***montem ... tenērī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *cognōvit.* §580

III ***timōre***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

IV **timor, -ōris**, M. (TEM-), *fear, dread, apprehension, timidity, alarm, anxiety*

V ***quod ... vīdisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

VI ***vīsō***, ppp. n. of *videō*

VII ***Cōnsidium ... renūntiāvisse***, indir. disc. §580

I.XXII.V

EO DIE QVO CONSVERAT INTERVALLO HOSTES SEQVITVR, ET MILIA PASSVVM TRIA AB EORVM CASTRIS CASTRA PONIT.

Eō diē[I]

=on that day	*~on that day*

quō cōnsuē[ve]rat intervāllō[II] [III] [eodem]

=by (at) [the same] interval which he was accustomed	*~at his usual distance*

hostēs sequitur

=he follows the enemy	*~he follows the enemy*

et mīlia passuum[IV] tria ab eōrum castrīs[V] castra pōnit

=and he sets (his) camp three thousand of paces from their camp	*~and pitches his camp three miles from theirs*

On that day he follows the enemy at his usual distance, and pitches his camp three miles from theirs.

I ***eō diē,*** abl of time. §423

II **intervāllum, -ī**, N. (INTER + VĀLLUM), Prop., *the space between palisades, an intermediate space, interval, distance*

III ***quō ... intervāllō,*** abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

IV ***passuum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

V ***ab eōrum castrīs,*** abl. of separ. §401

I.XXIII

Cæsar turns to go to Bibracte for supplies.

I.XXIII.I

POSTRIDIE EIVS DIEI, QVOD OMNINO BIDVVM SVPERERAT, CVM EXERCITVI FRVMENTVM METIRI OPORTERET, ET QVOD A BIBRACTE, OPPIDO ÆDVORVM LONGE MAXIMO ET COPIOSISSIMO, NON AMPLIVS MILIBVS PASSVVM DVODEVIGINTI ABERAT, REI FRVMENTARIÆ PROSPICIENDVM EXISTIMAVIT: ITER AB HELVETIIS AVERTIT AC BIBRACTE IRE CONTENDIT.

Postrīdiē[I] eius diēī

=on the day after of this day *~the next day*

I **postrīdiē**, ADV. (POSTERI + DIE), *on the day after, the next day*

quod omnīnō bīduum[I] supererat[II]

=as there remained in all (a space) of two days

~as there remained in all only two day's space

cum exercituī frūmentum [eum] mētīrī oportēret[III]

=(to the time) when it is necessary [for him (Cæsar)] to measure out the grain to the army

~[to the time] when he must distribute the corn to his army

et quod ā Bibracte[IV V], oppidō Æduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō

=and because // from Bibracte, by far the greatest and most (well) supplied town of the Ædui

~and as // from Bibracte by far the largest and best-stored town of the Ædui

I **biduus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (BIS + DIES), *continuing two days, of two days*; very freq. and class. as subst.: **bīduum, -ii**, n. (sc. *tempus*), *a period or space of two days, two days, "biduum supererat,"* (I.XXIII), *"Biduo post"*, (I.XLVII)

II **supersum, -esse, -fuī**, IRREG. CONJ. (SUPER + SUM), As a remainder, *to be left, to remain, to exist still, "ex eo prœlio circiter milia hominum CXXX. superfuerunt,"* (I.XXVI), *"quod Morini Menapiique supererant,"* (III.XXVIII), *"biduum supererat,"* (I.XXIII); Fig. *To live after, outlive, be still alive, survive*

III ***cum ... oportēret,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

IV ***ā Bibracte,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

V **Bibracte, -is,** M., capital of the Æduans, situated on a mountain now called Mont Beuvray (height 2690')

nōn amplius mīlibus[I] passuum[II] duodēvīgintī aberat

=he was not more than eighteen thousand of paces distant

~he was not more than eighteen miles

reī frūmentāriæ[III] prōspiciendum [esse][IV V]

=it is <having> to be looked forward (by him) for a thing of grain

~that he ought to provide for a supply of corn

exīstimāvit

=he thought

~he thought

iter ab Helvētiīs[VI] āvertit

=(and) he turned away (his) course from the Helvetii

~and diverted his march from the Helvetii

I ***mīlibus***, abl. of comparison. The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative (This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point from which we reckon. Thus, "Cicero is eloquent"; but, starting from him we come to Cato, who is "more so than he.") signifying than. §406

II ***passuum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

III ***reī frūmentāriæ,*** dat. with comp. v. *prōspiciendum*. Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

IV **prōspiciō, -ere, -ēxī, -ectus** (SPEC-), *to look forward, look into the distance, have a view, look out, look, see*; Fig., *to look to beforehand, see to, exercise foresight, look out for, take care of, provide for*

V ***prōspiciendum [esse]***, fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. Second Periphrastic Conjugation. §196 & In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

VI ***ab Helvētiīs,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

ac Bibracte[I] īre contendit

=and he hastened to go to Bibracte *~and advanced rapidly to Bibracte*

The next day (as there remained in all only two day's space [to the time] when he must serve out the corn to his army, and as he was not more than eighteen miles from Bibracte, by far the largest and best-stored town of the Aedui), he thought that he ought to provide for a supply of corn; and diverted his march from the Helvetii, and advanced rapidly to Bibracte.

I ***Bibracte***, acc. of place to which. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place to which, by the Accusative without a preposition. §427

I.XXIII.II

EA RES PER FVGITIVOS L. ÆMILI, DECVRIONIS EQVITVM GALLORVM, HOSTIBVS NVNTIATVR.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs[I] L[ūciī] Æmilī[II], decuriōnis[III] equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur[IV]

this thing is announced to the enemy through the deserters from L[ucius] Æmilius, of the chief of the decuria cavalry of the Gallic horse

~this circumstance is reported to the enemy by some deserters from Lucius Æmilius, a captain, of the Gallic horse

This circumstance is reported to the enemy by some deserters from Lucius Aemilius, a captain, of the Gallic horse.

I **fugitīvus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FVG-), *fleeing away, fugitive*; In milit. lang., *a runaway soldier, a deserter, "ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii hostibus nuntiatur,"* (I.XXIII)

II **Æmilius, -ī,** M., *Lucius Æmilius*, a decurion in charge of a squad of Gallic cavalry

III **decuriō, -ōnis**, M. (DECURIA), *the head* or *chief of a decuria, a decurion.* The name was first given by Romulus to the head of the tenth part of a curia. In the army, *the commander of* a decuria *of cavalry*

IV **nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (NUNTIUS), *to announce, declare, report, relate, narrate, make known, inform, give intelligence of, etc*; In gen., alike of verbal and of written communications; constr. acc. of thing and dat. of person; for the acc. may stand an acc. and inf., a clause with *ut* or *ne* and subj., or subj. alone, or with *de* and abl.; for the dat. an acc. with *ad* (ante-class.); in pass., both personal and impersonal, the latter most usually, esp. in perf. *nuntiatum est*, with subj.-clause; With clause: *"qui nuntiarent, prope omnes naves afflictas esse,"* (V.X); Passive constructions. Pers., *"hoc adeo celeriter fecit, ut simul adesse, et venire nuntiaretur,"* (III.XXXVI); Impers., *"conantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nuntiatur,"* (VI.IV)

I.XXIII.III

HELVETII, SEV QVOD TIMORE PERTERRITOS ROMANOS DISCEDERE A SE EXISTIMARENT, EO MAGIS QVOD PRIDIE SVPERIORIBVS LOCIS OCCVPATIS PRŒLIVM NON COMMISISSENT, SIVE EO QVOD RE FRVMENTARIA INTERCLVDI POSSE CONFIDERENT, COMMVTATO CONSILIO ATQVE ITINERE CONVERSO NOSTROS A NOVISSIMO AGMINE INSEQVI AC LACESSERE CŒPERVNT.

Helvētiī

=the Helvetii | *~the Helvetii*

seu[I] quod

=whether because | *~either because*

timōre[II] perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere[III] ā sē[IV]

=that the Romans, <having been> thoroughly terrified <by cause of> fear, were retreating from them | *~that the Romans, struck with terror, were retreating from them*

I **sīve** (OR **sue**), CONJ. (SI + VE), Put once, preserving the conditional signif. of the *si*. After a preceding *si* (mostly ante-class.), *"si arborum trunci, sive naves essent a barbaris missæ,"* (IV.XVII); Repeated, with a disjunctive sense predominant. Connecting words or phrases in the same construction. or conditional clauses which have the same predicate: *sive (seu) ... sive (seu)* (in good prose, esp. in Cic., usually *sive ... sive*; in Cæs. often *seu ... seu*; prop. if this or if that be the case, placing the counter propositions on an equality, *be it that ... or that; if ... or if*; *whether ... or*, i. e. in either case (the predominant use and signif. in prose and poetry), In gen., *"sive eum ex paludibus elicere sive obsidione premere posset,"* (VII.XXXII)

II ***timōre***, abl. of cause. §404

III ***perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere,*** indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimārent.* §580

IV ***ā sē,*** abl. of place from which. §426

exīstimārent[I]

=they thought	*~they thought*

eō magis quod[II] prīdiē[III]

=more than this (thing) because, on the day before this day	*~the more so, as the day before*

superiōribus locīs occupātīs[IV]

=with the higher places <having been> seized	*~though they had seized on the higher grounds*

prœlium nōn commīsissent[V]

=they did not join the battle	*~they had not engaged in battle*

I ***quod ... exīstimārent,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. §592

II ***eō magis quod,*** *all the more because*, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

III **prīdiē**, ADV. (FROM THE OBSOL. PRI (WHENCE PRIOR, PRIMUS, PRIDEM) AND DIES.), *on the day before, the previous day*; Lit., *on the day before* (class.; opp. *postridie*).— Constr. absol., with acc. of the day from which the reckoning was made, or with *quam*; also, with gen. (class. only in the phrase *pridie ejus diei*); With gen., *"pridie ejus diei," on the day before this day, the day before*, (I.XLVII)

IV ***superiōribus locīs occupātīs,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

V ***quod ... commīsissent,*** informal indir. disc. §592

sīve eō[I] quod rē frūmentāriā[II] [Rōmānōs] interclūdī[III] posse[IV] cōnfīderent[V] [VI]

=or (namely,) because of this thing, they trusted that [the Romans] were able to be cut off from the grain supply

~or because they flattered themselves that they might be cut of from the provisions

I ***sīve eō,*** *or because*, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

II ***rē frūmentāriā,*** abl. of separ. §401

III **interclūdō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsus** (INTER + CLAUDO), *.to shut out, shut off*. Lit. *To cut off, hinder, stop, block up, shut off*; Of one's way, passage, entrance, retreat, etc.; constr. Pass., with abl. of thing: *"his superatis aut reditu interclusis,"* (IV.XXX), *"omni exitu interclusi,"* (VII.XLIV); With acc. alone, *"fugam,"* (VII.XI); To cut off, separate one from any thing. From a place. With acc., ab, and abl., *"ab exercitu,"* (VII.I); With acc. and abl. alone, (rare); From aid, supplies, relief, etc.; with abl., *"re frumentaria intercludi,"* (I.XXIII), *"frumento commeatuque Cæsarem,"* (I.XLVIII)

IV ***quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse***, indir. disc. dependent on *cōnfīderent.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

V **confīdo, -fisus, -sum** (CON + FĪDO), v. n., *to trust confidently in something, confide in, rely firmly upon, to believe, be assured* of; Milt. constr. with abl., acc. and inf., with dat., rarely with *de, ut*, or absol., With acc. and inf., *"sive eo quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent"* (I.XXIII); *"huic legioni Cæsar confidebat maxime,"* (I.XL), *"et propter virtutem confidebat maxime."* (I.XL), "*eo legionarios milites legionis X., cui quam maxime confidebat"* (XLII) —Esp. freq. with *sibi, to rely on one's self, have confidence in one's self*:—Dub. whether dat. or abl., *"viribus,"* (I.XLIII)

VI ***quod ... cōnfīderent,*** informal indir. disc. §592

commūtātō[I] cōnsiliō[II] atque itinere conversō[III] [militēs] nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī

=with (their) plan <having been> altered and with the route <having been> turned around, (those men) pursued our [soldiers] in the most recent battle line

~altering their plan and changing their route, they pressed upon our men in the rear guard

ac lacessere cœpērunt

=and they began to provoke (our men)

~and began to pursue, and to iritate them

The Helvetii, either because they thought that the Romans, struck with terror, were retreating from them, the more so, as the day before, though they had seized on the higher grounds, they had not joined battle or because they flattered themselves that they might be cut of from the provisions, altering their plan and changing their route, began to pursue, and to annoy our men in the rear.

I **commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (COM + MŪTŌ), *to alter wholly, change entirely*

II ***commūtātō cōnsiliō,*** abl. abs. §420

III ***itinere conversō,*** abl. abs. §420

I.XXIV

Romans and Helvetians prepare for battle.

I.XXIV.I

POSTQVAM ID ANIMVM ADVERTIT, COPIAS SVAS CÆSAR IN PROXIMVM COLLEM SVBDVCIT, EQVITATVMQVE, QVI SVSTINERET HOSTIVM IMPETVM, MISIT.

Postquam[I] id animum advertit

=after that, he (Cæsar) turns (his) mind to it

~when he observed this

cōpiās suās Cæsar in proximum collem subdūcit[II]

=Cæsar leads his own troops up to the nearest hill

~Cæsar draws off his forces to the next hill

I **postquam** (OR **post quam**), CONJ. (POST + QUAM), .conj., *after that, after, as soon as, when*; constr. usually with histor. pres., or perf. or imperf. indic., or subj., *"eo postquam Cæsar pervenit, obsides, arma poposcit,"* (I.XXVII)

II **subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** (SUB + DŪCŌ), Without the idea of removal. In gen., *to draw* or *pull up*; *to lift up*; In partic., naut. t. t., *to draw or haul up on land* (a ship out of the water) *"longas naves in aridum,"* (IV.XXIX); With the idea of removal implied, *to draw away from among; to take away, lead away, carry off; to withdraw, remove*, etc. In gen., *"lapides ex turri,"* (Cæs. B. C. 2, 11); Milit. t. t., *to draw off forces* from one position to another: *"copias in proximum collem subducit,"* (I.XXIV), *"Cæsar suas copias in proximum collem subducit"* (I.XXII)

equitātumque

=and the cavalry *~and the cavalry*

quī sustinēret[I] [II] hostium impetum

=who might sustain the attack of the enemy *~to sustain the attack of the enemy*

mīsit

=he sent *~he sent*

Cæsar, when he observes this, draws off his forces to the next hill, and sent the cavalry to sustain the attack of the enemy.

I ***quī sustinēret,*** rel. clause of purpose. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause. §531

II **sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus** (SUB + TENEO), *to hold up, hold upright, uphold, bear up, keep up, support, sustain*; Lit. In gen.: *se, to support one's self, hold one's self up, stand,* etc., *"ut venientes sustineret"* (I.XXV); In partic., *to hold or keep back, to keep in, stay, check, restrain, control,* etc.,*"equos,"* (IV.XXXIII)*;* In partic., *To bear, undergo, endure; to hold out against, withstand, "alicujus imperia,"* (I.XXXI), *"vulnera,"* (I.XLV), *"neque jam sustineri poterat,"* (II.VI); *To hold in, stop, stay, check, restrain; to keep back, put off, defer, delay, "impetum hostis,"* (I.XXIV), *"Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent"* (I.XXVI), *"fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent"* (II.XI)

I.XXIV.II

IPSE INTERIM IN COLLE MEDIO TRIPLICEM ACIEM INSTRVXIT LEGIONVM QVATTVOR VETERANORVM; IN SVMMO IVGO DVAS LEGIONES QVAS IN GALLIA CITERIORE PROXIME CONSCRIPSERAT ET OMNIA AVXILIA COLLOCARI, AC TOTVM MONTEM HOMINIBVS COMPLERI; ET INTEREA SARCINASQVE IN VNVM LOCVM CONFERRI ET EVM AB EIS QVI IN SVPERIORE ACIE CONSTITERANT MVNIRI IVSSIT.

Ipse interim in colle mediō[I] triplicem[II] aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānorum[III] [ita utī suprā]

=he himself, meanwhile, drew up a triple battle line of four veteran legions on the middle of the hill [in such a manner as above]

~he himself, meanwhile, drew up on the middle of the hill a triple line of his four veteran legions [in such a manner, that he placed above]

in summō iugō duās legiōnēs

=on the highest ridge // the two legions

~on the very summit // the two legions

quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē[IV] cōnscrīpserat

=/he ordered/ /the two legions/ which he very lately enrolled on this side of Gaul

~which he had lately levied in Hither Gaul

I **medius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (MED-), *in the middle, in the midst, mid, mean, middle*

II **triplex, -icis**, ADJ. (TER+ PARC-), *threefold, triple*

III **veterānus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (VETUS), *old, veteran* (in technical lang.); *"legiones veteranæ,"* i.e. *composed of veterans*, (I.XXIV)—Pl. m. as subst., *veteran soldiers, veterans*

IV **proximē**, ADV. SUP. (PROXIMUS), Of place, *nearest, very near, next*; Fig., of time, *very lately, just before, most recently, last before*

et omnia auxilia collocārī[I II]

=and (he ordered) all the auxlaries to be arranged

~and all the auxiliaries to be arranged

ac tōtum montem hominibus[III] complērī[IV V]

=and (also) that the whole mountain should be filled with men

~that the whole mountain should be covered with men

et interea sarcinās[VI] in unum locum cōnferrī[VII]

=and that in the meantime the (soldiers) sacks should be brought together into one place

~and that meanwhile the baggage should be brought together into one place

et eum [locum] ab eīs[VIII]

=and /he ordered/ that [place] /to be fortified/ by those men

~and // the position // by those

I ***legiones ... auxilia ... collocari,*** indir. disc. dependent on ***iussit***. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

II **colloco, -āre, āvi, ātum** (COL- + LOCO), *to place together, to arrange, to station, lay, put, place, set*; *set up, erect*, etc., a thing (or person) somewhere; Esp. *To give in marriage*

III ***hominibus***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

IV ***montem ... complēri,*** indir. disc. §580

V **compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus** (COM- + PLE-), *to fill up, fill full, fill out, make full, cram, crowd*; Esp. Milit., *To make the army, a legion,* etc., *of a full number, to complete, fill up*

VI **sarcina, -æ**, F. (SAR-), *a package, bundle, burden, load, pack*; Pl., *packs, luggage, baggage*

VII ***sarcinas ... cōnferrī,*** indir. disc. §580

VIII ***ab eīs***, abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant[I]

=*who had stood in the higher battle line*	~*who were posted in the upper line*

mūnīrī[II]

=*/that [place]/ to be fortified*	~*to be fortified*

iussit

=*he ordered*	~*he ordered*

He himself, meanwhile, drew up on the middle of the hill a triple line of his four veteran legions in such a manner, that he placed above him on the very summit the two legions, which he had lately levied in Hither Gaul, and all the auxiliaries; and he ordered that the whole mountain should be covered with men, and that meanwhile the baggage should be brought together into one place, and the position be protected by those who were posted in the upper line.

I **cōnstō, āre, stitī, statūrus** (CŌN + STŌ), *to agree, accord, be consistent, correspond, fit; To be certain, be ascertained, be known, be settled, be established*

II ***eum ... mūnīrī,*** indir. disc. §580

I.XXIV.III

HELVETII CVM OMNIBVS SVIS CARRIS SECVTI IMPEDIMENTA IN VNVM LOCVM CONTVLERVNT; IPSI CONFERTISSIMA ACIE, REIECTO NOSTRO EQVITATV, PHALANGE FACTA SVB PRIMAM NOSTRAM ACIEM SVCCESSERVNT.

Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta[I] in ūnum locum contulērunt

=the Helvetii <having> followed with all their own wagons, brought together (their) baggage into one place

~the Helvetii having followed with all their wagons, brought together their baggage into one place

ipsī

=(they) themselves

~they themselves

cōnfertissimā[II III] aciē[IV], reiectō[V] nostrō equitātū[VI], phalange[VII] factā[VIII]

=in the most pressed close battle line, with our cavalry <having been> thrown back, (those men) with a phalanx <having been> formed

~in very close order, after having repulsed our cavalry and formed a phalanx

I **impedīmentum, -ī**, N. (IMP-), *a hinderance, impediment*; Pl., *travelling equipage, luggage*

II ***cōnfertissimā***, ppp. of *confercio*

III **cōnfertus, -a, -um**, ADJ., *pressed close, crowded, thick, dense; Close, compact, in close array*

IV ***cōnfertissimā aciē,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

V **rēiecto, -āre, āvi, -ātum** (RE- + IACTŌ), *To throw* or *cast back*

VI ***reiectō nostrō equitātū,*** abl. abs. §420

VII **phalanx, -angis**, F., *a compact body of heavy armed men in battle array*, *battalion, phalanx*

VIII ***phalange factā,*** abl. abs. §420

sub[I] prīmam nostram aciem successērunt[II]

=approached near our first battle line *~advanced up to our front line*

The Helvetii having followed with all their wagons, collected their baggage into one place: they themselves, after having repulsed our cavalry and formed a phalanx, advanced up to our front line in very close order.

I ***sub***, Sub, under, up to, with the accusative or the ablative. Of motion, with the accusative: as, sub montem succēdere, to come close to the hill. §221

II **succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus** (SUB + CEDO), *to go below, come under, enter; To approach, draw near, march on, advance, march up*

I.XXV

The Romans charge.

I.XXV.I

CÆSAR PRIMVM SVO, DEINDE OMNIVM EX CONSPECTV REMOTIS EQVIS, VT ÆQVATO OMNIVM PERICVLO SPEM FVGÆ TOLLERET, COHORTATVS SVOS PRŒLIVM COMMISIT.

Cæsar

=*Cæsar*

~*Cæsar*

prīmum [remōtō equō] suō[I], deinde[II] omnium ex cōnspectū[III] remōtīs equīs[IV]

=*first with his own [horse <having been> removed], then with the horses of all <having been> removed from sight*

~*having removed out of sight first his own horse, then those of all*

I ***[remōtō equō] suō***, abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

II **deinde**, ADV., In space, *then, next, thereafter, thence*

III ***ex cōnspectū,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

IV ***remōtīs equīs,*** abl. abs. §420

ut æquātō[I] omnium perīculō[II] spem fugæ[III] tolleret[IV]

=<in order> that with the danger of all <having been> equalized, he might take away the hope of flight

~that he might make the danger of all equal, and do away with the hope of flight

cohortātus[V] suōs prœlium commīsit

=he (Cæsar) <having> exhorted his own men, joined the battle

~after encouraging his men, joined battle

Cæsar, having removed out of sight first his own horse, then those of all, that he might make the danger of all equal, and do away with the hope of flight, after encouraging his men, joined battle.

I **æquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (ÆQUUS), act., *to make* one thing *equal to another*; constr. with *cum* and (in gen. in the histt.) with dat., and with cop. conj.; Of places, *to make level, even,* or *smooth, "æquato omnium periculo,"* (I.XXV)

II ***æquātō ... perīculō,*** abl. abs. §420

III ***fugæ***, obj. gen. The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs. §347

IV ***ut ... tolleret,*** clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

V **cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (COM- + HORTOR), *to animate or encourage* by forcible language, *to incite, exhort, admonish;* Esp., of the general before a battle, or in other milit. Proceedings, *"cohortatus suos prœlium commisit,"* (I.XXV), *"acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum,"* (II.XX); In gen., and without the sphere of military operations; *aliiquem, "Cæsar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosecutus,"* (II.V)

I.XXV.II

MILITES E LOCO SVPERIORE PILIS MISSIS FACILE HOSTIVM PHALANGEM PERFREGERVNT.

Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre[I] pīlīs[II] missīs[III]

=the soldiers, with heavy javelins <having been> sent from a higher place *~his soldiers hurling their javelins from the higher ground*

facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt[IV]

=easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy *~easily broke the enemy's phalanx*

His soldiers hurling their javelins from the higher ground, easily broke the enemy's phalanx.

I ***ē locō superiōre,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

II **pīlum, -ī**, N. (PIS-), Transf., *the heavy javelin of the Roman infantry,* which they hurled at the enemy at the commencement of the action, and then took to their swords, *"milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt,"* (I.XXV), *"these were called pila muralia,"* (V.XL)

III ***pīlīs missīs,*** abl. abs. §420

IV **perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus** (PER + FRANGO), *to break through, break in pieces, shiver, shatter*; In partic., *to break* or *burst through, to force one's way through* any obstacle, *"hostium phalangem,"* (I.XXV)

I.XXV.III

EA DISIECTA GLADIIS DESTRICTIS IN EOS IMPETVM FECERVNT.

Eā disiectā[I] [II] gladiīs dēstrictīs[III] [IV]

=with that (phananx) <having been> hurled apart, with swords <having been> drawn

~that being dispersed; with drawn swords

in eōs impetum fēcērunt

=they made an attack against those men

~they made a charge on them

That being dispersed, they made a charge on them with drawn swords.

I.XXV.IV

GALLIS MAGNO AD PVGNAM ERAT IMPEDIMENTO QVOD PLVRIBVS EORVM SCVTIS VNO ICTV PILORVM TRANSFIXIS ET COLLIGATIS, CVM FERRVM SE INFLEXISSET, NEQVE EVELLERE NEQVE SINISTRA IMPEDITA SATIS COMMODE PVGNARE POTERANT; MVLTI VT DIV IACTATO BRACCHIO PRÆOPTARENT SCVTVM MANV EMITTERE ET NVDO CORPORE PVGNARE.

Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō

=it was a great <source of> hinderance <in respect> to the fight for the Gauls

~it was a great impediment to the Gauls in fighting

I **dīsiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus** (DIS + IACIO), *to throw asunder, drive asunder, scatter, disperse, break up, tear to pieces*

II ***eā disiectā,*** abl. abs. §420

III **dēstringo, -ere, -inxī, -ictus** (DĒ + STRINGO), *to strip off*; Esp. freq. of the sword, *to unsheathe, draw, "gladiis destrictis,"* (I.XXV)

IV ***gladiīs dēstrictīs,*** abl. abs. §420

scūtīs[I] ūnō ictū[II III IV] pīlōrum trānsfīxīs[V] et colligātīs[VI VII]

=/that with several of their/ shields <having been> transfixed and <having been> bound together by one blow of the javelins

~bucklers had been by one stroke of the (Roman) javelins pierced through and pinned fast together

quod plūribus eōrum

=that with several of their

~that, since several of their

I **scūtum, -i**, N., *an oblong shield*, made of boards fastened together, and covered with leather, *a buckler* (whereas *clipeus* denotes a round shield, target of metal)

II ***Gallīs ... impedīmentō,*** double dat. construction. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected. Note I. This construction is often called the Dative of Service, or the Double Dative construction. The verb is usually sum. The noun expressing the end for which is regularly abstract and singular in number and is never modified by an adjective, except one of degree (māgnus, minor, etc.), or by a genitive. §382

III **īctus, -ūs**, M. (IC-), *a blow, stroke, stab, cut, thrust, bite, sting, wound*

IV ***ūnō ictū,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

V **trānsfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus** (TRĀNS + FĪGŌ), *to pierce through, transpierce, transfix*

VI **colligo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (COL + LIGO), *to bind, tie,* or *fasten together, to connect, bind, tie up*

VII ***scūtīs ... trānsfīxīs et conligātīs,*** abl. abs. §420

cum ferrum[I] sē īnflexisset[II III]

=since the iron itself had bent	*~as the point of the iron had bent itself*

neque ēvellere[IV]

=neither to tear (it) out	*~neither pluck it out*

neque [manus][V] sinistrā[VI] impedītā[VII]

=nor with (their) left [hand] <having been> impeded	*~nor with their left hand entangled*

satis commodē[VIII] pugnāre poterant

=were they able to fight advantageously enough	*~they were able to fight with sufficient ease*

multī ut diū

=that <as a result>, many men, all day	*~so that many, for long time*

I **ferrum, -ī**, N. (FIRMUS), *iron*; Transf., *any thing made of iron, an iron implement—as a plough*

II ***cum ... inflexisset,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

III **īnflectō, -ere, -ēxī, -exus** (ĪN + FLECTŌ), *to bend, bow, curve, turn aside*

IV **ēvellō, -ere, -vellī, -volsus** (Ē + VELLŌ), *to tear out, pluck out, extract*

V **manus, -ūs**, F. (MA-), *a hand*; Milit., *an armed force, corps of soldiers—"si nova manus cum veteribus copiis se conjunxisset"*

VI **sinister, -tra, -trum**, ADJ., *of uncertain origin, left, on the left, on the left hand, at the left side*; Subst. f. (sc. *manus*), ***sinistrā impeditā***, *with the left hand impeded*

VII ***sinistrā impedītā,*** abl. abs. §420

VIII **commodē**, ADV. (COMMODUS), *duly, properly, completely, rightly, well, skilfully*

iactātō bracchiō[I] [II] [III]

=with (their) arm <having been> tossed about

~after having tossed their arm about

præoptārent[IV] [V] scūtum manū[VI] ēmittere[VII]

=chose rather to send out the shield from (their) arm

~they chose rather to cast away the buckler from their hand

et nūdō[VIII] corpore[IX] pugnāre

=and (they chose) to fight with an exposed body

~and fight with their person unprotected

It was a great hinderance to the Gauls in fighting, that, when several of their bucklers had been by one stroke of the (Roman) javelins pierced through and pinned fast together, as the point of the iron had bent itself, they could neither pluck it out, nor, with their left hand entangled, fight with sufficient ease; so that many, after having long tossed their arm about, chose rather to cast away the buckler from their hand, and to fight with their person unprotected.

I ***iactātō bracchiō***, abl. of Attendant Circumstance: *convocatis eorum principibus, having called together their leading men* (I.X); *capto monte et succedentibus nostris, after they had reached the height and our men were coming up* (I.XXV)

II ***iactātō bracchiō,*** abl. abs. §420

III **bracchium, -ī**, N., *the forearm, lower arm*

IV **præoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (PRÆ + OPTŌ), *to choose rather, desire more, prefer*

V ***ut ... præoptārent,*** clause of result. Pure Clauses of Result, with ut or ut nōn, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. § 537

VI ***manū***, abl. of separ. §401

VII **ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (Ē + MITTŌ), *to send out, send forth—"scutum manu," to throw away, throw aside* (I.XXV.IV)

VIII **nūdus, -a, -um**, ADJ., *naked, bare, unclothed, stripped, uncovered, exposed —"nudo corpore pugnare," without a shield* (I.XXV.IV)

IX ***nūdō corpore,*** abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

I.XXV.V

TANDEM VVLNERIBVS DEFESSI ET PEDEM REFERRE ET, QVOD MONS SVBERAT CIRCITER MILLE PASSVVM, EO SE RECIPERE CŒPERVNT.

Tandem[I] vulneribus[II III] dēfessī[IV] et pedem[V] referre[VI]

=finally, (those men) <having> became tired by injuries, (began) both to bear back (their) foot

~at length, grown weary with wounds, they began to retreat

et

=and

~and

I **tandem**, ADV. (TAM + THE DEMONSTR. ENDING DEM), *at length, at last, in the end, finally*

II ***vulneribus***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

III **vulnus, -eris**, N. (VUL-), *a wound*

IV **dēfetīscor, -ī, -fessus, —** DEP., *to become tired, grow weary, faint*

V **pēs, pedis**, M. (PED-), *a foot;* **referre pedem**, as a Milit., *to draw back, retire, withdraw, retreat*

VI **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** (RE- + FERŌ), *to bear back, bring back, drive back, carry back*; *Referre pedem* or *gradum,* as a milit. t. t., *to draw back, retire, withdraw, retreat*; In partic. *To pay back, give back, repay*—Esp. in the phrase, *referre gratiam, to return thanks, show one's gratitude* (by deeds), *to recompense, requite; to bring, convey, deliver* any thing as an official report, *to report, announce, notify* (= *renuntiare*)

quod mōns suberit[I] circiter mīlle passuum[II] spatio[III]

=as a mountain was near—at a space (of) around one thousand of paces *~as a mountain was at hand—at a distance of one mile*

eō sē recipere cœpērunt

=they began to betake themselves thither *~to betake themselves thither*

At length, worn out with wounds, they began to give way, and, as there was in the neighborhood a mountain about a mile off, to betake themselves thither.

I **subsum, -esse, subfuī, —**, IRREG. CONJ. (SUB + SUM), *to be under, be behind*; Of places and persons, *to be near, to be at hand*

II ***passuum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

III ***spatio***, Intervals of Space and Duration of Time are sometimes expressed by the Ablative, especially when modified by an Adjective or Genitive; as, *milibus passuum sex, six miles* (distant), Lit. *by six thousands of paces* (I.XLVIII); *tota nocte ierunt, all night long they went on* (I.XXVI)

I.XXV.VI

CAPTO MONTE ET SVCCEDENTIBVS NOSTRIS, BOI ET TVLINGI, QVI HOMINVM MILIBVS CIRCITER QVINDECIM AGMEN HOSTIVM CLAVDEBANT ET NOVISSIMIS PRÆSIDIO ERANT, EX ITINERE NOSTROS AB LATERE APERTO ADGRESSI CIRCVMVENIRE, ET ID CONSPICATI HELVETII, QVI IN MONTEM SESE RECEPERANT, RVRSVS INSTARE ET PRŒLIVM REDINTEGRARE CŒPERVNT.

Captō[I] monte[II] et succēdentibus nostrīs[III] [mīlitibus]

=with the mountain <having been> seized, and with our [soldiers] <having been> advanced

~when the mountain had been gained, and our men were advancing up

Boī et Tulingī

=the Boii and Tulingi

~the Boii and Tulingi

quī hominum mīlibus[IV] circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudēbant[V]

=who with around fifteen thousands of men, closed the battle line of the enemy

~who by means of about 15,000 men closed the enemy's line of march

et [agminīs] novissimīs præsidiō[VI] erant

=and they were <a source of> defence for the newest [battle line] (i.e., the rearguard)

~and served as protection for their rear

I ***Captō***, ppp. of *capiō*

II ***captō monte,*** abl. abs. §420

III ***succēdentibus nostrīs,*** abl. abs. §420

IV ***mīlibus***, abl. of deg. of dif. §414

V **claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus** (CLAV-), *to shut, close, shut up*

VI ***novissimīs præsidiō,*** dbl. dat. construction. §382

ex itinere[I] nostrōs ab latere[II] apertō[III] adgressī circumvenīre[IV] (circumvēnērunt)

=(those men) <having> attacked our men on the open flank on the march, (tried) to surround (them)	*~having assailed our men on the exposed flank as they advanced [prepared] to surround them*

et id cōnspicātī[V] Helvētiī

=and (after) <having> seen it, the Helvetii	*~upon seeing which, the Helvetii*

quī in montem sēsē recēperant

who took themselves back to the mountain	*~who had betaken themselves to the mountain*

rūrsus[VI] īnstāre

=/began/ to press upon (those men) again	*~/began/ to press on again*

et prœlium redintegrāre[VII] cœpērunt

=began // and to restore the battle	*~began // and renew the battle*

I ***ex itinere,*** abl. of place from which. §426

II **latus, -eris**, N. (PLAT-), *the side, flank*—Of an army, *the flank*—Esp., *a (ab) latere, on* or *at the side* or *flank; a* or *ab lateribus, on* or *at the sides* or *flanks* (opp. *a fronte, in front, before*, and *a tergo, at the back, behind*)

III **apertus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PPP. OF APERIŌ); **aperiō, -eruī, -ertus, -īre** (AB + PAR-), *to uncover, lay bare; to open, uncover, unclose, make visible, discover, display, show, revea"*

IV **circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus** (CIRCUM- + VENIŌ), *to come around, be around, encircle, encompass, surround*; Specif., *to surround* in a hostile manner, *to encompass, beset, invest*

V **cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (COM- + SPEC-), *to get sight of, descry, see, perceive*

VI **rūrsus**, ADV. (PPP. OF REVERTO), *turned back, back, backwards*; denoting return to a former action or its repetition, *back again, again, anew*

VII **redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (RED + INTEGRŌ), *to make whole again, restore, renew, recruit, refresh*

When the mountain had been gained, and our men were advancing up, the Boii and Tulingi, who with about 15,000 men closed the enemy's line of march and served as a guard to their rear, having assailed our men on the exposed flank as they advanced [prepared] to surround them; upon seeing which, the Helvetii who had betaken themselves to the mountain, began to press on again and renew the battle.

I.XXV.VII

ROMANI CONVERSA SIGNA BIPERTITO INTVLERVNT: PRIMA ET SECVNDA ACIES, VT VICTIS AC SVMMOTIS RESISTERET; TERTIA, VT VENIENTES SVSTINERET.

Rōmānī conversa[I II] signa[III IV] bipertītō[V VI] intulērunt

=the Romans beared in two parts (divisions) (their) <having been> reversed standards (upon the enemy)

~the Romans having faced about, advanced to the attack in two divisions

prīma et secunda aciēs

=the first and second battle line

~the first and second line

ut

=<in order> that

~in order

I **convertō, -ere, -tī, -sus** (CON + VERTŌ), Act., *to turn* or *whirl round, to wheel about, to cause to turn, to turn back, reverse*; In partic. Milit. t. t., *convertere signa, aciem*, etc., *to wheel about, change the direction of a march*

II ***conversa,*** ppp of converto, acc. pl.

III **sīgnum, -ī**, N., *a mark, token, sign, indication, proof*; *A military standard, ensign, banner*; Milit., *signa* (*arma*) *in hostem,* or *hosti, to bear the standards against the enemy, to attack, make an attack upon*

IV ***signa,*** acc. pl.

V **bipertitus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (BI + PARS), *divided in two parts*; Hence, adv., **bipertito**, *in two parts, in two divisions, in two ways*

VI ***bipertītō***, adv.

victīs[I] ac summōtīs[II III]

=(those men) <having been> conquered and <having been> removed

~those who had been defeated and driven off the field

resisteret[IV V]

=that it (the first and second battle line) might resist

~to resist

tertia

=the third (battle line)

~the third battle line

ut [Bōios et Tulingōs] venientēs[VI] sustinēret[VII]

=<in order> that it (the third battle line) might sustain the coming [Boii and Tulingi]

~to hold back those who were just arriving

The Romans having faced about, advanced to the attack in two divisions; the first and second line, to withstand those who had been defeated and driven off the field; the third to receive those who were just arriving.

I **vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus** (VIC-), In war, *to conquer, overcome, get the better of, defeat, subdue, vanquish, be victorious*

II **summoveo, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum** (SUM + MOVEO), *to send* or *drive off* or *away, to remove*

III ***victīs ac submōtīs,*** abl. abs. §420

IV **resistō, -ere, -stitī, —** (RE + SISTŌ), *to stand back, remain standing, stand still, halt, stop, stay, stay behind, remain, continue*; In war, *to withstand, oppose, resist, make opposition*

V ***ut … resisteret,*** clause of purpose. §531

VI ***venientēs***, part. pl. pres. m. acc. *veniō*

VII ***ut … sustinēret,*** clause of purpose. §531

I.XXVI

The Helvetians are totally defeated.

I.XXVI.I

ITA ANCIPITI PRŒLIO DIV ATQVE ACRITER PVGNATVM EST.

Ita

=thus | *~thus*

ancipitī[I] prœliō[II]

=in a two-headed battle | *~in a battle on two fronts*

diū atque ācriter[III] pugnātum est

=it was fought long and fiercely (by them) | *~they fought long and harsh*

Thus, was the contest long and vigorously carried on with doubtful success.

I **anceps, -cipitis**, ADJ. (AN- + CAP, IN CAPUT), *two-headed, twofold, double—anceps prœlium, battle on two fronts*

II ***ancipitī prœliō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

III **ācriter**, ADV. WITH COMP. **ācrius**, AND SUP. **ācerrimē** (ĀCER), *sharply, fiercely*

I.XXVI.II

DIVTIVS CVM SVSTINERE NOSTRORVM IMPETVS NON POSSENT, ALTERI SE, VT CŒPERANT, IN MONTEM RECEPERVNT, ALTERI AD IMPEDIMENTA ET CARROS SVOS SE CONTVLERVNT.

Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent[I]

=*when they were not longer able to sustain their attacks*	~*when they could no longer withstand the attacks of our men*

alterī sē

=*one (division), themselves*	~*the one division*

ut cœperant

=*as they had began (to do)*	~*as they had begun to do*

in montem recēpērunt[II]

=*they take (themselves) back to the mountain*	~*retreated to the mountain*

alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt

=*the other men brought themselves together to the baggage and their own wagons*	~*the other turned to their baggage and wagons*

When they could no longer withstand the attacks of our men, the one division, as they had begun to do, betook themselves to the mountain; the other repaired to their baggage and wagons.

I ***cum ... possent,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

II **recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** (RE + CAPIO), *To take back, bring back, carry back, retake, get back, regain*; With pron. reflex., *to draw back, withdraw, betake oneself, retire, retreat, escape*

I.XXVI.III

NAM HOC TOTO PRŒLIO, CVM AB HORA SEPTIMA AD VESPERVM PVGNATVM SIT, AVERSVM HOSTEM VIDERE NEMO POTVIT.

Nam hōc tōtō prœliō[I]

=for in all this battle

~for during the whole of this battle

cum ab[II] hōrā[III] septimā ad[IV] vesperum[V] [VI] pugnātum sit[VII]

=although it was fought from the seventh hour until the evening

~although the fight lasted from the seventh hour to eventide

āversum[VIII] hostem vidēre nēmō potuit

=no one was able to see an enemy <having been> turned away

~no one could see an enemy with his back turned

For during the whole of this battle, although the fight lasted from the seventh hour [i.e. 12 (noon) 1 P. M.] to eventide, no one could see an enemy with his back turned.

I ***hōc tōtō prœliō,*** abl. of time when. Special constructions of time are the following: Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative. §424

II ***ab***, Ā, ab, away from, from, off from, with the ablative. Of time: from: as, ab hōrā tertiā ad vesperam, from the third hour till evening; just after: as, ab eō magistrātū, after [holding] that office. §221

III **hōra, -æ**, F., *an hour* (one twelfth of the day between sunrise and sunset)

IV ***ad***, Ad, to, towards, at, near, with the accusative (cf. in, into): Of time: as, ad nōnam hōram, till the ninth hour. §221

V ***ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum***, i.e. 12 (noon) 1 P.M.

VI **vesper, -erī**, M. (VSAS-), *the evening-star; The evening, even, eve, even-tide*

VII ***cum ... pugnātum sit,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

VIII ***āversum***, ppp. of *āvertō*

I.XXVI.IV

AD MVLTAM NOCTEM ETIAM AD IMPEDIMENTA PVGNATVM EST, PROPTEREA QVOD PRO VALLO CARROS OBIECERANT, ET E LOCO SVPERIORE IN NOSTROS VENIENTES TELA CONICIEBANT, ET NON NVLLI INTER CARROS ROTASQVE MATARAS AC TRAGVLAS SVBICIEBANT NOSTROSQVE VVLNERABANT.

Ad multam[I] noctem[II] etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est

=it was fought toward much (of) the night, even to the baggage

~the fight was carried on also at the baggage (up) to late in the night

propterеā quod prō vāllō[III] carrōs obiēcerant[IV]

=on account of that because they threw before (their) wagons as a rampart (i.e., for defense)

~for they had cast in the way wagons in the way as a rampart

et ē locō superiōre[V] in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant[VI]

=and from a higher place, they threw together projectiles at our coming men

~and from the higher ground kept hurling weapons upon our men

I **multus, -a, -um**, ADJ., pl., with subst., or with adj. used as subst, *many, a great number*; In sg., to denote quantity, *much, great, abundant*

II **nox, noctis**, F. (NEC-), *night—ad multam noctem*: (*up*) *to late in the night*

III **vāllum, -ī**, N. (VALLUS), *an earthen wall* or *rampart set with palisades, a palisaded rampart, intrenchment, circumvallation, "castra vallo fossāque munire,"* (II.V); Fig., *a wall, rampart, fortification*

IV **obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus** (OB + IACIO), *to throw before, throw to, cast, offer, present, expose*; In partic., *to throw* or *place before* by way of defence or hinderance; *to cast in the way, set against, oppose*

V ***ē locō superiōre,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

VI **cōniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus** (COM- + IACIO), *To throw together, unite, collect; To throw, cast, urge, drive, hurl, put, place*, etc., a person or thing *with force, quickly*, etc., *to* or *towards*

et nōn nūllī inter carrōs rotāsque[I] matarās[II] ac trāgulās[III] subiciēbant[IV]

=and not no one between the wagons and the wheels were throwing lances and javelins (from) below

~as they came on, and some from between the wagons and the wheels kept darting their lances and javelins from beneath

nostrōsque [mīlitēs] vulnerābant[V]

=and they wounded our [soldiers]

~and wounding our men

The fight was carried on also at the baggage till late in the night, for they had set wagons in the way as a rampart, and from the higher ground kept throwing weapons upon our men, as they came on, and some from between the wagons and the wheels kept darting their lances and javelins from beneath, and wounding our men.

I.XXVI.V

DIV CVM ESSET PVGNATVM, IMPEDIMENTIS CASTRISQVE NOSTRI POTITI SVNT.

Diū cum esset pugnātum[VI]

=when (after) it was fought (for) a long time

~after the fight had lasted some time

I **rota, -æ**, F. (AR-), *a wheel*

II **matara, æ**, F., Celtic, *a javelin, pike, Celtic lance*

III **trāgula, -æ**, F. (TRAHO), A kind of *javelin* or *dart* attached to a strap by which it was swung when thrown

IV **subiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus** (SUB + IACIO), *to throw under, place under, cast below*

V **vulnero, -are, -āvi, -ātum** (VULNUS), *to wound, to hurt,* or *injure by a wound*

VI ***cum esset pugnātum,*** *cum* clause. §546

impedīmentīs castrīsque[I] nostrī potītī sunt

=our men gained possession of (their) camp and (their) baggage

~our men gained possession of their baggage and camp

After the fight had lasted some time, our men gained possession of their baggage and camp.

I.XXVI.VI

IBI ORGETORIGIS FILIA ATQVE VNVS E FILIIS CAPTVS EST.

Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs[II] captus est

=there, the daughter of Orgatorix and one from the sons (of Orgatorix) was captured

~there the daughter and one of the sons of Orgetorix was taken

There the daughter and one of the sons of Orgetorix was taken.

I ***impedīmentīs castrīsque,*** abl. with special v. *potiti sunt.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

II ***ē fīliīs,*** abl. with cardinal numeral. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Cardinal numerals (except mīlia) regularly take the Ablative with ē (ex) or dē instead of the part. genitive. So also, quīdam, a certain one, commonly, and other words occasionally. ūnus ex tribūnīs, one of the tribunes. [But also, ūnus tribūnōrum] "paucī dē nostrīs cadunt" (I.XI), a few of our men fall. §346c

I.XXVI.VII

EX EO PRŒLIO CIRCITER HOMINVM MILIA CENTVM TRIGINTA SVPERFVERVNT EAQVE TOTA NOCTE CONTINENTER IERVNT: NVLLAM PARTEM NOCTIS ITINERE INTERMISSO IN FINES LINGONVM DIE QVARTO PERVENERVNT, CVM ET PROPTER VVLNERA MILITVM ET PROPTER SEPVLTVRAM OCCISORVM NOSTRI TRIDVVM MORATI EOS SEQVI NON POTVISSENT.

Ex eō prœliō circiter hominum[III] mīlia centum trīgintā superfuērunt

=from that battle around 100 (and) 30 thousands of men remained

~after the battle about 130,000 men [of the enemy] remained alive

eāque tōtā nocte[II] continenter iērunt

=and during that entire night, they went

~who marched incessantly during the whole of that night

nūllam partem[III] noctis

during no part of the night

~for no part of the night

III ***hominum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Cardinal numerals (except mīlia) regularly take the Ablative with ē (ex) or dē instead of the part. genitive. So also, quīdam, a certain one, commonly, and other words occasionally. ūnus ex tribūnīs, one of the tribunes. [But also, ūnus tribūnōrum] “paucī dē nostrīs cadunt” (I.XI), a few of our men fall. §346c

II ***tōtā nocte,*** abl. of duration of time. Special constructions of time are the following: Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative. §424b

III ***nūllam partem***, acc. of time during. Special constructions of time are the following: Time during which or within which may be expressed by the Accusative or Ablative of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral. § 424

itinere intermissō[I] [II]

=(and) with the march <having been> interrupted

~and after a march discontinued

in fīnēs Lingonum[III] diē quārtō[IV] pervēnērunt

=they came through into the territories of the Lingones on the fourth day

~arrived in the territories of the Lingones on the fourth day

cum et propter vulnera mīlitum

=since, both on account of the wounds of the soldiers

~while, both on account of the wounds of the soldiers

et propter sepultūram[V] occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī[VI] eōs sequī nōn potuissent[VII]

=and on account of the burial of the struck of the slain, our men, <having> delayed three days, had not been able to follow those men

~our men, having stopped for three days; and the burial of the slain, had not been able to follow them

I **intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (INTER + MITTO), *to leave off, intermit, omit, suspend, interrupt, neglect*

II ***itinere intermissō,*** abl. abs. §420

III **Lingonēs, -um,** M., a Gallic people west of the Sequanians

IV ***diē quārtō,*** abl. of time when. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

V **sepultūra, -æ**, F., *a burial, interment, funeral obsequies, sepulture*

VI **moror, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (MORA), *to delay, tarry, stay, wait, remain, linger, loiter*

VII ***cum ... potuissent,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

After the battle about 130,000 men [of the enemy] remained alive, who marched incessantly during the whole of that night; and after a march discontinued for no part of the night, arrived in the territories of the Lingones on the fourth day, while our men, having stopped for three days, both on account of the wounds of the soldiers and the burial of the slain, had not been able to follow them.

I.XXVI.VIII

CÆSAR AD LINGONES LITTERAS NVNTIOSQVE MISIT, NE EOS FRVMENTO NEVE ALIA RE IVVARENT: QVI SI IVVISSENT, SE EODEM LOCO QVO HELVETIOS HABITVRVM.

" ... SĪ IŪVERITIS, SĒ (LINGONAS) EŌDEM LOCŌ HABITŪRUM (ESSE) QUŌ HELVĒTIŌS (HABERET)."

Cæsar ad Lingonēs litterās[I] nūntiōsque mīsit

=Cæsar sent letters and messengers to the Lingones

~Cæsar sent letters and messengers to the Lingones (with orders)

nē eōs frūmentō nēve[II] aliā rē[III] iuvārent[IV V]

=(saying) that they should not aid those men with corn or with any other thing

~not assist them with corn or with any thing else

I **littera, -æ**, F. (LI-), *a letter, alphabetical sign, written sign of a sound*; trans. Usu. pl. **litteræ, -ārum**, F., *a letter, epistle*

II **nēve** (OR **neu**), ADV. *and not, nor, and that not, and lest*

III ***frūmentō nēve aliā rē,*** abl. of means. §409

IV **iuvo, -arī, iūvi, iūtum** (DIV-), *to help, aid, assist, support, benefit*

V ***nē ... iuvārent,*** command in indir. disc. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well. §588

quī[I] [II] sī [eos] iūvissent[III]

=who, if they should have aided [those men (the Helvetii)] *~and if they should assist these men*

sē [eos] eōdem locō[IV] [V] quō Helvētiōs habitūrum [esse] [haberet][VI]

=he (Cæsar) would hold [those men] in the same place in which [he held] the Helvetii *~he would regard them in the same light as the Helvetii*

Cæsar sent letters and messengers to the Lingones [with orders] that they should not assist them with corn or with any thing else; for that if they should assist them, he would regard them in the same light as the Helvetii.

I A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *qua de causa, and for this reason, for this reason* (I.I); *qui ... prœlium committunt* (Historical Present), *they* (or *and they) ... joined battle* (I.XV)

II ***quī***, *who* may be used in transitions, but English prefers the demonstrative *these*

III ***sī iūvissent,*** protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

IV ***eōdem locō,*** abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

V ***[haberet]***, v. missing through ellipsis

VI ***sē ... habitūrum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *litterās nūntiōsque mīsit.* §580

I.XXVI.IX

IPSE TRIDVO INTERMISSO CVM OMNIBVS COPIIS EOS SEQVI CŒPIT.

Ipse

=he himself	*~himself*

trīduō intermissō[I]

=with three days <having been> left off	*~after the three days' interval*

cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī cœpit

=he begins to follow those men with all (his) troops	*~he began to pursue them with all his forces*

After the three days' interval he began to follow them himself with all his forces.

I ***trīduō intermissō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

I.XXVII

The Helvetians beg for terms.

I.XXVII.I

HELVETII OMNIVM RERVM INOPIA ADDVCTI LEGATOS DE DEDITIONE AD EVM MISERVNT.

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā[I] [II] adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne[III] ad eum mīsērunt

=the Helvetii, <having been> led by <means of> a want of all things, sent embassadors to him concerning a surrender

~the Helvetii, compelled by the want of everything, sent embassadors to him about a surrender

The Helvetii, compelled by the want of every thing, sent embassadors to him about a surrender.

I **inopia, -æ**, F. (INOPS), *want, lack, scarcity*

II ***inopiā***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

III **dēditiō, -ōnis**, F. (DEDO), *a giving up, surrender, capitulation*

I.XXVII.II

QVI CVM EVM IN ITINERE CONVENISSENT SEQVE AD PEDES PROIECISSENT SVPPLICITERQVE LOCVTI FLENTES PACEM PETISSENT, ATQVE EOS IN EO LOCO QVO TVM ESSENT SVVM ADVENTVM EXPECTARE IVSSISSET, PARVERVNT.

Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent

=(those men) who, when they had met him on the journey	*~when these had met him on the way*

sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent

=and they had thrown forth themselves at (Cæsar's) feet	*~and had thrown themselves at his feet*

suppliciterque[I] locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent

=and <having> humbly spoken, crying, they had sought peace	*~and speaking in suppliant tone had, with tears, sued for peace*

atque eōs in eō locō

=and (when) // those men // in that place	*~and [when] // them // in the place*

quō[II] tum essent[III]

=in which (where) they then were	*~where they then were*

suum adventum expectāre

=to await his own coming	*~to await his arrival*

I **suppliciter**, ADV., *like a petitioner, humbly, submissively, suppliantly*

II **quō**, ADV. AND CONJ. DAT. AND ABL. (QUI), Trop. *For which reason, wherefore, whence; To or in which place, whither, where* (Rel. and Interrog.)

III ***quō ... essent,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. §592

[eos] iussisset[I]

=he had ordered [those men] *~he had ordered (them)*

pāruērunt[II]

=(and) they obeyed (him) *~they obeyed his commands*

When these had met him on the way and had thrown themselves at his feet, and speaking in suppliant tone had with tears sued for peace, and [when] he had ordered them to await his arrival, in the place, where they then were, they obeyed his commands.

I.XXVII.III

EO POSTQVAM CÆSAR PERVENIT, OBSIDES, ARMA, SERVOS QVI AD EOS PERFVGISSENT POPOSCIT.

Eō postquam[III] Cæsar pervēnit

=after that, Cæsar arrived thither *~when Cæsar arrived there*

obsidēs, arma, servōs[IV]

=hostages, arms, (and) slaves *~hostages, their arms, and the slaves*

I ***cum ... convēnissent ... prōiēcissent ... petīssent ... iussisset,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

II **pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —** (PAR-), *to appear, be visible, be at hand; To obey, be obedient, submit, comply*

III Temporal Conjunctions *ubi, ut*, as *when, postquam*, as *after, postes quam* (written as two words) as *after that* or *after* and *simul atque, simul, as soon as*, are often used with the Indicative, usually in the Perfect Tense. Thus, *Quod ubi Cæsar resciit. When Cæsar found this out* (I.XXVIII); *postquam Cæsar pervenit, after Cæsar arrived* (I.XXVII); *simul atque se receperunt, so soon as they rallied* (IV.XXVII)

IV **servus** (OR **servos**), **-ī**, M. (SERVUS), *a slave, servant, serf, serving-man*

quī ad eōs perfūgissent[I II]

=who (as he said) had fled to those men *~who had deserted to the enemy*

poposcit[III]

=he demanded *~he demanded*

When Cæsar arrived at that place, he demanded hostages, their arms, and the slaves who had deserted to them.

I.XXVII.IV

DVM EA CONQVIRVNTVR ET CONFERVNTVR, NOCTE INTERMISSA, CIRCITER HOMINVM MILIA SEX EIVS PAGI QVI VERBIGENVS APPELLATVR, SIVE TIMORE PERTERRITI, NE ARMIS TRADITIS SVPPLICIO ADFICERENTVR, SIVE SPE SALVTIS INDVCTI, QVOD IN TANTA MVLTITVDINE DEDITICIORVM SVAM FVGAM AVT OCCVLTARI AVT OMNINO IGNORARI POSSE EXISTIMARENT, PRIMA NOCTE E CASTRIS HELVETIORVM EGRESSI AD RHENVM FINESQVE GERMANORVM CONTENDERVNT.

Dum ea conquīruntur[IV]

=while those things are being sought *~while those things were being sought for*

I ***quī ... perfūgissent,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. §592

II **perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —** (PER + FUGIŌ), *to flee for refuge*; In partic., *to go over* or *desert to the enemy* (class.)

III **pōscō, -ere, popōscī, —** (PREC-), *to ask urgently, beg, demand, request, desire*

IV **conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus** (COM + QUÆRO), *to seek for, hunt up, search out, procure, bring together, collect*

et cōnferuntur

=and (while these things) are being collected *~and got together*

nocte intermissā[I]

=with a night <having been> passed *~after a night's interval*

circiter hominum[II] mīlia sex eius pāgī

=around six thousands of men of his canton *~about 6000 men of that canton*

quī Verbigenus[III] appellātur

=which is called the Verbigenus *~which was called the Verbigene*

sīve timōre[IV] perterritī

=be it (those men) <having been> thoroughly terrified by <means of> fear *~whether terrified by fear*

nē

=lest *~lest*

I ***nocte intermissā,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

II ***hominum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

III **Verbigenus, -ī,** M., *Verbigen, Verbigenus*, a canton of the Helvetians

IV ***timōre***, abl. of means. §409

armīs trāditīs[I]

=with (their) arms <having been> handed over

~after delivering up their arms

suppliciō[II] [III] adficerentur[IV] [V]

=they would be affected by <means of> punishment

~they should be put to death

sīve spē[VI] salūtis[VII] [VIII] inductī

=or be it (those men), <having been> led by <means of> the hope of safety

~or else induced by the hope of safety

quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum[IX] suam fugam

=because in so great a multitude of captives, their own flight

~because that amid so vast a multitude of those who had surrendered themselves, their flight

I ***armīs trāditīs,*** abl. abs. §420

II **supplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (SUPPLEX), *to kneel down, humble oneself, pray humbly, beseech, beg, implore, supplicate*

III ***suppliciō***, abl. of means. §409

IV **afficio, affēci, affectum, affere** (AD + FACIO), *to do something to one*, i.e. *to exert an influence on body* or *mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state*; With acc. and abl., *to affect a person* or (rarely) *thing with something*; In a good sense, *to bestow upon, grace with*; In a bad sense, *to visit with, inflict upon; supplicio affici, to be put to death*

V ***nē ... afficerentur,*** clause of fearing. Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive, with nē affirmative and nē nōn or ut negative. In this use nē is commonly to be translated by that, ut and nē nōn by that not. §564

VI ***spē***, abl. of means. §409

VII ***salūtis***, obj. gen. The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs. §347

VIII **salūs, -ūtis**, F. (SALVUS), *a being safe and sound*; *a sound* or *whole* condition, *health, welfare, prosperity, preservation, safety, deliverance*, etc.

IX **dēditīcius, -ī**, ADJ. (DEDITUS), *belonging to a surrender* or *capitulation*; and subst. **dediticius, -ii**, m., *one who has surrendered* or *capitulated, a captive, "quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam ..."* (I.XXVII) *"ex dediticiis"* (II.XVII)

aut occultārī[I]

=/it was possible/ to either be hidden

~might either be concealed

aut omnīnō ignōrārī[II] posse[III]

=or /they thought/ it was possible to be entirely unrecognized

~or // entirely overlooked

exīstimārent[IV]

=they thought

~they supposed

prīmā[V] nocte[VI] [VII] ē castrīs[VIII] Helvētiōrum ēgressī[IX] ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt

=(those men) <having> gone forth in the first part (of) the night, from the camp of the Helvetii, hastened toward the Rhine and the territories of the Germans

~having at nightfall departed out of the camp of the Helvetii, hastened to the Rhine and the territories of the Germans

I **occulō, -ere, -culuī, -cultus** (OB + CAL-), *to cover, cover over; To cover up, hide, conceal*

II **īgnōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus** (GNA-), *not to know, to be unacquainted, be ignorant, mistake, misunderstand*; In pass., *not to be known* or *recognized*

III ***aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse***, indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimārent.* §592

IV ***quod ... exīstimārent,*** informal indir. disc. §592 & The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. §540

V **nox, noctis**, F. (NEC-), *night*; ***prīmā nocte***, *at nightfall*

VI **prīmus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (PRO-), *the first, first*; In time or place, *first, fore, foremost, the first part*

VII ***prīmā nocte,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

VIII ***ē castrīs,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

IX **ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, —** DEP. (EX + GRADIOR), Intrans, *to go out, come forth, march out, go away*; Trans, *to go beyond, pass out of, leave*

While those things are being sought for and got together, after a night's interval, about 6000 men of that canton which is called the Verbigene, whether terrified by fear, lest after delivering up their arms, they should suffer punishment, or else induced by the hope of safety, because they supposed that, amid so vast a multitude of those who had surrendered themselves, their flight might either be concealed or entirely overlooked, having at night-fall departed out of the camp of the Helvetii, hastened to the Rhine and the territories of the Germans.

I.XXVIII

Cæsar deals with the fugitive Verbigens.

I.XXVIII.I

QVOD VBI CÆSAR RESCIIT, QVORVM PER FINES IERANT HIS VTI CONQVIRERENT ET REDVCERENT, SI SIBI PVRGATI ESSE VELLENT, IMPERAVIT: REDVCTOS IN HOSTIVM NVMERO HABVIT; RELIQVOS OMNES OBSIDIBVS, ARMIS, PERFVGIS TRADITIS IN DEDITIONEM ACCEPIT.

Quod[I] ubi Cæsar resciit[II]

=which (thing), when Cæsar found out

~but when Cæsar discovered this

quōrum[III] per fīnēs ierant

=through the territories of whom they had gone

~through whose territory they had gone

I *quod*, *this*; obj. of *resciit*

II **rescīscō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus** (SCIO), *learn, find out, get to know of, bring to light, ascertain something*

III ***quōrum***, *quorum* precedes its antecedent *hīs*, which is dat. after *imperāvit*

his[I]

=/he commanded/ these men *~these*

utī conquīrerent

=that they should seek out (them) *~to seek them out*

et redūcerent[II III]

=and they should lead (them) back *~and to bring them back again*

sī sibi[IV] pūrgāti[V] esse vellent[VI]

=if they wished to be exculpated to him *~if they wanted to clear themselves in his sight*

imperāvit

=he commanded *~he commanded*

I ***hīs***, dat. with special v. *imperāvit.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

II ***utī conquīrerent et redūcerent,*** subst. clause of purpose. §563

III **redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** (RE- + DŪCŌ), *to lead back, bring back, conduct back, escort back, accompany*

IV ***sibi***, dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed. §376

V **pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (PURUS + AG-), *to free from what is superfluous, make clean, make pure, clean, cleanse, purify*; In partic. *To clear from accusation, to excuse, exculpate, justify* (syn. *excuso*)

VI ***sī ... vellent,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question, expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse. §592

[eos] reductōs[I] in hostium numerō habuit

=[those men] <having been> led back, he held, among the number of the enemy

~and considered them, when brought back, in the light of enemy

reliquōs omnēs

=all the remaining men

~all the rest

obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs[II] trāditīs[III]

=with the hostages, arms, (and) deserters <having been> handed over

~upon their delivering up the hostages, arms, and deserters

in dēditiōnem accēpit[IV]

=he received in catipulation

~he accepted to a surrender

But when Cæsar discovered this, he commanded those through whose territory they had gone, to seek them out and to bring them back again, if they meant to be acquitted before him; and considered them, when brought back, in the light of enemies; he admitted all the rest to a surrender, upon their delivering up the hostages, arms, and deserters.

I Expressing Characterization or Description: *victis, venientes, those beaten, those coming up, meaning those who had been beaten, those who were coming up* (I.XXV)

II **perfuga, -æ**, M. (PER + FVG-), *a deserter*

III ***obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs,*** abl. abs. §420

IV **accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** (AD + CAPIO), *to take without effort, receive, get, accept*; Of voluntary taking, *to take, accept, take into possession, receive*

I.XXVIII.II

HELVETIOS, TVLINGOS, LATOVICOS IN FINES SVOS, VNDE ERANT PROFECTI, REVERTI IVSSIT, ET, QVOD OMNIBVS FRVGIBVS AMISSIS DOMI NIHIL ERAT QVO FAMEM TOLERARENT, ALLOBROGIBVS IMPERAVIT VT IIS FRVMENTI COPIAM FACERENT: IPSOS OPPIDA VICOSQVE, QVOS INCENDERANT, RESTITVERE IVSSIT.

Helvētios, Tulingōs, Latovicōs[I] in fīnēs suōs

=the Helvetii, the Tulingi, (and) the Latobrigi /to return/ to their own territories	*~the Helvetii, the Tulingi, and the Latobrigi /to return/ to their territories*

unde[II] erant profectī

=from which place they had departed	*~whence they came*

revertī[III IV]

=to return	*~to return*

iussit

=he ordered	*~he ordered*

et

=and	*~and*

quod

=because	*~as*

I **Latovicī, -ōrum,** M. pl, *the Latobrigi*, a Celtic tribe who joined the Helvetii in their migration attempt

II **unde**, ADV., Of place. Relat., *from which place, whence*

III **revertor, revertī, reversus sum, —** DEP. (RE + VERTO), *to return*

IV ***Helvētios, Tulingōs, Latovicōs ... revertī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *iussit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

omnibus frūgibus āmissīs[I] [II]

=with all the grain <having been> lost *~all the productions of the earth having been destroyed*

domī[III] nihil erat

=(and since) there was nothing at home *~and as there was nothing at home*

quō famem[IV] tolerārent[V] [VI]

=by which they (the Helvetii) might bear (their) hunger *~whereby they might sustain their hunger*

Allobrogibus[VII] imperāvit

=he commanded the Allobroges *~he commanded the Allobroges*

ut iīs[VIII] frūmentī cōpiam facerent[IX]

=that they should make an abundance of grain for those men *~to let them have a supply of corn*

I ***omnibus frūgibus āmissīs,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance. §420

II **āmittō, -ere, -īsī, -issus** (AB + MITTO), *to send away, dismiss, part with*

III ***domī***, loc. case. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place where, by the Locative. §427

IV **famēs, -is**, F. (FA-), *hunger*

V **tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (TAL-), *to bear, endure, support, sustain, suffer; To support, nourish, maintain, sustain, preserve*

VI ***quō ... tolerārent,*** indir. question. §573

VII ***Allobrogibus***, dat. with special v. *imperāvit.* §367

VIII ***iīs***, dat. of ref. §376

IX ***ut ... facerent,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

ipsōs oppida vīcōsque

=the town and villages themselves *~the towns and villages*

quōs incenderant

=which they had burned *~which they had burned*

restituere[I]

=to restore *~to rebuild*

iussit

=(and) he ordered *~and ordered them*

He ordered the Helvetii, the Tulingi, and the Latobrigi, to return to their territories from which they had come, and as there was at home nothing whereby they might support their hunger, all the productions of the earth having been destroyed, he commanded the Allobroges to let them have a plentiful supply of corn; and ordered them to rebuild the towns and villages which they had burned.

I ***ipsōs … restituere,*** indir. disc. §580

I.XXVIII.III

ID EA MAXIME RATIONE FECIT, QVOD NOLVIT EVM LOCVM VNDE HELVETII DISCESSERANT VACARE, NE PROPTER BONITATEM AGRORVM GERMANI QVI TRANS RHENVM INCOLVNT E SVIS FINIBVS IN HELVETIORVM FINES TRANSIRENT ET FINITIMI GALLIÆ PROVINCIÆ ALLOBROGIBVSQVE ESSENT.

Id eā maximē ratiōne[I] [II] fēcit

=he did it (this) especially with this reasoning *~this he did, chiefly, on this reasoning*

quod nōluit

=because he was unwilling *~because he was unwilling*

eum locum

=that that place *~that the country*

unde Helvētiī discesserant

=from which the Helvetii had departed *~whence the Helvetii had departed*

vacāre[III]

=to be uninhabited *~should be untenanted*

I **ratiō, -ōnis**, F. (RA-), *a reckoning, numbering, casting up, account, calculation, computation*; In rhet., *a showing cause, argument, reasoning in support of a proposition*

II ***eā maximē ratiōne,*** abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

III **vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (ETYM. DUB.), *to be empty, be void, be vacant, be without, not to contain*; Lit. Of Space. *uninhabited, uncultivated*

nē propter bonitātem[I] agrōrum Germānī

=lest the Germans // on account of the goodness of the lands

~lest the Germans // on account of the excellence of the lands

quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt

=who dwell across the Rhine

~who dwell on the other side of the Rhine

e suīs fīnibus[II] in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent

=should cross over from their own territories into the territories of the Helvetii

~should cross over from their own territories into those of the Helvetii

et fīnitimī Galliæ prōvinciæ Allobrogibusque[III] essent[IV]

=and should be neighbours to the Gallic province and the Allobroges

~and become borderers upon the province of Gaul and the Allobroges

This he did, chiefly, on this account, because he was unwilling that the country, from which the Helvetii had departed, should be untenanted, lest the Germans, who dwell on the other side of the Rhine, should, on account of the excellence of the lands, cross over from their own territories into those of the Helvetii, and become borderers upon the province of Gaul and the Allobroges.

I **bonitas, ātis**, F. (BONUS), *the good quality of a thing, goodness, excellence*

II ***e suīs fīnibus,*** abl. of place from which. §426

III ***Allobrogibusque***, dat. with special v. *imperāvit,* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

IV ***nē ... trānsīrent ... essent,*** neg. clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

I.XXVIII.IV

BOIOS PETENTIBVS HÆDVIS, QVOD EGREGIA VIRTVTE ERANT COGNITI, VT IN FINIBVS SVIS COLLOCARENT, CONCESSIT, QVIBVS ILLI AGROS DEDERVNT QVOSQVE POSTEA IN PAREM IVRIS LIBERTATISQVE CONDICIONEM ATQVE IPSI ERANT RECEPERVNT.

Boiōs[I] petentibus Hæduīs[II] [III]

=with asking of the Ædui /he conceeded to/ the Boii

~the petition of the Ædui // the Boii

quod ēgregiā virtūte[IV] erant cognitī

=because they were known <to have the attribute of> distinguished valor

~as these were known to be of distinguished valor

ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent[V]

=<in order> that they might be placed together in their own territories

~to settle in their own (i. e. in the Æduan) territories

concessit

=he conceeded to

~he granted (them)

quibus illī agrōs dedērunt

=to those men whom they gave (their) lands

~to whom they gave lands

I ***Boiōs***, acc. pl., obj. of *concessit*

II ***petentibus Hæduīs,*** dat. with comp. v. *concessit.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

III **Hæduus, -a, -um,** ADJ., *of the Hædui,* a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône—As a noun, *a Hæduan, the Hædui*

IV ***ēgregiā virtūte,*** abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

V ***ut ... conlocārent,*** subst. clause of purpose. §563

quōsque posteā in parem[I] iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem[II]

=and whom afterwards // into an equal condition of rights and of freedom

~and whom they afterward // to the same state of rights and freedom as themselves

atque ipsī erant

=as they themselves were

~as they themselves were

recēpērunt

=they received

~they admitted

He granted the petition of the Aedui, that they might settle the Boii, in their own (i. e. in the Aeduan) territories, as these were known to be of distinguished valor, to whom they gave lands, and whom they afterward admitted to the same state of rights and freedom as themselves.

I **pār, paris**, ADJ. (PAR-), *equal*

II **condiciō, -ōnis**, F. (COM- + DIC-), *an agreement, stipulation, condition, compact, proposition, terms, demand*; Of things, *a situation, condition, nature, mode, manner: agri vitæ, manner of living*

I.XXIX

A TALLY OF THE HELVETIANS AND THEIR ALLIES.

I.XXIX.I

IN CASTRIS HELVETIORVM TABVLÆ REPERTÆ SVNT LITTERIS GRÆCIS CONFECTÆ ET AD CÆSAREM RELATÆ, QVIBVS IN TABVLIS NOMINATIM RATIO CONFECTA ERAT, QVI NVMERVS DOMO EXISSET EORVM QVI ARMA FERRE POSSENT, ET ITEM SEPARATIM PVERI, SENES MVLIERESQVE.

In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulæ[I] repertæ sunt

=in the camp of the Helvetii, tablets were found

~in the camp of the Helvetii, lists were found

litterīs Græcīs[II] [III] cōnfectæ

=(they were) made in greek letters

~written up in Greek characters

I **tabula, -æ**, F. (TA-), *a board, plank; A writing-tablet, writingbook, slate*; also, *a tablet written upon, a writing*, as a letter, contract, account, list, will, etc.

II ***litterīs Græcīs,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

III **Græcus, -a, -um,** ADJ., *of the Greeks, Greek*—As a noun, *a Greek, the Greeks*

et ad Cæsarem relātæ [sunt][I]

=and they were brought back to Cæsar	*~and were brought back to Cæsar*

quibus in tabulīs[II] nōminātim[III] ratiō cōnfecta erat

=~~in he tablets~~ by which an account was made, one by one	*~in which an estimate had been drawn up, name by name*

quī[IV] numerus domō[V] exīsset[VI] eōrum

=(and) what number of those men had gone from home	*~(and) what number had gone forth from their country*

quī arma ferre possent[VII]

=(those men) who were able to bear arms	*~of those who were able to bear arms*

I **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** (RE + FERŌ), *to bear back, bring back, drive back, carry back*

II ***quibus in tabulīs***, An Antecedent is sometitnes repeated in a Relative Clause, and should be translated only once; as, *itinera duo, quibus itineribus, two routes by which* (I.VI), not as, *by which routes*

III **nōminātim**, ADV., *by name, expressly, one by one, in detail*

IV ***quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum***, *quī* introducing an indirect question; as, *what*

V ***domō***, abl. of place from which. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: Th e place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition. §427

VI ***quī ... exīsset,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

VII ***quī ... possent,*** rel. clause of characteristic. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined. §535

et item sēparātim puerī[I], senēs[II] mulierēsque[III]

=*and also, seperately, the boys, the old men, and the women*

~*and likewise the boys, the old men, and the women, separately*

In the camp of the Helvetii, lists were found, drawn up in Greek characters, and were brought to Cæsar, in which an estimate had been drawn up, name by name, of the number which had gone forth from their country of those who were able to bear arms; and likewise the boys, the old men, and the women, separately.

I.XXIX.II

QVARVM OMNIVM RERVM SVMMA ERAT CAPITVM HELVETIORVM MILIVM DVCENTORVM SEXAGINTA TRIVM, TVLINGORVM MILIVM TRIGINTA SEX, LATOVICORVM QVATTVORDECIM, RAVRICORVM VIGINTI TRIVM, BOIORVM TRIGINTA DVORVM: EX HIS QVI ARMA FERRE POSSENT AD MILIA NONAGINTA DVO.

Quarum omnium rerum summa[IV] erat capitum[V] Helvētiōrum mīlium ducentōrum sexāgintā trium

=*of all ~~which~~ things the sum was: of the Helvetii heads, two hundred and sixty three thousands*

~*of all which items the total was: of the Helvetian people, 263,000*

I **puer, -erī**, M. (PV-), *a male child, boy, lad, young man*—Hence, pl. *pueri, children*; In partic. *a male child, a boy, lad, young man* (strictly till the seventeenth year, but freq. applied to those who are much older)

II **senex, senis**, ADJ. (SENIOR, SEN-), *old, aged, advanced in years*; Subst. m. **posit**., *an old man, aged person, graybeard*

III **mulier, -eris**, F. (MAL-), *a woman, female*

IV **summa, -æ**, F. (SUMMUS), Fig., *the chief place, highest rank, leadership, supremacy; An amount, sum, aggregate, whole, quantity*

V **caput, -itis**, N. (CAP-), *the head*; Lit. *head*; Trop. *a man, person, or animal*

Tulingorum mīlium trīgintā sex, Latovicōrum quattuordecim, Rauricōrum vīgintī trium, Boiōrum trīgintā duōrum

=of the Tulingi, thirty-six thousands; Of the Latobrigi, fourteen (thousands); Of the Rauraci, twenty-three (thousands); Of the Boii, thirty-two (thousands)

~of the Tulingi, 36,000; Of the Latobrigi, 14,000; Of the Rauraci, 23,000; Of the Boii, 32,000

ex hīs

=from them

~out of these

quī arma ferre possent[I]

who were able to bear arms

~such as could bear arms

ad[II] mīlia nōnāgintā duo [fuērunt]

=[were] about ninety-two thousands

~(amounted) to about 92,000

Of all which items the total was:

- Of the Helvetii [lit. of the heads of the Helvetii]: 263,000
- Of the Tulingi: 36,000
- Of the Latobrigi: 14,000
- Of the Rauraci: 23,000
- Of the Boii: 32,000

Out of these, such as could bear arms, [amounted] to about 92,000.

I ***quī ... possent,*** rel. clause of characteristic. §535

II **ad**, PRÆP. with acc., Of approach. In space, *to, toward*; In number or amount, *near, near to, almost, about, toward*

I.XXIX.III

SVMMA OMNIVM FVERVNT AD MILIA TRECENTA SEXAGINTA OCTO.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia trecenta sexāgintā octō

=the sum of all (the people) were near three-hundred and sixty-eight thousands | *~the sum of all amounted to nearly 368,000*

The sum of all amounted to 368,000.

I.XXIX.IV

EORVM QVI DOMVM REDIERVNT CENSV HABITO, VT CÆSAR IMPERAVERAT, REPERTVS EST NVMERVS MILIVM CENTVM ET DECEM.

Eōrum

=of these men | *~among these*

quī domum rediērunt[I]

=who returned home | *~who returned home*

cēnsū[II] habitō[III]

=with the census <having been> had | *~when the census was taken*

ut Cæsar imperāverat

=as Cæsar had ordered | *~as Cæsar had commanded*

I **redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus** (RED + EO), Of persons, *to go back, turn back, return, turn around*

II **cēnsus, -ūs**, M. (CENSEO), *a registering of citizens and property by the censors, census, appraisement*; *The register of the census, censor's lists*

III ***cēnsū habitō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

repertus est numerus mīlium centum et decem

=the number was found to be a hundred and ten thousands

~the number was found to be 110,000

When the census of those who returned home was taken, as Cæsar had commanded, the number was found to be 110,000.

The campaign against Ariovistus.

I.XXX

The Gallic leaders congratulate Cæsar.

I.XXX.I

BELLO HELVETIORVM CONFECTO, TOTIVS FERE GALLIÆ LEGATI, PRINCIPES CIVITATVM, AD CÆSAREM GRATVLATVM CONVENERVNT: INTELLEGERE SESE, TAMETSI PRO VETERIBVS HELVETIORVM INIVRIIS POPVLI ROMANI AB HIS PŒNAS BELLO REPETISSET, TAMEN EAM REM NON MINVS EX VSV TERRÆ GALLIÆ QVAM POPVLI ROMANI ACCIDISSE; PROPTEREA QVOD EO CONSILIO FLORENTISSIMIS REBVS DOMOS SVAS HELVETII RELIQVISSENT, VTI TOTI GALLIÆ BELLVM INFERRENT IMPERIOQVE POTIRENTVR, LOCVMQVE DOMICILIO EX MAGNA COPIA DELIGERENT QVEM EX OMNI GALLIA OPORTVNISSIMVM AC FRVCTVOSISSIMVM IVDICASSENT, RELIQVASQVE CIVITATES STIPENDIARIAS HABERENT.

Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō[I]

=with the war of the Helvetii <having been> com pleted

~when the war with the Helvetii was concluded

I **bellō ... cōnfectō,** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

tōtīus ferē Galliæ lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum

=the embassadors of nearly all of Gaul, the chiefs of the states	*~embassadors from almost all parts of Gaul, the chiefs of states*

ad Cæsarem grātulātum[I] [II] convēnērunt

=they (the embassadors) came together for <the purpose of> congratulating Cæsar	*~assembled to congratulate Cæsar*

intellegere sēsē[III]

=(saying) that they know	*~[saying] that they were well aware*

tametsī[IV] prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī[V]

=that, although // on account of the old injustices of the Helvetians to the Roman people	*~that, although // for the old injustices of the Helvetians toward the Roman people*

I **grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (GRATUS), *to manifest joy, be glad, congratulate, rejoice*; Supine. acc., *To give thanks, render thanks, thank*

II ***ad Cæsarem grātulātum***, *ad* + acc. supine expressing purpose after v. of motion *convēnērunt.* The Supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case. §509

III ***intellegere sēsē,*** indir. disc. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

IV **tametsī**, CONJ. (TAMEN + ETSI), In concession, *notwithstanding that, although, though*

V ***populī Rōmānī,*** obj. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Cæsar, as odium, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as hate. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase amor patris, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive). §348

ab hīs[I] pœnās bellō[II] repetī[vi]sset[III] [IV]

=he had sought again a penalty with war by <means of> those men (the Helvetians)

~he had taken vengeance on the Helvetii in war

tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terræ Galliæ quam populī Rōmānī[V] accidisse[VI]

=nonetheless, that thing had happened, no less, from the use of the Gallic land than of the Roman people

~yet that circumstance had happened no less to the benefit of the land of Gaul than of the Roman people

proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō[VII]

=on account of which because // by <means of> that plan

~because // with that design

I ***ab hīs***, abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

II ***bellō***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

III **repetō, -ēre, -īvī, -ītus** (RE + PETŌ), *to fall upon again, attack anew, strike again; To seek again, return to, revisit*

IV ***tametsī ... repetīsset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. The concessive idea is rather vague and general, and takes a variety of forms, each of which has its distinct history. Sometimes concession is expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive in a sentence grammatically independent (§440), but it is more frequently and more precisely expressed by a dependent clause introduced by a concessive particle. The concessive force lies chiefly in the Conjunctions (which are indefinite or conditional in origin), and is often made clearer by an adversative particle (tamen, certē) in the main clause. As the Subjunctive may be used in independ ent clauses to express a concession, it is also employed in concessive clauses, and somewhat more frequently than the indicative. §526 & A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

V ***Galliæ ... populī Rōmānī,*** obj. gen. §348

VI ***eam rem ... accidisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *intellegere*. §580

VII ***eō cōnsiliō,*** abl. of means. §409

flōrentissimīs[I] rēbus[II]

=in (during) the most flourishing circumstances

~while their affairs were most flourishing

domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent[III]

=the Helvetii // had left behind their own homes

~the Helvetii // had quitted their country

utī tōtī Galliæ[IV] bellum īnferrent

~in order that they might bear war to all Gaul

=to wage war upon the whole of Gaul

imperiōque[V] potīrentur

=and that they might become master of the supreme power

~and becoming master of the government

I **florentissimus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (SUPER. OF FLŌRENS), *greatly blooming; greatly flourishing*

II ***flōrentissimīs rēbus,*** abl. abs. denoting time when. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423 & §420

III ***quod ... relīquissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. Note 1. Quod introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Quia regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. Quoniam, inasmuch as, since, when now, now that, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative. ii. Causal clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see §580). §540 & §583

IV ***tōtī Galliæ,*** dat. with comp. *v. īnferrent.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

V ***imperiōque***, abl. with special v. *potīrentur.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

locumque domiciliō[I] [II] ex[III] magnā cōpiā dēligerent

=and they might choose, from a great abundance, a place for habitation

~and selecting, out of a great abundance, that spot for an abode

quem ex omnī Galliā

=(a place) which // from all Gaul

~which // of all Gaul

oportūnissimum[IV] ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicā[vi]ssent[V]

=they had judged to be the most opportune and productive

~they should judge to be the most convenient and most productive

I ***domiciliō***, dat. of purpose. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: Note I. This construction is often called the Dative of Service, or the Double Dative construction. The verb is usually sum. The noun expressing the end for which is regularly abstract and singular in number and is never modified by an adjective, except one of degree (māgnus, minor, etc.), or by a genitive. §382

II **domicilium, -ī**, N. (DOMUS + CAL-), *a habitation, dwelling, domicile, abode*

III ***ex***, Ex, ē, from (the midst, opposed to in), out of, with the ablative (cf. ab and dē). Idiomatically or less exactly: ex cōnsulātū, right after his consulship: ex êius sententiā, according to his opinion; ex æquō, justly; ex imprōvīsō, unexpectedly; ex tuā rē, to your advantage; māgnā ex parte, in a great degree; ex equō pūgnāre, to fight on horseback; ex ūsū, expedient; ē regiōne, opposite; quærere ex aliquō, to ask of some one; ex senātūs cōnsultō, according to the decree of the senate; ex fugā, in [their] flight (proceeding immediately from it); ūnus ē filiīs, one of the sons. §221

IV **opportūnus, -a, -um** (OPOR-), ADJ. (OB + PAR-), *fit, meet, adapted, convenient, suitable, seasonable, opportune*

V ***quem ... iūdicāssent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās[I] [II] habērent[III]

=and they might have the remaining states as tributaries (to them)

~and hold the rest of the states as tributaries

When the war with the Helvetii was concluded, embassadors from almost all parts of Gaul, the chiefs of states, assembled to congratulate Cæsar, [saying] that they were well aware, that, although he had taken vengeance on the Helvetii in war, for the old wrong done by them to the Roman people, yet that circumstance had happened no less to the benefit of the land of Gaul than of the Roman people, because the Helvetii, while their affairs were most flourishing, had quitted their country with the design of making war upon the whole of Gaul, and seizing the government of it, and selecting, out of a great abundance, that spot for an abode, which they should judge to be the most convenient and most productive of all Gaul, and hold the rest of the states as tributaries.

I.XXX.II

PETIERVNT VTI SIBI CONCILIVM TOTIVS GALLIÆ IN DIEM CERTAM INDICERE IDQVE CÆSARIS VOLVNTATE FACERE LICERET: SESE HABERE QVASDAM RES QVAS EX COMMVNI CONSENSV AB EO PETERE VELLENT.

Petiērunt

=they had sought

~they requested

I ***stīpendiāriās***, subst. pred. appositive of *cīvitātēs*

II **stipendiārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (STIPENDIUM), *of* or *belonging to tribute, liable to impost* or *contribution*, *tributary* (of imposts payable in money; whereas *vectigalis* denotes those payable in kind; the former was held to be the most humiliating)

III ***utī ... īnferrent ... potīrentur ... dēligerent ... habērent,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

utī [se] sibi[I] concilium tōtīus Galliæ in diem certam indīcere[II]

=that [they themselves] // to point out a council of all of Gaul for themselves on a certain day

~that // to proclaim an assembly of the whole of Gaul for a particular day

idque Cæsaris voluntāte[III] facere licēret[IV]

=and /that [they themselves]/ might be allowed to do it by <means of> the will of Cæsar

~and // to be allowed with Cæsar's permission to do that

Sēsē habēre[V] quāsdam rēs

=(saying) that they are having certain things

~[stating] that they had some things

quās ex[VI] commūnī[VII] cōnsēnsū[VIII] ab eō petere vellent[IX]

=(~~certain things~~) which they were wishing to seek from common agreement by that man

~which with the general consent, they wished to ask of him

I ***sibi***, dat. of indir. obj. with the v. *indīcere*

II **indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (INDEX), *to point out, indicate, inform, show, declare, disclose, make known, reveal, betray*

III ***voluntāte***, abl. of means. §409

IV ***utī ... licēret,*** subst. clause of purpose. §563

V ***sēsē habēre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *indīcere.* §580

VI ***ex***, Ex, ē, from (the midst, opposed to in), out of, with the ablative (cf. ab and dē). Idiomatically or less exactly: ex cōnsulātū, right after his consulship: ex êius sententiā, according to his opinion; ex æquō, justly; ex imprōvīsō, unexpectedly; ex tuā rē, to your advantage; māgnā ex parte, in a great degree; ex equō pūgnāre, to fight on horseback; ex ūsū, expedient; ē regiōne, opposite; quærere ex aliquō, to ask of some one; ex senātūs cōnsultō, according to the decree of the senate; ex fugā, in [their] flight (proceeding immediately from it); ūnus ē filiīs, one of the sons. §221

VII **commūne, -is**, N. (COMMUNIS), *that which is common*

VIII **consensus, -ūs**, M. (CONSENTIO), *agreement, accordance, unanimity, concord*

IX ***quās ... vellent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

They requested that they might be allowed to proclaim an assembly of the whole of Gaul for a particular day, and to do that with Cæsar's permission, [stating] that they had some things which, with the general consent, they wished to ask of him.

I.XXX.III

EA RE PERMISSA DIEM CONCILIO CONSTITVERVNT ET IVRE IVRANDO NE QVIS ENVNTIARET, NISI QVIBVS COMMVNI CONSILIO MANDATVM ESSET, INTER SE SANXERVNT.

Eā rē permissā[I] [II]

=with this thing <having been> permitted	*~upon granting this request*

diem conciliō[III] cōnstituērunt

=they set a day for the council	*~they appointed a day for the assembly*

et iūre iūrandō[IV] [V]

=and by <means of> swearing an oath	*~by sworn oath*

I **permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (PER + MITTŌ), *to let pass, let go, let loose; To let go, reach with, cast, hurl; To give leave, let, allow, suffer, grant, permit*

II ***eā rē permissā,*** abl. abs. §420

III ***conciliō***, dat. of purpose. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: §382

IV **iūro, -āre, -ātum, —** DEP. (IŪROR), *to swear, to take an oath*

V ***iūre iūrandō,*** abl. of means. §409; abl. of the gerundive. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used: to express manner, means, cause, etc. §507

nē quis ēnūntiāret[I]

=that not anyone should announce (their deliberations)	*~that no one should disclose (their deliberations)*

nisi quibus[II] commūnī cōnsiliō[III] mandātum esset

=unless (those men) to whom had been ordered by <means of> the common council	*~except those to whom this [office] should have been assigned by the general assembly*

inter sē[IV] sānxērunt[V]

=(and) was ratified among themselves	*~and ratified with one another*

This request having been granted, they appointed a day for the assembly, and ordained by an oath with each other, that no one should disclose [their deliberations] except those to whom this [office] should be assigned by the general assembly

I ***nē ... ēnūntiāret,*** neg. subst. clause of purpose. §563

II ***quibus***, dat. with special v. *mandātum esset.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

III ***commūnī cōnsiliō,*** abl. of means. §409

IV The Reciprocal Relation is expressed by *inter se* (Lit. *among themselves*), which must be translated in accordance with the requirements of English idiom; as, *inter se dant, they gave* (Lit. *give*) *to one another* (I.III); *inter se differunt, they differ from one another* (I.I); *inter se collocuti, having conferred with one another* (IV.XXX); *cohortati inter se, urging one another on* (IV.XXV); *inter se contenderent, they strove together* (I.XXXI); *inter se,* referring to two persons, *with each other* (V.XLIV)

V **sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus** (SAC-), Of a law or treaty, *to make sacred, render inviolable, fix unalterably, establish, appoint, decree, ordain, confirm, ratify, enact; To ratify, confirm, consecrate, enact, approve*

I.XXXI

Cæsar is beseeched to defend Gaul.

I.XXXI.I

EO CONCILIO DIMISSO, IDEM PRINCEPS CIVITATVM QVI ANTE FVERANT AD CÆSAREM REVERTERVNT, PETIERVNTQVE VTI SIBI SECRETO DE SVA OMNIVMQVE SALVTE CVM EO AGERE LICERET.

Eō conciliō dīmissō[I]

=with that council <having been> sent away | *~when that assembly was dismissed*

īdem prīncēpēs cīvitātum

=the same leaders of the states | *~the same chiefs of states*

quī ante fuerant

=who had been before | *~who had before been*

ad Cæsarem revertērunt

=returned to Cæsar | *~returned to Cæsar*

petiēruntque

=and they sought | *~and asked*

I ***eō conciliō dīmissō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

utī sibi[I] sēcrētō[II] dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret[III]

=that it might be permitted to conduct with him in secret about their own safety and (the safety) of all men

~to be allowed to treat with him privately (in secret) concerning the safety of themselves and of all

When that assembly was dismissed, the same chiefs of states, who had before been to Cæsar, returned, and asked that they might be allowed to treat with him privately (in secret) concerning the safety of themselves and of all.

I.XXXI.II

EA RE IMPETRATA, SESE OMNES FLENTES CÆSARI AD PEDES PROIECERVNT: NON MINVS SE ID CONTENDERE ET LABORARE NE EA QVÆ DIXISSENT ENVNTIARENTVR, QVAM VTI EA QVÆ VELLENT IMPETRARENT; PROPTEREA QVOD, SI ENVNTIATVM ESSET, SVMMVM IN CRVCIATVM SE VENTVROS VIDERENT.

Eā rē impetrātā[IV]

=with this thing <having been> achieved

~that request having been obtained

I ***sibi***, dat. with impersonal v. *licēret.* The Dative is used: With the impersonals libet (lubet), it pleases, and licet, it is allowed. §368

II **sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus** (SĒ + CERNŌ), *to put apart, sunder, sever, part, divide, separate*; Subst., **sēcrētum, -i**, N., *something secret, secret conversation; a mystery, secret*

III ***utī…licēret,*** clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

IV ***eā rē impetrātā,*** abl. abs. §420

sēsē omnēs flentēs Cæsarī[I] ad pedēs prōiēcērunt[II]

=all the men, weeping, threw themselves forth to Cæsar at (his) feet	*~they all threw themselves in tears at Cæsar's feet*

nōn minus sē id[III] contendere

=(saying,) no less, that they were striving for this thing	*~[saying] that they no less begged*

et labōrāre[IV V]

=and (that) (they) were working for	*~and striving*

nē ea quæ dīxissent[VI]

=that those things which they had said // not	*~to not say the things which*

ēnūntiārentur[VII]

should /not/ be announced	*~should be disclosed*

I ***Cæsarī***, dat. of ref. The Dative of Reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word. §377

II **prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus** (PRO + IACIO), *to throw forth, cast before, throw out, throw down, throw*

III Intransitive and Transitive Verbs sometimes take a Neuter Pronoun as an Accusative of Result produced, to carry forward or qualify the meaning; as. *Id eis persuasit, he persuaded them* (*to adopt*) *that* (*course*), Lit. *he persuaded that to them* (I.II); *hoc facere, to do this* (II.XXVII)

IV ***sē…contendere…labōrāre,*** indir. disc. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

V **labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (LABOR), *to labor, take pains, endeavor, exert oneself, strive*

VI ***quæ dīxissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

VII ***nē…ēnūntiārentur,*** neg. clause of result. §531

quam utī[I] ea

=than that those things | *~than those things*

quæ vellent[II]

=which they wished for | *~which they wished for*

impetrārent[III]

=they might obtain | *~that they might obtain*

propterea quod

=on account of that because | *~inasmuch as*

sī ēnūntiātum esset[IV]

=if it should have been disclosed | *~if disclosure was made*

summum in cruciātum[V] sē ventūrōs [esse][VI]

=that they would come into the highest torture | *~that they should come into the greatest tortures*

vidērent[VII]

=they saw | *~they saw*

I ***quam utī**, than that*, the subject and object of comparison are both purpose clauses

II ***quæ vellent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III ***utī…impetrārent,*** clause of purpose. §531

IV ***sī ēnūntiātum esset,*** protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

V **cruciātus, -ūs**, M. (CRUCIO), *torture, torment, a torturing, execution*

VI ***sē ventūrōs,*** indir. disc. dependent on *vidērent.* §580

VII ***propterea quod…vidērent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

That request having been obtained, they all threw themselves in tears at Cæsar's feet, [saying] that they no less begged and earnestly desired that what they might say should not be disclosed, than that they might obtain those things which they wished for; inasmuch as they saw, that, if a disclosure was made, they should be put to the greatest tortures.

I.XXXI.III

LOCVTVS EST PRO HIS DIVICIACVS ÆDVVS: GALLIÆ TOTIVS FACTIONES ESSE DVAS: HARVM ALTERIVS PRINCIPATVM TENERE ÆDVOS, ALTERIVS ARVERNOS.

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Æduus

=Divitiacus, an Æduan, spoke on behalf of these men (the Gauls)

~for these Divitiacus the Æduan spoke and told him

Galliæ tōtīus factiōnēs[I] esse duās

=(saying) that there are two factions of all of Gaul

~that there were two parties in the whole of Gaul

hārum alterīus prīncipātum tenēre[II] Æduōs

=(and) that the Ædui hold the head of one of these

~that the Ædui stood at the head of one of these

alterīus Arvernōs[III]

=(that) the Arverni (hold the head) of the other

~the Arverni of the other

I **factiō, -ōnis**, F. (FAC-), *a making, doing, preparing; A company, association, class, order, sect, faction, party*

II ***factiōnēs esse…tenēre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *locūtus est.* §580

III **Arvernus, -a, -um,** ADJ., *of the Arverni*, a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne

I.XXXI.IV

HI CVM TANTOPERE DE POTENTATV INTER SE MVLTOS ANNOS CONTENDERENT, FACTVM ESSE VTI AB ARVERNIS SEQVANISQVE GERMANI MERCEDE ARCESSERENTVR.

Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs[I] contenderent[II]

=when (after) these men greatly contended for many years among themselves for leadership

~after these had been violently struggling with one another for the superiority for many years

factum esse[III]

=it had been done

~it came to pass

utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque[IV V] Germānī mercēde[VI VII] arcesserentur[VIII IX]

=that the Germans were caused to come with pay wages by the Arverni and the Sequani

~that the Germans were called in for hire by the Arverni and the Sequani

I ***multōs annōs,*** acc. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

II ***cum…contenderent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III ***factum esse,*** indir. disc. §580

IV ***ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

V **Sēquanus, -a, -um,** adj., *of the Sequaní*, a tribe of Gaul, oñ the Rhone, north of Macon); m. sg., *one of the Sequani, a Sequanian;* m. pl., *the Sequani*

VI ***mercēde***, abl. of price. The Ablative of Price is used only in indefinite expressions; thus, *parvo pretio redempta, purchased at a low price* (I.XVIII); *impenso pretio, at a high price* (IV.II); *quanto detrimento, at how great a loss* (VII.XIX); *levi momento, of slight account* (VII.XXXIX). The price of a thing is put in the Ablative.Note. To this head is to be referred the Ablative of the Penalty. §416

VII **mercēs, -ēdis**, F. (SMAR-), *price, hire, pay wages, salary, fee, reward*

VIII **arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus** INTENS. (ACCEDO), *to cause to come, call, send for, invite, summon, fetch*

IX ***utī…arcesserentur,*** subst. clause of result. Clauses of Result may be used substantively:as the object of faciō etc. (§568) §567

For these Divitiacus the Aeduan spoke and told him: "That there were two parties in the whole of Gaul: that the Aedui stood at the head of one of these, the Arverni of the other. After these had been violently struggling with one another for the superiority for many years, it came to pass that the Germans were called in for hire by the Arverni and the Sequani.

I.XXXI.V

HORVM PRIMO CIRCITER MILIA QVINDECIM RHENVM TRANSISSE: POSTEAQVAM AGROS ET CVLTVM ET COPIAS GALLORVM HOMINES FERI AC BARBARI ADAMASSENT, TRADVCTOS PLVRES: NVNC ESSE IN GALLIA AD CENTVM ET VIGINTI MILIVM NVMERVM.

Hōrum primō[I] circiter mīlia quindecim Rhēnum trānsisse[II]

=that around fifteen thousands of these men had first crossed the Rhine

~that about 15,000 of them [i.e. of the Germans] had at first crossed the Rhine

posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum

=after that // the lands and the culture and the abundance of the Gauls

~but after that // of the lands and the refinement and the abundance of the Gauls

I **prīmō**, ADV. (PRIMUS), In the order of time, at first, *at the beginning, first, in the first place*

II ***mīlia…trānsīsse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *locūtus est.* §580

hominēs ferī[I] ac barbarī[II] adamā[vi]ssent[III IV]

=*the uncultivated and barbaric men had fallen in love with*

~*these wild and savage men had become enamored*

traductōs [esse] plūrēs

=*more men (Germans) were led across*

~*more were brought over*

nunc esse[V] in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum[VI]

=*now the number was up to a hundred and twenty thousands of numbers (of people) (Germans) in Gaul*

~*that there were now near 120,000 of them in Gaul*

That about 15,000 of them [i.e. of the Germans] had at first crossed the Rhine : but after that these wild and savage men had become enamored of the lands and the refinement and the abundance of the Gauls, more were brought over, that there were now as many as 120,000 of them in Gaul.

I **ferus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FER-), *wild, untamed, uncultivated*; Trop., *wild, rude, uncultivated; savage, barbarous, fierce, cruel*

II **barbarus, -a, -um**, ADJ. with comp., Prop., *foreign, strange, barbarous*, opp. to Greek or Roman; In gen., for any hostile people (among the Romans, after the Aug. age, Esp. the German tribes, as, among the Greeks, after the Persian war, the Persians); Transf., *foreign, strange*, in mind or character. In mind, *uncultivated, ignorant*; *rude, unpolished*

III **adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (AD + AMŌ), *to fall in love with, conceive desire for, desire eagerly*

IV ***posteāquam…adamāssent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

V ***nunc esse in Galliā ad centum ... numerum***, indir. disc. §580

VI ***numerum***, acc. sg. m., subj. acc. of *esse*

I.XXXI.VI

CVM HIS ÆDVOS EORVMQVE CLIENTES SEMEL ATQVE ITERVM ARMIS CONTENDISSE; MAGNAM CALAMITATEM PVLSOS ACCEPISSE, OMNEM NOBILITATEM, OMNEM SENATVM, OMNEM EQVITATVM AMISISSE.

Cum hīs Æduōs eōrumque clientēs[I] semel[II] atque iterum[III] armīs[IV] contendisse[V]

=that with these men, the Ædui and their dependents, had contended once and again by <means of> arms

~that with these the Ædui and their dependents had repeatedly struggled in arms

magnam calamitātem[VI] pulsōs[VII] accēpisse

=that (those men), <having been> repulsed, had received a great calamity

~that they had been routed, and had sustained a great misfortunes of war

omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse[VIII]

=that (they) had lost all (their) nobility, all (their) senate, all (their) cavalry

~had lost all their nobility, all their senate, all their cavalry

I **cliēns, -entis**, M. (FOR CLUENS, PART. OF CLUEO), *a personal dependant, client*; Of whole nations, *the allies, dependents,* or *vassals* of a more powerful people

II **semel**, ADV. NUM. (SA-), once, a single time

III **iterum**, ADV., *again, a second time, once more, anew*; With other adv., Esp. with *semel, tertium*, etc., *again and again, repeatedly*

IV ***armīs***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

V ***Æduōs…contendisse,*** indir. disc. §580

VI **calamitās, -ātis**, F. (SCAL-), *loss, injury, damage, mischief, harm, misfortune, calamity, disaster*

VII ***pulsōs accēpisse,*** indir. disc. §580

VIII ***omnem nōbilitātem…āmīsisse,*** indir. disc. §580

That with these the Aedui and their dependents had repeatedly struggled in arms-that they had been routed, and had sustained a great calamity-had lost all their nobility, all their senate, all their cavalry.

I.XXXI.VII

QVIBVS PRŒLIIS CALAMITATIBVSQVE FRACTOS, QVI ET SVA VIRTVTE ET POPVLI ROMANI HOSPITIO ATQVE AMICITIA PLVRIMVM ANTE IN GALLIA POTVISSENT, COACTOS ESSE SEQVANIS OBSIDES DARE NOBILISSIMOS CIVITATIS ET IVRE IVRANDO CIVITATEM OBSTRINGERE, SESE NEQVE OBSIDES REPETITVROS NEQVE AVXILIVM A POPVLO ROMANO IMPLORATVROS NEQVE RECVSATVROS QVO MINVS PERPETVO SVB ILLORVM DICIONE ATQVE IMPERIO ESSENT.

Quibus prœliīs calamitātibusque[I] frāctōs[II] [III]

=(those men) <having been> broken down by ~~which~~ battles and calamities

~and that broken by such engagements and calamities

quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō[IV] atque amīcitiā[V]

=(those men) whom // both by their own valor and by the hospitality and friendship of the Roman people

~although // both from their own valor and from the Roman people's hospitality and friendship

plūrimum ante in Gallia potuissent[VI]

=they had been very much able before in Gaul

~they had formerly been very powerful in Gaul

I ***quibus prœliīs calamitātibusque,*** abl. of means. §409

II ***Quibus prœliīs ... frāctōs***, indir. disc. §580

III **frangō, frēgi, frāctus, -ere** (FRAG-), *to break in pieces, dash to pieces, shiver, shatter, fracture*; Fig., *to break down, subdue, overcome, crush, dishearten, weaken, diminish, violate, soften*

IV **hospitium, -ii**, N. (HOSPES), *Hospitality*

V ***virtūte…hospitiō…amīcitiā,*** abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

VI ***quī…potuissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

coāctōs esse[I] Sequanīs obsidēs[II] dare nōbilissimōs[III] cīvitātis

=(those men) had been compelled to give the noblest of the state as hostages to the Sequani

~they were now compelled to give the chief nobles of their state, as hostages to the Sequani

et iūre iūrandō[IV] cīvitātem obstringere[V] sēsē

=and they (were compelled) to bind (their) state by <means of> a sworn oath

~and to bind their state by an oath

neque obsidēs repetitūrōs [esse]

=that (those men) would neither demand back hostages

~that they would neither demand hostages in return

neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs [esse][VI]

=nor would (those men) implore aid from the Roman people

~nor implore aid from the Roman people

neque recūsātūrōs [esse][VII] [VIII]

=nor would (those men) make an objection against

~nor refuse

I ***coāctōs esse,*** indir. disc. §580

II ***obsidēs***, subst. pred. appositive of *nōbilissimōs cīvitātis*

III **nōbilis, -e**, ADJ. (GNA-), *that is known, well-known, famous, noted, celebrated, renowned*

IV ***iūre iūrandō,*** abl. of means. §409

V ***cīvitātem obstringere,*** indir. disc. §580

VI **implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (IN + PLORO), *to invoke with tears; To call to help, call for aid, appeal to, invoke, beseech, entreat, implore; To pray for, beg earnestly, implore*

VII **recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (RE- + CAUSA), *to make an objection against, decline, reject, refuse, be reluctant to do*

VIII ***obsidēs repetitūrōs…implōrātūrōs…recūsātūrōs,*** indir. disc. §580

quō minus[I] perpetuō[II] sub illorum diciōne[III] atque imperiō essent[IV]

=by which the less they would be under their perpetual sway and command *~to be forever under their sway and empire*

And that broken by such engagements and calamities, although they had formerly been very powerful in Gaul, both from their own valor and from the Roman people's hospitality and friendship, they were now compelled to give the chief nobles of their state, as hostages to the Sequani, and to bind their state by an oath, that they would neither demand hostages in return, nor supplicate aid from the Roman people, nor refuse to be forever under their sway and empire.

I Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ne, that not, quo minus, that not* (Lit. *by which the less*), and *quin, that not*, are used after Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by from with a Participle. Thus, *hos ... deterrere ne frumentum conferant, these through fear were holding back* (*the people*) *from furnishing the grain* (I.XVII); *retineri non potuerant quin ... tela conicerent, could not be restrained from hurling darts* (I.XLVII)

II **perpetuus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PER + PAT-), *continuous, unbroken, uninterrupted, constant, entire, whole, perpetual*

III **diciō, -ōnis**, F. (DIC-), *dominion, sovereignty, authority, sway, control, rule*; Milit. and polit., *dominion, sovereignty, authority, rule, sway, power*

IV ***quō minus…essent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. The original meaning of quīn is how not? why not? (quī-nē), and when used with the Indicative or (rarely) with the Subjunctive it regularly implies a general negative. Thus, quīn ego hōc rogem? why shouldn't I ask this? implies that there is no reason for not asking. The implied negative was then expressed in a main clause, like nūlla causa est or fierī nōn potest. Hence come the various dependent constructions introduced by quīn. §557 & §583

I.XXXI.VIII

VNVM SE ESSE EX OMNI CIVITATE ÆDVORVM QVI ADDVCI NON POTVERIT VT IVRARET AVT LIBEROS SVOS OBSIDES DARET.

Ūnum[I] sē esse[II] ex omnī cīvitāte Æduōrum

=that he is the one from every state of the Ædui

~that he was the only one out of all the state of the Ædui

qui addūcī nōn potuerit[III] ut **iurāret**

=who was not able to be led to swear (an oath)

~who could not be prevailed upon to take the oath

aut līberōs suōs obsidēs **daret**[IV]

=or to give his own children as hostages

~or to give his children as hostages

That he was the only one out of all the state of the Aedui, who could not be prevailed upon to take the oath or to give his children as hostages.

I **ūnus, ūnīus** (OLD ŒNOS), *One, a single*; Prægn., *one, alone, only, sole, single*

II ***ūnum sē esse,*** indir. disc. §580

III ***quī…potuerit,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV ***ut iūrāret…daret,*** clause of purpose. §531

I.XXXI.IX

OB EAM REM SE EX CIVITATE PROFVGISSE ET ROMAM AD SENATVM VENISSE AVXILIVM POSTVLATVM, QVOD SOLVS NEQVE IVRE IVRANDO NEQVE OBSIDIBVS TENERETVR.

Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte[I] profūgisse[II] [III]

=for this thing he had fled from the state	*~on that account he had fled from his state*

et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse[IV]

=and (he) had gone to Rome to the senate	*~and had gone to the senate at Rome*

auxilium postulātum[V] [VI]

=to request aid	*~to beseech aid*

I ***ex cīvitāte,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

II **profugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —** (PRO- + FUGIŌ), *to flee, run away, escape*

III ***sē…profūgisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *locūtus est.* §580

IV ***et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse***, indir. disc. §580

V ***auxilium postulātum,*** acc. supine expressing purpose. The Supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case. §509

VI **postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (PREC-), *to ask, demand, claim, require, request, desire*

quod sōlus[I] neque iūre iūrandō[II] neque obsidibus[III] tenērētur[IV]

=because he alone could be held neither by <means of> sworn oath nor by <means of> hostages

~as he alone was bound neither by oath nor hostages

On that account he had fled from his state and had gone to the senate at Rome to beseech aid, as he alone was bound neither by oath nor hostages.

I **sōlus, sōlīus**, ADJ. (SAL-), *alone, only, single, sole*—Hence, adv., (sōlum), *alone, only, merely, barely*—Negatively: *non solum, nec* (*neque*) *solum ... sed* (*verum*) *etiam* (*et*), etc., *not only* (*not merely, not barely*) ... *but also*, etc. (See sōlus, alone §113)

II ***iūre iūrandō,*** abl. of means. §409

III ***obsidibus,*** abl. of means. §409

IV ***quod…tenērētur***, subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

I.XXXI.X

SED PEIVS VICTORIBVS SEQVANIS QVAM ÆDVIS VICTIS ACCIDISSE, PROPTEREA QVOD ARIOVISTVS, REX GERMANORVM, IN EORVM FINIBVS CONSEDISSET TERTIAMQVE PARTEM AGRI SEQVANI, QVI ESSET OPTIMVS TOTIVS GALLIÆ, OCCVPAVISSET ET NVNC DE ALTERA PARTE TERTIA SEQVANOS DECEDERE IVBERET, PROPTEREA QVOD PAVCIS MENSIBVS ANTE HARVDVM MILIA HOMINVM VIGINTI QVATTVOR AD EVM VENISSENT, QVIBVS LOCVS AC SEDES PARARENTVR.

Sed peius[I] victōribus[II] Sequanīs quam Æduīs victīs[III] [IV] accidisse[V] [VI]

=but a worse (fate) had come to the victorious Sequani than to the <having been> vanquished Ædui

~but a worse thing had befallen the victorious Sequani than the vanquished Ædui

I **malus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (MAL-), IT ADOPTS AS COMP. AND SUP. **pēior** AND **pessimus** (PED), *bad, not good*; *bad,* in the widest sense of the word, *evil, wicked, injurious, destructive, mischievous, hurtful;* **male**, ADV., *badly, ill, wrongly, wickedly, unfortunately, erroneously, improperly,* etc.

II **vīctor, -ōris**, M. (VIC-), *a conqueror, vanquisher, victor*

III ***victīs***, ppp. of *vincō*

IV ***victōribus Sequanīs…Æduīs victīs,*** dat. with comp. v. *accidisse.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

V ***Sed peius victōribus ... quam Æduīs ... accidisse***, indir. disc. §580

VI **accidō, -ere, -cidī, —** (AD + CADO), *to fall upon, fall to, reach by falling*; Fig., *to come to pass, happen, occur, fall out, take place, befall*

propterēā quod Ariovistus[I], rēx[II] Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset

=on account of which because Ariovistus, king of the Germans, had settled in their territories	*~for Ariovistus the king of the Germans, had settled in their territories*

tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī

=and // a third part of land of the Sequani	*~and // a third of their land*

quī esset[III] optimus[IV] tōtīus Galliæ

=(the third part of land) which was the best of all of Gaul	*~which was the best in the whole of Gaul*

occupāvisset

=he had seized	*~had seized upon*

et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere[V]

=and now // the Sequani to depart from another third part	*~and was now // them to depart from another third part*

iubēret[VI]

=he was ordering	*~ordering*

I **Ariovistus, -ī,** M., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans

II **rēx, rēgis**, M. (REG-), *an arbitrary ruler, absolute monarch, king*

III ***quī esset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV see *bonus*

V ***Sēquanōs dēcēdere,*** indir. disc dependent on *iubēret.* §580

VI ***propterēā quod…cōnsēdisset…occupāvisset…iubēret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §580

proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus[I] ante Harudum[II] mīlia hominum[III] vīgintī quattuor ad eum vēnissent[IV]

=on account of which because before within a few months, twenty-four thousands of the Harudes had came to him

~because a few months previously 24,000 men of the Harudes had come to him

quibus locus ac sēdēs[V] parārentur[VI]

=(those men) to whom a place and dwelling-place were to be procured

~for whom room and settlements must be provided

But a worse thing had befallen the victorious Sequani than the vanquished Aedui, for Ariovistus the king of the Germans, had settled in their territories, and had seized upon a third of their land, which was the best in the whole of Gaul, and was now ordering them to depart from another third part, because a few months previously 24,000 men of the Harudes had come to him, for whom room and settlements must be provided.

I ***paucīs mēnsibus,*** abl. of deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

II **Harūdes, -um,** M. pl., a German tríbe originally from the great expidition of the Cimbri

III ***hominum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Cardinal numerals (except mīlia) regularly take the Ablative with ē (ex) or dē instead of the part. genitive. So also, quīdam, a certain one, commonly, and other words occasionally. ūnus ex tribūnīs, one of the tribunes. [But also, ūnus tribūnōrum] “paucī dē nostrīs cadunt” (I.XI), a few of our men fall. §346c

IV ***proptereā quod…vēnissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

V **sēdēs, -is**, F. (SED-), *a seat, bench, chair, throne; A seat, dwelling-place, residence, habitation, abode, temple*

VI ***quibus…parārentur***, subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

I.XXXI.XI

FVTVRVM ESSE PAVCIS ANNIS VTI OMNES EX GALLIÆ FINIBVS PELLERENTVR ATQVE OMNES GERMANI RHENVM TRANSIRENT: NEQVE ENIM CONFERENDVM ESSE GALLICVM CVM GERMANORVM AGRO NEQVE HANC CONSVETVDINEM VICTVS CVM ILLA COMPARANDAM.

Futūrum esse paucīs annīs[I]

=it would be within a few years *~the consequence would be, in a few years*

uti omnes ex Galliæ fīnibus pellerentur

=that all men would be driven from the territories of Gaul *~that they would all be driven from the territories of Gaul*

atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent[II]

=and all Germans would cross the Rhine *~and all the Germans would cross the Rhine*

neque enim cōnferendum esse[III] [IV] Gallicum [agrum] cum Germānōrum agrō

=for neither is the [land] of the Gauls <having> to be compared with the land of the Germans *~for neither must the land of Gaul be compared with the land of the Germans*

I ***paucīs annīs,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

II ***futūrum esse…utī…pellerentur…trānsīrent,*** indir. disc. dependent on *locūtus est.* §580; the expression *futūrum esse ut* is commonly used in place of fut. pass. inf. Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the subject of the following: §569

III **cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus** (CŌN + FERŌ), *To bring together, collect, gather, unite, join*; Fig., *to bring together in thought, compare, contrast*

IV ***cōnferendum esse,*** fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. (See §196 for a chart) & §580

neque hanc cōnsuētudinem[I] vīctūs[II] cum illā comparandam [esse][III]

=nor is the latter habit of living <having> to be compared with the former

~nor must the habit of living of the latter be put on a level with that of the former

The consequence would be, that in a few years they would all be driven from the territories of Gaul, and all the Germans would cross the Rhine ; for neither must the land of Gaul be compared with the land of the Germans, nor must the habit of living of the latter be put on a level with that of the former.

I.XXX.XII

ARIOVISTVM AVTEM, VT SEMEL GALLORVM COPIAS PRŒLIO VICERIT, QVOD PRŒLIVM FACTVM SIT ADMAGETOBRIGÆ, SVPERBE ET CRVDELITER IMPERARE, OBSIDES NOBILISSIMI CVIVSQVE LIBEROS POSCERE, ET IN EOS OMNIA EXEMPLA CRVCIATVSQVE EDERE, SI QVA RES NON AD NVTVM AVT AD VOLVNTATEM EIVS FACTA SIT.

Ariovistum autem

=Ariovistus, moreover

~moreover, [as for] Ariovistus

I **consuētūdo, -inis**, F. (CONSUESCO), *A being accustomed, custom, habit, use, usage*; With prepp., *ex consuetudine, pro consuetudine*, and absol. **consuetudine**, *according to* or *from custom, by* or *from habit, in a usual* or *customary manner*, etc.

II **vīctus, -ūs**, M. (VIV-), *that which sustains life, means of living, sustenance, nourishment, provisions, victuals*

III ***hanc cōnsuētūdinem…comparandam,*** fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. §196 & §580

ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās prœliō[I] vīcerit[II]

when he had once defeated the forces of the Gauls in battle	*~when once he conquered the forces of the Gauls in a battle*

quod prœlium factum sit[III] Admagetobrigæ[IV] [V]

=which ~~battle~~ was made at Magetobria	*~which battle was happened at Magetobria*

superbē[VI] et crūdēliter[VII] imperāre

=(he) (began) to command haughtily and cruelly	*~than [he began] to lord it haughtily and cruelly*

[Ariovistum] obsidēs nobilissimī cuiusque līberōs poscere

=(he) [Ariovistus] demands the children of each one of the noblest as hostages	*~to demand as hostages the children of all the principal nobles*

et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere[VIII] [IX]

=and (he) was bringing about all examples of cruely on those men	*~and wreak on them every kind of cruelty*

I ***prœliō***, abl. of place where. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition. §427

II ***ut semel…vīcerit,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III ***quod…factum sit,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV ***Admagetobrigæ***, loc. of place where, translate with *as*, With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place where, by the Locative. §427

V **Admagetobriga, -æ,** F., a place in Gaul

VI **superbus, -a, -um**, ADJ., *haughty, proud, vain, arrogant, insolent, discourteous, supercilious, domineering*; Hence, ADV., *haughtily, proudly, superciliously*

VII **crūdēliter**, ADV. (CRUDELIS), *cruelly, fiercely, in a cruel manner*

VIII **ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus** (Ē + DŌ), *to give out, put forth, bring forth, raise, set up*; Of other objects, *to produce, perform, bring about, cause*

IX ***Ariovistum…imperāre…poscere…ēdere***, indir. disc. dependent on *locūtus est.* §580

sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum[I] aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit[II]

=if any thing was not done at (his) nod or at his volition

~if every thing was not done at his pleasure or volition

Moreover, [as for] Ariovistus, no sooner did he defeat the forces of the Gauls in a battle which took place at Magetobria, than [he began] to lord it haughtily and cruelly, to demand as hostages the children of all the principal nobles, and wreak on them every kind of cruelty, if every thing was not done at his nod or pleasure.

I.XXXI.XIII

HOMINEM ESSE BARBARVM, IRACVNDVM, TEMERARIVM: NON POSSE EIVS IMPERIA DIVTIVS SVSTINERI.

Hominem esse[III] barbarum, īrācundum[IV], temerārium[V]

=that the man is a barbarian, irascible, (and) heedless

~that he was a savage, passionate, and heedless man

nōn posse[VI] eius imperia diūtius sustinērī

=that his commands are not able to be sustained (any) longer

~and that his commands could no longer be borne

That he was a savage, passionate, and reckless man, and that his commands could no longer be borne.

I **nūtus, —**, ABL. **-ū** (ONLY NOM SING. AND ACC. AND ABL SING. AND PLUR.) M. (NV-), *a nodding, nod; Command, will, pleasure*

II ***si…facta sit,*** protasis of simple past condition in indir. disc. §589

III ***hominem esse,*** indir. disc. §580

IV **īrācundus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IRA), *irascible, irritable, passionate, choleric, angry, ireful, easily provoked*

V **temerārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TEMERE), *rash, heedless, thoughtless, imprudent, inconsiderate, indiscreet, unadvised, precipitate*

VI ***nōn posse … imperia diūtius sustinērī***, indir. disc. §580

I.XXXI.XIV

NISI QVID IN CÆSARE POPVLOQVE ROMANO SIT AVXILI, OMNIBVS GALLIS IDEM ESSE FACIENDVM QVOD HELVETII FECERINT, VT DOMO EMIGRENT, ALIVD DOMICILIVM, ALIAS SEDES REMOTAS A GERMANIS PETANT FORTVNAMQVE QVÆCVMQVE ACCIDAT EXPERIANTVR.

Nisi quid in Cæsare populōque Rōmānō sit[I] auxilī[II]

=unless something of aid is in Cæsar and the Roman people	*~unless there was some aid in Cæsar and the Roman people*

omnibus Gallīs[III] idem esse faciendum[IV]

=that the same thing is <having> to be done for all Gauls	*~the Gauls must all do the same thing*

quod Helvētiī fēcerint[V]

=which the Helvetii have done	*~that the Helvetii have done*

ut domō[VI] ēmigrent[VII]

=(namely,) that they might go forth from home	*~[viz.] emigrate from their country*

I ***nisi…sit,*** simple present condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

II ***auxilī***, part. gen. §346

III ***omnibus Gallīs,*** dat. of agent. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests. This is the regular way of expressing the agent with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§196). §374

IV ***idem esse faciendum,*** fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. §196 & §580

V ***quod…fēcerint,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

VI ***domō***, abl. of place from which. §427

VII **ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, —** (Ē + MIGRŌ), *to move, depart, emigrate*

aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās[I] ā Germānīs[II] petant

=(and) that they might seek another home, other <having been> removed settlements from the Germans

~and seek another dwelling place, other settlements remote from the Germans

fortūnamque quæcumque accidat[III]

=and whatever fortune may fall upon (them)

~and whatever fortune may fall to their lot

experiantur[IV] [V]

=they may attempt

~try

Unless there was some aid in Cæsar and the Roman people, the Gauls must all do the same thing that the Helvetii have done, [viz.] emigrate from their country, and seek another dwelling place, other settlements remote from the Germans, and try whatever fortune may fall to their lot.

I ***remōtās***, ppp., *having been removed*, as a participle adj., *remote*

II ***ā Germānīs,*** abl. of separ. Verbs compounded with ā, ab, dē, ex, (1) take the simple Ablative when used figuratively; but (2) when used literally to denote actual separation or motion, they usually require a preposition. §402

III ***quæcumque accidat,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

IV **experior, -īrī, -pertus, —** DEP. (PAR-), *to try, prove, test, experience, endure; To try, undertake, attempt, make trial, undergo, experience*

V ***ut…ēmigrent…petant…experiantur,*** subst. clause of result. §567

I.XXXI.XV

HÆC SI ENVNTIATA ARIOVISTO SINT, NON DVBITARE QVIN DE OMNIBVS OBSIDIBVS QVI APVD EVM SINT GRAVISSIMVM SVPPLICIVM SVMAT.

Hæc sī enūntiāta Ariovistō sint[I]

=if these things are announced to Ariovistus	*~if these things were to be disclosed to Ariovistus*

[sē] nōn dubitāre[II]

=(Divitiacus says) that [he] did not doubt	*~[Divitiacus adds] that he dœs not doubt*

quīn de omnibus obsidibus

=that from all the hostages	*~on all the hostages*

quī apud eum sint[III]

=(the hostages) who are among him	*~who are in his possession*

gravissimum supplicium sumat[IV]

=that he may take the most severe punishment	*~that he would inflict the most severe torture*

If these things were to be disclosed to Ariovistus, [Divitiacus adds] that he doubts not that he would inflict the most severe punishment on all the hostages who are in his possession.

I ***sī enūntiāta…sint,*** simple past condition in indir. disc. §589

II ***[sē] nōn dubitāre***, indir. disc. §580

III ***quī…sint,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §580

IV ***quīn…sūmat,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A subjunctive clause with quīn is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negatived, either expressly or by implication. i. Quīn is especially common with nōn dubitō, I do not doubt, nōn est dubium, there is no doubt, and similar expressions. §558 & §583

I.XXXI.XVI

CÆSAREM VEL AVCTORITATE SVA ATQVE EXERCITVS VEL RECENTI VICTORIA VEL NOMINE POPVLI ROMANI DETERRERE POSSE NE MAIOR MVLTITVDO GERMANORVM RHENVM TRADVCATVR, GALLIAMQVE OMNEM AB ARIOVISTI INIVRIA POSSE DEFENDERE.

Cæsarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā

=(and he says) that either by his own authority or (that) of the army or by his recent victory	*~[and says] that Cæsar, either by his own influence and by that of his army, or by his late victory*

vel nōmine[I] populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse[II]

=or by <means of> the name of the Roman people, (he) was able to frighten (him) off	*~or by name of the Roman people could intimidate him*

nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur[III]

=that not a greater multitude of Germans may be led across the Rhine	*~so as to prevent a greater number of Germans being brought over the Rhine*

Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā[IV] posse[V] dēfendere

=and that (he) is able to defend all Gaul from the injustice of Ariovistus	*~and could protect all Gaul from the outrages of Ariovistus*

I ***auctōritāte…victōriā…nōmine,*** abl. of means. §409

II ***Cæsarem…posse,*** indir. disc. §580

III ***nē…trādūcātur,*** subj. with v. of hindering. A subjunctive clause with quīn is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negatived, either expressly or by implication. ii. Verbs of hindering and refusing often take the subjunctive with nē or quōminus (= ut eō minus), especially when the verb is not negatived. §558ii

IV ***ab iniūriā,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

V ***Galliam…posse,*** indir. disc. §580

[And says] that Cæsar could, either by his own influence and by that of his army, or by his late victory, or by name of the Roman people, intimidate him, so as to prevent a greater number of Germans being brought over the Rhine, and could protect all Gaul from the outrages of Ariovistus.

I.XXXII

The Sequanians show what might happen.

I.XXXII.I

HAC ORATIONE AB DIVICIACO HABITA, OMNES QVI ADERANT MAGNO FLETV AVXILIVM A CÆSARE PETERE CŒPERVNT.

Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō[I] habitā[II]

=with this speech <having been> held by Divitiacus

~when this speech had been delivered by Divitiacus,

omnēs

=all the men

~all

quī aderant

=who were present

~who were present

I ***ab Dīviciācō***, abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

II ***ōrātiōne…habitā,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

magnō flētū[I] [II] auxilium ā Cæsare petere cœpērunt

=they began to seek aid from Cæsar with great weeping	*~began with loud lamentation to entreat assistance of Cæsar*

When this speech had been delivered by Divitiacus, all who were present began with loud lamentation to entreat assistance of Cæsar.

I.XXXII.II

ANIMADVERTIT CÆSAR VNOS EX OMNIBVS SEQVANOS NIHIL EARVM RERVM FACERE QVAS CETERI FACERENT SED TRISTES CAPITE DEMISSO TERRAM INTVERI.

Animadvertit Cæsar

=Cæsar turned (his) mind to	*~Cæsar noticed*

ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere[III]

=that the Sequani, one by one, out from all (people), were doing nothing of those things	*~that the Sequani were the only people of all who did none of those things*

quās cēterī[IV] facerent[V]

=which the other men did	*~which the others did*

I **flētus, -ūs**, M., *a weeping, wailing, lamenting*

II ***magnō flētū***, abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

III ***ūnōs…Sēquanōs…facere,*** indir. disc. dependent on *animadvertit.* §580

IV **cēterus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CA-, CI-), *the other, remainder, rest*—As subst. m., *the others, all the rest, everybody else*

V ***quās…facerent,*** rel. clause of char. §535

sed trīstēs[I] [II]

=but // sadly *~but // in sadness*

capite dēmissō[III]

=with the head <having been> sent down *~with their heads bowed down*

terram intuērī[IV] [V]

=(they) looked upon the land *~gazed on the earth*

Cæsar noticed that the Sequani were the only people of all who did none of those things which the others did, but, with their heads bowed down, gazed on the earth in sadness.

I.XXXII.III

EIVS REI QVÆ CAVSA ESSET MIRATVS EX IPSIS QVÆSIIT.

Eius reī

=of this thing *~of this conduct*

I ***trīstēs***, Adjectives are sometimes used in Latin where in English an Adverb or a Phrase is required; as, *læti ... ad castra pergunt* (Historical Present), *joyfully ... they advanced against the camp* (III.XVIII); *viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant, they oblige travelers, even against their will, to stop* (IV.V)

II **trīstis, -e**, ADJ. (TER-), *sad, sorrowful, mournful, dejected, melancholy, gloomy, downcast, disconsolate*; Adv., **triste**, *sadly, sorrowfully; harshly, severely*

III ***capite dēmissō,*** abl. abs. §420

IV **intueor, -ērī, -itus, —** DEP., *to look upon, look closely at, gaze at*

V ***trīstēs…intuērī,*** indir. disc. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

quæ causa esset[I]

=what was the cause /of this thing/

~what was the reason

mīrātus[II] ex ipsīs quæsiit

=he <having> wondered // inquired from themselves

~wondering // he inquired of themselves

Wondering what was the reason of this conduct, he inquired of themselves.

I.XXXII.IV

NIHIL SEQVANI RESPONDERE, SED IN EADEM TRISTITIA TACITI PERMANERE.

Nihil Sēquanī respondēre

=the Sequani were responding nothing

~no reply did the Sequani make

sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre[III]

=but (the men) <having been> quieted, remained in the same sadness

~but silently continued in the same sadness

No reply did the Sequani make, but silently continued in the same sadness.

I ***quæ…esset,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

II **mīror, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP., *to wonder, marvel, be astonished, be amazed, admire*

III ***respondēre, permanēre,*** hist. inf. The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the Nominative. §463

I.XXXII.V

CVM AB HIS SÆPIVS QVÆRERET NEQVE VLLAM OMNINO VOCEM EXPRIMERE POSSET, IDEM DIVIACVS ÆDVVS RESPONDIT: HOC ESSE MISERIOREM ET GRAVIOREM FORTVNAM SEQVANORVM QVAM RELIQVORVM, QVOD SOLI NE IN OCCVLTO QVIDEM QVERI NEQVE AVXILIVM IMPLORARE AVDERENT ABSENTISQVE ARIOVISTI CRVDELITATEM, VELVT SI CORAM ADESSET, HORRERENT; PROPTEREA QVOD RELIQVIS TAMEN FVGÆ FACVLTAS DARETVR, SEQVANIS VERO, QVI INTRA FINES SVOS ARIOVISTVM RECEPISSENT, QVORVM OPPIDA OMNIA IN POTESTATE EIVS ESSENT, OMNES CRVCIATVS ESSENT PERFERENDI.

Cum ab his sæpius quæreret

=when he more often inquired from those men | *~when he had repeatedly inquired of them*

neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem[I] exprimere[II] posset[III]

=and he was not able to press out any voice at all | *~and could not elicit any answer at all*

īdem Dīviācus Æduus respondit

=the same Divitiacus, the Æduan, responded | *~the same Divitiacus, the Æduan, answered*

I **vōx, vōcis**, F. (VOC-), *a voice, sound, tone, utterance, cry, call*

II **exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus** (EX + PREMO), *to press out, force out, squeeze forth*; Fig., *to wring out, extort, wrest, elicit*

III ***cum…quæreret…posset,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

hōc[I] esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam[II] Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum

=because of this thing, there was a more miserable and a more grave fortune of the Sequani than of the remaining men

~the lot of the Sequani was more wretched and grievous than that of the rest, on this account

quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem[III] querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent

=because those men alone were daring, not even in hiding, to complain nor to implore aid

~because they alone durst not even in secret complain or supplicate aid

absentisque[IV] Ariovistī crūdēlitātem[V]

=and // (even) (with him) <being> absent, the cruelty of Ariovistus

~and [even when] absent at the cruelty of Ariovistus

I ***hōc***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

II ***esse…fortūnam,*** indir. disc. dependent on *respondit.* §580

III **quidem**, ADV., *indeed*; In the phrases, *ne ... quidem, not even*

IV ***absentisque***, pres. part. used as a pred. The Present and Perfect Participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be more natural. In this use the participles express time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic (or description), manner, means, attendant circumstances. §496

V **crūdēlitās, -ātis**, F. (CRUDELIS), *harshness, severity, cruelty, barbarity*

velut[I] sī cōram[II] adesset[III]

=(just) as if he were openly present | *~just as if he were present*

horrērent[IV V]

=they shuddered (at) | *~they shuddered*

propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugæ facultās darētur[VI]

=on account of wihch for the remaining men, nonetheless, the facility of flight was given | *~for, to the rest, despite of every thing there was an opportunity of flight given*

Sēquanīs[VII] vērō

=by the Sequani, but in fact | *~by the Sequani, but*

I **velut**, ADV. (VEL- + UT), In a comparison, *even as, just as, like as, like*; To introduce a hypothetical comparative clause, *just as if, just as though, as if, as though*—Usually *velut si*

II **cōram**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (COM- + ŌS), Object., *in the presence of, before the eyes of, in the face of, before*; Subject. adv., *present in one's own person* or *presence, personally*

III ***sī…adesset,*** clause of comparison. Conditional Clauses of Comparison take the Subjunctive, usually in the Present or Perfect unless the sequence of tenses requires the Imperfect or Pluperfect. Such clauses are introduced by the comparative particles tamquam, tamquam sī, quasi, ac sī, ut sī, velut sī (later velut), poetic ceu (all meaning as if), and by quam sī (than if). §524

IV ***quod…audērent…horrērent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

V **horreō, -ēre, -uī, —** (HORS-), *to stand on end, stand erect, bristle, be rough*; *To tremble, shudder, quake* with fright; as a v.. act., with an object, *to shudder* or *be frightened at, to tremble at, be afraid of*

VI ***propterea quod…darētur,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

VII dat. of agent. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests. This is the regular way of expressing the agent with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§196). §37 4

qūī intrā[I] fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent[II]

=(those men) who had received Ariovistus within their own territories	*~who had admitted Ariovistus within their territories*

quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent[III]

=(and because) all the towns of which had been in his power	*~and whose towns were all in his power*

omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī[IV]

=all the tortures that were <having> to be endured	*~all tortures must be endured*

When he had repeatedly inquired of them and could not elicit any answer at all, the same Divitiacus the Aeduan answered, that, *"the lot of the Sequani was more wretched and grievous than that of the rest, on this account, because they alone durst not even in secret complain or supplicate aid; and shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus [even when] absent, just as if he were present; for, to the rest, despite of every thing there was an opportunity of flight given; but all tortures must be endured by the Sequani, who had admitted Ariovistus within their territories, and whose towns were all in his power."*

I **intrā**, PRÆP. with acc., *within, in, into*

II ***quī…recēpissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III ***quōrum…essent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV ***essent perferendī,*** fut. pass. periphrastic in subordinate clause in indir. disc. Second Periphrastic Conjugation. (See §196 for details) & §583

I.XXXIII

Cæsar promises to help against Ariovistus.

I.XXXIII.I

HIS REBVS COGNITIS, CÆSAR GALLORVM ANIMOS VERBIS CONFIRMAVIT, POLLICITVSQVE EST SIBI EAM REM CVRÆ FVTVRAM; MAGNAM SE HABERE SPEM ET BENEFICIO SVO ET AVCTORITATE ADDVCTVM ARIOVISTVM FINEM INIVRIIS FACTVRVM.

Hīs rēbus cognitīs[I]

=with these things <having been> learned

~Cæsar, on being informed of these things

Cæsar Gallorum animōs verbīs[II] cōnfirmāvit

=Cæsar strengthened the minds of the Gauls by <means of> (his) words

~cheered the minds of the Gauls with his words

pollicitusque est

=and he promised

~and promised

I ***hīs rēbus cognitīs,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

II ***verbīs***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

sibi eam rem cūræ[I] futūram [esse][II]

=that this thing would be a <source of> concern for him

~that this affair should be an object of his concern

magnam sē habēre[III] spem

=(saying) that he (Cæsar) has great hope

~[saying] that he had great hopes

et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte[IV] adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs[V] facturum [esse][VI]

=that Ariovistus, <having been> led by <means of> his own beneficence and authority, would make an end to (his) injuries

~that Ariovistus, induced both by his kindness and his power, would put an end to his oppression

Cæsar, on being informed of these things, cheered the minds of the Gauls with his words, and promised that this affair should be an object of his concern, [saying] that he had great hopes that Ariovistus, induced both by his kindness and his power, would put an end to his oppression.

I ***sibi…cūræ,*** double dat. construction. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: §382

II ***eam rem…futūram,*** indir. disc. dependent on *pollicitus est.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

III ***sē habēre,*** indir. disc. §580

IV ***beneficiō suō et auctōritāte,*** abl. of means. §409

V The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with Transitive Verbs which have a Direct Object in the Accusative, or an Infinitive Clause as Object, and also with the Passive of such Verbs; as, *dat* (Historical Present) *negotium Senonibus, He assigned the task to the Senones* (II.II); *nostris — dabatur, was given to our men* (IV.XXIX)

VI ***Ariovistum…factūrum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *sē habēre spem.* §580

I.XXXIII.II

HAC ORATIONE HABITA CONCILIVM DIMISIT.

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā[I]

=with this oration <having been> held | *~after making this speach*

concilium dīmīsit

=he sent away the council | *~he dismissed the assembly*

After delivering this speech, he dismissed the assembly.

I.XXXIII.III

ET SECVNDVM EA MVLTÆ RES EVM HORTABANTVR QVARE SIBI EAM REM COGITANDAM ET SVSCIPIENDAM PVTARET'; IN PRIMIS QVOD ÆDVOS, FRATRES CONSANGVINEOSQVE SÆPE NVMERO A SENATV APPELLATOS, IN SERVITVTE ATQVE IN DICIONE VIDEBAT GERMANORVM TENERI EORVMQVE OBSIDES ESSE APVD ARIOVISTVM AC SEQVANOS INTELLEGEBAT; QVOD IN TANTO IMPERIO POPVLI ROMANI TVRPISSIMVM SIBI ET REI PVBLICÆ ESSE ARBITRABATVR.

Et secundum ea multæ rēs eum hortābantur

=and after those things, many situations urged him | *~and, besides those statements, many circumstances induced him*

quārē

=for which reason (why) | *~whereby*

I **hāc ōrātiōne habitā,** abl. abs. §420

sibi[I] eam rem cōgitandam [esse] et suscipiendam [esse][II]

=that this thing is <having> to be thought by him and <having> to be undertaken (by him)

~that this affair ought to be considered and taken up by Cæsar

putāret

=he was thinking

~to think

in prīmīs[III]

=among the first things (in the first place)

~especially

quod Æduos, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque sæpe numerō ā senātū[IV] appellātōs

=because, the Ædui, <having been> called, often in respect to number, "brothers" and "kinsmen" by the senate

~as the Ædui, styled [as they had been] repeatedly by the senate "brethren" and "kinsmen"

in servitūte atque in diciōne

=in slavery and in dominion

~in the thraldom and dominion

vidēbat

=he saw

~he saw

I ***sibi***, dat. of agent. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests. §374

II ***rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam.*** fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. (See §196 for chart) & §580

III ***quārē…putāret,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

IV ***ā senātū,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

Germānōrum tenērī[I]

=that were being held // of the Germans	*~were held // of the Germans*

eōrumque obsidēs esse[II] apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs

=and hostages of those men (the Ædui) were among Ariovistus and the Sequani	*~and that their hostages were with Ariovistus and the Sequani*

intellegēbat

=he was aware	*~understood*

quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī

=(a state of affairs) which in so great a command (as that) of the Roman people	*~which in so mighty an empire [as that] of the Roman people*

turpissimum[III] sibi et reī publicæ[IV] esse[V]

=that (it) was most repulsive to him and to the republic	*~very disgraceful to himself and the republic*

arbitrābātur

=he thought	*~he considered*

I ***Hæduōs…tenērī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *vidēbat.* §580

II ***obsidēs esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *intellegēbat.* §580

III **turpis, -e**, ADJ. (TARC-), *ugly, unsightly, unseemly, repulsive, foul, filthy*

IV ***sibi et reī pūblicæ,*** dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). §376

V ***quod…esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *arbitrābātur.* §580

And, besides those statements, many circumstances induced him to think that this affair ought to be considered and taken up by him; especially as he saw that the Aedui, styled [as they had been] repeatedly by the senate "brethren" and "kinsmen," were held in the thraldom and dominion of the Germans, and understood that their hostages were with Ariovistus and the Sequani, which in so mighty an empire [as that] of the Roman people he considered very disgraceful to himself and the republic.

I.XXXIII.IV

PAVLATIM AVTEM GERMANOS CONSVESCERE RHENVM TRANSIRE ET IN GALLIAM MAGNAM EORVM MVLTITVDINEM VENIRE POPVLO ROMANO PERICVLOSVM VIDEBAT.

Paulātim[I] autem Germānōs consuēscere[II] Rhēnum trānsīre

=that, however, the Germans were habituated, little by little to cross the Rhine

~that, moreover, the Germans should by degrees become accustomed to cross the Rhine

et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre[III] populō Rōmānō[IV] perīculōsum[V] [esse][VI]

=and that a great multitude of those men coming into Gaul [was] dangerous to the Roman people

~and that a great body of them should come into Gaul [would be] dangerous to the Roman people

I **paulātim**, ADV., *by little and little, by degrees, gradually*

II ***Germānōs consuēscere,*** indir. disc. dependent on *vidēbat.* §580

III ***multitūdinem venīre,*** indir. disc. §580

IV ***populō Rōmānō,*** dat. of ref. §376

V ***perīculōsum***, pred. nom. in indir. disc. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with est and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative. §452 & §580

VI **perīculōsus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PERICULUM), *dangerous, hazardous, perilous*

vidēbat

=he saw	*~he saw*

That, moreover, the Germans should by degrees become accustomed to cross the Rhine, and that a great body of them should come into Gaul, he saw [would be] dangerous to the Roman people.

I.XXXIII.V

NEQVE SIBI HOMINES FEROS AC BARBAROS TEMPERATVROS EXISTIMABAT QVIN, CVM OMNEM GALLIAM OCCVPAVISSENT, VT ANTE CIMBRI TEVTONIQVE FECISSENT, IN PROVINCIAM EXIRENT ATQVE INDE IN ITALIAM CONTENDERENT, PRÆSERTIM CVM SEQVANOS A PROVINCIA NOSTRA RHODANVS DIVIDERET; QVIBVS REBVS QVAM MATVRRIME OCCVRRENDVM PVTABAT.

Neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs [esse][I]

=that feral and savage men would not refrain themselves	*~that wild and savage men would not be likely to restrain themselves*

exīstimābat

=he thought	*~and judged*

quīn[II]

=that // not	*~from*

I ***hominēs…temperātūrōs,*** indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimābat.* §580

II ***quīn ... exīrent ... condenderent***, *quīn* clause, Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ne*; *that not, quo minus; that not* (Lit. *by which the less*), and *quin; that not*, are used after Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by from with a Participle. Thus, *hos ... deterrere ne frumentum conferant, these through fear were holding back* (*the people*) *from furnishing the grain* (I.XVII); *retineri non potuerant quin ... tela conicerent, could not be restrained from hurling darts* (I.XLVII)

cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent[I]

=when they had occupied all Gaul

~after they had possessed themselves of all Gaul

ut ante Cimbri Teutonīque fēcissent

=as the Cimbri and Teutones had done before

~as the Cimbri and Teutones had done before them

in provinciam exīrent

=they would go forth into the province

~going forth into the province

atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent[II]

=and then they would hasten into Italy

~and thence marching into Italy

præsertim cum Sēquanōs ā provinciā nostrā[III] Rhodanus dīvideret[IV]

=especially since the Rhone separated the Sequani from our province

~particularly as the Rhone [was the sole barrier that] separated the Sequani from our province

I ***cum…occupāvissent,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

II ***quīn…exīrent…condenderent,*** *quīn* clause. A subjunctive clause with quīn is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negatived, either expressly or by implication. i. Quīn is especially common with nōn dubitō, I do not doubt, nōn est dubium, there is no doubt, and similar expressions. §558

III ***ā provinciā nostrā,*** abl. of separ. Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative. §400

IV ***cum…dīvideret,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

quibus rebus[I] quam mātūrrimē[II] [III] [sibi] occurrendum [esse][IV] [V]

=because of which things // that he (Ariovistus) is <having> to be met [by him] as timely as possible

~because of which events // he ought to be opposed by him as speedily as possible

putābat

=he thought

~he thought

And judged, that wild and savage men would not be likely to restrain themselves, after they had possessed themselves of all Gaul, from going forth into the province and thence marching into Italy (as the Cimbri and Teutones had done before them), particularly as the Rhone [was the sole barrier that] separated the Sequani from our province. Against which events he thought he ought to provide as speedily as possible.

I ***quibus rēbus,*** dat. with intrans. v. used impersonally in the pass. Intransitive verbs that govern the dative are used impersonally in the passive (§208iv). The dative is retained (cf. §365). §372

II **maturrimus, -a, -um** (SUPER. OF MĀTŪRUS), *ripest, most or very mature; timely, seasonable*

III ***quam mātūrrimē,*** *quam* + super. = the highest possible deg. Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows: With quam, vel, or ūnus the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree. §291

IV **occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus** (OB + CURRO), *to run up, run to meet, go to meet, meet, fall in with; To obviate* or *seek to obviate, to meet, resist, oppose, counteract*

V ***quibus rebus ... occurrendum [esse]***, fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. dependent on *putābat.* §196 & §580

I.XXXIII.VI

IPSE AVTEM ARIOVISTVS TANTOS SIBI SPIRITVS, TANTAM ARROGANTIAM SVMPSERAT VT FERENDVS NON VIDERETVR.

Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs[I], tantam arrogantiam[II] sūmpserat

=moreover, Ariovistus, himself, had taken up to himself so great spirits (and) arrogance

~moreover, Ariovistus, for his part, had assumed to himself such pride and arrogance

ut

=that

~so that

ferendus [esse]

=/that/ he was /not/ <having> to be endured

~to be quite sufferable

nōn vidērētur[III]

=not // it seemed

~he was not felt

Moreover, Ariovistus, for his part, had assumed to himself such pride and arrogance, that he was felt to be quite insufferable.

I **spīritus, -ūs**, M. (CF. SPIRO), *a breathing, breath; Spirit, high spirit, energy, courage, haughtiness, pride, arrogance*

II **arrogantia, -æ**, F. (ARROGANS), *An assuming, presumption, arrogance, conceitedness*

III ***ut…vidērētur,*** clause of result. The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534). §536

I.XXXIV

Cæsar invites Ariovistus to a conference.

I.XXXIV.I

QVAM OB REM PLACVIT EI VT AD ARIOVISTVM LEGATOS MITTERET QVI AB EO POSTVLARENT VTI ALIQVEM LOCVM MEDIVM VTRIVSQVE COLLOQVIO DELIGERET: VELLE SESE DE RE PVBLICA ET SVMMIS VTRIVSQVE REBVS CVM EO AGERE.

Quam ob rem placuit[I] eī[II]

=on account of which thing, it pleased him *~he therefore determined*

I **placeō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus** (PLAC-), *to please, give pleasure, be approved, be pleasing, be agreeable, be acceptable, suit, satisfy*; With Dat. Transf., *placet mihi* (*tibi*, etc.), or simply *placet, it pleases me, it seems good, right, or proper to me; it is my opinion, I am of opinion, I hold, believe, intends decided, resolved, determined* (*mihi, nobis*, etc., or absol.)

II ***eī***, dat. with special v. *placuit.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret[I]

=that he should send embassadors to Ariovistus

~to send embassadors to Ariovistus

quī ab eō postulārent[II]

=(embassadors) who might demand from him

~to demand of him

utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquiō[III] dēligeret[IV]

=that he should choose some middle place of both for a conference

~to name some intermediate spot for a conference between the two

velle sēsē[V] dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere

=(saying) that he wished to conduct with him about the republic and the highest things of both (of them)

~[saying] that he wished to treat him on state-business and matters of the highest importance to both of them

He therefore determined to send embassadors to Ariovistus to demand of him to name some intermediate spot for a conference between the two, [saying] that he wished to treat him on state-business and matters of the highest importance to both of them.

I ***ut…mitteret,*** subst. clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

II ***quī…postulārent,*** rel. clause of purpose. The ablative quō (= ut eō) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative. §531

III ***colloquiō***, dat. of purpose. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: §382

IV ***utī…dēligeret,*** clause of purpose. §531

V ***velle sēsē,*** indir. disc. dependent on *lēgātōs mitteret.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

I.XXXIV.II

EI LEGATIONI ARIOVISTVS RESPONDIT: SI QVID IPSI A CÆSARE OPVS ESSET, SESE AD EVM VENTVRVM FVISSE; SI QVID ILLE SE VELIT, ILLVM AD SE VENIRE OPORTERE.

“SĪ QUID MIHI A CÆSARE OPUS ESSET, EGO AD EUM VENISSEM; SI QUID ILLE ME VULT, ILLUM AD ME VENIRE OPORTET.”

Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit

=Ariovistus responded to this embassy *~to this embassy Ariovistus replied*

sī quid[I] ipsī ā Cæsare opus esset[II]

=(saying) that if he (Ariorvistus) had a need of anything to himself (Ariovistus) from Cæsar *~that if he himself had had need of anything from Cæsar*

sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse[III IV]

=that he (Ariovistus) would have come to him (Cæsar) *~he would have gone to him*

I ***quid***, used as subst.; sub. nom. of *esset.*

II ***sī…esset,*** protasis of contrary to fact condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

III ***ventūrum fuisse***, perf. inf. periphrastic

IV ***sēsē…ventūrum fuisse***, apodosis of contrary to fact condition in indir. disc. §589

sī quid ille sē velit[I] [II]

=(and saying) that if that (man) (Cæsar) wishes anything from himself (Ariovistus)	*~and that if he (Cæsar) wished anything of him*

illum[III] ad sē venīre oportēre

=(then) it is necessary that he (Cæsar) come to himself (Ariovistus)	*~he ought to come to him*

To this embassy Ariovistus replied, that if he himself had had need of any thing from Cæsar, he would have gone to him; and that if Cæsar wanted any thing from him he ought to come to him.

I.XXXIV.III

PRÆTEREA SE NEQVE SINE EXERCITV IN EAS PARTES GALLIÆ VENIRE AVDERE QVAS CÆSAR POSSIDERET, NEQVE EXERCITVM SINE MAGNO COMMEATV ATQVE MOLIMENTO IN VNVM LOCVM CONTRAHERE POSSE.

"PRÆTEREA EGO NEQUE…IN EAS PARTĪS…VENIRE AUDEO QUAS CÆSAR POSSIDET, NEQUE EXERCITUM…IN UNUM LOCUM CONTRAHERE POSSUM."

Prætereā[IV] sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliæ venīre audēre[V]

=that, moreover, he neither dares to come without an army into those parts of Gaul	*~that, besides, neither dare he go without an army into those parts of Gaul*

I ***velit**, volo* is sometimes used like a Verb of asking, with two Accusatives; as, *si quid* (Accusative) *ille se* (Accusative) *velit, if he* (*Cæsar*) *wished anything of him* (I.XXXIV)

II ***sī…velit,*** protasis of simple present condition in indir. disc. §589

III ***illum…oportēre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *respondit.* §580

IV **prætereā**, ADV. (PRÆTER + EA), *in addition, beyond this, further, besides, moreover*

V ***sē…audēre,*** indir. disc. §580

quās Cæsar possidēret[I] [II]

=which Cæsar possessed *~which Cæsar had possession of*

neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū[III] atque mōlīmentō[IV] in ūnum locum contrahere[V] posse[VI]

=nor is he able to draw together (his) army into one place without great supply (money) and exertion

~nor could (he) draw his army together to one place without great expense and trouble

That, besides, neither dare he go without an army into those parts of Gaul which Cæsar had possession of, nor could he, without great expense and trouble, draw his army together to one place.

I.XXXIV.IV

SIBI AVTEM MIRVM VIDERI QVID IN SVA GALLIA QVAM BELLO VICISSET AVT CÆSARI AVT OMNINO POPVLO ROMANO NEGOTI ESSET.

"MIHI AUTEM MIRUM VIDETUR QUID IN MEA GALLIA, QUAM BELLO VICI (VICERIM), AUT CÆSARI AUT OMNINO POPULO ROMANO NEGOTI SIT."

I **possīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus** (POR (FOR PRO) + SIDO), *to take possession of, occupy, seize*

II ***quās…possidēret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

III **commeātus, -ūs**, M. (COMMEO), *a going to and fro, passing back and forth; provisions, supplies*

IV **mōlīmentum, -ī**, N. (MOLIOR), *a great exertion, trouble, effort*

V **contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus** (CON + TRAHŌ), *to draw together, collect, assemble*

VI ***exercitum…posse,*** indir. disc. §580

Sibi autem mīrum[I] vidērī[II] [III]

=that, however, (it) seems amazing to him	~that to him, moreover, it appeared strange

quid in suā Galliā

=what // in his own Gaul	~what // in his own Gaul

quam bellō[IV] vīcisset[V]

=which he had conquered by <means of> war	~which he had conquered in war

aut Cæsarī[VI] aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō[VII] negōtī[VIII] [IX] esset[X]

=/what/ of business to Cæsar or the to Roman people (there) was altogether	~business either Cæsar or the Roman people at all had

I **mīrus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (MI-), *wonderful, marvellous, astonishing, extraordinary, amazing*

II ***Sibi autem mīrum vidērī***, indir. disc. §580

III ***vidērī***, used impersonally

IV ***bellō***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

V ***quam…vīcisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

VI The Dative is used with the verb *sum* to denote Possession; as, *Mercatoribus est aditus. Traders have access* (IV.II); *quid ... Cæsari ... negotii esset, what business Cæsar ... had* (I.XXXIV)

VII ***Cæsarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō,*** dat. of possession. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote Possession. Note. The Genitive or a Possessive with esse emphasizes the possessor; the Dative, the fact of possession: as,—liber est meus, the book is MINE (and no one's else): est mihi liber, I HAVE a book (among other things). §373

VIII ***negōtī***, part. gen. with *quid*. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. §346

IX **negōtium, -ī**, N. (NEC + OTIUM), *a business, employment, occupation, affair*

X ***quid…esset,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

That to him, moreover, it appeared strange, what business either Cæsar or the Roman people at all had in his own Gaul, which he had conquered in war.

I.XXXV

Cæsar makes demands of Ariovistus.

I.XXXV.I

HIS RESPONSIS AD CÆSAREM RELATIS, ITERVM AD EVM CÆSAR LEGATOS CVM HIS MANDATIS MITTIT: QVONIAM TANTO SVO POPVLIQVE ROMANI BENEFICIO ADFECTVS, CVM IN CONSVLATV SVO REX ATQVE AMICVS A SENATV APPELLATVS ESSET, HANC SIBI POPVLOQVE ROMANO GRATIAM REFERRET VT IN COLLOQVIVM VENIRE INVITATVS GRAVARETVR NEQVE DE COMMVNI RE DICENDVM SIBI ET COGNOSCENDVM PVTARET, HÆC ESSE QVÆ AB EO POSTVLARET: PRIMVM NE QVAM MVLTITVDINEM HOMINVM AMPLIVS TRANS RHENVM IN GALLIAM TRADVCERET; DEINDE OBSIDES QVOS HABERET AB ÆDVIS REDDERET, SEQVANISQVE PERMITTERET VT QVOS IPSI HABERENT VOLVNTATE EIVS REDDERE ILLIS LICERET; NEVE ÆDVOS INIVRIA LACESSERET NEVE HIS SOCIISQVE EORVM BELLVM INFERRET.

Hīs respōnsīs ad Cæsarem relātīs[I]

=with these things <having been> reported to Cæsar

~when these answers were reported to Cæsar

I **_hīs respōnsīs…relātīs,_** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

iterum ad eum Cæsar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs[I] mittit

=again, Cæsar sends ambassadors to him with these mandates

~he sends embassadors to him a second time with this message

quoniam[II] tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō[III] adfectus

=since (he,) <having been> treated by <means of> so great a kindness by himself (Cæsar) and the Roman people

~since, after having been treated with so much kindness by himself and the Roman people

cum in consulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū[IV] appellātus esset[V]

=as he had been called a king and a friend in his own consulship by the senate

~as he had in his consulship been styled 'king and friend' by the senate [59 B.C.]

hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret[VI]

=he was bringing back this thanks to himself (Cæsar) and to the Roman people

~he returns thanks to [Cæsar] himself and the Roman people

I **mandātum, -ī**, N. (P. N. OF MANDO), *a charge, commission, injunction, command, order*

II **quoniam**, ADV. (QUOM + IAM), *since now, since then, since, seeing that, as, because, whereas*

III ***tantō suō…beneficiō,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

IV ***ā senātū,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

V ***cum…appellātus esset,*** *cum*, clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

VI ***quoniam…referret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

ut in colloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur[I]

=that (he,) <having been> invited to come to a conference, hesitates

~[viz.] that when invited to a conference, he demurs

neque

=and // not

~and // not

dē commūnī rē dīcendum [esse] sibi[II] et cognōscendum [esse][III]

=that it is not <having> to be spoken and it is not <having> to be thought by him (Ariovistus) about a common thing

~that it concerns him to advise and inform himself about an object of mutual interest

putāret[IV]

=he did // think

~does // think

hæc esse[V]

=(therefore) these are the things

~these are the things

I **gravor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (PASS. OF GRAVO), *to be burdened, feel incommoded, be vexed, take amiss, bear with reluctance, regard as a burden, hesitate, do unwillingly*

II ***sibi***, dat. of agent. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests. §374

III ***dīcendum…cognōscendum,*** fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. dependent on *putāret.* (See chart at §196) & In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

IV ***ut…gravārētur…putāret,*** this *ut* is an indic. concessive clause in indir. disc. The Particles of Concession (meaning although, granting that) are quamvīs, ut, licet, etsī, tametsī, etiam sī, quamquam, and cum. Some of these take the Subjunctive, others the Indicative, according to the nature of the clause which each introduces. §527 & §583

V ***hæc esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *lēgātōs…mittit.* §580

quæ ab eō postulāret[I]

=(the things) which he should demand from him

~which he requires of him

prīmum nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret[II]

=first (of all), that he should not lead across the Rhine into Gaul any more multitude of men

~first, that he do not any more lead any body of men across the Rhine into Gaul

deinde [ut] obsidēs

=next, [that] the hostages

~in the next place, that the hostages

quōs habēret[III] ab Æduīs[IV]

=which he held from the Ædui

~which he has from the Ædui

redderet

=he should return

~he restore

Sēquanīsque[V] permitteret[VI] [VII]

=and he should permit to the Sequani

~and grant the Sequani

I ***quæ…postulāret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

II ***nē…trādūceret,*** prohibition in indir. disc. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well. §588

III ***quōs habēret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV ***ab Hæduīs,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

V ***Sēquanīsque***, dat. with v. *permitteret.* The Dative is used: With the impersonals libet (lubet), it pleases, and licet, it is allowed. §368

VI **permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (PER + MITTŌ), *to let pass, let go, let loose: equos in hostem*, i.e. *ride at full speed; To give leave, let, allow, suffer, grant, permit*

VII ***redderet…permitteret,*** command in indir. disc. §401

ut

=to | *~to*

quōs ipsī habērent[I]

=those (hostages) whom they themselves held (from the Æduis) | *~those hostages which they have*

voluntāte[II] eius reddere illīs licēret[III]

=it should be allowed, by <means of> his consent (Ariovistus'), to return those (hostages) | *~permission to restore to them with his consent*

nēve Æduōs iniūriā[IV] lacesseret

=(and) that he should neither provoke the Ædui by <means of> injury | *~and that he neither provoke the Ædui by outrage*

nēve hīs sociīsque[V] eōrum bellum īnferret[VI]

=nor should he bring war upon them and their allies | *~nor make war upon them or their allies*

I ***quōs…habērent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

II ***voluntāte***, abl. of means. §409

III ***ut…licēret,*** clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

IV ***iniūriā***, abl. of means. §409

V ***hīs sociīsque,*** dat. with comp. v. *īnferret.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

VI ***nēve…lacesseret…īnferret,*** prohibition in indir. disc. §588

When these answers were reported to Cæsar, he sends embassadors to him a second time with this message. “Since, after having been treated with so much kindness by himself and the Roman people (as he had in his consulship been styled 'king and friend' by the senate [59 B.C.]), he makes this recompense to [Cæsar] himself and the Roman people, [viz.] that when invited to a conference he demurs, and does not think that it concerns him to advise and inform himself about an object of mutual interest, these are the things which he requires of him; first, that he do not any more bring over any body of men across the Rhine into Gaul; in the next place, that he restore the hostages, which he has from the Aedui, and grant the Sequani permission to restore to them with his consent those hostages which they have, and that he neither provoke the Aedui by outrage nor make war upon them or their allies.

I.XXXV.II

SI ID ITA FECISSET, SIBI POPVLOQVE ROMANO PERPETVAM GRATIAM ATQVE AMICITIAM CVM EO FVTVRAM: SI NON IMPETRARET, SESE, QVONIAM M. MESSALA M. PISONE CONSVLIBVS SENATVS CENSVISSET VTI QVICVMQVE GALLIAM PROVINCIAM OBTINERET, QVOD COMMODO REI PVBLICÆ FACERE POSSET, ÆDVOS CETEROSQVE AMICOS POPVLI ROMANI DEFENDERET, SE ÆDVORVM INIVRIAS NON NEGLECTVRVM.

Sī id ita fēcisset[I]

=if he should do it (this) so (e.g. in this manner) *~if he would accordingly do this*

I *sī…fēcisset,* protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

sibi populōque Rōmānō[I] perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futuram [esse][II]

=there would be perpetual gratitude and friendship with him (Ariovistus) for himself (Cæsar) and for the Roman people

~[Cæsar says] that "he himself and the Roman people will entertain a perpetual feeling of favor and friendship toward him

sī nōn impetrāret[III]

=if he (Cæsar) should not achieve (his desires)

~but that if he [Cæsar] dœs not obtain [his desires]

sēsē

=that he

~that he

quoniam

=since

~forasmuch as

M[arcō] Messālā M[arcō] Pīsōne consulibus[IV]

=with M[arcus] Messala (and) M[arcus] Piso <being> consuls

~in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso [61 B.C.]

senātus cēnsuisset[V VI]

=the senate had judged

~the senate had decreed

I ***sibi populōque Rōmānō,*** dat. of possession. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote Possession. §373

II ***perpetuam grātiam…futūram,*** apodosis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

III ***sī…impetrāret,*** protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

IV ***M. Messālā M. Pīsōne consulibus,*** abl. abs. §420

V **cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus** (CAS-), *to tax, assess, rate, estimate; Of senators, to be of opinion, propose, vote, move, give judgment, argue, insist, urge*

VI ***quoniam…cēnsuisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §589

utī quīcumque[I] Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret[II]

=that whomsoever should obtain the Gallic province (e.g. as governor)

~that, whoever should have the administration of the province of Gaul

quod commodō[III] [IV] reī pūblicæ[V] facere posset[VI]

=as far as he was able to do (it) with advantage to the republic

~should, as far as he could do so consistently with the interests of the republic

Æduōs cēterōsque[VII] amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet[VIII]

=he should defend the Ædui and the other friends of the Roman people

~protect the Ædui and the other friends of the Roman people

I **quīcumque, quæcumque, quodcumque**, PRON. REL., *whoever, whatever, whosoever, whatsoever, every one who, everything that, all that*

II ***quīcumque…obtinēret,*** rel. clause of char. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined. §535

III ***commodō***, abl. of spec. A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute. §418

IV **commodus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (COM + MODUS), *that has a due* or *proper measure*; Of things, *suitable, fit, convenient, opportune, commodious, easy, appropriate, favorable, friendly*; Subst., **commodum, -i**, n., *A convenient opportunity, favorable condition, convenience*

V ***reī pūblicæ,*** dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). §376

VI ***quod…posset,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

VII **cēterus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CA-, CI-), *the other, remainder, rest*

VIII ***utī…dēfenderet,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

sē Æduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum [esse][I] [II]

=that he would not neglect the Ædui's injuries *~will not overlook the wrongs of the Ædui*

if he would accordingly do this, [Cæsar says] that *"he himself and the Roman people will entertain a perpetual feeling of favor and friendship toward him; but that if he [Cæsar] does not obtain [his desires] that he (forasmuch as in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso [61 B.C.] the senate had decreed that, whoever should have the administration of the province of Gaul should, as far as he could do so consistently with the interests of the republic, protect the Aedui and the other friends of the Roman people), will not overlook the wrongs of the Aedui."*

I **neglegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctus** (NEC + LEGO), *to disregard, not heed, not trouble oneself about, not attend to, slight, neglect, be regardless of, be indifferent to*

II ***sēsē…sē…neglēctūrum,*** apodosis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

I.XXXVI

Ariovisuts replies, defying Cæsar.

I.XXXVI.I

AD HÆC ARIOVISTVS RESPONDIT: IVS ESSE BELLI VT QVI VICISSENT EIS QVOS VICISSENT QVEM AD MODVM VELLENT IMPERARENT: ITEM POPVLVM ROMANVM VICTIS NON AD ALTERIVS PRÆSCRIPTVM, SED AD SVVM ARBITRIVM IMPERARE CONSVESSE.

Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit

=*to this thing, Ariovistus responded*	~*to this, Ariovistus replied*

iūs esse[I] bellī

=*it was a right of war*	~*that the right1 of war was*

ut

=*that*	~*that*

I ***iūs esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *respondit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

quī vīcissent[I]

=(those men) who had conquered *~they who had conquered*

eīs[II]

=those men *~those*

quōs vīcissent[III]

=(those men) whom they had conquered *~whom they had conquered*

quem ad modum[IV] [V] vellent[VI]

=to which manner they wished *~in what manner they pleased*

imperārent[VII]

=they might command *~should govern*

I ***quī vīcissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

II ***eīs***, dat. with special v. *imperārent.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

III ***quōs vīcissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV **quemadmodum** OR **quem ad modum**, ADV. (QUEM + AD + MO + DUM), *in what manner, how*

V **modus, -ī**, M. (MA-), *a measure, extent, quantity; A way, manner, mode, method, fashion, style*

VI ***quem…vellent,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

VII ***ut…imperārent,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

item populum Rōmānum victīs[I] nōn ad alterīus præscrīptum[II] sed ad suum arbitrium[III] imperāre cōnsuēsse[IV]

=that, likewise, the Roman people are accustomed to govern the conquered men, not (according) to the regulation of the others, but (according) to their own will

~that in that way the Roman people were wont to govern the nations which they had conquered, not according to the dictation of any other, but according to their own authority

To this Ariovistus replied, that, *"the right of war was, that they who had conquered should govern those whom they had conquered, in what manner they pleased; that in that way the Roman people were wont to govern the nations which they had conquered, not according to the dictation of any other, but according to their own discretion.*

I ***victīs***, dat. with comp. v. *præscrīptum.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

II **præscrīptum, -ī**, N. (P. N. OF PRÆSCRIBO; PRÆ + SCRIBO), *a previous direction, precept, limitation, proviso, regulation*

III **arbitrium, -ī**, N. (ARBITER), In law, *a judgment, decision of an arbitrator; Mastery, dominion, authority, power, will, free-will, choice, pleasure*

IV ***populum…cōnsuēsse,*** indir. disc. §580

I.XXXVI.II

SI IPSE POPVLO ROMANO NON PRÆSCRIBERET QVEM AD MODVM SVO IVRE VTERETVR, NON OPORTERE SE A POPVLO ROMANO IN SVO IVRE IMPEDIRI. ÆDVOS SIBI, QVONIAM BELLI FORTVNAM TEMPTASSENT ET ARMIS CONGRESSI AC SVPERATI ESSENT, STIPENDIARIOS ESSE FACTOS.

Sī ipse populō Rōmānō[I] nōn præscrīberet[II] [III]

=if he himself should not prescribe to the Roman people

~if he for his part did not dictate to the Roman people

quem ad modum[IV] suō iūre ūterētur[V]

=to which manner they (the roman people) should use their own right

~as to the manner in which they were to exercise their right

I ***populō Rōmānō,*** dat. with comp. v. *præscrīberet.* §370

II **præscrībo, -ere, -psi, -ptum** (PRÆ +SCRĪBO), *to write before, in front, or previously, to prefix in writing*; Trop., *to order, appoint, direct, command, prescribe; dictate*

III ***sī…præscrīberet,*** protasis of simple present condition in indir disc. §589

IV ***quem,*** here, as an interrog.

V ***quem…ūterētur,*** indir. question. §573

nōn oportēre sē[I] ā populō Rōmānō[II] in suō iūre[III] impedīrī

=that he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in his own right

~he ought not to be obstructed by the Roman people in his right

Æduōs sibi[IV]

=to him // the Ædui

~that the Ædui // to him

quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent

=since they had attempted the fortune of war

~inasmuch as they had tried the fortune of war

et armīs[V] congressī [essent][VI] ac superātī essent[VII]

=and they had contended by <means of> arms and they had been overcome

~and had engaged in arms and been conquered

I ***oportēre sē,*** apodosis of simple pres. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

II ***ā populō Rōmānō,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

III ***suō iūre,*** abl. with special v. *ūterētur.* An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

IV ***sibi***, dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). §376

V ***armīs***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

VI **congredior, -ī, -gressus, —** DEP. (COM- + GRADIOR), *to come together, meet, have an interview; To meet in strife, fight, contend, engage, join battle*

VII ***quoniam…temptāssent…congressī ac superātī essent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

stīpendiāriōs[I] esse factōs[II]

=that (those men) had been made tributaries *~had become tributaries*

If he for his part did not dictate to the Roman people as to the manner in which they were to exercise their right, he ought not to be obstructed by the Roman people in his right; that the Aedui, inasmuch as they had tried the fortune of war and had engaged in arms and been conquered, had become tributaries to him.

I.XXXVI.III

MAGNAM CÆSAREM INIVRIAM FACERE, QVI SVO ADVENTV VECTIGALIA SIBI DETERIORA FACERET.

Magnam Cæsarem iniūriam facere[III]

=that Cæsar is doing a great injury *~that Cæsar was doing a great injustice*

I Predicate Adjectives, and Participles in Predicate used as Adjectives, are connected with a Noun or Pronoun through a Verb or Participle; as, *fortissimi sunt Belgæ, the Belgians are the bravest* (I.I); *qui peritissimus habebatur, who was considered highly skilled* (I.XXI); *Gallia est divisa, Gaul is divided*, the Perfect Passive Participle of divide being used as an Adjective; if *est divisa* were here a Perfect Passive tense, it would have to be translated *has been divided* or *was divided* (I.I)

II ***Hæduōs…esse factōs,*** indir. disc. dependent on *respondit.* §580

III ***Cæsarem…facere,*** indir. disc. dependent on *respondit.* §580

quī suō adventū[I] vectīgālia[II] sibi[III] dēteriōra[IV] faceret[V]

=(he) who, by <means of> his (Cæsar's) arrival, was making (his) revenues lower to him (Ariovistus)

~in that by his arrival he was making his revenues less valuable to him

That Cæsar was doing a great injustice, in that by his arrival he was making his revenues less valuable to him.

I.XXXVI.IV

ÆDVIS SE OBSIDES REDDITVRVM NON ESSE, NEQVE HIS NEQVE EORVM SOCIIS INIVRIA BELLVM INLATVRVM, SI IN EO MANERENT QVOD CONVENISSET STIPENDIVMQVE QVOTANNIS PENDERENT: SI ID NON FECISSENT, LONGE HIS FRATERNVM NOMEN POPVLI ROMANI AFVTVRVM.

Æduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse[VI]

=that (he) would not give back (their) hostages to the Ædui

~that he should not restore their hostages to the Ædui

I ***suō adventū,*** abl. of means. §409

II **vectīgal, -ālis**, N. (VAG-), *a payment to the state, revenue, toll, tax, impost, excise, duty, tribute*

III ***sibi***, dat. of ref. §376

IV **dēterior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP. (DETER; FROM DE), *down*; hence, *lower, inferior, worse, worse, poorer, meaner*

V ***quī…faceret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. §583

VI **reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus** (RED + DŌ), *To give back, return, restore*

neque his neque eōrum sociis[I] iniūriā[II] bellum inlātūrum [esse][III]

=(but) that he would bring war by <means of> injury neither to these men nor to their allies *~but should not make war unjustly either upon them or their allies*

sī in eō manērent[IV]

=if they remained in this thing *~if they abided by that*

quod convēnisset[V]

=(that thing) which he had agreed in *~which had been agreed on*

stīpendiumque quotannīs[VI] penderent[VII] [VIII]

=and they would weigh out in payment (their) tribute every year *~and paid out their tribute annually*

sī id nōn fēcissent[IX]

=(and) if they had not done it *~if they did not continue to do that*

I ***hīs…sociīs.*** dat. with comp. v. *inlātūrum.* §370

II ***iniūriā***, abl. of means. §409

III ***sē…reddītūrum esse…illātūrum,*** apodosis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

IV **maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus** (MAN-), *to stay, remain, abide, tarry; To remain, last, endure, continue, abide, persist*

V ***quod convēnisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

VI **quot**, INDECL. Lit., *how many, as many*, as: *quot sunt?*; Transf., in specifications of time, *all, each, every;* hence, *quod annis, every year, yearly, annually*

VII **pendō, -ere, -pependī, -pēnsus** (PANDI-), *to suspend, weigh, weigh out; To weigh out in payment, pay, pay out*; Fig., *to pay, suffer, undergo*

VIII ***sī…manērent…penderent,*** protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

IX ***sī…fēcissent,*** protasis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

longē hīs[I] frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum [esse][II]

=(then) the name of the Roman people of 'brothers' would be far away <with reference> to them

~the Roman people's name of 'brothers' would be of no avail to them

That he should not restore their hostages to the Aedui, but should not make war wrongfully either upon them or their allies, if they abided by that which had been agreed on, and paid their tribute annually: if they did not continue to do that, the Roman people's name of "brothers" would avail them naught.

I.XXXVI.V

QVOD SIBI CÆSAR DENVNTIARET SE ÆDVORVM INIVRIAS NON NEGLECTVRVM, NEMINEM SECVM SINE SVA PERNICIE CONTENDISSE.

Quod[III] sibi Cæsar dēnūntiāret[IV V]

=as (to) Cæsar threatening himself

~as to the fact that to Cæsar threatened him

I A Dative of Reference is used with Verbs of taking away, especially those compounded with *ab, de*, and ex (sometimes called Dative of Separation); thus, *Æduis libertatem sint erepturi, that they were going to take away liberty from the Æduans*, Lit. *that as regards the Æduans, they are*, etc. (I.XVII); *scuto uni militi detracto, snatching a shield from a soldier*, Lit. *to a soldier*, the Dative expressing the point of view of the soldier (II.XXV); *longe eis afuturum, would be far from benefiting them*, Lit. *would be far away with reference to them* (I.XXXVI)

II ***frāternum nōmen…āfutūrum,*** apodosis of fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

III A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning as to the fact that, *as regards the fact that*, may have the force of an Accusative or Ablative of Specification. Thus, *quod ... enuntiarit, as to the fact that he had reported*, in the direct form, quod *enuntiavi, as to the fact that I have reported* (I.XVII)

IV **dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DĒ + NŪNTIŌ), *to announce, declare, denounce, menace, threaten, intimate, order, command*

V ***quod…dēnūntiāret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

sē Æduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum [esse][I]

=that he would not neglect the injuries of the Ædui

~that he would not overlook the wrongs of the Ædui

nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse[II]

=(he said) that no one had ever fought with him (Ariovistus) without his own destruction

~[he said] that no one had ever entered into a contest with him [Ariovistus] without utter ruin to himself

As to Cæsar's threatening him, that he would not overlook the wrongs of the Aedui, [he said] that no one had ever entered into a contest with him [Ariovistus] without utter ruin to himself.

I.XXXVI.VI

CVM VELLET, CONGREDERETVR: INTELLECTVRVM QVID INVICTI GERMANI, EXERCITATISSIMI IN ARMIS, QVI INTER ANNOS QVATTVORDECIM TECTVM NON SVBISSENT, VIRTVTE POSSENT.

Cum vellet[III]

=when he wishes

~when he chose

congrederētur[IV]

=he might meet (him) (e.g. to meet in battle)

~that Cæsar might enter the lists

I ***sē…neglēctūrum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dēnūntiāret.* §580

II ***nēminem…contendisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *respondit.* §580

III ***cum vellet,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A temporal clause with cum, when, and some past tense of the Indicative dates or defines the time at which the action of the main verb occurred. §545 & §583

IV ***congrederētur***, command in indir. disc. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well. §588

intellēctūrum [esse][V]

=that (he) (Cæsar) would learn *~he would feel*

quid invictī[II] Germānī, exercitātissimī[III] in armīs

=what the unconquerable Germans, the most-exercised in arms *~what the invincible Germans, well-trained [as they were] beyond all others to arms*

quī inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum[IV] nōn subīssent[V]

=(the Germans) who, in the course of fourteen years, had not come under a roof *~who for fourteen years had not been beneath a roof*

virtūte[VI] possent[VII]

=(those men) were able (to do) by <means of> (their) manliness *~could achieve by their valor*

That Cæsar might enter the lists when he chose; he would feel what the invincible Germans, well-trained [as they were] beyond all others to arms, who for fourteen years had not been beneath a roof, could achieve by their valor."

V ***intellēctūrum [esse]***, indir. disc. §580

II **invīctus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IN + VĪCTUS), *unconquered, unsubdued, unconquerable, invincible*

III **exercito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (EXERCEO), *to exercise diligently or frequently, practise*; Hence, **exercitātus, -a, -um**, (P. A.), *Well exercised, practised, versed, trained*

IV **tēctum, -ī**, N. (P. N. OF TEGO), *a covered structure, roofed enclosure, shelter, house, dwelling, abode, roof*

V ***quī…subīssent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

VI ***virtūte***, abl. of means. §409

VII ***quid…possent,*** indir. question. §573

I.XXXVII

Cæsar hears further complaints.

I.XXXVII.I

HÆC EODEM TEMPORE CÆSARI MANDATA REFEREBANTVR, ET LEGATI AB ÆDVIS ET A TREVERIS VENIEBANT: ÆDVI QVESTVM QVOD HARVDES, QVI NVPER IN GALLIAM TRANSPORTATI ESSENT, FINES EORVM POPVLARENTVR; SESE NE OBSIDIBVS QVIDEM DATIS PACEM ARIOVISTI REDIMERE POTVISSE: TREVERI AVTEM, PAGOS CENTVM SVEBORVM AD RIPAS RHENI CONSEDISSE, QVI RHENVM TRANSIRE CONARENTVR; HIS PRÆESSE NASVAM ET CIMBERIVM FRATRES.

Hæc eōdem tempore[I] Cæsarī mandāta[II] referēbantur

=at the same time (that) these commands were brought back to Cæsar

~at the same time that this message was delivered to Cæsar

I *eōdem tempore,* abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

II **mandātum, -ī**, N. (PPP. OF MANDO), *a charge, commission, injunction, command, order*

et lēgātī ab Æduīs et ā Trēverīs[I] veniēbant

=the ambassadors were coming from both the Ædui and from the Treviri *~embassadors came from the Ædui and the Treviri*

Æduī [veniēbat]

=the Ædui [were coming] *~the Ædui [were coming]*

questum[II III]

=to complain *~to complain*

quod Harudēs

=that the Harudes *~that the Harudes*

quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent[IV V]

=who had recently been carried across into Gaul *~who had lately been brought over into Gaul*

fīnēs eōrum populārentur[VI VII]

=(the Harudes) were laying waste their territories *~were ravaging their territories*

I **Trēverī, -ōrum,** M. pl., *Treverans, Treveri*, a Belgic people near the Rhine

II ***questum***, acc. supine expressing purpose after v. of motion *veniēbant.* The Supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension (§94ii), having no distinction of tense or person, and limited to two uses. (1) The form in -um is the Accusative of the end of motion (§428i). (2) The form in -ü is usually Dative of purpose (§382), but the Ablative was early confused with it. §508

III **queror, -ī, questus, —** DEP. (QUES-), *to express grief, complain, lament, bewail*; ***questum***, supine. expressing purpose—Hence, *to complain*

IV **trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (TRĀNS + PORTŌ), *to carry over, take across, carry, convey, remove, transport*

V ***quī…trānsportātī essent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

VI **populor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (SCAL-), *to lay waste, ravage, devastate, spoil, plunder, pillage*

VII ***quod…populārentur,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

sēsē nē

=(and) that they // not | *~that they // not*

obsidibus quidem datīs[I]

=even with hostages <having been> given | *~even by giving hostages*

pacem Ariovistī redimere[II] potuisse[III]

=had // been able to buy back the peace of Ariovistus | *~had // been able to procure peace from Ariovistus*

Trēverī

=(and) of the Treviri | *~and from the Treviri*

autem, pāgōs centum Suēborum[IV] ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse

=(to state) moreover, that a hundred cantons of the Suevi had settled on the banks of the Rhine | *~[to state] that a hundred cantons of the Suevi had encamped on the banks of the Rhine*

quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur[V]

=who were trying to cross the Rhine | *~and were attempting to cross it*

I ***obsidibus…datīs,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

II **redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus** (RED- + EMO), *to buy back, repurchase, redeem; to buy, purchase; To gain, acquire, obtain, procure any thing desirable*

III ***sēsē…potuisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *questum.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

IV **Suēbī, -ōrum,** M. pl., *the Swabians, Suebi,* a powerful German people

V ***quī…cōnārentur,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

hīs[I] præesse[II] Nasuam[III] et Cimberium[IV] frātrēs

=(and that) the brothers, Nasuas and Cimberius, had presided over them

~that the brothers, Nasuas and Cimberius, headed them

At the same time that this message was delivered to Cæsar, embassadors came from the Aedui and the Treviri ; from the Aedui to complain that the Harudes, who had lately been brought over into Gaul, were ravaging their territories; that they had not been able to purchase peace from Ariovistus, even by giving hostages: and from the Treviri, [to state] that a hundred cantons of the Suevi had encamped on the banks of the Rhine, and were attempting to cross it; that the brothers, Nasuas and Cimberius, headed them.

I.XXXVII.II

QVIBVS REBVS CÆSAR VEHEMENTER COMMOTVS MATVRANDVM SIBI EXISTIMAVIT, NE, SI NOVA MANVS SVEBORVM CVM VETERIBVS COPIIS ARIOVISTI SESE CONIVNXISSET, MINVS FACILE RESISTI POSSET.

Quibus rēbus[V] Cæsar vehementer commōtus

=Cæsar, <having been> moved by <means of> which things

~being greatly alarmed at these things, Cæsar

I ***hīs***, dat. with comp. v. *præesse.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

II ***pāgōs…cōnsēdisse…præesse,*** indir. disc. §580

III **Nasua, -æ,** M., a chieftain of the Suebi

IV **Cimberius, -ī,** M., a leader of the Suebi

V ***quibus rēbus,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

mātūrandum [esse][I II] sibi[III]

=that it is <having> to be hastened by him	*~that he must hasten*

exīstimāvit

=he thought	*~thought*

nē

=lest	*~lest*

sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniunxisset[IV V]

=if (this) new band of Suevi had united itself with the old troops of Ariovistus	*~if this new band of Suevi should unite with the old troops of Ariovistus*

minus facile resistī posset[VI]

=he (Ariovistus) might be less easily able to be withstood	*~he (Ariovistus) might be less easily withstood*

Being greatly alarmed at these things, Cæsar thought that he ought to use all dispatch, lest, if this new band of Suevi should unite with the old troops of Ariovistus, he [Ariovistus] might be less easily withstood.

I **mātūrō, āvī, -ātus, -āre** (MATURUS), *to make ripe, ripen, bring to maturity*; Fig., *to make haste, hasten, accelerate, quicken, despatch, expedite*

II ***mātūrandum [esse]***, fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. (See chart §196) & §580

III ***sibi***, dat. of agent. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests. §374

IV **coniungo, -ere, -nxi, -nctum** (CON + IUNGO), *to bind together, connect, join, unite*

V ***sī…coniūnxisset,*** protasis of fut. condition in informal indir. disc. §589 & §592

VI ***nē…posset,*** neg. clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

I.XXXVII.III

ITAQVE RE FRVMENTARIA QVAM CELERRIME POTVIT COMPARATA MAGNIS ITINERIBVS AD ARIOVISTVM CONTENDIT.

Itaque

=therefore

~therefore

rē frūmentariā quam[I] celerrimē potuit comparātā[II]

=with the corn thing <having been> prepared as quickly as he was able

~after having, as quickly as he could, provided a supply of corn

magnīs itineribus[III] ad Ariovistum contendit

=he hastened to Ariovistus by <means of> great marches

~he hastened to Ariovistus by forced marches

Having therefore, as quickly as he could, provided a supply of corn, he hastened to Ariovistus by forced marches.

I ***quam***, modifies the sup. adv. *celerrimē*

II ***rē frūmentariā…comparātā,*** abl. abs. §420

III ***magnīs itineribus,*** abl. of means. §409

I.XXXVIII

Cæsar hastens to Vesontio.

I.XXXVIII.I

CVM TRIDVI VIAM PROCESSISSET, NVNTIATVM EST EI ARIOVISTVM CVM SVIS OMNIBVS COPIIS AD OCCVPANDVM VESONTIONEM, QVOD EST OPPIDVM MAXIMVM SEQVANORVM, CONTENDERE TRIDVIQVE VIAM A SVIS FINIBVS PROCESSISSE.

Cum trīduī[I] [II] viam[III] prōcessisset[IV] [V]

=when he had went forth (on a) three days' journey

~when he had proceeded three days' journey

I ***trīduī***, gen. of quality. The Genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective. §345

II **trīduum, -ī**, N. (TRES + DIES), (sc . *spatium)*, *three days' time, three days*

III ***viam***, cognate acc. An intransitive verb often takes the Accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner. This construction is called the Cognate Accusative or Accusative of Kindred Signification. §390

IV ***cum…prōcessisset,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §546

V **prōcēdō, -cessī, -ere, —** (PRŌ + CĒDŌ), *to go before, go forward, advance, proceed, march on, move forward, go forth*; In partic. Milit., *to go or march forwards, to advance*

nūntiātum est eī

=it was announced to him	*~word was brought to him*

Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem[I]

=that Ariovistus // with all his own forces, for <the purpose of> occupying Vesontio	*~that Ariovistus // with all his forces to occupy Vesontio*

quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum

=which is the greatest town of the Sequani	*~which is the largest town of the Sequani*

contendere

=was hastening	*~was hastening*

trīduīque viam ā suīs finibus prōcessisse[II]

=and (he) had went forth (on a) three days' journey from its own territories	*~and had advanced three days' journey from its territories*

When he had proceeded three days' journey, word was brought to him that Ariovistus was hastening with all his forces to seize on Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani, and had advanced three days' journey from its territories.

I ***ad occupandum Vesontiōnem,*** acc. of the gerundive expressing purpose. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

II ***Ariovistum…contendere…prōcessisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *nūntiātum est.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

I.XXXVIII.II

ID NE ACCIDERET, MAGNO OPERE SIBI PRÆCAVENDVM CÆSAR EXISTIMABAT.

Id nē accideret[III]

=lest it should happen *~lest this should happen*

magno opere sibi[II] præcavendum [esse][III IV]

=that it is <having> to be heeded with great labor by him *~that he ought to take the greatest precautions*

Cæsar exīstimābat

=Cæsar was thinking *~Cæsar thought*

Cæsar thought that he ought to take the greatest precautions lest this should happen.

III ***nē accideret,*** neg. clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

II ***sibi***, dat. of agent. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests. §374

III **præcaveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautus** (PRÆ + CAVEŌ), *to take care, take heed, use precaution, be on one's guard, beware*; Neut., *to take care* or *heed, to use precaution, to be on one's guard, to beware*

IV ***magno opere sibi præcavendum [esse]***, fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimābat.* (See chart §196) & §580

I.XXXVIII.III

NAMQVE OMNIVM RERVM QVÆ AD BELLVM VSVI ERANT SVMMA ERAT IN EO OPPIDO FACVLTAS; IDQVE NATVRA LOCI SIC MVNIEBATVR VT MAGNAM AD DVCENDVM BELLVM DARET FACVLTATEM, PROPTEREA QVOD FLVMEN DVBIS VT CIRCINO CIRCVMDVCTVM PÆNE TOTVM OPPIDVM CINGIT; RELIQVVM SPATIVM, QVOD EST NON AMPLIVS PEDVM MILLE SESCENTORVM, QVA FLVMEN INTERMITTIT, MONS CONTINET MAGNA ALTITVDINE, ITA VT RADICES MONTIS EX VTRAQVE PARTE RIPÆ FLVMINIS CONTINGANT, HVNC MVRVS CIRCVMDATVS ARCEM EFFICIT ET CVM OPPIDO CONIVNGIT.

Namque omnium rērum

=for // of all the supplies

~for // of every thing

quæ ad bellum ūsuī[I] [II] erant

=(the supplies) which were for used <with regards> to war

~which was serviceable for war

summa erat in eō oppidō facultās

=the best facility was in that town

~there was in that town a most ample supply

I ***ūsuī***, dat. sg. of *ūsus*; dat. of service to *erant*

II **ūsus, -ūs**, M. (AV-), *use, practice, employment, exercise, enjoyment*

idque nātūrā[I] locī sīc[II] mūniēbātur[III]

=and it was so fortified by <means of> the nature of the place

~and so fortified was it by the nature of the ground

ut magnam ad dūcendum[IV] bellum daret[V] facultātem

=that it gave a great facility for <the purpose of> leading war

~as to afford a great facility for protracting the war

propterea quod flūmen Dūbis[VI]

=on account of which because the river Doubs

~inasmuch as the river Doubs

ut circinō[VII] [VIII] circumductum[IX] pæne tōtum oppidum cingit[X]

=as if <having been> encircled by <means of> a pair of compasses, it (the river Doubs) nearly encircles the entire town

~almost surrounds the whole town, as though it were traced round it with a pair of compasses

I ***nātūrā***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II **sīc**, ADV., Referring to something done or pointed out by the speaker, *thus, in this way, as I do, as you see* (colloq.); Referring to what precedes, *so, thus, in this manner, in such a manner, in the same way* or *manner, in like manner, likewise*—With a clause of deg., *to such a degree, so, so far*

III **mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum** (MŒNIA), *to wall, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect, secure, strengthen*

IV ***ad dūcendum bellum,*** acc. of the gerundive expressing purpose. §506

V ***ut…daret,*** clause of result. The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534). §536

VI **Dubis, -is,** M., a river in Gaul, tributary of the Arar (Saône), now the *Douba*

VII ***circinō***, abl. of means. §409

VIII **circinus, -ī**, M., *A pair of compasses*

IX **circumdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ctus** (CIRCUM + DŪCŌ), *to lead around, draw around*

X **cingō, -ere, -xī, -īnctus**, *to go around, surround, encompass, environ, gird, wreathe, crown*; Of places, *to surround, encircle, invest, enclose*

reliquum spatium

=the remaining space *~in the remaining space*

quod est nōn amplius pedum mille sescentōrum[I]

=which is not more than a thousand (and) six-hundred of feet *~which is not more than 1600 feet*

quā[II] flumen intermittit

=on which side the river leaves off *~where the river leaves an interval*

mōns continet magnā altitūdine[III]

=a mountain with great altitude encloses *~a mountain of great height shuts*

I ***pedum mille sescentōrum,*** gen. of quality.. §345 & The comparative may be followed by quam, than. When quam is used, the two things compared are put in the same case: After the comparatives plūs, minus, amplius, longius, without quam, a word of measure or number is often used with no change in its case. §407iii

II **quā**, ADV. (ABL. FEM. OF QUI), of place, *on which side, at which place, in what direction, where, by what way*

III ***magnā altitūdine,*** abl. of quality. The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality. §415

ita ut rādīcēs[I] montis ex utrāque parte rīpæ flūminis contingant[II] [III]

=in such a manner that the roots ~~of (that) mountain~~ reach from either part of the bank of the river

~in such a manner that the roots of that mountain extend to the river's bank on either side

hunc [montem] mūrus circumdatus[IV] arcem[V] efficit[VI]

=(furthermore), a wall, <having been> placed around (it), makes this [mountain] a fortress

~a wall thrown around it makes a citadel of this [mountain]

et cum oppidō coniungit

=and connects (it) with the town

~and connects it with the town

I **rādīx, -īcis**, F. (RAD-), *a root; radish;* Trans. In pl. *The root*, i.e. *the lower part* of an object, *the foot* of a hill, mountain, etc.

II **contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus** (COM- + TANGO), *to touch, reach, take hold of, seize; To touch, adjoin, border on, reach, extend to*

III ***ut…contingant,*** clause of res. The relative clause of Characteristic with the Subjunctive is a development peculiar to Latin. A relative clause in the Indicative merely states something as a fact which is true of the antecedent; a characteristic clause (in the Subjunctive) defines the antecedent as a person or thing of such a character that the statement made is true of him or it and of all others belonging to the same class. Thus,— nōn potest exercitum is continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn continet (indicative) means simply, that commander who does not (as a fact) restrain himself cannot restrain his army; whereas nōn potest exercitum is continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn contineat (subjunctive) would mean, that commander who is not such a man as to restrain himself, etc., that is, who is not characterized by self-restraint. §534

IV **circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus** (CIRCUM + DŌ), *to place around, cause to surround, set around*

V **arx, arcis**, F. (ARC-), *a castle, citadel, fortress, stronghold*

VI **efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (EX + FACIO), *to make out, work out, bring to pass, bring about, effect, cause, produce, make, form, execute, finish, complete, accomplish*

For there was in that town a most ample supply of every thing which was serviceable for war; and so fortified was it by the nature of the ground, as to afford a great facility for protracting the war, inasmuch as the river Doubs almost surrounds the whole town, as though it were traced round it with a pair of compasses. A mountain of great height shuts in the remaining space, which is not more than 600 feet, where the river leaves a gap, in such a manner that the roots of that mountain extend to the river's bank on either side. A wall thrown around it makes a citadel of this [mountain], and connects it with the town.

I.XXXVIII.IV

HVC CÆSAR MAGNIS NOCTVRNIS DIVRNISQVE ITINERIBVS CONTENDIT, OCCVPATOQVE OPPIDO IBI PRÆSIDIVM COLLOCAT.

hūc[I] Cæsar magnīs nocturnīs[II] diurnīsque[III] itineribus[IV] contendit

=to this place, Cæsar hastens by <means of> great marches by night and by day

~hither Cæsar hastens by forced marches by night and day

occupātōque oppidō[V]

=and, with the town <having been> occupied

~and, after having seized the town

ibi præsidium collocat

=he places together a defence there

~stations a garrison there

Hither Cæsar hastens by forced marches by night and day, and, after having seized the town, stations a garrison there.

I **hūc**, ADV. (HO- OF HIC, + -CE), *to this place, hither*

II **nocturnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NOX), *of night, by night, nocturnal*

III **diurnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (DIV-), *of the day, by day; Daily, of one day, of each day*

IV ***magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus,*** abl. of means. §409

V ***occupātōque oppidō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

I.XXXIX

Panic seizes Cæsar's army.

I.XXXIX.I

DVM PAVCOS DIES AD VESONTIONEM REI FRVMENTARIÆ COMMEATVSQVE CAVSA MORATVR, EX PERCONTATIONE NOSTRORVM VOCIBVSQVE GALLORVM AC MERCATORVM, QVI INGENTI MAGNITVDINE CORPORVM GERMANOS, INCREDIBILI VIRTVTE ATQVE EXERCITATIONE IN ARMIS ESSE PRÆDICABANT (SÆPE NVMERO SESE CVM HIS CONGRESSOS NE VVLTVM QVIDEM ATQVE ACIEM OCVLORVM DICEBANT FERRE POTVISSE), TANTVS SVBITO TIMOR OMNEM EXERCITVM OCCVPAVIT VT NON MEDIOCRITER OMNIVM MENTES ANIMOSQVE PERTVRBARET.

Dum paucōs diēs[I] ad Vesontiōnem[II] reī frūmentāriæ commeātūsque[III] causā[IV] morātur[V]

=while he is delaying for a few days at Vesontio, on account of the grain situation and supplies of war	*~while he was tarrying a few days at Vesontio, on account of corn and provisions*

ex percontātiōne[VI] nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum

=from the (persistant) questioning of our men and the speeches of the Gauls and of the traders	*~from the inquiries of our men and the reports of the Gauls and traders*

quī

=(those men) who	*~who*

I ***paucōs diēs,*** acc. of time. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §423

II **Vesontiō, -ōnis,** M., chief city of the Sequanians, on the Dubis (Doubs) river, now *Besançon*

III ***reī frūmentāriæ commeātūsque,*** gen. with *causā.* Peculiar Genitive constructions are the following: The genitive is often used with the ablatives causā, grātiā, for the sake of; ergō, because of; and the indeclinable īnstar, like; also with prīdiē, the day before; postrīdiē, the day after; tenus, as far as. §359ii

IV ***causā***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. iii. The ablatives causā and grātiā, for the sake of, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement. §404iii

V ***dum…morātur,*** *dum* clause. Dum, while, regularly takes the Present Indicative to denote continued action in past time. In translating, the English Imperfect must generally be used. §556

VI **percontātiō, -ōnis**, F. (PERCONTOR), *a persistent asking, questioning, inquiry*

ingentī[I] magnitūdine[II] corporum Germānōs incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne[III] in armīs esse[IV]

=that the Germans are of huge size of bodies, with incredible valor and practice in arms

~that the Germans were men of huge stature, of incredible valor and practice in arms

prædicābant[V]

=they boasted

~asserted

sæpe numerō[VI] sēsē cum his congressōs

=that (those men,) often in <respect to> a number contended with these men

~that, frequently, they, on encountering them

nē vultum[VII] quidem atque aciem oculōrum

=not // even (their) countenance, and the sharpness of (their) eyes

~not // even their expression, and the fierceness of their eyes

I ***ingentī***, abl. sg. f.

II **māgnitūdō, -inis**, F. (MATNUS), *greatness, size, bulk, magnitude*

III ***ingentī magnitūdine…incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne,*** abl. of quality. The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality. §415

IV ***Germānōs…esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *prædicābant.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

V **prædicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (PRÆ + DICŌ), *to make known by proclamation, announce, publish, proclaim; To make known, announce, proclaim, herald, relate, declare openly*

VI The Ablative of Specification (answering the question, in respect to what?) is used with Verbs and Adjectives and the Adverb sæpe; as, *cum virtute omnibus præstarent, since they surpassed all in valor* (I.II); *Sueba natioue, a Sueban by birth* (I.LIII); *numero ad duodecim, about twelve in number*, Lit. *in number about twelve* (I.V); *sæpe numero, frequently*, Lit. *often in respect to number* (I.XXXIII)

VII **vultus, -ūs**, M., *an expression of countenance, the countenance, visage*, as to features and expression; hence, often to be translated by *features, looks, air, mien, expression, aspect*

dīcēbant

=they said *~said*

ferre potuisse[I]

=that (they) had // been able to bear *~that they had // been able to bear*

tantus subitō[II] timor omnem exercitum occupāvit

=so great a fear suddenly seized the whole army *~so great a panic suddenly took possession of the whole army*

ut non mediocriter[III] [IV] omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret[V] [VI]

=as to, not moderately, disturb the minds and feelings of all men *~as to discompose the minds and hearts of all in no moderate degree*

While he is tarrying a few days at Vesontio, on account of corn and provisions; from the inquiries of our men and the reports of the Gauls and traders (who asserted that the Germans were men of huge stature, of incredible valor and practice in arms-that oftentimes they, on encountering them, could not bear even their countenance, and the fierceness of their eyes)-so great a panic on a sudden seized the whole army, as to discompose the minds and spirits of all in no slight degree.

I ***sēsē…potuisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dīcēbant.* §580

II **subitō**, ADV. (SUBITUS), *suddenly, immediately, unexpectedly, at once, off-hand*

III **mediocriter**, ADV. (MEDIOCRIS), *moderately, tolerably, ordinarily, not very, not remarkably, slightly, somewhat; non mediocriter, in no moderate degree*

IV **mēns, mentis**, F. (MAN-), *the mind, disposition, feeling, character, heart, soul*

V **perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (PER + TURBŌ), *to confuse, disturb, confound, throw into disorder*; Fig., *to disturb, discompose, embarrass, confound*

VI ***ut…perturbāret,*** clause of result. The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534). §536

I.XXXIX.II

HIC PRIMVM ORTVS EST A TRIBVNIS MILITVM, PRÆFECTIS, RELIQVISQVE QVI EX VRBE AMICITIÆ CAVSA CÆSAREM SECVTI NON MAGNVM IN RE MILITARI VSVM HABEBANT; QVORVM ALIVS ALIA CAVSA INLATA QVAM SIBI AD PROFICISCENDVM NECESSARIAM ESSE DICERET, PETEBAT VT EIVS VOLVNTATE DISCEDERE LICERET; NON NVLLI PVDORE ADDVCTI, VT TIMORIS SVSPICIONEM VITARENT, REMANEBANT.

Hic prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, præfectīs[I], reliquīsque[II]

=this (fear) first arose from the tribunes of the soldiers, from the prefects, and from the remaining men

~this first arose from the tribunes of the soldiers, the prefects and the rest

quī ex urbe[III] amīcitiæ[IV] causā[V] Cæsarem secūtī non magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant

=(those men) who, having followed Cæsar out from the city (Rome), for the sake of friendship were having no great use in a military thing

~who followed Cæsar from the city (Rome) from motives of friendship, had no great experience in military affairs

quōrum alius

=some of which men

~some of them

I **præfectus, ī**, M. (P. OF PRÆFICIO), *an overseer, director, superintendent*

II ***ā tribūnīs…præfectīs…reliquīs,*** abl. of source. §404

III ***ex urbe,*** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

IV ***amīcitiæ***, gen. with *causā.* §359c

V ***causā***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. iii. The ablatives causā and grātiā, for the sake of, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement. §404c

aliā causā inlātā[I]

=with one cause <having been> brought forward (e.g. presented) another, another (with another cause)	*~alleging one reason, another, another reason*

quam

=which	*~which*

sibi ad proficīscendum[II] necessāriam esse[III]

=that was necessary for them for <purpose of> departing	*~that it was necessary for them to depart*

dīceret[IV]

=(each) said	*~said*

petēbat

=sought	*~requested*

ut eius voluntāte[V] discēdere licēret[VI] [VII]

=that it be allowed to depart by <means of> his permission	*~that by his consent they might be allowed to withdraw*

I ***aliā causā illātā,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

II ***ad proficīscendum,*** *ad* with acc. of the gerund expressing purpose. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

III ***necessāriam esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dīceret.* §580

IV ***quam…dīceret,*** rel. clause of char. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined. §535

V ***voluntāte***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

VI ***licēret***, imper., as. *it be allowed*

VII ***ut…licēret,*** clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

nōn nūllī pudōre[I] [II] adductī

=not no one, <having been> led by <means of> shame

~some, influenced by shame

ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent[III]

=<in order> that they might avoid the suspicion of cowardice

~to avoid the suspicion of cowardice

remanēbant

=remained

~stayed behind

This first arose from the tribunes of the soldiers, the prefects and the rest, who, having followed Cæsar from the city [Rome] from motives of friendship, had no great experience in military affairs. And alleging, some of them one reason, some another, which they said made it necessary for them to depart, they requested that by his consent they might be allowed to withdraw; some, influenced by shame, stayed behind in order that they might avoid the suspicion of cowardice.

I.XXXIX.III

HI NEQVE VVLTVM FINGERE NEQVE INTERDVM LACRIMAS TENERE POTERANT: ABDITI IN TABERNACVLIS AVT SVVM FATVM QVEREBANTVR AVT CVM FAMILIARIBVS SVIS COMMVNE PERICVLVM MISERABANTVR.

Hī neque vultum fingere[IV]

=these men (were) neither (able) to feign (their) countenance

~these men were neither able to alter their countenance

I ***pudōre***, abl. of means. §409

II **pudor, -ōris**, M. (PV-), *a shrinking from blame, desire of approval, shame, shamefastness, modesty, decency, propriety*

III ***ut…vītārent,*** clause of purpose. §531

IV **fingō, -ere, finxī, fictus** (FIG-), *to touch, handle, stroke, touch gently;* Of the countenance, *to alter, change, put on, feign*

neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant

=nor, sometimes were they able to hold back tears

~nor even sometimes check their tears

abditī in tabernāculīs[I] aut suum fātum[II] querēbantur

=(these men,) <having been> hidden in (their) tents, either were bewailing their own fate

~but hidden in their tents, either bewailed their fate

aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur[III]

=or with their own comrades they were lamenting the general danger

~or deplored with their comrades the general danger

These could neither compose their countenance, nor even sometimes check their tears: but hidden in their tents, either bewailed their fate, or deplored with their comrades the general danger.

I.XXXIX.IV

VVLGO TOTIS CASTRIS TESTAMENTA OBSIGNABANTVR.

Vulgō tōtīs castrīs[IV] testāmenta[V] obsignābantur

=testaments were being sealed en masse in the whole camp

~wills were sealed universally throughout the whole camp

Wills were sealed universally throughout the whole camp.

I **tabernāculum, -ī**, N. (TABERNA), *a tent*

II **fātum, -ī**, N., *an utterance, prophetic declaration, oracle, prediction*; That which is *ordained, destiny, fate*

III **miseror, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (MISER), *to lament, deplore, commiserate*

IV ***tōtīs castrīs,*** abl. of place where. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §429

V **testāmentum, -ī**, N. (TESTOR), *a last will, testament, will*

I.XXXIX.V

HORVM VOCIBVS AC TIMORE PAVLATIM ETIAM EI QVI MAGNVM IN CASTRIS VSVM HABEBANT, MILITES CENTVRIONESQVE QVIQVE EQVITATVI PRÆERANT, PERTVRBABANTVR.

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre[I] paulātim etiam eī

=by their voices and fear, little and little, even for him

~by the cries and cowardice of these men, gradually, even for him

quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque[II]

=(those men) who had great experience in the camp: (i.e.) the soldiers and centurions

~even those who possessed great experience in the camp, both soldiers and centurions

quīque equitātuī[III] præerant

=and (those) (the decurions) who presided over the cavalry

~and those [the decurions] who were in command of the cavalry

perturbābantur

=were perturbed

~were disconcerted

By the expressions and cowardice of these men, even those who possessed great experience in the camp, both soldiers and centurions, and those [the decurions] who were in command of the cavalry, were gradually disconcerted.

I ***vōcibus ac timōre,*** abl. of means. §409

II **centuriō, -ōnis**, M. (CENTURIA), *a commander of a century, captain, centurion* (next in rank to the tribunes of the legion)

III ***equitātuī***, dat. with comp. v. *præerant.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

I.XXXIX.VI

QVI SE EX HIS MINVS TIMIDOS EXISTIMARI VOLEBANT, NON SE HOSTEM VERERI, SED ANGVSTIAS ITINERIS ET MAGNITVDINEM SILVARVM QVÆ INTERCEDERENT INTER IPSOS ATQVE ARIOVISTVM, AVT REM FRVMENTARIAM, VT SATIS COMMODE SVPPORTARI POSSET, TIMERE DICEBANT.

Quī

=*(those men) who*	~*those men*

sē

=*themselves*	~*themselves*

ex hīs

=*of them*	~*of them*

minus timidōs[I] [II]

=*(as) less fearful*	~*as less alarmed*

exīstimārī volēbant

=*wished to be estimated*	~*wished to be considered*

nōn sē hostem verērī[III] [IV]

=*that they were not fearing the enemy*	~*that they did not dread the enemy*

I **timidus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TEM-), *fearful, afraid, faint-hearted, cowardly, timid*

II ***sē…timidōs,*** indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimārī.* §580

III **vereor, -ērī, -itus, —** DEP. (VEL-), *to reverence, revere, respect, stand in awe; To fear, be afraid, dread, apprehend, shrink*

IV ***sē…verērī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dīcēbant.* §580

sed angustiās itineris et magnitudinem silvārum[I]

=but (were fearing) the narrowness of the roads and the vastness of the forests | *~but feared the narrowness of the roads and the vastness of the forests*

quæ intercēderent[II] inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum

=which came between themselves and Ariovistus | *~which lay between them and Ariovistus*

aut rem frūmentāriam

=or // the corn supply | *~or // else the supplies*

ut satis commodē supportārī[III] posset[IV]

=/(that) (they) feared/ that /the corn supply/ was not able to be brought up readily enough | *~that // could not be brought up readily enough*

timēre[V]

=/they said/ that (they) feared | *~feared*

dicēbant

=they said | *~said*

Such of them as wished to be considered less alarmed, said that they did not dread the enemy, but feared the narrowness of the roads and the vastness of the forests which lay between them and Ariovistus, or else that the supplies could not be brought up readily enough.

I **silva, -æ**, F. (SER-), *a wood, forest, woodland*

II ***quæ…intercēderent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

III **supportō, -āre, -āvī, —** (SUB + PORTŌ), *to convey, bring up, bring forward, conduct*

IV ***ut…posset,*** neg. fear clause. Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive, with nē affirmative and nē nōn or ut negative. §564

V ***angustiās…rem…timēre,*** indir. disc. §580

I.XXXIX.VII

NON NVLLI ETIAM CÆSARI NVNTIABANT, CVM CASTRA MOVERI AC SIGNA FERRI IVSSISSET, NON FORE DICTO AVDIENTES MILITES NEQVE PROPTER TIMOREM SIGNA LATVROS.

Nōn nūllī etiam Cæsarī nūntiābant

=not no one even had declared to Cæsar	*~some even declared to Cæsar*

cum

=when	*~when*

castra movērī

=the camp to be moved	*~for the camp to be moved*

ac signa ferrī[I]

=and to carry the standards (forward)	*~and the troops to advance*

iussisset[II]

=he should have ordered	*~he gave orders*

nōn fore dictō[III] [IV] audientēs[V] mīlitēs

=that the soldiers would not obey the command	*~the soldiers would not obey the command*

I ***castra movērī ac signa ferrī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *iussisset.* §580

II ***cum…iussisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III **dictum, -ī**, N. (DIC-), *something said, a saying, word, assertion, remark; An order, command*

IV ***dictō***, dat. with special v. *audientēs.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

V **audiō, -īre, -īvī** OR **-iī, -ītus** (AV-), *to hear; To hear, to listen to, to obey, heed*; only with acc., but also With Dat.

neque propter timōrem signa[I] lātūrōs [esse][II]

=nor, on account of fear, would they carry forward the standards

~nor advance in consequence of their fear

Some even declared to Cæsar, that when he gave orders for the camp to be moved and the troops to advance, the soldiers would not be obedient to the command, nor advance in consequence of their fear.

I ***signa***, dir. obj. of *lātūrōs [esse]*

II ***fore…mīlitēs…lātūrōs,*** indir. disc. dependent on *nūntiābant.* §580

I.XL

Cæsar employs a persuasive address.

I.XL.I

HÆC CVM ANIMADVERTISSET, CONVOCATO CONSILIO, OMNIVMQVE ORDINVM AD ID CONSILIVM ADHIBITIS CENTVRIONIBVS, VEHEMENTER EOS INCVSAVIT: PRIMVM, QVOD AVT QVAM IN PARTEM AVT QVO CONSILIO DVCERENTVR SIBI QVÆRENDVM AVT COGITANDVM PVTARENT.

Hæc cum animadvertisset[I]

=when he (Cæsar) had directed (his) mind to these things *~when Cæsar observed these things*

convocātō cōnsiliō[II]

=with council <having been> called *~having called a council*

I ***cum animadvertisset,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

II ***cum animadvertisset,*** *cum* clause. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

omniumque ōrdinum[I] ad id cōnsilium adhibitis centuriōnibus[II]

=and with the centurions of all the companies <having been> summoned to that council

~and summoned to it the centurions of all the companies

vehementer[III] eōs incūsāvit[IV]

=he severely accused those men

~he severely reprimanded them

primum, quod

=firstly, because

~particularly, for

aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō[V] dūcerentur[VI]

=either in which part or by <means of> which council they might be led

~either in what direction they were marching, or with what object

sibi[VII] quærendum [esse] aut cōgitandum [esse][VIII]

=that it is <having to be> asked and <having to be> considered by them

~that they must ask and consider

I **ōrdō, -inis**, M. (OL-), *a row, line, series, order, rank*

II ***adhibitīs centuriōnibus,*** abl. abs. §420

III **vehementer**, ADV. (VEHEMENS), *eagerly, impetuously, ardently, violently, earnestly, vehemently*

IV **incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (IN + CAUSA), *to accuse, complain of, find fault with, blame*

V ***cōnsiliō***, abl. of means, The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

VI ***quam in partem…quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

VII ***sibi***, dat. of agent. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests. §374

VIII ***quærendum…cōgitandum,*** fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. dependent on *putārent.* (See chart §196) & In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

putārent[IX]

=they supposed *~supposing*

When Cæsar observed these things, having called a council, and summoned to it the centurions of all the companies, he severely reprimanded them, *"particularly, for supposing that it belonged to them to inquire or conjecture, either in what direction they were marching, or with what object.*

I.XL.II

ARIOVISTVM, SE CONSVLE, CVPIDISSIME POPVLI ROMANI AMICITIAM APPETISSE: CVR HVNC TAM TEMERE QVISQVAM AB OFFICIO DISCESSVRVM IVDICARET?

"ARIOVISTUS ME CONSULE ... POPULI ROMANI AMICITIAM ADPETIIT; CUR HUNC ... QUISQUAM AB OFFICIO DISCESSURUM IUDICET?"

Ariovistum

=that Ariovistus *~that Ariovistus*

sē cōnsule[II]

=with himself <being> consul *~during his [Cæsar's] consulship [59 B.C.]*

IX ***quod…putārent,*** *quod* clause given on the authority of another. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. §540

II ***sē cōnsule,*** abl. abs. §420

cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse[I] [II]

=had most desirously strove for the friendship of the Roman people

~had most anxiously sought after the friendship of the Roman people

cūr

=why

~why

hunc tam temerē[III] quisquam ab officiō[IV] [V] discessūrum [esse][VI]

=anyone // that this man would so heedlessly depart from (his) duty?

~anyone // that he would so rashly depart from his duty?

iūdicāret[VII]

=/why/ should /anyone/ think

~should // judge

That Ariovistus, during his [Cæsar's] consulship [59 B.C.], had most anxiously sought after the friendship of the Roman people; why should any one judge that he would so rashly depart from his duty?

I **appetō, -ere, -īvī** OR **-iī, ītus** (AD + PETO), Trans, *to strive for, reach after, grasp at*; Fig., *to strive after, long for, desire, seek, court*

II ***Ariovistum…appetīsse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *incūsāvit.* §580

III **temerē**, ADV. (ETY. IN THE DARKNESS), *by chance, by accident, at random, without design, casually, fortuitously, rashly, heedlessly, thoughtlessly, inconsiderately, indiscreetly*

IV ***ab officiō,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

V **officium, -ī**, N. (OPUS + FAC-), *a service, kindness, favor, courtesy*; In gen., *an obligatory service, an obligation, duty, function, part, office*

VI ***hunc…discessūrum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *iūdicārent.* A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

VII ***cūr…iūdicārent*** deliberative subj. in indir. disc. The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) doubt, indignation, or (2) an impossibility of the thing's being done. The negative is nōn. §444 & A Deliberative Subjunctive (§444) in the Direct Discourse is always retained in the Indirect. §587

I.XL.III

SIBI QVIDEM PERSVADERI COGNITIS SVIS POSTVLATIS ATQVE ÆQVITATE CONDICIONVM PERSPECTA EVM NEQVE SVAM NEQVE POPVLI ROMANI GRATIAM REPVDIATVRVM.

“MIHI QUIDEM PERSUADETUR, COGNITIS MEIS POSTULATIS ... EUM NEQUE MEAM NEQUE POPULI ROMANI GRATIAM REPUDIATURUM.”

Sibi quidem persuādērī[I]

=that he, for his part, was persuaded *~he, for his part, was persuaded*

cognitīs suīs postulātīs[II] atque æquitāte[III] condiciōnum perspectā[IV V]

=with his own demands <having been> known and with the fairness of the conditions <having been> looked into *~that, when his demands were known and the fairness of the terms considered*

eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum [esse][VI VII]

=he would reject neither his own nor the favor of the Roman people *~he would reject neither his nor the Roman people's favor*

He for his part was persuaded, that, when his demands were known and the fairness of the terms considered, he would reject neither his nor the Roman people's favor.

I ***sibi quidem persuādērī***, indir. disc. dependent on *incūsāvit.* §580

II ***cognitīs suīs postulātīs,*** abl. abs. §420

III **æquitās, -ātis**, F. (ÆQUUS), *uniformity, evenness; with animi, calmness, repose, equability, equanimity; Equity, fairness, humanity, kindness*

IV ***æquitāte…perspectā,*** abl. abs. §420

V **perspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus** (SPEC-), *to look through, look into, look at, see through*; Transf., *to look closely at, to view, examine, inspect*

VI ***eum…repudiātūrum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *persuādērī.* §580

VII **repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (REPUDIUM), *to cast off, put away, reject*

I.XL.IV

QVOD SI FVRORE ATQVE AMENTIA IMPVLSVS BELLVM INTVLISSET, QVID TANDEM VERERENTVR? AVT CVR DE SVA VIRTVTE AVT DE IPSIVS DILIGENTIA DESPERARENT?

"QUOD SI FURORE ... IMPULSUS BELLUM INTULERIT, QUID TANDEM VEREAMINI? AUT CUR DE VESTRA VIRTUTE AUT DE MEA DILIGENTIA DESPERETIS?"

Quod sī furōre[I] atque āmentiā[II] [III] impulsus[IV] bellum intulisset[V]

=but, if he, <having been> driven by <means of> rage or madness, should have brought on war

~but even if, driven on by rage and madness, he should make war upon them

quid tandem verērentur[VI]

=what, then, should they fear?

~what, pray, were they afraid of?

I **furor, -ōris**, M. (FURO), *a raving, rage, madness, fury, passion*

II **āmentia, -æ**, F. (AMENS), *want of reason, madness, senselessness*

III ***furōre atque āmentiā,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

IV **impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus** (IN + PELLŌ), *To strike against, push, drive, smite, strike, reach*; Trop. *To move to* a thing; *to impel, incite, urge*; Esp., *to instigate, stimulate, persuade*—constr. usu. with *aliquem, in* or *ad aliquid* and *ut*

V ***si…intulisset,*** fut. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

VI ***quid…verērentur,*** deliberative subj. in indir. disc. §444 & §587

aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā[I] dēspērārent[II]

=(or) why should they despair either from their own valour (i.e., the camp followers) or his own (Cæsar's) diligence?

~or why should they despair either of their own valor or of his zeal?

But even if, driven on by rage and madness, he should make war upon them, what after all were they afraid of?-or why should they despair either of their own valor or of his zeal?

I.XL.V

FACTVM EIVS HOSTIS PERICVLVM PATRVM NOSTRORVM MEMORIA, CIMBRIS ET TEVTONIS A C. MARIO PVLSIS, CVM NON MINOREM LAVDEM EXERCITVS QVAM IPSE IMPERATOR MERITVS VIDEBATVR; FACTVM ETIAM NVPER IN ITALIA SERVILI TVMVLTV, QVOS TAMEN ALIQVID VSVS AC DISCIPLINA QVÆ A NOBIS ACCEPISSENT SVBLEVARENT.

"FACTUM (EST) EIUS HOSTIS PERICULUM ... ; FACTUM (EST) ETIAM NUPER IN ITALIA SERVILI TUMULTU, QUOS TAMEN ALIQUID USUS AC DISCIPLINE QUAM A NOBIS ACCEPERANT SUBLEVABANT."

Factum [esse][III] eius hostis perīculum[IV] patrum nostrōrum memoriā[V]

=a trial was made of this enemy in memory of our fathers

~of that enemy a trial had been made within our fathers' recollection

I **dīligentia, -æ**, F. (DILIGENS), *attentiveness, earnestness, diligence, industry, assiduity, care, faithfulness*

II ***cūr…dēspērārent,*** deliberative subj. in indir. disc. §444 & §587

III ***Factum [esse] ... memoriā***, indir. disc. §580

IV ***factum…perīculum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *incūsāvit.* §580

V ***memoriā***, abl. of time within which. Special constructions of time are the following: The Ablative of time within which sometimes takes in, and the Accusative of time how long per, for greater precision. §424

Cimbrīs[I] et Teutonīs[II] ā C[aiō] Mariō[III] [IV] pulsīs[V]

=when the Cimbri and the Teutones <having been> repulsed by C[aius] Marius

~when, on the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutones by Caius Marius

cum non minōrem laudem[VI] exercitus quam ipse imperātor[VII] meritus[VIII] [esse] vidēbātur[IX]

=the army seemed that it merited no less praise than the commander himself

~the army was regarded as having deserved no less praise than their commander himself

[ēius hostis perīculum] factum [esse] etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī tumultū[X] [XI]

=that [a trial of this enemy] was made recently, too, in Italy, during a tumult of the slaves

~it had been made lately, too, in Italy, during the rebellion of the slaves

I **Cimbrī, -ōrum,** M. pl., *Cimbrians, Cimbro,* a Germanic people that joined with the Teutones in the invasion of Gaul

II **Teutonī, -um,** M. pl., *Teutons, Teutoni*

III ***ā C. Mariō,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

IV **Marius, -ī,** M., a Roman gentile name—Esp. Gaius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and the Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion

V ***Cimbrīs et Teutonīs…pulsīs,*** abl. abs. §420

VI **laus, laudis**, F. (CLV-), *praise, commendation, glory, fame, renown, esteem*

VII **imperātor, -ōris**, M. (IMPERO), *a commander-in-chief, general*

VIII ***meritus***, ppp. of *mereor*

IX ***cum…vidēbātur,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum, when, and some past tense of the Indicative dates or defines the time at which the action of the main verb occurred. §545

X **tumultus, -ūs**, *an uproar, bustle, commotion, disturbance, disorder, tumult, panic; A national peril, social disturbance, general alarm, civil war, insurrection, rebellion*

XI ***tumultū***, abl. of time when. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

quōs tamen aliquid[I] ūsus ac disciplīna[II]

=(those slaves) whom, however, the experience and training // in some way

~whom, however, the experience and training // somewhat

quæ ā nōbīs accēpissent[III]

=/the experience and training/ which they had received from us

~which they had received from us

sublevārent[IV V]

=assisted /in some way/

~assisted

Of that enemy a trial had been made within our fathers' recollection, when, on the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutones by Caius Marius, the army was regarded as having deserved no less praise than their commander himself. It had been made lately, too, in Italy, during the rebellion of the slaves, whom, however, the experience and training which they had received from us, assisted in some respect.

I **aliqui**, ADV. (PROP. ABL. = ALIQUO MODO), *in some way, somehow*; The forms *aliqua*, Neut. pl., and *aliquam*, acc., and *aliquā*, abl., used adverbially, may also be referred to the adj. *ali-qui, aliqua, aliquod*; **aliquamdiū** (= *aliquam* + *diū*), adv., *somewhat long, for a while*

II **disciplīna, -æ**, F. (DISCIPULUS), *instruction, tuition, teaching, training, education*; Meton. (*causa pro effectu*), all that is taught in the way of instruction, whether with reference to single circumstances of life, or to science, art, morals, politics, etc., *learning, knowledge, science, discipline*

III ***quæ…accēpissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV **sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (SUB + LEVŌ), *to lift from beneath, raise up, hold up, support; To sustain, support, assist, encourage, console, relieve*

V ***quōs…sublevārent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

I.XL.VI

EX QVO IVDICARI POSSE QVANTVM HABERET IN SE BONI CONSTANTIA; PROPTEREA QVOD QVOS ALIQVAMDIV INERMES SINE CAVSA TIMVISSENT HOS POSTEA ARMATOS AC VICTORES SVPERASSENT.

"EX QUO IUDICARI POTEST QUANTUM HABEAT IN SE BONI CONSTANTIA, PROPTEREA QUOD, QUOS ... INERMĪS SINE CAUSA TIMUISTIS (TIMUERITIS), HOS POSTEA ARMATOS SUPERAVISTIS."

Ex quō iūdicārī posse[I]

=out from which it is able to be judged *~from which a judgment might be formed*

quantum habēret[II] in sē **bonī**[III] cōnstantia[IV V]

=how much of good (that) constancy might have in itself *~of the advantages which resolution carries with it*

propterea quod

=on that account because *~because*

I ***ex quō iūdicārī posse***, indir. disc. §580

II ***quantum habēret,*** indir. question. §573

III ***bonī***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numbers and words of quantity including the whole of any thing take a case in agreement, and not the part. genitive. So also words denoting a part when only that part is thought of:— nōs omnēs, all of us (we all). [Not omnēs nostrum.] quot sunt hostēs, how many of the enemy are there? multī mīlitēs, many of the soldiers. nēmō Rōmānus, not one Roman. §346e

IV ***cōnstantia***, nom. sg., subj. of *habēret*

V **cōnstantia, -æ**, F. (CONSTANS), *steadiness, firmness, constancy, perseverance*

quōs aliquamdiū inermēs[I] sine causā timuissent[II]

=(those men) whom, (when) unarmed, they had feared for some time without cause

~those whom for some time they had groundlessly dreaded when unarmed

hōs posteā armātōs[III] ac victōrēs superāssent[IV]

=afterward, <having been> armed and victorious, they (the Romans) had surmounted

~they had afterward overcome, when well armed and flushed with success

From which a judgment might be formed of the advantages which resolution carries with it inasmuch as those whom for some time they had groundlessly dreaded when unarmed, they had afterward vanquished, when well armed and flushed with success.

I.XL.VII

DENIQVE HOS ESSE EOSDEM QVIBVSCVM SÆPE NVMERO HELVETII CONGRESSI NON SOLVM IN SVIS SED ETIAM IN ILLORVM FINIBVS PLERVMQVE SVPERARINT, QVI TAMEN PARES ESSE NOSTRO EXERCITVI NON POTVERINT.

"DENIQUE HI SUNT IDEM GERMANI QUIBUSCUM SÆPENUMERO HELVETII CONGRESSI, NON SOLUM IN SUIS SED ETIAM IN ILLORUM FINIBUS, PLERUMQUE SUPERAVERUNT; QUI TAMEN PARES ESSE NOSTRO EXERCITUI NON POTUERUNT."

I **inermis, -e**, ADJ. (IN + ARMA), *unarmed, without weapons, defenceless*

II ***quōs…timuissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III **armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (ARMA), *to furnish with weapons, arm, equip*

IV ***protereā quod…superāssent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

Dēnique[I] hōs esse[II] eōsdem

=at length, that these ~~men~~ are the same men

~to sum up, that these were the same men

quibuscum sæpe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs

=(the same men) with whom the Helvetii, often in <respect to> a number, <having> come together, not only in their own (territories)

~whom the Helvetii, in frequent strifes, not only in their own territories

sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus plērumque[III] superārint[IV]

=but also in their territories (the Germans) and had mostly overcome (them)

~but also in theirs [the German], have generally vanquished

quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī[V] nōn potuerint[VI]

=(and) (those men) whom, nonetheless, are not able to be equals to our army

~and yet can not have been a match for our army

In short, that these were the same men whom the Helvetii, in frequent encounters, not only in their own territories, but also in theirs [the German], have generally vanquished, and yet can not have been a match for our army.

I **dēnique**, ADV. (ETYM. DUB.; PERH. DĒNI, LOCATIVE OF DE, AND QUE.), *and thenceforward, and thereafter, at last, at length, finally, lastly, only, not until*; In a summary or climax, *in a word, in short, in fact, briefly, to sum up, in fine, even, I may say*

II ***hōs esse,*** indir. disc. §580

III **plērus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PLE-), *very many, a very great part, most*; Neut. adv., *plerum* (like *plerumque*, v. *plerusque*), *for the most part, mostly, commonly*

IV ***quibuscum…superārint,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

V **nostrō exercituī**, dat. with adj. *parēs.* Verbs of naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object. §383

VI ***quī…potuerint,*** subordinate clause in indirect disc. §583

I.XL.VIII

SI QVOS ADVERSVM PRŒLIVM ET FVGA GALLORVM COMMOVERET, HOS, SI QVÆRERENT, REPERIRE POSSE DIVTVRNITATE BELLI DEFATIGATIS GALLIS ARIOVISTVM, CVM MVLTOS MENSES CASTRIS SE AC PALVDIBVS TENVISSET NEQVE SVI POTESTATEM FECISSET, DESPERANTES IAM DE PVGNA ET DISPERSOS SVBITO ADORTVM MAGIS RATIONE ET CONSILIO QVAM VIRTVTE VICISSE.

“SI QUOS ADVERSUM PRŒLIUM ... COMMOVET, HI, SI QUÆRENT (QUÆRANT), REPERIRE POSSUNT ... ARIOVISTUM ... DISPERSOS SUBITO ADORTUM, MAGIS RATIONE ... QUAM VIRTUTE VICISSE.”

Sī quōs adversum[I] prœlium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret[II III]

=if an unfavorable battle and the flight of the Gauls should stir up anyone

~if the unsuccessful battle and flight of the Gauls disquieted any

hōs

=these men

~these

sī quærerent[IV]

=if they should inquire

~if they made inquiries

reperīre posse[V]

=(they) would be able to discover

~might discover

I **adversum, -ī**, N., *the opposite direction*; Fig., *opposed, contrary, hostile, adverse, unfavorable, unpropitious*

II ***sī...commovēret,*** simple pres. condition in indir. disc. §589

III **commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus** (COM + MOVEŌ), *To put in violent motion, move, shake, stir*; *To throw into disorder*, physical or mental; *to unbalance, unsettle, shake, disturb*—with abl. or absol.

IV ***sī quærerent,*** simple pres. condition in indir. disc. §589

V ***hōs...posse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *incūsāvit.* §580

diūturnitāte[I] [II] bellī

=that // because of a long duration of war *~by the long duration of the war*

dēfatīgātīs[III] Gallīs[IV]

=with the Gauls <having been> wearied out *~when the Gauls had been tired out*

Ariovistum

=Ariovistus *~Ariovistus*

cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus[V] tenuisset

=after he had for many months held himself in camp and in marshes *~after he had many months kept himself in his camp and in the marshes*

neque suī potestātem fēcisset[VI]

=and had made no opportunity of himself *~and had given no opportunity of fighting with one*

I ***diūturnitāte***, abl. of cause. §404

II **diūturnitās, -ātis**, F. (DIUTURNUS), *length of time, long duration, durability*

III **dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DĒ + FATĪGŌ), *to weary out, tire, fatigue, exhaust*

IV ***dēfatīgātīs Gallīs,*** abl. abs. §420

V **palūs, -ūdis**, F. *a swamp, marsh, morass, bog, fen, pool*

VI ***cum…tenuisset…fēcisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

dēspērantēs iam de pugnā[I] et [eōs] dispersōs[II] subitō adortum[III]

=he (Ariovistus) suddenly attacked the despairing (Gauls) <by reason> of the battle at this time and [those men] <having> scattered

~fell suddenly upon them, by this time despairing of a battle and scattered in all directions

magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse[IV V]

=and (he) (Ariovistus) had conquered more because of stratagem and cunning than because of valor

~and was victorious more through stratagem and cunning than valor

If the unsuccessful battle and flight of the Gauls disquieted any, these, if they made inquiries, might discover that, when the Gauls had been tired out by the long duration of the war, Ariovistus, after he had many months kept himself in his camp and in the marshes, and had given no opportunity for an engagement, fell suddenly upon them, by this time despairing of a battle and scattered in all directions, and was victorious more through stratagem and cunning than valor.

I.XL.IX

CVI RATIONI CONTRA HOMINES BARBAROS ATQVE IMPERITOS LOCVS FVISSET, HAC NE IPSVM QVIDEM SPERARE NOSTROS EXERCITVS CAPI POSSE.

“CUI RATIONI CONTRA HOMINES BARBAROS ... LOCUS FUIT, HAC NE IPSE QUIDEM SPERAT NOSTROS EXERCITUS CAPI POSSE.”

I **pūgna, -æ**, F. (PAC-), *a hand-to-hand fight, fight at close quarters, battle, combat, action, engagement*

II **dispergo, -ere, -si, -sum** (DI + SPERGO), *to scatter on all sides, to scatter about, disperse*

III ***adortum***, perf. dep. part. modifying *Ariovistum*

IV ***vīcisse***, perf. act. inf of *vincō*

V ***Ariovistum…adortum…vīcisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *reperīre.* §580

Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs[VI] locus fuisset

=(but though) for which strategy there might have been room against barbaric and unskilled men

~but though there had been room for such stratagem against savage and unskilled men

hāc[II] nē [Ariovistus] ipsum quidem spērāre[III]

=not even by <means of> (this strategy) [Ariovistus] himself was expecting

~not even [Ariovistus] himself expected

nostrōs exercitūs capī posse[IV]

=that our armies were able to be captured

~that thereby our armies could be entrapped

But though there had been room for such stratagem against savage and unskilled men, not even [Ariovistus] himself expected that thereby our armies could be entrapped.

I.XL.X

QVI SVVM TIMOREM IN REI FRVMENTARIÆ SIMVLATIONEM ANGVSTIASQVE ITINERIS CONFERRENT, FACERE ARROGANTER, CVM AVT DE OFFICIO IMPERATORIS DESPERARE AVT PRÆSCRIBERE VIDERENTVR.

"QUI SUUM TIMOREM IN REI FRUMENTARIÆ SIMULATIONEM ... CONFERUNT FACIUNT ADROGANTER, CUM ... DE OFFICIO IMPERATORIS DESPERARE ... VIDEANTUR (VIDENTUR)."

VI **imperītus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IN + PERĪTUS), *inexperienced, unversed, unfamiliar, not knowing, unacquainted with, unskilled, ignorant*

II ***hāc***, abl. of means. §409

III ***ipsum…spērāre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *incūsāvit.* §580

IV ***nostrōs exercitūs…posse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *spērāre.* §580

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriæ simulātiōnem[I] angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent[II]

=that (those men) who were attributing their own fear in a pretense about the (deficiency of) supplies and the narrowness of the path

~that those who ascribed their fear to a pretense about the [deficiency of] supplies and the narrowness of the roads

facere[III] arroganter[IV]

=are arrogantly doing

~acted presumptuously

cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut præscrībere vidērentur[V]

=as they were seeming either to dispair concerning the office of (their) generals, or to dictate (in place of the general)

~as they seemed either to distrust their general's discharge of his duty, or to dictate to him

That those who ascribed their fear to a pretense about the [deficiency of] supplies and the narrowness of the roads, acted presumptuously, as they seemed either to distrust their general's discharge of his duty, or to dictate to him.

I **simulātiō, -ōnis**, F. (SIMULO), *an assumption, false show, feigning, shamming, pretence, feint, insincerity, deceit, hypocrisy, simulation*

II ***quī…cōnferrent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III ***facere arroganter***, indir. disc. dependent on *incūsāvit.* §580

IV **arrogo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (AR + ROGO), *To ask* or *inquire of one, to question*; ADV., ***arroganter***, *with assumption, arrogantly, haughtily, proudly, insolently*

V ***cum…vidērentur,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

I.XL.XI

HÆC SIBI ESSE CVRÆ; FRVMENTVM SEQVANOS, LEVCOS, LINGONES SVMMINISTRARE, IAMQVE ESSE IN AGRIS FRVMENTA MATVRA; DE ITINERE IPSOS BREVI TEMPORE IVDICATVROS.

“HÆC MIHI SUNT CURÆ; FRUMENTUM SEQUANI, ... SUBMINISTRANT, IAMQUE SUNT ... FRUMENTA MATURA; DE ITINERE (VOS) IPSI ... IUDICABITIS.”

Hæc sibi esse[I] curæ[II] [III]

=that these things are a <source of> concern to him (Cæsar)

~that these things were his concern

frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs[IV], Lingonēs sumministrāre[V] [VI]

=that the Sequani, the Leuci, and the Lingones were to furnish the corn

~that the Sequani, the Leuci, and the Lingones were to furnish the corn

iamque esse[VII] in agris frūmenta mātūra

=and that the corn was already ripe in the fields

~and that it was already ripe in the fields

I ***hæc…esse,*** indir. disc. §580

II **cūra, -æ**, F. (CAV-), *trouble, care, attention, pains, industry, diligence, exertion; Anxiety, solicitude, concern, disquiet, trouble, grief, sorrow*

III ***sibi…cūræ,*** dat. of purpose. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected. §382

IV **Leucī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle

V **sumministrō, -āvī, -trātum, -āre**, *give; furnish; afford; supply*

VI ***frūmentum…sumministrāre,*** indir. disc. §580

VII ***iamque esse ... mātūra, indi disc***, indir. disc. §580

dē itinere ipsōs brevī[I] tempore[II] iūdicātūrōs [esse][III]

=that (those men) would, in a brief time, judge about the path (for) themselves

~that as to the road they would soon be able to judge for themselves

That these things were his concern; that the Sequani, the Leuci, and the Lingones were to furnish the corn; and that it was already ripe in the fields; that as to the road they would soon be able to judge for themselves.

I.XL.XII

QVOD NON FORE DICTO AVDIENTES NEQVE SIGNA LATVRI DICANTVR, NIHIL SE EA RE COMMOVERI; SCIRE ENIM, QVIBVSCVMQVE EXERCITVS DICTO AVDIENS NON FVERIT, AVT MALE RE GESTA FORTVNAM DEFVISSE AVT ALIQVO FACINORE COMPERTO AVARITIAM ESSE CONVICTAM.

"QUOD NON FORE DICTO AUDIENTES ... DICIMINI *(*MORE PROBABLY *dicuntur milites)*, NIHIL (EGO) EA RE COMMOVEOR; SCIO ENIM, QUIBUSCUMQUE EXERCITUS DICTO AUDIENS NON FUERIT, ... AVARITIAM ESSE CONVICTAM."

Quod

=as

~as to

I **brevis, -e**, ADJ. (BREG-), In space and time, *little, of small extent*

II ***brevī tempore,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

III ***ipsōs…iūdicātūrōs,*** indir. disc. §580

nōn fore[I] dictō[II] [III] audientēs

=that the (soldiers) would not be listening to the command	*~that the soldiers would not be obedient to command*

neque signa[IV] lātūrī [esse][V] [VI]

=nor would they bear the standards	*~or advance*

dīcantur[VII]

=(these things) were being said	*~its being reported*

nihil[VIII] sē eā rē[IX] commovērī[X]

=that he was moved nothing (not at all) by <means of> this thing	*~he was not at all disturbed at that*

I ***nōn fore dictō audientēs***, indir. disc. dependent on *dīcantur.* §580

II **audiō, -īre, -īvī** OR **-iī, -ītus** (AV-), *to hear; To hear, to listen to, to obey, heed* —only with acc., but also With Dat.

III ***dictō***, dat. with special v. *audientēs.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. §367

IV ***signa***, pl. acc., dir. obj. of *lātūrī [esse]*

V ***neque signa lātūrī [esse]***, indir. disc. §580

VI ***lātūrī [esse]***, nom. pl. fut. act. inf. of *ferō*

VII ***quod…dīcantur,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

VIII Extent is expressed by the Accusative of *nihil*, and also by *partem* (Accusative of pars) used indefinitely, a construction often called Adverbial Accusative; as, *nihil Cæsaris imperium exspectabant, were not waiting at all for Cæsaris orders*, Lit. *to extent of nothing, to no extent* (II.XX); *maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, they live mostly on milk and meat*, where partem is used indefinitely, not being limited to a definite idea, as it is when a Genitive is dependent upon it (IV.I)

IX ***eā rē,*** abl. of means. §409

X ***sē…commovērī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *incūsāvit.* §580

scīre[I] [se][II] enim

=for [he] knew | *~for he knew*

quibuscumque exercitus dictō[III] audiēns nōn fuerit[IV]

=to whomsoever an army has not been listening to command | *~that in the case of all those whose army had not been obedient to command*

aut

=either | *~either*

male rē gestā[V] [VI] fortūnam dēfuisse[VII] [VIII]

=fortune had failed (them) because of a thing done badly (military operation) | *~upon some mismanagement of an affair, fortune had deserted them*

aut

=or | *~or*

I ***scīre [se] enim***, indir. disc. §580

II The Subject Accusative in Indirect Discourse is sometimes omitted when it is easily understood from the Context, especially when it refers to the same person as the Subject of the Verb on which the Indirect Discourse depends; as, *scire, for se scire, that he knew* (I.XLI); *prohibiturum ostendit, for se prohibiturum esse ostendit* (Historical Present), *he showed that he would prevent them* (I.VIII)

III ***dictō***, dat. with special v. *audiēns.* §367

IV ***quibuscumque…fuerit,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

V ***gestā,*** ppp. of *gerō*

VI ***rē gestā,*** abl. abs. §420

VII **dēsum, -dēesse, -fuī, dēfutūrus** (DĒ + SUM), *to be away, be absent, fail, be wanting, be missing; To fail, be wanting, abandon, desert, neglect*

VIII ***fortūnam dēfuisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *scīre.* §580

aliquō facinore[I] compertō[II]

=with some deed <having been> found out	*~that upon some crime being discovered*

avāritiam[III] esse[IV] convictam[V]

=greed had been proved (against them)	*~covetousness had been clearly proved [against them]*

As to its being reported that the soldiers would not be obedient to command, or advance, he was not at all disturbed at that; for he knew, that in the case of all those whose army had not been obedient to command, either upon some mismanagement of an affair, fortune had deserted them, or, that upon some crime being discovered, covetousness had been clearly proved [against them].

I.XL.XIII

SVAM INNOCENTIAM PERPETVA VITA, FELICITATEM HELVETIORVM BELLO ESSE PERSPECTAM.

“MEA INNOCENTIA PERPETUA VITA, FELICITAS ... BELLO EST PERSPECTA.”

I **facinus, -oris**, N. (FAC-), *a deed, act, action, achievement; A bad deed, misdeed, outrage, villainy, crime*

II ***aliquō facinore compertō,*** abl. abs. §420

III **avāritia, -æ**, F. (AVARUS), *inordinate desire, greed, avarice, covetousness*

IV ***avāritiam esse,*** indir. disc. §580

V **convincō, -ere, -vīcī, -vīctus** (CON + VINCŌ), *to overcome, convict, refute, expose*; *To prove incontestably, show clearly, demonstrate, expose*

Suam innocentiam[I] perpetuā vītā[II], fēlīcitātem[III] Helvētiōrum bellō esse[IV] perspectam

=his own innocence, in (his) whole life, (and) (his) good fortune was seen through in the war of (with) the Helveti

~his integrity had been seen throughout his whole life, his good fortune in the war with the Helvetii

His integrity had been seen throughout his whole life, his good fortune in the war with the Helvetii.

I.XL.XIV

ITAQVE SE QVOD IN LONGIOREM DIEM COLLATVRVS FVISSET REPRÆSENTATVRVM ET PROXIMA NOCTE DE QVARTA VIGILIA CASTRA MOTVRVM, VT QVAM PRIMVM INTELLEGERE POSSET VTRVM APVD EOS PVDOR ATQVE OFFICIVM AN TIMOR PLVS VALERET.

"ITAQUE (EGO) QUOD … CONLATURUS FUI REPRÆSENTABO, ET … CASTRA MOVEBO, UT … INTELLEGERE POSSIM UTRUM APUD VOS PUDOR … AN TIMOR PLUS VALEAT."

Itaque sē

=thus, that he himself

~that he, therefore

quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset[V]

=(the plan) what he would have deferred into a more distant day

~what he had intended to put off till a more distant day

I **innocentia, -æ**, F. (IN + NOCENTIA), *blamelessness, innocence*

II ***perpetuā vītā,*** abl. of time. Special constructions of time are the following: Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative. §424ii

III **fēlīcitās, -ātis**, F. (FELIX), *fertility, happiness, felicity, good-fortune, luck*; Person., *Good Fortune*

IV ***fēlīcitātem…esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *incūsāvit.* §580

V ***quod…collātūrus fuisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

repræsentātūrum [esse][VI]

=(he) would accomplish instantly | *~would instantly set about*

et proxima nocte[II] de[III] quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum [esse][IV]

=and (he,) on the next night during the forth watching, would move (his) camp | *~and would break up his camp the next night, in the fourth watch*

ut quam prīmum intellegere posset[V] utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret[VI VII]

=<in order> that, how first he might be able to know, whether, with these men, honor and duty, or (whether) fear, would have more strength | *~so that, as soon as possible, he might ascertain, whether a sense of honor and duty, or whether fear had more influence with them*

That he would therefore instantly set about what he had intended to put off till a more distant day, and would break up his camp the next night, in the fourth watch, that he might ascertain, as soon as possible, whether a sense of honor and duty, or whether fear had more influence with them.

VI **repræsentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (RE + PRÆSENTŌ), *to make present, set in view, show, exhibit, display, manifest, represent, depict; To make present, perform immediately, realize, do now, accomplish instantly, hasten*

II ***proximā nocte,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

III ***de***, Dē, down from, from, with the ablative (cf. ab, away from; ex, out of). Idiomatic uses: multīs dē causīs, for many reasons; quā dē causā, for which reason; dē imprōvīsō, of a sudden; dē industriā, on purpose; dē integrō, anew; dē tertiā vigiliā, just at midnight (starting at the third watch); dē mēnse Decembrī nāvigāre, to sail as early as December. §221

IV ***sē…repræsentātūrum…mōtūrum,*** indir. disc. §580

V ***ut posset,*** *ut + posset = so that,* clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

VI **valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus** (VAL-), *to be strong, be vigorous, have strength, be able; To have power, be valid, be effective, have influence, avail, prevail, be strong, succeed*

VII ***utrum…valēret,*** indir. question. §573

I.XL.XV

QVOD SI PRÆTEREA NEMO SEQVATVR, TAMEN SE CVM SOLA DECIMA LEGIONE ITVRVM, DE QVA NON DVBITET, SIBIQVE EAM PRÆTORIAM COHORTEM FVTVRAM.

"QUOD SI PRÆTEREA NEMO SEQUETUR, TAMEN (EGO) CUM SOLA DECIMA LEGIONE IBO, DE QUA NON DUBITO, MIHIQUE EA PRÆTORIA COHORS ERIT."

Quod sī prætereā nēmō sequātur[I]

=as to which, if beyond this, no one should follow

~if however, no one else should follow

tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum [esse][II]

=nevertheless, he would go with only the tenth legion

~yet he would go with only the tenth legion

dē quā nōn dubitet[III]

=concerning which (legion) he did not doubt

~of which he had full confidence

sibique eam [legiōnem] prætōriam[IV] cohortem[V] futūram [esse][VI]

=and that [legion] would be a prætorian cohort for him

~and it should be his prætorian cohort

I ***sī…sequātur,*** simple pres. condition in indir. disc. §589

II ***sē…itūrum [esse],*** indir. disc. §580

III ***dē quā…dubitet,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV **prætōrius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PRÆTOR), *of the prætor, of prætors, prætorian*; *Of* or *belonging to a general—"prætoria cohors," the cohort* or *body-guard* attached to every general, a prœtorian cohort (I.XL.XV)

V **cohors, -rtis**, F. (COM- + HER-), Lit., *the multitude enclosed, fenced in*; hence, Milit., *a company of soldiers, a division of an army, a cohort, the tenth part of a legion*, comprising three manipuli or six centuriæ (always written *cohors*); *prætoria*, *the prætorian* or *bodyguard of the general*

VI ***eam…futūram,*** indir. disc. §580

But that, if no one else should follow, yet he would go with only the tenth legion, of which he had no misgivings, and it should be his prætorian cohort."

I.XL.XVI

HVIC LEGIONI CÆSAR ET INDVLSERAT PRÆCIPVE ET PROPTER VIRTVTEM CONFIDEBAT MAXIME.

Huic legiōnī[I] Cæsar et indulserat[II] præcipuē[III]

=to this legion, Cæsar, both, had been chiefly indulgent

~this legion Cæsar had both greatly favored

et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē

=and, on account of (this legion's) valor, he trusted in the highest degree

~and in it, on account of its valor, placed the greatest confidence

This legion Cæsar had both greatly favored, and in it, on account of its valor, placed the greatest confidence.

I ***huic legiōnī,*** dat. with comp. v. *indulserat & cōnfīdēbat.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

II **indulgeō, -ēre, -ulsī, -ultus** (IN + DULGEŌ), *to be complaisant, be kind, be tender, exercise forbearance, incline, yield, indulge, concede, grant, allow*

III **præcipuus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PRÆ + CAP-), *taken before others, particular, peculiar, especial*; Hence, ADV., **præcipuē,** *chiefly, principally, eminently*

I.XLI

The army reinvigorated, Cæsar advances.

I.XLI.I

HAC ORATIONE HABITA, MIRVM IN MODVM CONVERSÆ SVNT OMNIVM MENTES, SVMMAQVE ALACRITAS ET CVPIDITAS BELLI GERENDI INNATA EST, PRINCEPSQVE DECIMA LEGIO PER TRIBVNOS MILITVM EI GRATIAS EGIT QVOD DE SE OPTIMVM IVDICIVM FECISSET, SEQVE ESSE AD BELLVM GERENDVM PARATISSIMAM CONFIRMAVIT.

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā[I]

=with this speech <having been> held

~upon the delivery of this speech

mīrum in modum conversæ sunt omnium mentēs

=the minds of all men were changed in an astonishing manner

~the minds of all were changed in a surprising manner

I **hāc ōrātiōne habitā,** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī[I] innāta est[II]

=and the highest alacrity and passion of waging war was borne	*~and the highest ardor and eagerness for prosecuting the war were arisen in*

prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit

=and first, the tenth legion, through the tribunes of the soldiers gave thanks to him	*~and the tenth legion was the first to return thanks to him, through their military tribunes*

quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset[III]

=because he had made an optimal judgement about those men (i.e., the 10th legion)	*~for his having expressed this most favorable opinion of them*

sēque esse[IV] ad bellum gerendum[V] parātissimam[VI]

=and // that they were very prepared for <the purpose of> waging war	*~and // that they were quite ready to wage war*

I ***bellī gerendī,*** obj. gen. of the gerundive. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. §504

II **innāscor, -ī, -nātus,** — DEP. (IN + NĀSCOR), *to be born in, grow upon, spring up in*; Fig., *to arise in, originate in, be produced in*

III ***quod…fēcisset,*** *quod* causal clause with the reason given on the authority of another. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. Note 1. Quod introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Quia regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. Quoniam, inasmuch as, since, when now, now that, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative. §540

IV ***sēque esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *cōnfirmāvit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

V ***ad bellum gerendum,*** acc. of the gerundive expressing purpose. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

VI ***parātissimam***, noun. sg. fem. acc. superl

cōnfirmāvit

=he confirmed *~assured*

Upon the delivery of this speech, the minds of all were changed in a surprising manner, and the highest ardor and eagerness for prosecuting the war were engendered; and the tenth legion was the first to return thanks to him, through their military tribunes, for his having expressed this most favorable opinion of them; and assured him that they were quite ready to prosecute the war.

I.XLI.II

DEINDE RELIQVÆ LEGIONES CVM TRIBVNIS MILITVM ET PRIMORVM ORDINVM CENTVRIONIBVS EGERVNT VTI CÆSARI SATISFACERENT: SE NEC VMQVAM DVBITASSE NEQVE TIMVISSE NEQVE DE SVMMA BELLI SVVM IVDICIVM SED IMPERATORIS ESSE EXISTIMAVISSE.

Deinde reliquæ legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt

=thereafter, the remaining legions with the tribunes of the soldiers and (with) centurions of the principal orders pursued *~then, the other legions endeavored, through their military tribunes and the centurions of the principal companies*

utī Cæsarī satisfacerent[I]

=to make satisfaction for Cæsar *~to apoligize to Cæsar*

sē nec umquam dubitā[vi]sse

=(saying) that they had never either doubted *~[saying] that they had never either doubted*

I ***utī…satisfecerent,*** clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

neque timuisse

=nor had (they) feared

~or feared

neque

=nor

~or

dē summā bellī suum iūdicium sed imperātōris[I] esse[II]

=that the judgement concerning the leadership of war was their own but (was) of the commander

~that the determination of the conduct of the war was theirs and not their general's

exīstimāvisse[III]

=had estimated

~supposed

Then, the other legions endeavored, through their military tribunes and the centurions of the principal companies, to excuse themselves to Cæsar, [saying] that they had never either doubted or feared, or supposed that the determination of the conduct of the war was theirs and not their general's.

I ***imperātōris***, possessive gen. The Possessive Genitive denotes the person or thing to which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs. §343

II ***dē summā ... imperātōris esse***, indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimāvisse.* §580

III ***sē…dubitāsse…timuisse…existimavisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *satisfacerent.* §580

I.XLI.III

EORVM SATISFACTIONE ACCEPTA ET ITINERE EXQVISITO PER DIVICIACVM, QVOD EX ALIIS EI MAXIMAM FIDEM HABEBAT, VT MILIVM AMPLIVS QVINQVAGINTA CIRCVITV LOCIS APERTIS EXERCITVM DVCERET, DE QVARTA VIGILIA, VT DIXERAT, PROFECTVS EST. SEPTIMO DIE, CVM ITER NON INTERMITTERET, AB EXPLORATORIBVS CERTIOR FACTVS EST ARIOVISTI COPIAS A NOSTRIS MILIBVS PASSVVM QVATTVOR ET VIGINTI ABESSE.

Eōrum satisfactiōne[IV] acceptā[V] et itinere exquīsītō[VI] [VII] [VIII] per Dīviciācum

=with their apology <having been> accepted, and with the road <having been> examined through (the the hands of) Divitiacus

~having accepted their excuse, and having had the road investigated by Divitiacus

quod ex aliīs eī[VI] maximam fidem habēbat

=because, for him, out from (all) others, he (Cæsar) was having the most faith

~because in him of all others he had the greatest faith

IV **satis facio** (OR **satisfacio**), *to give satisfaction, to satisfy, content*; *To give satisfaction, make amends, make reparation, make excuse, apologize*

V ***satisfactiōne acceptā,*** abl. abs. §420

VI ***itinere exquīsītō,*** abl. abs. §420

VII **exquīrō, -ere, -uī, -ītum** (EX + QUÆRO), *to ask about, to inquire into; to search, to examine*

VIII ***exquīsītō***, ppp. of the v. *exquīrō*

VI ***eī***, dat. with special v. *fidem habēbat.* Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the Dative. i. Some verbs apparently of the same meanings take the Accusative. Such are iuvō, adiuvō, help; lædō, injure; iubeō, order; dēficiō, fail; dēlectō, please. Note. II. Some common phrases regularly take the dative precisely like verbs of similar meaning. Such are—præstō esse, be on hand (cf. adesse); mōrem gerere, humor (cf. mōrigerārī); grātum facere, do a favor (cf. grātificārī); dictō audiēns esse, be obedient (cf. obœdīre); "cui fidem habēbat" (B. G. 1.19), in whom he had confidence (cf. cōnfīdēbat). §367i, n. ii

ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū[I] locīs apertīs[II] [III] exercitum dūceret[IV]

=(he found,) that by <means of> a going around of more than fifty thousand (of paces), he might lead (his) army by <means of> open places

~[he found] that by a way around of more than fifty miles he might lead his army through open parts

dē quārtā vigiliā

=during the fourth watch

~during fourth watch

ut dixerat

=as he said

~as he had said [he would]

profectus est

=he departed

~he set out

septimō diē[V]

=on the seventh day

~on the seventh day

cum iter nōn intermitteret[VI]

=as he did not interrupt the journey

~as he did not suspend his march

I ***circuitū***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II **apertus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PART. OF APERIO), *without covering, uncovered*; Fig., *open, avowed, plain, clear, manifest*

III ***locīs apertīs,*** abl. of means. §409

IV ***ut…dūceret*** clause of purpose. §531

V ***septimō diē,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

VI ***cum…intermitteret,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

ab explōrātōribus[I] certior factus est

=by explorers, he was made more certain

~he was informed by scouts

Ariovistī copiās ā nostrīs[II] mīlibus passuum[III] quattuor et vīgintī abesse[IV] [V]

=that the troops of Ariovistus was (only) twenty-four thousands of paces away from our men

~that the forces of Ariovistus were only four and twenty miles distant from ours

Having accepted their excuse, and having had the road carefully reconnoitered by Divitiacus, because in him of all others he had the greatest faith [he found] that by a circuitous route of more than fifty miles he might lead his army through open parts; he then set out in the fourth watch, as he had said [he would]. On the seventh day, as he did not discontinue his march, he was informed by scouts that the forces of Ariovistus were only four and twenty miles distant from ours.

I ***ab explōrātōribus,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

II ***ā nostrīs,*** abl. of separ. Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative. §400

III ***passuum***, part. gen. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are: Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like alius, alter, nūllus, etc. "mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), six hundred miles (thousands of paces). "Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium" (IV.I), the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans. "nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), not one of them (the ships). §3462

IV ***cōpiās…abesse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *certior factus est.* §580

V ***abesse***, pres. inf. of the v. *absum*

I.XLII

ARIOVISTUS SUGGESTS A CONFERENCE.

I.XLII.I

COGNITO CÆSARIS ADVENTV, ARIOVISTVS LEGATOS AD EVM MITTIT: QVOD ANTEA DE COLLOQVIO POSTVLASSET, ID PER SE FIERI LICERE, QVONIAM PROPIVS ACCESSISSET, SEQVE ID SINE PERICVLO FACERE POSSE EXISTIMARET.

Cognitō Cæsaris adventū[I]

=with the arrival of Cæsar <having been> learned

~upon being apprized of Cæsar's arrival

Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit

=Ariovistus sends ambassadors to him

~Ariovistus sent embassadors to him

quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāsset[II]

=(saying) what he had demanded previously concerning the conference

~[saying] that what he had before requested as to a conference

I ***cognitō…adventū*** abl. abs. §420

II ***quod…postulāsset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

id[I] per sē fierī[II] licēre[III] [IV]

=that it be allowed to be done through himself *~might now, as far as his permission went, take place*

quoniam propius accessisset

=since he (Cæsar) had approached nearer *~since he [Cæsar] had approached nearer*

sēque id sine perīculō facere posse[V]

=and // that he is able to do it without danger *~and // that he might now do it without danger*

exīstimāret[VI]

=he thought *~he considered*

Upon being apprized of Cæsar's arrival, Ariovistus sends embassadors to him, [saying] that what he had before requested as to a conference, might now, as far as his permission went, take place, since he [Cæsar] had approached nearer, and he considered that he might now do it without danger.

I ***id***, acc. sg. noun., subj. acc. of *fierī*

II ***fierī***, v.. pres. inf. pass. *fīō, fierī* (used as pass. of *facio, to do*), *to be done*

III **licet, -ēre, -cuit, -citum est**, IMPERS. (LIC-), with or without dat. of person, *it is lawful, is allowed, is permitted*

IV ***id…licēre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *lēgātōs…misit.* §580

V ***sēque…posse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimāret.* §580

VI ***quoniam…accessisset…exīstimāret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. Causal Clauses take either the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to their construction; the idea of cause being contained, not in the mood itself, but in the form of the argument (by implication), in an antecedent of causal meaning (like propterea), or in the connecting particles. §539 & §583

I.XLII.II

NON RESPVIT CONDICIONEM CÆSAR, IAMQVE EVM AD SANITATEM REVERTI ARBITRABATVR, CVM ID QVOD ANTEA PETENTI DENEGASSET VLTRO POLLICERETVR; MAGNAMQVE IN SPEM VENIEBAT PRO SVIS TANTIS POPVLIQVE ROMANI IN EVM BENEFICIIS, COGNITIS SVIS POSTVLATIS FORE VTI PERTINACIA DESISTERET.

Nōn respuit[I] condiciōnem Cæsar

=Cæsar did not reject the condition *~Cæsar did not reject the proposal*

iamque

=and now *~and began*

eum ad sānitātem[II] revertī[III]

=that he (Ariovistus) returned to soundness of body *~that he was now returning to sanity*

arbitrābātur

=he was thinking *~to think*

cum id

=when // it *~as // the issue*

I **respuō, -ere, -uī, -us** (RE + SPUŌ), *to spit back, discharge by spitting, cast out, cast off, eject, expel*; Fig., *to reject, repel, refuse, spurn, dislike, disapprove*

II **sānitās, -ātis**, F. (SANUS), *soundness of body, health*; Fig., *soundness, right reason, good sense, discretion, sanity*

III ***eum…revertī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *arbitrābātur.* §580

quod anteā petentī[I] [sibī] dēnegāsset[II] [III]

=that which he (Ariovistus) had previously denied [to him (Cæsar)] requesting

~that which he had previously refused to him when requesting it

ultrō[IV] pollicērētur[V]

=he spontaneously offered

~he spontaneously proffered

magnamque in spem veniēbat

=and he was coming into great hope

~and was in great hopes that

prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs

=on account of his own great kindnesses and (the kindnesses) of the Roman people toward him

~in consideration of his own and the Roman people's great favors toward him

cognitīs suīs postulātīs[VI]

=with his demands <having been> learned

~upon his demands being made known

fore utī

=that (it) would be that

~that

I ***petentī***, dat. sg. pres. part. of the v. *petō*

II ***quod…dēnegāsset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III **dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DĒ + NEGŌ), *to reject, refuse, deny*

IV **ūltrō**, ADV. (ABL. OF ULTER), *from beyond, from the other side*, i.e. without influence or assistance from this side, on his part, on their part, of himself, of themselves, etc.; *of one's own accord, without being asked, spontaneously, voluntarily*

V ***cum…pollicērētur,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

VI ***cognitīs suīs postulātīs,*** abl. abs. §420

pertinācīā[I] [II] dēsisteret[III]

=he would desist from (his) obstinacy *~he would desist from his obstinacy*

Cæsar did not reject the proposal and began to think that he was now returning to a rational state of mind as he spontaneously proffered that which he had previously refused to him when requesting it; and was in great hopes that, in consideration of his own and the Roman people's great favors toward him, the issue would be that he would desist from his obstinacy upon his demands being made known.

I.XLII.III

DIES COLLOQVIO DICTVS EST EX EO DIE QVINTVS. INTERIM SÆPE VLTRO CITROQVE CVM LEGATI INTER EOS MITTERENTVR, ARIOVISTVS POSTVLAVIT NE QVEM PEDITEM AD COLLOQVIVM CÆSAR ADDVCERET: VERERI SE NE PER INSIDIAS AB EO CIRCVMVENIRETVR: VTERQVE CVM EQVITATV VENIRET: ALIA RATIONE SESE NON ESSE VENTVRVM.

Diēs colloquiō[IV] [V] dictus est ex eō diē quīntus

=the fifth day out from this day was set for the conference *~the fifth day after that was appointed as the day of conference*

I ***pertinācīā***, abl. of separ. §400

II **pertinācia, -æ**, F. (PERTINAX), *perseverance, persistence, stubbornness, obstinacy, pertinacity*

III ***fore utī…dēsisteret,*** subst. clause of result. in indic.. disc. dependent on *magnam in spem veniebat* standing in for fut. inf. Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the subject of the following: Fore (or futūrum esse) ut with a clause of result as subject is Often used instead of the Future Infinitive active or passive; so necessarily in verbs which have no supine stem. §569i & §583

IV ***colloquiō***, dat. of purpose. The Dative of Reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word. §377

V **colloquium, -ii**, N. *a conversation, conference, discourse*

Interim

=in the meantime	*~meanwhile*

sæpe ultrō citroque[I] cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur[II]

=as the ambassadors were often being sent to beyond and to this side between those men	*~as ambassadors were being often sent to and fro between them*

Ariovistus postulāvit

=Ariovistus demanded	*~Ariovistus demanded*

nē quem peditem ad colloquium Cæsar addūceret[III]

=that Cæsar should not lead any foot-soldier to the conference	*~that Cæsar not bring any foot-soldier with him to the conference*

verērī sē[IV]

=(saying) that he feared	*~[saying] that he feared*

nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur[V]

=lest, through a trap, he should be circumvented by him	*~being ensnared by him insidiously*

I **citrō**, ADV. (DAT. OF CITER), *to this side*; only in the phrase *ultro citroque, ultro et citro,* or, *ultro citro, hither and thither, this way and that, here and there, to and fro, backwards and forwards, reciprocally*

II ***cum…mitterentur,*** *cum* clause. §546

III ***nē…addūceret,*** prohibition in indir. disc. Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by nōlī with the Infinitive, (2) by cavē with the Present Subjunctive, or (3) by nē with the Perfect Subjunctive. §450 & All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well. §588

IV ***verērī sē,*** indir. disc. dependent on *postulāvit.* §580

V ***nē…circumvenīrētur,*** fear clause in indir. disc. Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive, with nē affirmative and nē nōn or ut negative. §564 & A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

uterque cum equitātū venīret[VI]

=and that both should come with cavalry	*~that both should come accompanied by cavalry*

aliā ratiōne[II] sēsē nōn esse ventūrum[III]

=(and) that, in <the means of> another circumstance, he would not come	*~that he would not come on any other condition*

The fifth day after that was appointed as the day of conference. Meanwhile, as ambassadors were being often sent to and fro between them, Ariovistus demanded that Cæsar should not bring any foot-soldier with him to the conference, [saying] that, *"he was afraid of being ensnared by him through treachery; that both should come accompanied by cavalry; that he would not come on any other condition."*

I.XLII.IV

CÆSAR, QVOD NEQVE COLLOQVIVM INTERPOSITA CAVSA TOLLI VOLEBAT NEQVE SALVTEM SVAM GALLORVM EQVITATVI COMMITTERE AVDEBAT, COMMODISSIMVM ESSE STATVIT, OMNIBVS EQVIS GALLIS EQVITIBVS DETRACTIS, EO LEGIONARIOS MILITES LEGIONIS DECIMÆ, CVI QVAM MAXIME CONFIDEBAT, IMPONERE, VT PRÆSIDIVM QVAM AMICISSIMVM, SI QVID OPVS FACTO ESSET, HABERET.

Cæsar

=Cæsar	*~Cæsar*

VI ***uterque…venīret,*** hortatory subj. in indir. disc. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an exhortation or a command. The negative is nē. §439 & §588

II ***aliā ratiōne,*** abl. of means. §409

III ***sēsē nōn esse ventūrum,*** indir. disc. §580

quod neque colloquium

=as neither /he wished/ the conference /to be removed/

~as neither // that the conference

interpositā[I] causā[II]

=by <means of> an excuse <having been> thrown in the way

~because an excuse was made

tollī volēbat

=he wished // to be removed

~he wished // to be set aside

neque salūtem[III] suam Gallorum equitātuī[IV] committere audēbat

=nor did he dare to trust his own safety to the cavalry of the Gauls

~nor durst trust his life to the cavalry of the Gauls

commodissimum esse[V]

=that (it) was most commodious

~that it would be most expedient

statuit

=he decided

~decided

I **interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** (INTER + PŌNŌ), *to put between, place among, interpose, insert, intersperse*; Trop., *to interpose, introduce, put in the way, put forward*

II ***interpositā causā,*** abl. of means. §409

III **salūs, -ūtis**, F. (SALVUS), *soundness, health, good health, vigor*; Fig., *health, welfare, prosperity, safety, soundness, preservation, deliverance*

IV ***equitātuī***, dat. with special v. *committere.* §367

V ***commodissimum esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *statuit.* §580

omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus[I] dētractīs[II III]

=with all the horses <having been> drawn away from the Gallic cavalry	*~to take away from the Gallic cavalry all their horses*

eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimæ

=/(and) to mount/ thither the legionary soldiers of the tenth legion	*~and thereon // the legionary soldiers of the tenth legion*

cui[IV] quam maximē cōnfīdēbat

=to whom he was having the most confidence	*~in which he placed the greatest confidence*

impōnere[V]

=(and) to mount	*~to mount*

ut præsidium quam amīcissimum[VI VII]

=<in order> that // a most trustworthy defence as possible	*~in order that // a garrison as trustworthy as possible*

I ***Gallīs equitībus,*** dat. of separ. Many verbs of taking away and the like take the Dative (especially of a person) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§401). §381

II ***omnibus equīs…dētractīs,*** abl. abs. §420

III **dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus** (DĒ + TRAHŌ), *to draw off, take down, pull down, take away, remove, withdraw, drag, bring*

IV ***cui***, dat. with special v. *confīdēbat.* §367

V **impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** (IN + PŌNŌ), ere, *to place upon, set on, impose, establish, introduce, set, place*

VI ***quam amīcissimum,*** *quam* + super. = the highest possible deg. Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows: With quam, vel, or ūnus the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree. §291iii

VII **factum, -ī**, N. (part. neut. of *facio*), *a deed, act, exploit, achievement*

sī quid opus factō[I] esset[II]

=if there were any need for a deed *~should there be any need for action*

habēret[III]

=he might have *~he might have*

Cæsar, as he neither wished that the conference should, by an excuse thrown in the way, be set aside, nor durst trust his life to the cavalry of the Gauls, decided that it would be most expedient to take away from the Gallic cavalry all their horses, and thereon to mount the legionary soldiers of the tenth legion, in which he placed the greatest confidence, in order that he might have a body-guard as trustworthy as possible, should there be any need for action.

I.XLII.VI

QVOD CVM FIERET, NON IRRIDICVLE QVIDAM EX MILITIBVS DECIMÆ LEGIONIS DIXIT: PLVS QVAM POLLICITVS ESSET CÆSAREM FACERE; POLLICITVM SE IN COHORTIS PRÆTORIÆ LOCO DECIMAM LEGIONEM HABITVRVM, AD EQVVM RESCRIBERE.

Quod cum fieret[IV]

=which when (it) was done *~and when this was done*

I ***opus,*** indicating need requires the abl. Opus and ūsus, signifying need, take the Ablative. i. With opus the ablative of a perfect participle is often found, either agreeing with a noun or used as a neuter abstract noun. §411i

II ***sī…esset,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. §592

III ***ut…habēret,*** clause of purpose. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

IV ***cum fieret,*** *cum* clause. §546

nōn irrīdiculē[I] quīdam ex mīlitibus decimæ legiōnis dīxit

=a certain one, out from the soldiers of the tenth legion, not unwittingly, said

~one of the tenth legion said, not without a touch of humor

plūs quam pollicitus esset

=more than he had promised

~more for them than he had promised

Cæsarem facere[II]

=that Cæsar was doing

~that Cæsar did

[eum] pollicitum [esse][III]

=that [he] (Cæsar) promised

~he had promised

sē[IV] in cohortis prætōriæ locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum [esse][V]

=that he would have the tenth legion in place of (his) prætorian cohort

~to have the tenth legion in place of his prætorian cohort

[eum] ad equum rescrībere[VI] [VII]

=(and) that [he] (Cæsar) was re-enlisting [those men] to cavalry

~but he now re-enlisted them into horse

And when this was done, one of the soldiers of the tenth legion said, not without a touch of humor, *"that Cæsar did more for them than he had promised; he had promised to have the tenth legion in place of his prætorian cohort; but he now converted them into horse."*

I **irrīdiculē**, ADV. (IN + RIDICULE), *unwittily*

II ***Cæsarem facere,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dīxit.* §580

III ***plūs quam pollicitus esset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV ***pollicitum sē,*** indir. disc. §580

V ***sē in ... habitūrum [esse]***, indir. disc. dependent on *pollicitum.* §580

VI ***[eum] ad equum rescrībere***, indir. disc. dependent on *dīxit.* §580

VII **rescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus** (RE + SCRĪBŌ), *to write back, write in return, reply in writing; to write again, write anew, enroll anew, re-enlist*; In partic., Milit., *to enroll anew, to re-enlist*

I.XLIII

Cæsar and Ariovistus meet.

I.XLIII.I

PLANITIES ERAT MAGNA ET IN EA TVMVLVS TERRENVS SATIS GRANDIS.

Plānitiēs[I] erat magna et in eā tumulus[II] terrēnus[III] satis grandis[IV]

=there was a great plain and in it an earthly mound of considerable size

~there was a large plain, and in it a mound of earth of considerable size

There was a large plain, and in it a mound of earth of considerable size.

I **plānities, -ēi**, F., *a flat or even surface, level ground, a plain*

II **tumulus, -ī**, M. (TV-), *a heap of earth, mound, hill, hillock*

III **terrēnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TERRA), *of the globe, on the earth, earthly, terrestrial, terren*

IV **grandis, -e**, ADJ. (GAR-), Of things, *full-grown, large, great, full, abundant*

I.XLIII.II

HIC LOCVS ÆQVO FERE SPATIO AB CASTRIS ARIOVISTI ET CÆSARIS ABERAT.

Hic locus æquō ferē spatiō[I] ab castrīs[II] Ariovisti et Cæsaris aberat

=this place was nearly by (at) an equal interval away from the camp of Ariovistus and (the camp) of Cæsar

~this spot was at nearly an equal distance from both camps

This spot was at nearly an equal distance from both camps.

I.XLIII.III

EO, VT ERAT DICTVM, AD COLLOQVIVM VENERVNT.

Eō

=to that place

~thither

ut erat dictum

=as it was said

~as had been appointed

ad colloquium vēnērunt

=they came to the conference

~they came for the conference

Thither, as had been appointed, they came for the conference.

I ***æquō spatiō,*** abl. of deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

II ***ā castrīs,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

I.XLIII.IV

LEGIONEM CÆSAR QVAM EQVIS VEXERAT PASSIBVS DVCENTIS AB EO TVMVLO CONSTITVIT.

Legiōnem Cæsar

=Cæsar // the legion

~Cæsar // the legion

quam equīs[I] vexerat

=which he had conveyed by <means of> the horses

~which he had brought [with him] on horseback

passibus ducentīs[II] ab eō tumulō[III] cōnstituit

=stationed // 200 paces away from this mound

~stationed // 200 paces from this mound

Cæsar stationed the legion, which he had brought [with him] on horseback, 200 paces from this mound.

I.XLIII.V

ITEM EQVITES ARIOVISTI PARI INTERVALLO CONSTITERVNT.

Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō[IV] constitērunt

=the cavalry of Ariovistus also stationed at an equal interval

~the cavalry of Ariovistus also took their stand at an equal distance

The cavalry of Ariovistus also took their stand at an equal distance.

I ***equīs***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II ***passibus ducentīs,*** abl. of deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

III ***ab eō tumulō,*** abl. of separ. §401

IV ***parī intervāllō,*** abl. of deg. of dif. §414

I.XLIII.VI

ARIOVISTVS EX EQVIS VT COLLOQVERENTVR ET PRÆTER SE DENOS AD COLLOQVIVM ADDVCERENT POSTVLAVIT.

Ariovistus

=Ariovistus

~Ariovistus

ex equīs ut colloquerentur

=that they should converse from (their) horses

~that they should confer on horseback

et præter sē dēnōs[II] ad colloquium addūcerent[III]

=and that, in addition to themselves, they should bring ten men each to the conference

~and that, besides themselves, they should bring with them ten men each to the conference

postulāvit

=demanded

~then demanded

Ariovistus then demanded that they should confer on horseback, and that, besides themselves, they should bring with them ten men each to the conference.

II **dēnī, -æ, -a**, ADJ. (DECEM), *ten each, ten at a time, by tens*

III ***ut colloquerentur…addūcerent,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

I.XLIII.VII

VBI EO VENTVM EST, CÆSAR INITIO ORATIONIS SVA SENATVSQVE IN EVM BENEFICIA COMMEMORAVIT, QVOD REX APPELLATVS ESSET A SENATV, QVOD AMICVS, QVOD MVNERA AMPLISSIME MISSA; QVAM REM ET PAVCIS CONTIGISSE, ET PRO MAGNIS HOMINVM OFFICIIS CONSVESSE TRIBVI DOCEBAT.

Vbi eō [ab eīs] ventum est[I]

=when it was come [by them] to that place

~when they were come to the place

Cæsar initiō ōrātionis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit

=Cæsar, in the beginning of (his) speech, recalled his own and the favors and (he recalled the favors) of senate toward him (Ariovistus)

~Cæsar, in the opening of his speech, detailed his own and the senate's favors toward him [Ariovistus]

quod rēx appellātus esset[II] ā senātū[III]

=<as to the fact> that he had been called a king by the senate

~in that he had been styled king

quod amīcus [appellātus esset]

=<as to the fact> that [he had been called] a friend

~in that [he had been styled] friend, by the senate

I ***ventum est***, impers. pass. of the v. *veniō*

II ***quod…appellātus esset,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. §592

III ***ā senātū,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

quod mūnera[I] amplissime missa [essent]

=<as to the fact> that the most magnificent presents had been sent (to him)

~in that very considerable presents had been sent him

quam rem et paucīs[II] contigisse

=which (thing) (i.e. obtaining so many favors) // and had happened to few men

~which circumstance // him had both fallen to the lot of few

et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse[III] tribuī

=and had been wont to be bestowed in return for the great services of men

~and had usually been bestowed in consideration of important personal services

docēbat

=he was informing

~he informed

When they were come to the place, Cæsar, in the opening of his speech, detailed his own and the senate's favors toward him [Ariovistus], in that he had been styled king, in that [he had been styled] friend, by the senate-in that very considerable presents had been sent him; which circumstance he informed him had both fallen to the lot of few, and had usually been bestowed in consideration of important personal services.

I **mūnus, -eris**, N. (MV-), *a service, office, post, employment, function, duty*; Transf., *a present, gift*

II ***paucīs***, dat. with comp. v. *contigisse.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

III ***quam rem…contigisse…cōnsuēsse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *docēbat.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

I.XLIII.VIII

ILLVM, CVM NEQVE ADITVM NEQVE CAVSAM POSTVLANDI IVSTAM HABERET, BENEFICIO AC LIBERALITATE SVA AC SENATVS EA PRÆMIA CONSECVTVM.

Illum

=that that (man)

~that he

cum neque aditum[I] neque causam postulandī[II] iūstam habēret[III]

=although he was neither having access, nor a just cause of requesting

~although he had neither an introduction, nor a just ground for the request

beneficiō[IV] ac līberālitāte suā[V] ac senātūs ea præmia[VI] cōnsecūtum [esse]

=he had obtained those privileges by <means of> his own beneficence and <by means of> liberality and (that beneficence and liberty) of the senate

~had obtained these honors through the kindness and munificence of himself [Cæsar] and the senate

That he, although he had neither an introduction, nor a just ground for the request, had obtained these honors through the kindness and munificence of himself [Cæsar] and the senate.

I **aditus, -ūs**, M. (ADEO), *a going to, approach, access*

II ***postulandī***, gen. of the gerund. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. § 504

III ***cum…habēret,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

IV ***beneficiō,*** abl. of means. §409

V ***līberālitāte suā,*** abl. of means. §409

VI **præmium, -ī**, N. (PRÆ + EM-), *an advantage, prerogative, favor, license, privilege*

I.XLIII.IX

DOCEBAT ETIAM QVAM VETERES QVAMQVE IVSTÆ CAVSÆ NECESSITVDINIS IPSIS CVM ÆDVIS INTERCEDERENT; QVÆ SENATVS CONSVLTA QVOTIENS QVAMQVE HONORIFICA IN EOS FACTA ESSENT; VT OMNI TEMPORE TOTIVS GALLIÆ PRINCIPATVM ÆDVI TENVISSENT, PRIVS ETIAM QVAM NOSTRAM AMICITIAM APPETISSENT.

Docēbat etiam

=he, too, was informing	*~he informed him too*

quam veterēs

=how old	*~how old*

quamque iūstæ causæ necessitudinis[I] ipsīs cum Æduīs intercēderent[II]

=and how just causes of the relationship were coming between themselves (the Romans) with the Ædui	*~and how just were the grounds of connection that existed between themselves [the Romans] and the Ædui*

quæ senātūs cōnsulta[III]

=which decrees of the senate	*~what decrees of the senate*

I **necessitūdō, -inis**, F. (NECESSE), *necessity, compulsion, inevitableness, want, need, distress; A close connection, personal union, relationship, friendship, intimacy, bond*

II ***quam…intercēderent,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

III **cōnsultum, -ī**, N. (CONSULTUS), *deliberation, consideration; A decree, decision, resolution, plan; senatūs, a decree of the senate*

quotiēns[I] quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent[II]

=how often and how honorable, they (the decrees) had been made on those men

~had been passed in their favor, and how frequent and how honorable

ut omnī tempore[III] totīus Galliæ prīncipātum Æduī tenuissent[IV]

=how from all time the Ædui had held the supremacy of all of Gaul

~how from time immemorial the Ædui had held the supremacy of the whole of Gaul

prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent[V]

=even (said Cæsar) before our friendship which they had sought

~even [said Cæsar] before they had sought our friendship

He informed him too, how old and how just were the grounds of connection that existed between themselves [the Romans] and the Aedui, what decrees of the senate had been passed in their favor, and how frequent and how honorable; how from time immemorial the Aedui had held the supremacy of the whole of Gaul; even [said Cæsar] before they had sought our friendship.

I **quotiēns**, ADV. (QUOT), *how often? how many times*

II ***quæ…facta essent,*** indir. question. §573

III ***omnī tempore,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

IV ***ut…tenuissent,*** indir. question. §573

V ***prius…quam…appetīssent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

I.XLIII.X

POPVLI ROMANI HANC ESSE CONSVETVDINEM, VT SOCIOS ATQVE AMICOS NON MODO SVI NIHIL DEPERDERE SED GRATIA, DIGNITATE, HONORE AVCTIORES VELIT ESSE: QVOD VERO AD AMICITIAM POPVLI ROMANI ATTVLISSENT, ID EIS ERIPI QVIS PATI POSSET?

"POPULI ROMANI HÆC EST CONSUETUDO UT SOCIOS ATQUE AMICOS NON MODO SUI NIHIL DEPENDERE, SED GRATIA ... AUCTIORES VELIT ESSE; QUOD VERO AD AMICITIAM POPULI ROMANI ADTULERUNT, ID EIS ERIPI QUIS PATI POSSIT?"

Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētudinem[I]

=that it was this custom of the Roman people

~that it was the custom of the Roman people

ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere[II]

=that (their) allies and (their) friends not only are losing nothing of their (own)

~to desire not only that its allies and friends should lose none of their property

sed grātiā, dignitāte[III], honōre[IV] auctiōrēs velit[V] esse

=but he (also) desires that (they) (the allies and friends) are more increased in <respect to> gratitude, dignity, (and) honor

~but be advanced in influence, dignity, and honor

I *hanc esse cōnsuētudinem,* indir. disc. dependent on *docēbat.* §580

II **dēperdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus** (DĒ + PERDŌ), *to destroy, ruin; To lose*

III **dīgnitās, -ātis**, F. (DIGNUS), *worth, merit, desert, character*

IV *grātiā, dignitāte, honōre,* abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

V *ut…velit,* subst. clause of result. Clauses of Result may be used substantively: as the object of faciō etc. (§568) §567

quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent[VI]

=but in fact, that which they had brought towards the friendship of the Roman people

~that what they had brought with them to the friendship of the Roman people

id eīs ēripī

=that it is being torn away from them

~should be torn from them?

quis patī posset[II]

=who was able to endure?

~who then could endure?

That it was the custom of the Roman people to desire not only that its allies and friends should lose none of their property, but be advanced in influence, dignity, and honor: who then could endure that what they had brought with them to the friendship of the Roman people should be torn from them?"

I.XLIII.XI

POSTVLAVIT DEINDE EADEM QVÆ LEGATIS IN MANDATIS DEDERAT: NE AVT ÆDVIS AVT EORVM SOCIIS BELLVM INFERRET; OBSIDES REDDERET; SI NVLLAM PARTEM GERMANORVM DOMVM REMITTERE POSSET, AT NE QVOS AMPLIVS RHENVM TRANSIRE PATERETVR.

Postulāvit deinde eadem

=he then demanded the same (things)

~he then made the same demands

quæ lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat

=(the same things) which he had given to the ambassadors in the orders

~which he had commissioned the embassadors to make

VI ***quod…attulissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

II ***quis…posset,*** question in indir. disc. A question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. §586

nē aut Æduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret

=(namely,) that he (Ariovistus) should not bear war to the Ædui or their allies

~that [Ariovistus] should not make war either upon the Ædui or their allies

obsidēs redderet[I]

=(and) that he should give back the hostages

~that he should restore the hostages

sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset[II]

=(and) if he is able to send back no part of Germans home

~that if he could not send back to their country any part of the Germans

at[III] nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur[IV]

=that he, at any rate, should not allow anyone more men to cross the Rhine

~he should at all events suffer none of them any more to cross the Rhine

I ***nē…īnferret…redderet,*** prohibition in indir. disc. Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by nōlī with the Infinitive, (2) by cavē with the Present Subjunctive, or (3) by nē with the Perfect Subjunctive. §450 & All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well. §588

II ***sī…posset,*** protasis of simple pres. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

III Of the Adversative Conjunctions at, *as but* or *at any rate*, are often used to express Contrast or Restriction; *autem*, as *however*, *on the other hand*, or *moreover*, to express Contrast or Addition; *sed,* as *but*, to correct or limit a Preceding Statement; *tamen, as nevertheless*, yet, to emphasize the importance of something that follows in opposition to a Preceding Statement; and *vero*, as *in fact, but in truth*, to emphasize a contrast with a Preceding Statement

IV ***nē…paterētur,*** prohibition in indir. disc. §450 & §588

He then made the same demands which he had commissioned the embassadors to make, that [Ariovistus] should not make war either upon the Aedui or their allies, that he should restore the hostages; that if he could not send back to their country any part of the Germans, he should at all events suffer none of them any more to cross the Rhine.

I.XLIV

Ariovistus is uncompromising and defiant.

I.XLIV.I

ARIOVISTVS AD POSTVLATA CÆSARIS PAVCA RESPONDIT, DE SVIS VIRTVTIBVS MVLTA PRÆDICAVIT: TRANSISSE RHENVM SESE NON SVA SPONTE SED ROGATVM ET ACCERSITVM A GALLIS; NON SINE MAGNA SPE MAGNISQVE PRÆMIIS DOMVM PROPINQVOSQVE RELIQVISSE; SEDES HABERE IN GALLIA AB IPSIS CONCESSAS, OBSIDES IPSORVM VOLVNTATE DATOS; STIPENDIVM CAPERE IVRE BELLI QVOD VICTORES VICTIS IMPONERE CONSVERINT.

“TRANSII RHENUM (EGO) NON MEA SPONTE, SED ROGATUS ET ARCESSITUS A GALLIS; NON SINE MAGNA SPE ... DOMUM ... RELLQUI; SEDĪS HABEO IN GALLIA AB IPSIS CONCESSAS, OBSIDES IPSORUM VOLUNTATE DATOS; STIPENDIUM CAPIO IURE BELLI QUOD VICTORES VICTIS IMPONERE CONSUERUNT.”

Ariovistus ad postulāta[I] Cæsaris pauca[II] respondit

=Ariovistus responds (with) a few (words) to the demands of Cæsar

~Ariovistus briefly replied to the demands of Cæsar

dē suīs virtūtibus multa prædicāvit

=(but) he announced many things about his own merits

~but expatiated largely on his own virtues

transīsse[III] Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte[IV] [V]

=(namely,) that he crossed the Rhine not by his own will

~that he had crossed the Rhine not of his own accord

sed rogātum[VI] et accersītum[VII] ā Gallīs[VIII]

=but <having been> invited and <having been> sent for by the Gauls

~but on being invited and sent for by the Gauls

I **postulātum, -ī**, N. (P. N. OF POSTULO), *a demand, request, claim*

II ***pauca***, adj. acc. pl. n., obj. dir. obj. of *respondit*

III ***trānsisse…sēsē,*** indir. disc. dependent on *prædicāvit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

IV **sponte**, ABL., AND **spontis**, F. (SPONDEO), PROP. **sponte**, in good prose always joined with *meā, tuā, suā*—of free will, *of one's own accord, of one's self, freely, willingly, voluntarily, spontaneously*

V ***suā sponte,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

VI ***rogātum***, acc. sing. m. of pass. participle *rogātus*

VII **arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus**, INTENS. (ACCEDO), *to cause to come, call, send for, invite, summon, fetch*

VIII ***ā Gallīs,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque præmiīs[I] domum propinquōsque relīquisse[II]

=that (he,) not without great hope and great rewards, had left behind (his) home and relatives

~that he had not left home and kindred without great expectations and great rewards

sēdēs[III] habēre[IV] in Galliā ab ipsīs[V] concessās[VI VII VIII]

=that (he) is holding residences in Gaul, <having been> yielded by (the Gauls) themselves

~that he had settlements in Gaul, which were granted by the Gauls themselves

obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte[IX] datōs

=that the hostages, <having been> given by the volition of themselves

~that those hostages had been given by their goodwill

I **præmium, -ī**, N. (PRÆ + EM-), *an advantage, prerogative, favor, license, privilege; A reward, recompense*

II ***nōn sine ... relīquisse***, indir. disc. §580

III **sēdēs, sēdis**, F. (SED-), *a seat, bench, chair, throne; A seat, dwelling-place, residence, habitation, abode, temple*

IV ***sēdēs habēre,*** indir. disc. §580

V ***ab ipsīs,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

VI ***concessās***, ppp. modifies *sedēs*

VII A Participle is often used to express concisely an idea which might have been expanded into a Clause, particularly an idea of Cause, Condition, Opposition, Characterization, or Description. Thus—Expressing Characterization or Description: *victis, venientes, those beaten, those coming up*, meaning, *those who had been beaten, those who were coming up* (I.XXV)

VIII **concēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus** (CON + CĒDŌ), Intrans, *to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove*; Trans, *to grant, concede, allow, consign, resign, yield, vouchsafe, confirm*

IX ***voluntāte***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

stīpendium capere[I] iūre[II] bellī

=that (he) is seizing the tribute by right of war

~that he took by right of war, the tribute

quod victōrēs victīs[III] impōnere[IV] cōnsuē[ve]rint[V] [VI]

=(the tribute) which conquerors were wont to impose on the conquered

~which conquerors are accustomed to impose on the conquered

Ariovistus briefly replied to the demands of Cæsar; but expatiated largely on his own virtues, *"that he had crossed the Rhine not of his own accord, but on being invited and sent for by the Gauls; that he had not left home and kindred without great expectations and great rewards; that he had settlements in Gaul, granted by the Gauls themselves; that the hostages had been given by their good-will; that he took by right of war the tribute which conquerors are accustomed to impose on the conquered.*

I ***stīpendium capere iūre bellī***, indir. disc. §580

II ***iūre***, abl. of spec. §418

III ***victīs***, dat. with comp. v. *impōnere.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

IV **impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** (IN + PONO), *to place upon, set on, impose, establish, introduce, set, place*

V **consuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus** (FROM SUUS), *to become used, accustom oneself*; Hence, perf, *to be wont, be accustomed*

VI ***quod…cōnsuērint,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

I.XLIV.II

NON SESE GALLIS SED GALLOS SIBI BELLVM INTVLISSE; OMNES GALLIÆ CIVITATES AD SE OPPVGNANDVM VENISSE AC CONTRA SE CASTRA HABVISSE; EAS OMNES COPIAS A SE VNO PRŒLIO PVLSAS AC SVPERATAS ESSE.

"NON EGO GALLIS, SED GALLI MIHI BELLUM INTULERUNT; OMNES GALLIÆ CIVITATES AD ME OPPUGNANDUM VENERUNT AC CONTRA ME CASTRA HABUERUNT; EÆ OMNES COPIÆ A ME UNO PRŒLIO PULSÆ AC SUPERATÆ SUNT."

Nōn sēsē Gallīs[I] sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse[II]

=that he (had not borne war) on the Gauls, but that the Gauls had borne war upon him

~that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him

omnes Galliæ cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum[III] vēnisse

=that all the states of Gaul had came to him for <the purpose of> attacking him

~that all the states of Gaul came to attack him

ac[IV] contrā sē castra habuisse[V]

=and that (all the states of Gaul) had held a camp across from him

~and had encamped against him

I ***Gallīs***, dat. with comp. v. *intulisse.* §370

II ***sēsē…intulisse,*** indir. disc. §580

III ***ad sē oppugnandum,*** acc. of the gerundive expressing purpose. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose. §506

IV **atque** (OR **ac**—ONLY BEFORE CONSONANTS), CONJ. (AD + QUE), *and* (like *-que*, it connects words or thoughts which form a whole, but unlike *-que* gives prominence rather to what follows, and is rarely repeated)

V ***omnēs…vēnisse…habuisse,*** indir. disc. §580

eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē[I] ūnō prœliō pulsās [esse] ac superātās esse[II]

=that all these troops had been repulsed by him and had been overcome in a single battle

~that all their forces had been routed and beaten by him in a single battle

That he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him; that all the states of Gaul came to attack him, and had encamped against him; that all their forces had been routed and beaten by him in a single battle.

I.XLIV.III

SI ITERVM EXPERIRI VELINT, SE ITERVM PARATVM ESSE DECERTARE; SI PACE VTI VELINT, INIQVVM ESSE DE STIPENDIO RECVSARE QVOD SVA VOLVNTATE AD ID TEMPVS PEPENDERINT.

"SĪ ITERUM EXPERIRI VOLUNT, (EGO) ITERUM PARATUS SUM DECERTARE; SI PACE UTI VOLUNT, INIQUUM EST DE STIPENDIO RECUSARE QUOD SUA VOLUNTATE AD HOC TEMPUS PEPENDERUNT."

Sī iterum experīrī[III] velint[IV V]

=(that) if they wish to try again

~that if they choose to make a second trial

I ***ā sē,*** abl. of agent. §405

II ***cōpiās…pulsās ac superātās esse,*** indir. disc. §580

III **experior, -īrī, -pertus, —** DEP. (PAR-), *to try, prove, test, experience, endure; To try, undertake, attempt, make trial, undergo, experience*

IV **voluī, velle** (VOL-), *to will, wish, want, purpose, be minded, determine*

V ***sī…velint,*** simple pres. condition in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: §589

sē iterum parātum esse[I] dēcertāre[II]

=that he had been prepared to go through a contest again

~he was ready to encounter them again

sī pāce[III] ūtī velint[IV]

=(but) if they wish to employ peace

~but if they chose to enjoy peace

inīquum[V] esse[VI] dē stīpendiō recūsāre[VII]

=that it is unfair to make an objection against the tribute

~it was unfair to refuse the tribute

quod suā voluntāte[VIII] ad id tempus pependerint[IX X]

=(the tribute) which by their own free-will they weighed out till that time

~which of their own free-will they had paid up to that time

That if they chose to make a second trial, he was ready to encounter them again; but if they chose to enjoy peace, it was unfair to refuse the tribute, which of their own free-will they had paid up to that time.

I ***sē…parātum esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *prædicāvit.* §580

II **dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DĒ + CERTŌ), In battle, *to go through a contest, fight out*

III ***pāce***, abl. with special v. *ūtī.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

IV ***sī…velint,*** simple pres. condition in indir. disc. §589

V **inīquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IN + ÆQUUS), *uneven, slanting, steep; Unfair, unjust*

VI ***inīquum esse,*** indir. disc. §580

VII **recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (RE- + CAUSA), *to make an objection against, decline, reject, refuse, be reluctant to do*

VIII ***suā voluntāte,*** abl. of spec. §418

IX **pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus** (PAND-), *to suspend, weigh, weigh out; To weigh out in payment, pay, pay out*

X ***quod…pependerint,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

I.XLIV.IV

AMICITIAM POPVLI ROMANI SIBI ORNAMENTO ET PRÆSIDIO, NON DETRIMENTO, ESSE OPORTERE, IDQVE SE EA SPE PETISSE.

“AMICITIAM POPULI ROMANI MIHI ORNAMENTO ET PRÆSIDIO, NON DETRIMENTO ESSE OPORTET, IDQUE ... HAC SPE PETIT.”

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō[I] et præsidiō[II] nōn dētrīmentō[III] [IV], esse oportēre[V]

=that the friendship of the Roman people ought to be <a source of> an ornament and <a source of> safeguard, not <a source of> a detriment to him

~that it is fitting that the friendship of the Roman people serve for himself as a ornament and safeguard, not a harm

idque sē eā spē[VI] petisse[VII]

=and that he had sought it by <means of> that hope

~and that he sought it with that expectation

That the friendship of the Roman people ought to prove to him an ornament and a safeguard, not a detriment; and that he sought it with that expectation.

I **ōrnāmentum, -ī**, N. (ORNO), *apparatus, accoutrement;* Fig., *an ornament, distinction*

II **præsidium, ī**, N. (PRÆSES), *defence, protection, guardianship, help, aid, assistance*

III **dētrīmentum, -ī**, N. (DE + TER-), *that which is worn away; Wear and tear, loss, damage, detriment*

IV ***sibi ōrnāmentō et præsidiō, nōn dētrīmentō,*** dat. of purpose. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: §382

V ***amīcitiam…oportēre,*** indir. disc. §580

VI ***eā spē,*** abl. of means. §409

VII ***sē…petīsse,*** indir. disc. §580

I.XLIV.V

SI PER POPVLVM ROMANVM STIPENDIVM REMITTATVR ET DEDITICII SVBTRAHANTVR, NON MINVS LIBENTER SESE RECVSATVRVM POPVLI ROMANI AMICITIAM, QVAM ADPETIERIT.

“SI PER POPULUM ROMANUM STIPENDIUM REMITTETUR ET DEDITICII SUBTRAHENTUR, NON MINUS LIBENTER ... RECUSABO POPULI ROMANI AMICITIAM QUAM ADPETII.”

Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur[I] [II]

=(but) if, through the Roman people, the tribute should be given up

~but if through the Roman people the tribute was to be discontinued

et dēditiciī subtrahantur[III] [IV] [V]

=and (if) the surrendered men should be withdrawn

~and those who surrendered to be seduced from him

I ***remittātur***, pres. subj. pass. in the condition after *sī*

II **remittō, -ere, mīsī, missus** (RE + MITTŌ), *to let go back, send back, despatch back, drive back, cause to return*; With respect to a person, *to free one from any thing; to give up, grant, forgive, yield, resign, concede, surrender, sacrifice* a thing to any one (= *concedere, condonare*); with acc. of the offence

III ***subtrahantur***, pres. subj. pass. in the condition after *sī*

IV ***sī…remittātur…subtrahantur,*** fut. cond. in indir. disc. §589

V **subtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus** (SUB + TRAHŌ), *to draw from below, drag out, draw off, carry off, withdraw, take away, remove*

nōn minus libenter[I] sēsē recūsātūrum [esse][II] [III] populī Rōmānī amīcitiam

=that, no less willingly, he would refuse the friendship of the Roman people

~he would renounce the friendship of the Roman people no less heartily

quam adpetierit[IV] [V]

=than he sought (it)

~than he had sought it

But if through the Roman people the tribute was to be discontinued, and those who surrendered to be seduced from him, he would renounce the friendship of the Roman people no less heartily than he had sought it.

I.XLIV.VI

QVOD MVLTITVDINEM GERMANORVM IN GALLIAM TRADVCAT, ID SE SVI MVNIENDI, NON GALLIÆ OPPVGNANDÆ CAVSA FACERE: EIVS REI TESTIMONIVM ESSE QVOD NISI ROGATVS NON VENERIT, ET QVOD BELLVM NON INTVLERIT SED DEFENDERIT.

“QUOD MULTITUDINEM GENNANORUM IN GALLIAM TRADUCO, ID MEI MUNIENDI, NON GALLIÆ IMPUGNANDÆ CAUSA FACTO: EIUS REI TESTIMONIUM EST QUOD NISI ROGATUS NON VENI, ET QUOD BELLUM NON INTULI, SED DEFENDI.”

I **libenter**, ADV. (LIBENS), *willingly, cheerfully, gladly, with pleasure*

II **recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (RE- + CAUSA), *to make an objection against, decline, reject, refuse, be reluctant to do*

III ***sēsē…recūsātūrum,*** indir. disc. §580

IV **appetō, -ere, -īvī** (OR **-iī**)**, -ītus** (AD + PETO), Trans, *to strive for, reach after, grasp at*; Fig., *to strive after, long for, desire, seek, court*

V ***quam appetierit,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

Quod[I] multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat[II]

=<as for the fact> that he is leading a multitude of Germans into Gaul

~as to his leading over a host of Germans into Gaul

id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliæ oppugnandæ[III] causā[IV] facere[V]

=that he is doing it for the sake of defending himself and not (for the sake) of attacking Gaul

~that he was doing it for the sake of fortifying himself and not for the sake of attacking Gaul

eius reī testimōnium esse[VI]

=that there is testimony of this thing

~that there was evidence of this

I A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning, *as to the fact that, as regards the fact that*, may have the force of an Accusative or Ablative of Specification. Thus, *quod ... enuntiarit, as to the fact that he had reported*, in the direct form, *quod enuntiavi, as to the fact that I have reported* (I.XVII)

II ***quod…trādūcat,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III ***suī mūniendī nōn Galliæ impugnandæ,*** gen. of the gerundive with *causā.* The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. §504 & Peculiar Genitive constructions are the following: The genitive is often used with the ablatives causā, grātiā, for the sake of; ergō, because of; and the indeclinable īnstar, like; also with prīdiē, the day before; postrīdiē, the day after; tenus, as far as. §359ii

IV ***causā***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

V ***sē…facere,*** indir. disc. §580

VI ***testimōnium esse,*** indir. disc. §580

quod[I] nisi rogātus[II] nōn vēnerit

=that he, unless <having been> asked, would not come

~the fact that he did not come without being invited

et quod bellum nōn intulerit

=and that he did not bring on war

~and the fact that he did not make war

sed dēfenderit[III]

=but he warded (it) off

~but merely warded it off

As to his leading over a host of Germans into Gaul, that he was doing this with a view of securing himself, not of assaulting Gaul: that there was evidence of this, in that he did not come without being invited, and in that he did not make war, but merely warded it off.

I.XLIV.VII

SE PRIVS IN GALLIAM VENISSE QVAM POPVLVM ROMANVM.

"EGO PRIUS IN GALLIAM VENI QUAM POPULUS ROMANUS."

I A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning, *the fact that, that*, has its Verb in the Indicative, and may stand as Subject, or Predicate, or Object of a Verb, or in Apposition. Thus, *magno erat impedimento, quod ... neque ... poterant, a great hindrance ... was the fact that they were able neither to* ..., the quod-clause being the Subject of *erat* (I.XXV); *causa mittendi fuit quod ... volebat, the reason for sending was the fact that he wanted* ... the quod-clause being in Predicate (II.I); *multæ res ... in primis quod ... videbat, many circumstances, first of all the fact that he saw* ... the quod-clause being in Apposition with *res* (I.XXXIII)

II ***rogātus***, ppp. of v. *rōgo*

III ***quod nisi…venerit…intulerit…defenderit,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse[I] quam[II] populum Rōmānum

=that he had come into Gaul earlier than the Roman people

~that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people

That he had come into Gaul before the Roman people.

I.XLIV.VIII

NVMQVAM ANTE HOC TEMPVS EXERCITVM POPVLI ROMANI GALLIÆ PROVINCIÆ FINIBVS EGRESSVM.

“NUMQUAM ANTE HOC TEMPUS EXERCITUS POPULI ROMANI ... PROVINCIÆ FINIBUS EGRESSUS (EST).”

Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliæ prōvinciæ fīnibus[III] ēgressum [esse][IV V]

=that never before this time did the army of the Roman people go beyond the frontiers of the province of Gaul

~that never before this time did a Roman army go beyond the frontiers of the province of Gaul

That never before this time did a Roman army go beyond the frontiers of the province of Gaul.

I.XLIV.IX

QVID SIBI VELLET, CVR IN SVAS POSSESSIONES VENIRET?

“QUID TIBI VIS? CUR IN MEAS POSSESSIONES VENIS?”

I ***sē…vēnisse,*** indir. disc. §580

II **quam**, ADV. (QUI), Relat., *in what manner, to what degree, how greatly, how, how much*; Implying difference of degree (after a comp. or word of comparison), *than*

III abl. of place from which. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition. §427

IV **ēgredior, -ī gressus, —** DEP. (EX + GRADIOR) with abl., Intrans, *to go out, come forth, march out, go away*; Trans, *to go beyond, pass out of, leave*

V ***exercitum…ēgressum,*** indir. disc. §580

Quid sibi vellet[I]

=what (said he) should he (Cæsar) desire for himself? *~what [said he] does [Cæsar] desire?*

cūr in suās possessiōnēs[II] venīret[III]

=why should he (Cæsar) come into his own (Ariovistus') possessions? *~why come into his [Ariovistus] properties?*

What [said he] does [Cæsar] desire? Why come into his [Ariovistus] domains?

I.XLIV.X

PROVINCIAM SVAM HANC ESSE GALLIAM, SICVT ILLAM NOSTRAM.

"PROVINCIA MEA HÆC EST GALLIA, SICUT ILLA VESTRA."

Prōvinciam suam hanc esse[IV] Galliam

=that this (part of) Gaul is his own province *~that this was his province of Gaul*

sīcut illam nostram

=just as that (province) (is) ours *~just as that is ours*

That this was his province of Gaul, just as that is ours.

I ***quid sibi vellet,*** question in indir. disc. A question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. §586

II **possessiō, -ōnis**, F. (SED-), *a taking possession of, seizing, occupying, taking; A thing possessed, possession, property, estate*

III ***cūr…venīret,*** question in indir. disc. §586

IV ***prōvinciam…esse,*** indir. disc. §580

I.XLIV.XI

VT IPSI CONCEDI NON OPORTERET, SI IN NOSTROS FINES IMPETVM FACERET, SIC ITEM NOS ESSE INIQVOS QVOD IN SVO IVRE SE INTERPELLAREMVS.

“VT MIHI CONCEDI NON OPORTET, SI IN VESTROS FINĪS IMPETUM FACIAM, SIC ITEM VOS ESTIS INIQUI QUOD IN MEO IURE ME INTERPELLATIS.”

Vt ipsī concēdī[I] nōn oportēret[II] [III]

=as it is not proper to be granted for (him) himself (Ariovistus)	*~no concession ought to be made to him*

sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret[IV] [V]

=if he should make an attack on our borders	*~if he were to make an attack upon our territories*

sīc item[VI] nōs esse[VII] inīquōs

=thus, likewise, that our men are unjust	*~so, likewise, that we were unjust*

quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus[VIII]

=as we were hindering him in his own right	*~to obstruct him in his prerogative*

I **concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus** (CON + CĒDŌ), Intrans, *to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove*; Trans, *to grant, concede, allow, consign, resign, yield, vouchsafe, confirm*

II **oportet, -ēre, -uit, —** IMPERS., *it is necessary, is proper, is becoming, behooves*

III ***ut…oportēret,*** apodosis of fut. less vivid condition in indir. disc. §589

IV ***faceret***, pres. subj. in the condition after *sī*

V ***sī…faceret,*** protasis of fut. less vivid condition in indir. disc. §589

VI **item**, ADV., *likewise, besides, also, further, moreover, too, as well*

VII ***nōs esse,*** indir. disc. §580

VIII **interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (INTER + PELLO), *to interrupt, break in upon*; In gen. *to hinder, prevent, obstruct*

As it ought not to be pardoned in him, if he were to make an attack upon our territories; so, likewise, that we were unjust, to obstruct him in his prerogative.

I.XLIV.XII

QVOD FRATRES (A SENATV) ÆDVOS APPELLATOS DICERET, NON SE TAM BARBARVM NEQVE TAM IMPERITVM ESSE RERVM VT NON SCIRET NEQVE BELLO ALLOBROGVM PROXIMO ÆDVOS ROMANIS AVXILIVM TVLISSE NEQVE IPSOS IN EIS CONTENTIONIBVS QVAS ÆDVI SECVM ET CVM SEQVANIS HABVISSENT AVXILIO POPVLI ROMANI VSOS ESSE.

“QUOD FRATRES A SENATU HÆDUOS APPELLATOS DICIS, NON (EGO) TAM BARBARUS ... SUM ... UT NON SCIAM NEQUE BELLO ALLOBROGUM PROXIMO HÆDUOS ROMANIS AUXILIUM TULISSE, NEQUE IPSOS, IN HIS CONTENTIONIBUS QUAS HÆDUI MECUM ... HABUERUNT (HABUERINT), AUXILIO POPULI ROMANI USOS ESSE.”

Quod

=that *~as to the fact that*

frātrēs (a senatu) Æduōs appellātōs [esse]

=the Ædui had been called 'brothers' (by the senate) *~the Ædui had been styled 'brethren' by the senate*

dīceret

=he (Cæsar) said *~Cæsar's saying*

nōn sē tam barbarum[I] neque tam imperītum[II] esse rērum

=that he is not so uncivilized nor so inexperienced of things

~he was not so uncivilized nor so ignorant of affairs

ut nōn scīret[III]

=that he did not know

~as not to know

neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Æduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse[IV]

=that the Ædui in the last war of the Allobroges had neither borne aid to the Romans

~that the Ædui in the very last war with the Allobroges had neither rendered assistance to the Romans

neque ipsōs in eīs contentiōnibus[V]

=nor they themselves (receive any aid from the Roman people), in these struggles

~nor received any from the Roman people in the contentions

quas Æduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent[VI]

=which the Ædui had had with himself (i.e., the Germans) and with the Sequani

~which the Ædui had been maintaining with him and with the Sequani

I **barbarus, -a, -um**, ADJ., *of strange speech, speaking jargon, unintelligible; Like a foreigner, rude, uncultivated, ignorant, uncivilized*

II **imperītus, -a, -um**, ADJ., *inexperienced, unversed, unfamiliar, not knowing, unacquainted with, unskilled, ignorant*

III ***ut…scīret,*** clause of result. The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534). §536

IV ***Æduōs…tulisse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *scīret.* §580

V **contentiō, -ōnis**, F. (COM- + TA-), *a stretching, straining, exertion, tension, effort, struggle; A contest, contention, strife, fight, dispute, controversy*

VI ***quās…habuissent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

auxiliō[I] populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse[II] [III]

=that (the Allobroges) had used, (received) the aid of the Roman people (i.e., asked the Romans for help against the Germans and Sequani)

~nor received any from the Roman people in the struggles

As for Cæsar's saying that the Aedui had been styled "brethren" by the senate, he was not so uncivilized nor so ignorant of affairs, as not to know that the Aedui in the very last war with the Allobroges had neither rendered assistance to the Romans, nor received any from the Roman people in the struggles which the Aedui had been maintaining with him and with the Sequani.

I.XLIV.XIII

DEBERE SE SVSPICARI SIMVLATA CÆSAREM AMICITIA, QVOD EXERCITVM IN GALLIA HABEAT, SVI OPPRIMENDI CAVSA HABERE.

"DEBEO SUSPICARI SIMULATA TE AMICITIA QUEM EXERCITUM IN GALLIA HABES MEI OPPRIMENDI CAUSA HABERE."

Dēbēre[IV] sē suspicārī[V]

=that he ought to suspect

~he must feel suspicious

I *auxiliō*, abl. with special v. *ūsōs esse.* §410

II **ūtor, -ī, -ūsus, —** DEP., *to use, make use of, employ, profit by, take advantage of, enjoy, serve oneself with; To experience, undergo, receive, enjoy*

III ***ipsōs…ūsōs esse,*** indir. disc. §580

IV ***dēbēre sē suspicārī***, indir. disc. dependent on *prædicāvit.* §580

V **suspicor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (SPEC-), *to mistrust, suspect*

simulātā[I] Cæsarem amīcitiā[II]

=that Cæsar, with friendship <having been> feigned

~that Cæsar, though feigning friendship

quod exercitum in Galliā habeat[III]

=because he has an army in Gaul

~as the reason for his keeping an army in Gaul

suī opprimendī[IV] [V] causā[VI] [eum] habēre[VII]

=(Cæsar) is holding (an army there) for the sake of overthrowing him

~was keeping it with the view of crushing him

He must feel suspicious, that Cæsar, though feigning friendship as the reason for his keeping an army in Gaul, was keeping it with the view of crushing him.

I.XLIV.XIV

QVI NISI DECEDAT ATQVE EXERCITVM DEDVCAT EX HIS REGIONIBVS, SESE ILLVM NON PRO AMICO SED HOSTE HABITVRVM.

"TU NISI DECEDES ATQUE EXERCITUM DEDUCES ... EGO TE NON PRO AMICO, SED PRO HOSTE HABEBO."

I **simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (SIMILIS), *to make like, imitate, copy, represent; To represent, feign, assume the appearance of, pretend, counterfeit, simulate*

II ***simulātā…amīcitiā,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

III ***quod…habeat,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV **opprimō, -ere, -essī, -essus** (OB + PREMO), *to press against, press together, press down, close; to overthrow, overwhelm, crush, overpower, prostrate, subdue*

V ***suī opprimendī,*** gen. of the gerundive with *causā.* §359ii & §504

VI ***causā***, abl. of cause. §404

VII ***Cæsarem…habēre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *suspicari.* §580

Quī[I] nisi dēcēdat

=who unless he (Cæsar) departs | *~and that unless he depart*

atque exercitum dēdūcat[II] ex hīs regionibus[III]

=and (unless he) leads away (his) army from these regions | *~and withdraw his army from these regions*

sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō sed [pro] hoste habitūrum [esse][IV]

=that he would consider him, not as a friend, but [as] an enemy | *~he shall regard him not as a friend, but as a fœ*

And that unless he depart and withdraw his army from these parts, he shall regard him not as a friend, but as a foe.

I.XLIV.XV

QVOD SI EVM INTERFECERIT, MVLTIS SE NOBILIBVS PRINCIPIBVSQVE POPVLI ROMANI GRATVM ESSE FACTVRVM: ID SE AB IPSIS PER EORVM NVNTIOS COMPERTVM HABERE, QVORVM OMNIVM GRATIAM ATQVE AMICITIAM EIVS MORTE REDIMERE POSSET.

"QUOD SI TE INTERFECERO, MULTIS (EGO) NOBILIBUS ... GRATUM ... FACIAM; ID (EGO) AB IPSIS ... COMPERTUM HABEO QUORUM OMNIUM GRATIAM ... TUA MORTE REDIMERE POSSUM."

I ***quī***: A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *qua de causa, and for this reason, for this reason* (I.I); qui ... prœlium committuut (Historical Present), *they* (or *and they*) ... *joined battle* (I.XV)

II ***quī nisi dēcēdat…dēdūcat,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

III **regiō, -ōnis**, F. (REG-), *a direction, line; A portion of country, territory, province, district, region*

IV ***sēsē…habitūrum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *prædicāvit.* §580

Quod sī eum interfēcerit[V]

=as to which, if he should kill him

~but, if he should put him to death

multīs sē nōbilibus[II] prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum[III]

=he would do a favour for many nobles and leaders of the Roman people

~he should do what would please many of the nobles and leading men of the Roman people

id[IV] sē ab ipsīs[V] per eōrum nūntiōs compertum[VI] habēre[VII]

=that he has it, <having been> found out through their messengers from themselves

~he had assurance of that from themselves through their messengers

V ***quod sī…interfēcerit,*** fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

II ***nōbilibus principibusque,*** dat. with adj. *grātum*. The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites. Adjectives of this kind are accommodātus, aptus; amīcus, inimīcus, īnfestus, invīsus, molestus; idōneus, opportūnus, proprius; ūtilis, inūtilis; affīnis, fīnitimus, propinquus, vīcīnus; pār, dispār, similis, dissimilis; iūcundus, grātus; nōtus, īgnōtus, and others. §384

III ***sē…factūrum,*** indir. disc. §580

IV ***id***: the Neuter Singular and Neuter Plural of *hic, ille*, and *is* is frequently used with the meaning *this* (*thing*), *that* (*thing*), *it, these things, those things*; a Noun may sometimes be supplied in translation. Thus, *id quod, that which* (I.V); I*d eis persuasit, he persuaded them* (*to*) *that course* (I.II); *ilia esse vera, that those statements were true* (I.XX)

V ***ab ipsīs***, abl. of agent. §405

VI **comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertus** (COM + PERIO), *to obtain knowledge of, find out, ascertain, learn*

VII ***sē…habēre,*** indir. disc. §580

quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius morte[I] redimere[II] posset[III]

=that the gratitude and friendship of all whom, he was be able to buy back by <means of> his (Cæsar's) death

~and could purchase the favor and the friendship of them all by his [Cæsar's] death

And that, even if he should put him to death, he should do what would please many of the nobles and leading men of the Roman people; he had assurance of that from themselves through their messengers, and could purchase the favor and the friendship of them all by his [Cæsar's] death.

I.XLIV.XVI

QVOD SI DISCESSISSET ET LIBERAM POSSESSIONEM GALLIÆ SIBI TRADIDISSET, MAGNO SE ILLVM PRÆMIO REMVNERATVRVM ET QVÆCVMQVE BELLA GERI VELLET SINE VLLO EIVS LABORE ET PERICVLO CONFECTVRVM.

"QUOD SI DISCESSERIS ET ... POSSESSIONEM GALLIÆ MIHI TRADIDERIS, MAGNO EGO TE PRÆMIO REMUNERABO, ET QUÆCUMQUE BELLA GERI VOLES SINE ULLO TUO LABORE ... CONFICIAM."

Quod sī discessisset

=as to which, if he should have departed

~but, if he would depart

et līberam possessiōnem Galliæ sibi[IV] trādidisset[V][VI]

=and (if) he should have handed over to him the free possession of Gaul

~and surrender to him the free possession of Gaul

I *morte*, abl. of means. §409

II **redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus** (RED- + EMO), *to buy back, repurchase, redeem*

III ***quōrum…posset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

IV ***sibi***, dat. with comp. v. ***trādidisset***. §370

V **trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus** (TRANS + DO), *to give up, hand over, deliver, transmit, surrender, consign*

VI ***quod sī discessisset…trādidisset,*** fut. condition in indir. disc. §589

magnō sē illum [Cæsarem] præmiō[I] remūnerātūrum [esse][II III]

=that he would remunerate him (Cæsar) by <means of> a great reward	*~he would recompense him with a great reward*

et quæcumque bella gerī vellet[IV V]

=and whatever wars he (Cæsar) wished to be waged	*~and whatever wars he wished to be carried on*

sine ūllō eius labōre[VI] et perīculō[VII] cōnfectūrum [esse][VIII IX]

=that he would execute (those wars), without any labor and risk of him (Cæsar)	*~would bring to a close without any trouble or risk on the part of Cæsar*

But if he would depart and resign to him the free possession of Gaul, he would recompense him with a great reward, and would bring to a close whatever wars he wished to be carried on, without any trouble or risk to him."

I ***magnō præmiō***, abl. of means. §409

II **remūneror, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (RE + MŪNEROR), *to repay, reward, recompense, remunerate*

III ***sē…remūnerātūrum,*** indir. disc. §580

IV ***vellet***, imperf. subj. act. due to ōrātiō oblīqua; translate as if in imperf. act. indic.

V ***quæcumque…vellet,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

VI **labor, -ōris**, M. (LAB-), *labor, toil, exertion; Drudgery, hardship, fatigue, distress, trouble, pain, suffering*

VII **perīculum, -ī**, N. (PAR-), *a trial, experiment, attempt, test, proof, essay; Risk, hazard, danger, peril*

VIII **cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (COM- + FACIO), *to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil*

IX ***sine ūllō ... cōnfectūrum [esse]***, indir. disc. §580

I.XLV

Cæsar declines to make a concession.

I.XLV.I

MVLTA AB CÆSARE IN EAM SENTENTIAM DICTA SVNT QVARE NEGOTIO DESISTERE NON POSSET: NEQVE SVAM NEQVE POPVLI ROMANI CONSVETVDINEM PATI VTI OPTIME MERITOS SOCIOS DESERERET, NEQVE SE IVDICARE GALLIAM POTIVS ESSE ARIOVISTI QVAM POPVLI ROMANI.

" ... NEQUE MEA NEQUE POPULI ROMANI CONSUETUDO PATITUR UTI OPTIME MERITOS SOCIOS DESERAM, NEQUE EGO IUDICO GALLIAM POTIUS ESSE ARIOVISTI QUAM POPULI ROMANI."

Multa ab Cæsare[I] in eam sententiam[II] dicta sunt

=many things were said by Cæsar in this sentiment

~many things were stated by Cæsar to the effect [to show]

I **ab Cæsare,** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab.§405

II **sentential, -æ**, F. (FROM SENTIO), *a way of thinking, opinion, judgment, sentiment; a purpose, determination, decision, will*, etc.

quārē[I] negōtiō[II] dēsistere nōn posset

=(namely,) why he was not able to desist from business | *~why he could not waive the business*

neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētudinem patī[III]

=(and) that neither his own (custom) nor the custom of the Roman people permitted (him) | *~and that neither his nor the Roman people's practice would suffer him*

utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret[IV] [V]

=that he should abandon (his) most meritorious allies | *~to abandon most meritorious allies*

neque se iūdicāre[VI]

=that nor is he judging | *~nor did he deem*

I ***quārē…posset,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

II ***negōtiō***, abl. of separ. Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative. §400

III ***cōnsuētudinem patī,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dicta sunt*. In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

IV ***utī…dēsereret,*** subst. clause of purpose. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

V **dēsero, -ere, -rui, -rtum** (DĒ + SERO), to undo or sever one's connection with another; hence, with Esp. reference to the latter, *to leave, forsake, abandon, desert, give up*

VI ***sē iudicāre,*** indir. disc. §580

Galliam potius esse[I] Ariovisti quam populī Rōmānī[II]

=that Gaul is of Ariovistus rather than of the Roman people

~that Gaul belonged to Ariovistus rather than to the Roman people

Many things were stated by Cæsar to the effect [to show]; *"why he could not waive the business, and that neither his nor the Roman people's practice would suffer him to abandon most meritorious allies, nor did he deem that Gaul belonged to Ariovistus rather than to the Roman people.*

I.XLV.II

BELLO SVPERATOS ESSE ARVERNOS ET RVTENOS AB Q. FABIO MAXIMO, QVIBVS POPVLVS ROMANVS IGNOVISSET NEQVE IN PROVINCIAM REDEGISSET NEQVE STIPENDIVM IMPOSVISSET.

"BELLO SUPERATI SUNT ARVERNI ET RUTENI AB Q. FABIO MAXIMO, QUIBUS POPULUS ROMANUS IGNOVIT NEQUE IN PROVINCIAM REDEGIT NEQUE STIPENDIUM IMPOSUIT."

I ***Galliam…esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *iudicāre.* §580

II ***Ariovistī…populī Rōmānī,*** pred. gen. of possession. The Possessive Genitive denotes the person or thing to which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs. Note 1. The Possessive Genitive may denote (1) the actual owner (as in Alexander's dog) or author (as in Cicero's writings), or (2) the person or thing that possesses some feeling or quality or does some act (as in Cicero's eloquence, the strength of the bridge, Catiline's evil deeds). In the latter use it is sometimes called the Subjective Genitive; but this term properly includes the possessive genitive and several other genitive constructions (nearly all, in fact, except the Objective Genitive, §347). ii. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb (Predicate Genitive). §343ii

Bellō[I] superātōs esse[II] Arvernōs et Rutēnōs[III] ab Q[uīntō][IV] Fabiō[V] Maximō[VI] [VII]

=that the Arverni and the Ruteni had been overcome by <means of> war by Q[uintus] Fabius Maximus

~that the Arverni and the Ruteni had been subdued in war by Quintus Fabius Maximus

quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset[VIII] [IX]

=(and) to whom (the Arverni and the Ruteni) the Roman people had pardoned

~and that the Roman people had pardoned them

neque [eōs] in prōvinciam[X] redēgisset[XI] [XII]

=nor had (the Roman people) reduced [those men] into a province

~and had not reduced them into a province

I ***bellō***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

II ***superātōs esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *dicta sunt.* §580

III **Rutēnī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a tribe on the borders of the province

IV **Quīntus, -ī,** M., As a Roman prænomen (orig. the fifth-bron?)

V **Fabius, -ī,** M., a Roman gentile name—Esp. *Quinus Fabius Maximus* (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Arverni in B.C. 121 on the Rhone; *Gaius Fabius*, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul; *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion

VI ***ab Q. Fabiō Maximō,*** abl. of agent. §405

VII **Maximus, -ī,** M. (SUP. OF MAGNUS, AS NOUN), a Roman family name

VIII **īgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus** (IN + (G)NOSCO), *to pardon, forgive, excuse, overlook, allow, indulge, make allowance*

IX ***quibus…ignōvisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

X Forum Note: This likely means that their territory had not been annexed by Rome in 121 BC and transformed into another transalpine province like Gallia Narbonensis, but that they had remained independent.

XI **redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus** (RED- + AGO), *to drive back, force back, lead back, bring back; To bring down, bring, reduce, force, compel, subdue*

XII ***quibus…imposuisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

neque stīpendium imposuisset[I]

=nor had (the Roman people) imposed a tribute (upon them) *~or imposed a tribute upon them*

That the Arverni and the Ruteni had been subdued in war by Quintus Fabius Maximus, and that the Roman people had pardoned them and had not reduced them into a province or imposed a tribute upon them.

I.XLV.III

QVOD SI ANTIQVISSIMVM QVODQVE TEMPVS SPECTARI OPORTERET, POPVLI ROMANI IVSTISSIMVM ESSE IN GALLIA IMPERIVM: SI IVDICIVM SENATVS OBSERVARI OPORTERET, LIBERAM DEBERE ESSE GALLIAM, QVAM BELLO VICTAM SVIS LEGIBVS VTI VOLVISSET.

“QUOD SI ANTIQUISSIMUM QUODQUE TEMPUS SPECTARI OPORTET, POPULI ROMANI IUSTISSIMUM EST IN GALLIA IMPERIUM; SI IUDICIUM SENATUS OBSERVARI OPORTET, LIBERA DEBET ESSE GALLIA, QUAM BELLO VICTAM SUIS LEGIBUS UTI VOLUERIT.”

I ***quibus…imposuisset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

Quod sī antīquissimum quodque[I] tempus[II] spectārī oportēret[III]

=<as to> which (but), if it behooved each most ancient time to be considered	*~and if the most ancient period was to be regarded*

populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse[IV] in Galliā imperium

=(then) the empire of the Roman people was the most just in Gaul	*~then was the sovereignty of the Roman people in Gaul most iust*

sī iūdicium senātūs[V] observārī[VI] oportēret[VII]

=if the it behooved the judgement of the Senate to be observed	*~if the decree of the Senate was to be observed*

līberam dēbēre esse[VIII] Galliam

=(then) Gaul ought to be free	*~then ought Gaul to be free*

I Sometimes the Indefinite Distributive Pronoun *quisque*, as, *each*, is used with a Superlative to designate a Class, or with a Numeral Ordinal to indicate a Proportion; thus, *nobilissimi cuiusque liberos, the children of every man of high rank* (I.XXXI); *decimum quemque militem, one soldier in ten*, Lit. *each tenth soldier* (V.LII)

II ***antīquissimum quodque tempus***, sg. acc., subj. of *spectārī*

III ***quod sī…oportēret,*** protasis of simple pres. cond. in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

IV apodosis of simple pres. cond. in indir. disc. §589

V ***iūdicium senātūs***, sg. acc., subj. of *observārī*

VI **observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (OB + SERVŌ), *to watch, note, heed, observe, take notice of, attend to*

VII ***sī…oportēret,*** protasis of simple pres. cond. in indir. disc. §589

VIII ***līberam dēbēre esse Galliam***, apodosis of simple pres. cond. in indir. disc. §589

quam bellō[I] victam[II] [popolus Rōmānus] suīs lēgibus[III] ūtī[IV] voluisset[V]

=(Gaul) which (although), <having been> conquered by <means of> war, [the Roman people] had wished to employ its own laws

~which, although it had been conquered, it had been about to employ its own laws

And if the most ancient period was to be regarded-then was the sovereignty of the Roman people in Gaul most just: if the decree of the Senate was to be observed, then ought Gaul to be free, which they [the Romans] had conquered in war, and had permitted to enjoy its own laws."

I ***bellō***, abl. of means. §409

II ***victam***, ppp. of *vincō*

III ***suīs legibus,*** abl. with special v. *ūtī*. The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

IV ***ūtī***, pres. inf. pass. of the v. *ūtor*

V **quam…voluisset,** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

I.XLVI

The conference is disrupted by an attack.

I.XLVI.I

DVM HÆC IN COLLOQVIO GERVNTVR, CÆSARI NVNTIATVM EST EQVITES ARIOVISTI PROPIVS TVMVLVM ACCEDERE ET AD NOSTROS ADEQVITARE, LAPIDES TELAQVE IN NOSTROS COICERE.

Dum hæc in colloquiō geruntur

=while these things are being transacted in the conference

~while these things are being transacted in the conference

Cæsarī nūntiātum est

=it was announced to Cæsar

~it was announced to Cæsar

equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum[I] accēdere[II]

=that the cavalry of Ariovistus was approaching nearer the mound

~that the cavalry of Ariovistus were approaching nearer the mound

et ad nostrōs adequitāre[III] [IV]

=and that (they) were riding towards our men

~and were riding up to our men

lapidēs[V] tēlaque in nostros coicere[VI] [VII] [VIII]

=(and) that (they) were throwing stones and missiles at our men

~and casting stones and weapons at them

While these things are being transacted in the conference it was announced to Cæsar that the cavalry of Ariovistus were approaching nearer the mound, and were riding up to our men, and casting stones and weapons at them.

I ***propius,*** taking role of a præp. to acc. *tumulum.* Certain Adverbs and Adjectives are sometimes used as Prepositions: The adverbs prīdiē, postrīdiē, propius, proximē, less frequently the adjectives propior and proximus, may be followed by the Accusative. §432

II ***equitēs…accēdere,*** indir. disc. dependent on *nūntiātum est.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

III **adequito, āre, āvi, ātum** (AD + EQUITO), With *ad., To ride to* or *toward* a place, *to gallop up to*

IV ***et ad nostrōs adequitāre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *nūntiātum est.* §580

V **lapis, -idis**, M., *a stone*

VI ***lapidēs tēlaque…coicere,*** indir. disc. §580

VII ***coicere***, alt. form of. *coniacio*

VIII **coniacio, -ere, -iēci, -iactum** (CON- + IACIO), *to throw, cast, urge, drive, hurl, thrust, put, place*

I.XLVI.II

CÆSAR LOQVENDI FINEM FACIT SEQVE AD SVOS RECEPIT SVISQVE IMPERAVIT NE QVOD OMNINO TELVM IN HOSTES REICERENT.

Cæsar loquendī[I] fīnem facit

=Cæsar makes an end of speaking	*~Cæsar made an end of his speaking*

sēque ad suōs recēpit

=and he took himself back to his own men	*~and betook himself to his men*

suīsque imperāvit

=and he ordered his own men	*~and commanded them*

nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent[II III]

=that they should not throw back any projectile at all at the enemy	*~that they should by no means return a weapon upon the enemy*

Cæsar made an end of his speech and betook himself to his men; and commanded them that they should by no means return a weapon upon the enemy.

I ***loquendī***, gen. of the gerund. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. § 504

II ***nē…reicerent,*** neg. subst. clause of purp. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

III **rēiciō, -ere, -rēiēcī, -iectus** (RE- + IACIO), *to throw back, fling back, hurl back*

I.XLVI.III

NAM ETSI SINE VLLO PERICVLO LEGIONIS DELECTÆ CVM EQVITATV PRŒLIVM FORE VIDEBAT, TAMEN COMMITTENDVM NON PVTABAT VT, PVLSIS HOSTIBVS, DICI POSSET EOS AB SE PER FIDEM IN COLLOQVIO CIRCVMVENTOS.

Nam etsī[I]

=for though	*~for though*

sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctæ[II] [III] cum equitātū prœlium fore[IV]

=that there would be a battle with the cavalry without any danger of (to) (his) chosen legion	*~that an engagement with the cavalry would be without any danger to his chosen legion*

vidēbat

=he saw	*~he was seeing*

tamen

=nonetheless	*~yet*

I **etsī**, CONJ. (ET + SĪ), Introducing a concession, *though, although, albeit*

II ***dēlēctæ***, sg. gen. ppp. *dēligō*

III ***legiōnis dēlēctæ***, obj. gen. Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object. Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar, the hate in a passive sense belongs to Cæsar, as odium, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as hate. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase amor patris, love of a father, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive). §348

IV ***prœlium fore,*** indir. disc. dependent on *vidēbat.* §580

committendum [esse][I]

=that it was <having> to be brought together in a contest (by him) *~that he ought to fight*

non putābat

=he did not think *~he did not think*

ut

=that *~lest*

pulsīs hostibus[II]

=with the enemy <having been> repulsed *~after the enemy were routed*

dīcī posset[III]

=it might be able to be said *~it might be said*

eōs ab sē[IV] per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs [esse]

=that those men were encircled by him (Cæsar) through the (misplaced) faith (in him) in the conference *~that they had been deceived by him under the pretence of faith in a conference*

For though he saw that an engagement with the cavalry would be without any danger to his chosen legion, yet he did not think proper to engage, lest, after the enemy were routed, it might be said that they had been insnared by him under the sanction of a conference.

I ***committendum [esse]***, fut. pass. periphrastic in indir. disc. (See chart §196) & §580

II ***pulsīs hostibus,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause.The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

III ***ut…posset,*** subst. clause of purp. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

IV ***ab sē***, abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

I.XLVI.IV

POSTEAQVAM IN VVLGVS MILITVM ELATVM EST QVA ARROGANTIA IN COLLOQVIO ARIOVISTVS VSVS OMNI GALLIA ROMANIS INTERDIXISSET, IMPETVMQVE IN NOSTROS EIVS EQVITES FECISSENT, EAQVE RES COLLOQVIVM VT DIREMISSET, MVLTO MAIOR ALACRITAS STVDIVMQVE PVGNANDI MAIVS EXERCITVI INIECTVM EST.

Posteā[I] quam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est

=after that, it was carried out among the multitude of soldiers

~when it was spread abroad among the common soldiery

quā arrogantiā[II] in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā[III] Rōmānīs[IV] interdīxisset[V VI]

=with which haughtiness Ariovistus employed in the conference, (and how) he had forbidden the Romans from all Gaul

~with what haughtiness Ariovistus had behaved at the conference, and how he had ordered the Romans to quit Gaul

I **posteā** (OR **post eā**) ADV., *after this, after that, hereafter, thereafter, afterwards, later*; With *quam*, *after that*

II ***quā arrogantiā,*** abl. with special v. *ūsus.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

III ***omnī Galliā,*** abl. of separ. Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative.§400

IV ***Rōmānīs***, dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). Th e dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed. §376

V **interdīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus** (INTER + DĪCŌ), *to interpose by speaking, forbid, prohibit, interdict*

VI ***quā arrogantiā…interdīxisset,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

impetumque in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent[I]

=and (how) his cavalry had made an attack against our men

~and how his cavalry had made an attack upon our men

eaque res colloquium ut[II] dirēmisset[III] [IV]

=and (how) this thing had broken off the conference

~and how this had broken off the conference

multō[V] maior alacritās[VI] studiumque pugnandī[VII] maius exercituī[VIII] iniectum est[IX]

=by much, a greater alacrity and a greater zeal of fighting was cast on to (our) army

~a much greater alacrity and eagerness for fighting was infused into our army

When it was spread abroad among the common soldiery with what haughtiness Ariovistus had behaved at the conference, and how he had ordered the Romans to quit Gaul, and how his cavalry had made an attack upon our men, and how this had broken off the conference, a much greater alacrity and eagerness for battle was infused into our army.

I ***ut…fēcissent,*** *ut* = *how,* indir. question. §573

II **ut** (OR **utī**.), ADV. OR CONJ. INDECLFORM., As adv. of manner. Interrog. (= *quomodo*), *how, in what way or manner*

III **dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus** (DIS- + EMO), *to take apart, part, separate, divide, cut off*; Fig., *to break off, interrupt, disturb, put off, delay*

IV ***ut…dirēmisset,*** *ut* = *how*, indir. question. §573

V ***multō***, abl. of deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

VI **alacritās, -ātis**, F. (ALACER), *liveliness, ardor, eagerness, alacrity, cheerfulness, encouragement*

VII ***pugnandī***, gen. of the gerund. §504

VIII ***exercituī***, dat. of ref. §376

IX **iniciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus** (IN + IACIO), *to throw in, put in, hurl upon, put on, cast on, set into*; Fig., *to bring into, inspire, suggest, impress, infuse, occasion, cause*

I.XLVII

Ariovistus reopens negotiations.

I.XLVII.I

BIDVO POST ARIOVISTVS AD CÆSAREM LEGATOS MITTIT: VELLE SE DE EIS REBVS QVÆ INTER EOS AGI CŒPTÆ NEQVE PERFECTÆ ESSENT AGERE CVM EO: VTI AVT ITERVM COLLOQVIO DIEM CONSTITVERET AVT, SI ID MINVS VELLET, E SVIS LEGATIS ALIQVEM AD SE MITTERET.

Bīduō post[I] Ariovistus ad Cæsarem lēgātōs mittit

=later by two days, Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Cæsar

~two days after, Ariovistus sends embassadors to Cæsar

[dīxit] velle[II] sē dē eīs rēbus

=[he said] that he wished /to deliberate with that man/ about those things

~to state that he wished about those matters

I ***bīduō post,*** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

II ***velle sē,*** indir. disc. implied from *lēgātōs mīsit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

quæ inter eōs agī cœptæ [essent][I]

=(those things) which had been begun to be deliberated between those men

~which had been begun to be treated of between them

agere cum eō

=to deliberate with him

~to treat with him

neque perfectæ essent

=and had not been concluded

~but had not been concluded

[et rogāvit] utī aut iterum colloquiō[II] diem cōnstitueret

=[and he asked] that he would either again set a day for a conference

~[and to beg] that he would either again appoint a day for a conference

aut

=or

~or

sī id minus [facere] vellet[III]

=if he less wished [to do] that

~if he were not willing to do that

I ***quæ…cœptæ…perfectæ essent,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

II ***colloquiō***, dat. of purp. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected. §382

III ***sī…vellet,*** protasis of simple pres. cond. in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

e suis[I] lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret[II]

=that he would send one from his own officers (as an ambassador) to him

~that he would send one of his [officers] as an embassador to him

Two days after, Ariovistus sends embassadors to Cæsar, to state, *"that he wished to treat with him about those things which had been begun to be treated of between them, but had not been concluded;"* [and to beg] that, "*he would either again appoint a day for a conference; or, if he were not willing to do that, that he would send one of his [officers] as an embassador to him."*

I.XLVII.II

COLLOQVENDI CÆSARI CAVSA VISA NON EST, ET EO MAGIS QVOD PRIDIE EIVS DIEI GERMANI RETINERI NON POTERANT QVIN IN NOSTROS TELA COICERENT.

Colloquendī[III] Cæsarī causa vīsa nōn est

=it did not seem to Cæsar (a good) cause of talking

~there did not appear to Cæsar any good reason for holding a conference

I Sometimes *de* or *ex* are used with the Ablative instead of the Genitive of the Whole; so regularly with *quidam* and words referring to Number. Thus, *quidam ex his, some of these* (II.XVII); *pauci de nostris, a few of our men* (I.XV)

II FORUM NOTE: I think that *legati* are technically just officers in a high position who are often used as ambassadors. So *e suis legatis aliquem* is here made one of his officers, and as an ambassador is added to clarify for English readers who are unaware that in Roman times these officers were used as ambassadors.

III ***Colloquendī***, gen. of the gerund. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. §504

et eō magis[I] quod prīdiē eius diēī[II] Germānī retinērī nōn poterant

=and on this account, the more because on the day before of this day, the Germans were not able to be restrained

~and the more so as on the previous day, the Germans could not be restrained

quīn[III] in nostrōs tēla coicerent[IV]

=that they would not cast projectiles at our men

~from casting weapons at our men

There did not appear to Cæsar any good reason for holding a conference; and the more so as the day before the Germans could not be restrained from casting weapons at our men.

I ***eō magis,*** abl. of deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

II ***prīdiē eius diēī,*** ablative of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

III Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ne, that not, quo minus, that not* (Lit. *by which the less*), and *quin, that not*, are used after Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by from with a Participle. Thus, *hos ... deterrere ne frumentum conferant, these through fear were holding back* (*the people*) *from furnishing the grain* (I.XVII); *retineri non potuerant quin ... tela conicerent, could not be restrained from hurling darts* (I.XLVII)

IV ***quīn…conicerent,*** *quīn* clause. A subjunctive clause with quīn is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negatived, either expressly or by implication. §558

I.XLVII.III

LEGATVM E SVIS SESE MAGNO CVM PERICVLO AD EVM MISSVRVM ET HOMINIBVS FERIS OBIECTVRVM EXISTIMABAT.

Lēgātum [e suis] sēsē magnō cum perīculō[I] ad eum missūrum [esse]

=that he would to send an envoy [from his own (officers)] (as an envoy) with great danger to him

~he should not without great danger send to him as embassador one of his [Roman] officers

et hominibus ferīs [II]obiectūrum [esse][III]

=and would throw (him) to savage men

~and should expose him to savage men

exīstimābat

=he thought

~he thought

He thought he should not without great danger send to him as embassador one of his [Roman] officers, and should expose him to savage men.

I ***magnō cum perīculō,*** abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

II ***hominibus ferīs,*** dat. with comp. v. *obiectūrum.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

III ***missūrum…obiectūrum,*** indir. disc. dependent on *exīstimābat.* §580

I.XLVII.IV

COMMODISSIMVM VISVM EST C. VALERIVM PROCILLVM, C. VALERI CABVRI FILIVM, SVMMA VIRTVTE ET HVMANITATE ADVLESCENTEM, CVIVS PATER A C. VALERIO FLACCO CIVITATE DONATVS ERAT, ET PROPTER FIDEM ET PROPTER LINGVÆ GALLICÆ SCIENTIAM, QVA MVLTA IAM ARIOVISTVS LONGINQVA CONSVETVDINE VTEBATVR, ET QVOD IN EO PECCANDI GERMANIS CAVSA NON ESSET, AD EVM MITTERE, ET M. METTIVM, QVI HOSPITIO ARIOVISTI VTEBATVR.

Commodissimum vīsum est

=(therefore) it seemed most proper

~[therefore] it seemed most proper

C[āium] Valerium Procillum, C[āiī] Valerī Cabūrī[I] fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte[II] adulēscentem

=Caius Valerius Procillus, the son of Caius Valerius Caburus, an adolescent with the highest courage and refinement

~C. Valerius Procillus, the son of C. Valerius Caburus, a young man of the highest courage and accomplishments

I **Caburus, -ī,** M., the personal name of *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul, made a Roman Citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus

II ***summā virtūte et hūmānitāte,*** abl. of quality. The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality. §415

cuius pater ā C[āiō] Valeriō Flaccō[I] [II] cīvitāte[III] dōnātus erat[IV]

=of whose father had been presented with citizenship by C[aius] Valerius Flaccus

~whose father had been presented with the freedom of the city by C. Valerius Flaccus

et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallicæ scientiam[V]

=both on account of (his) fidelity and on account of (his) knowledge of the Gallic language

~both on account of his fidelity and on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language

quā multā[VI] iam Ariovistus longinquā[VII] cōnsuētūdine[VIII] ūtēbātur

=with which Ariovistus, by long custom, was now making use of by much

~which Ariovistus, by long practice, now employed fluently

I ***ā C. Valeriō Flaccō,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

II **Flaccus, -ī,** M., a Roman name, see Valerius

III ***cīvitāte***, sp. v. *dōnātus erat* takes acc. of the person & abl. of the thing. Certain verbs may take either the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (in a different sense) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing. Such are dōnō, impertiō, induō, exuō, adspergō, īnspergō, circumdō, and in poetry accingō, implicō, and similar verbs. §364

IV **dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (DONUM), *To give as a present, present, bestow, grant, vouchsafe, confer*

V **scientia, -æ**, F. (SCIENS), *a knowing, knowledge, science*

VI ***quā multā,*** abl. with special v. *ūtēbātur.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

VII **longinquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (LONGUS), *far removed, far off, remote, distant; Long, of long duration, prolonged, lasting, continued, tedious*

VIII ***longinquā cōnsuētūdine,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

et quod in eō peccandī[I] [II] Germānīs[III] causa nōn esset[IV]

=and because there was not a cause of doing amiss to the Germans in him

~and because in his case the Germans would have no motive for committing violence

ad eum mittere[V]

=to send to him

~to send to him

et M[arcum] Mēttium[VI] quī hospitiō[VII] Ariovistī ūtēbātur

=and (as his colleague) M[arcus] Mettius, who was enjoyed the hospitality of Ariovistus

~and [as his colleague] M. Mettius, who had enjoyed the hospitality of Ariovistus

It seemed [therefore] most proper to send to him C. Valerius Procillus, the son of C. Valerius Caburus, a young man of the highest courage and accomplishments (whose father had been presented with the freedom of the city by C. Valerius Flaccus), both on account of his fidelity and on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language, which Ariovistus, by long practice, now spoke fluently; and because in his case the Germans would have no motive for committing violence; and [as his colleague] M. Mettius, who had shared the hospitality of Ariovistus.

I **peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (PIK-, TO BE ANGRY OF), *to miss, mistake, do amiss, transgress, commit a fault, offend, sin*

II ***peccandī***, gen. of the gerund. §504

III ***Germānīs***, dat. of possession. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote Possession. §373

IV ***quod…esset,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. The Causal Particles quod and quia take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another. §540 & A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative. §583

V ***ad eum mittere***, subj. nom. of *vīsum est*

VI **Mēttius, -ī,** M., a Gaul in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus

VII ***hospitiō,*** abl. of special v. *ūtēbātur.* §410

I.XLVII.V

HIS MANDAVIT VT QVÆ DICERET ARIOVISTVS COGNOSCERENT ET AD SE REFERRENT.

Hīs mandāvit

=he orders those men	*~he commissioned them*

ut

=that	*~that*

quæ dīceret[I] Ariovistus

=what (things) Ariovistus said	*~what Ariovistus had to say*

cognōscerent[II]

=they should learn	*~to learn*

et ad sē referrent[III]

=and that they should report back to him (Cæsar)	*~and to report to him*

He commissioned them to learn what Ariovistus had to say, and to report to him.

I ***quæ dīceret,*** subordinate clause in indir. disc. §583

II ***ut…cognōscerent,*** subst. clause of purp. §563

III ***ut…referrent,*** subst. clause of purp. §563

I.XLVII.VI

QVOS CVM APVD SE IN CASTRIS ARIOVISTVS CONSPEXISSET, EXERCITV SVO PRÆSENTE CONCLAMAVIT: QVID AD SE VENIRENT?

Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset[I]

=(but) when (those men) ~~whom~~ Ariovistus had observed, among himself, in the camp

~but when Ariovistus saw them before him in his camp

exercitū suō præsente[II]

=with his own army <being> present

~in the presence of his army

conclāmāvit

=he (Ariovistus) cried out

~he cried out

Quid[III] ad sē venīrent[IV]

=why should they come to him

~why were they come to him?

But when Ariovistus saw them before him in his camp, he cried out in the presence of his army, *"Why were they come to him?*

I ***cum…cōnspexisset,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

II ***exercitū suō præsente,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

III **quis, quid**, PRON. INTERROG. (CA-), Neut., *what, what thing?*; Transf. *Quid? how? why? wherefore?*

IV ***quid…venīrent,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

I.XLVII.VII

AN SPECVLANDI CAVSA?

An[I] speculandī[II] [III] causā

=or for the sake of spying

~was it perhaps for the purpose of acting as spies?

Was it for the purpose of acting as spies?"

I.XLVII.VIII

CONANTES DICERE PROHIBVIT ET IN CATENAS COIECIT.

Cōnantēs[IV] [eos] dīcere prohibuit

=he prohibited [those men] (when they were) attempting to speak

~he stopped them when they were attempting to speak

et in catēnās[V] [eos] coiēcit

=and he threw together [those men] into chains

~and cast them into chains

He stopped them when attempting to speak, and cast them into chains.

I The first part of the interrogation is freq. not expressed, but is to be supplied from the context; in this case, *an* begins the interrog., *or, or rather, or indeed, or perhaps* (but it does not begin an absolute, i.e. not disjunctive, interrog.)

II ***speculandī***, gen. of the gerund with *causā.* §504

III **speculor, -ārī, -ātus, —** DEP. (SPECULA), *to spy out, watch, observe, examine, explore*

IV A Participle is often used to express concisely an idea which might have been expanded into a Clause, particularly an idea of Cause, Condition, Opposition, Characterization, or Description. Thus *conantes: when they were attempting* (I.XLVII)

V **catēna, -æ**, F. (CAT-), *a chain, fetter, shackle*

I.XLVIII

Arioristus moves camp.

I.XLVIII.I

EODEM DIE CASTRA PROMOVIT ET MILIBVS PASSVVM SEX A CÆSARIS CASTRIS SVB MONTE CONSEDIT.

Eōdem diē[I] castra prōmōvit[II]

=on the same day he moved the camp forward

~the same day he moved his camp forward

et mīlibus[III] passuum sex ā Cæsaris castrīs[IV] sub[V] monte cōnsēdit

=and he settled under the foot of a hill by six thousands of paces from the camp of Cæsar

~and encamped under a hill six miles from Cæsar's camp

I **eōdem diē,** abl of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

II **prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus** (PRŌ + MOVEŌ), *to move forward, cause to advance, push onward, advance*

III ***mīlibus***, abl. deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

IV ***ā castrīs,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

V ***sub***, Sub, under, up to, with the accusative or the ablative. Of rest, with the ablative: as, sub Iove, in the open air (under the heaven, personified as Jove); sub monte, at the foot of the hill. §221

The same day he moved his camp forward and pitched under a hill six miles from Cæsar's camp.

I.XLVIII.II

POSTRIDIE EIVS DIEI PRÆTER CASTRA CÆSARIS SVAS COPIAS TRADVXIT ET MILIBVS PASSVVM DVOBVS VLTRA EVM CASTRA FECIT, EO CONSILIO VTI FRVMENTO COMMEATVQVE QVI EX SEQVANIS ET ÆDVIS SVPPORTARETVR CÆSAREM INTERCLVDERET.

Postrīdiē eius diēī[I] præter castra Cæsaris suās copiās trādūxit

=on the day after of this day, he led his own troops past the camp of Cæsar

~the day following he led his forces past Cæsar's camp

et mīlibus[II] passuum duōbus ultrā[III] eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō[IV]

=and he made a camp beyond him, by two thousand of paces, by <means of> this plan

~and encamped two miles beyond him with this design

utī[V]

=(namely,) in order that

~that

frūmentō commeātūque[VI]

=from the corn and provisions

~from the corn and provisions

I ***postrīdiē eius diēī,*** abl. of time. §423

II ***mīlibus***, abl. deg. of dif. §414

III **ūltrā**, ADV., *on the other side;* Of time or degree, *beyond, farther, over, more, besides, in addition*

IV ***eō cōnsiliō,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.§409

V Clauses of Purpose are most often introduced by *ut, uti, in order that, that,* or *nē, in order that not, lest*, and have their Verb in the Subjunctive

VI ***frūmentō commeātūque,*** abl. of separ. Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative. §400

quī[I] ex Sēquanīs et Æduīs supportārētur[II]

=which were being furnished from the Sequani and the Ædui

~which might be conveyed to him from the Sequani and the Ædui

Cæsarem interclūderet[III]

=he might shut out Cæsar

~he might cut off Cæsar

The day following he led his forces past Cæsar's camp, and encamped two miles beyond him; with this design that he might cut off Cæsar from the corn and provisions, which might be conveyed to him from the Sequani and the Aedui.

I A Relative referring to two or more Antecedents of different Gender or Number may agree with the nearest Antecedent, or be Masculine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a man, Feminine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a woman and the others things, or Neuter Plural in case only things are denoted; *thus, frumento* (Neut.) *commeatuque, qui* (M., sg.), *grain and* (*other*) *supplies which* ... (I.XLVIII)

II ***quī…supportārētur,*** subjunctive of integral part, or attraction. A clause depending upon a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause. §593

III ***utī…interclūderet,*** subst. clause of purp. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

I.XLVIII.III

EX EO DIE DIES CONTINVOS QVINQVE CÆSAR PRO CASTRIS SVAS COPIAS PRODVXIT ET ACIEM INSTRVCTAM HABVIT, VT, SI VELLET ARIOVISTVS PRŒLIO CONTENDERE, EI POTESTAS NON DEESSET.

Ex[I] eō diē diēs continuōs[II] quīnque Cæsar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit

=from that day, for five continous days, Cæsar led forth his own troops before the camp

~for five successive days from that day, Cæsar drew out his forces before the camp

et aciem īnstrūctam habuit

=and he inserted a battle line

~and he had a battle line drawn up

ut

=<in order> that

~that

sī vellet[III] Ariovistus prœliō[IV] contendere

=if Ariovistus is wished to engage in a battle

~if Ariovistus should be willing to engage in battle

I ***ex***, Ex, ē, from (the midst, opposed to in), out of, with the ablative (cf. ab and dē). Of time: as, ex eō diē quīntus, the fifth day from that (four days after); ex hōc diē, from this day forth. §221

II **continuus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (COM- + TA-), *joining, connecting, uninterrupted, continuous, unbroken*; Fig., of time*, successive, continuous*

III ***sī…vellet,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker.§592

IV ***prœliō***, abl. of manner. The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. §412

eī[I] potestās nōn deesset[II]

=an opportunity might not be absent for him	*~an opportunity might not be wanting to him*

For five successive days from that day, Cæsar drew out his forces before the camp, and put them in battle order, that, if Ariovistus should be willing to engage in battle, an opportunity might not be wanting to him.

I.XLVIII.IV

ARIOVISTVS HIS OMNIBVS DIEBVS EXERCITVM CASTRIS CONTINVIT, EQVESTRI PRŒLIO COTIDIE CONTENDIT.

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus[III] exercitum castrīs continuit

=Ariovistus, in all those days, held (his) army in the camp	*~Ariovistus all this time kept his army in camp*

equestrī prœliō[IV] cotīdiē contendit

=(but) he contended in daily battle of cavalry	*~but engaged daily in cavalry skirmishes*

Ariovistus all this time kept his army in camp: but engaged daily in cavalry skirmishes.

I ***eī***, dat. of possession. The Dative is used with esse and similar words to denote Possession. ii. Dēsum takes the dative; so occasionally absum (which regularly has the ablative). §373ii

II ***ut…nōn deesset,*** clause of purp. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.§531

III ***hīs omnibus diēbus,*** abl. of dur. of time. Special constructions of time are the following: Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative. §424ii

IV ***prœliō***, abl. of manner. §412

I.XLVIII.V

GENVS HOC ERAT PVGNÆ, QVO SE GERMANI EXERCVERANT.

Genus[I] hoc erat pugnæ

=the kind of battle // was this

~the method of battle // was this

quō sē Germānī exercuerant[II]

=in which the Germans had trained themselves

~in which the Germans had trained themselves

The method of battle in which the Germans had practiced themselves was this.

I.XLVIII.VI

EQVITVM MILIA ERANT SEX, TOTIDEM NVMERO PEDITES VELOCISSIMI AC FORTISSIMI, QVOS EX OMNI COPIA SINGVLI SINGVLOS SVÆ SALVTIS CAVSA DELEGERANT; CVM HIS IN PRŒLIIS VERSABANTVR.

Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem[III] numerō[IV] pedites vēlōcissimī[V] ac fortissimī

=there were six thousands of horse, (and) just as many in number very swift and very courageous foot soldiers

~there were 6,000 horse, and just as many very swift and courageous foot

I **genus, -eris**, N. (GEN-), *a race, stock, family, birth, descent, origin*; Of things, *a kind, sort, description, class, order, character, division*

II **exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** (EX + ARCEO), *to drive, keep busy, keep at work, oversee, work, agitate*; Fig., *to engage busily, occupy, employ, exercise, train, discipline*

III **totidem**, ADJ. NUM INDECL. (TOT + DEM), *just so many, just as many, the same number of*

IV ***numerō***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

V **vēlōx, -ōcis**, ADJ. (VOL-), *swift, quick, fleet, rapid, speedy*

quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī[I] singulōs suæ salūtis[II] causā dēlēgerant

=(the foot soldiers,) one of each whom, (the cavelry,) one at a time, had chosen out from all the troops for the sake of their own safety

~one of whom each of the horse selected out of the whole army for his own preservation

cum hīs in prœliīs versābantur[III]

=they were engaged with these (foot soldiers) in battles

~by these [foot] they were constantly accompanied in their engagements

There were 6,000 horse, and as many very active and courageous foot, one of whom each of the horse selected out of the whole army for his own protection. By these [foot] they were constantly accompanied in their engagements.

I.XLVIII.VII

AD EOS SE EQVITES RECIPIEBANT: HI, SI QVID ERAT DVRIVS, CONCVRREBANT; SI QVI GRAVIORE VVLNERE ACCEPTO EQVO DECIDERAT, CIRCVMSISTEBANT; SI QVO ERAT LONGIVS PRODEVNDVM AVT CELERIVS RECIPIENDVM, TANTA ERAT HORVM EXERCITATIONE CELERITAS VT IVBIS EQVORVM SVBLEVATI CVRSVM ADÆQVARENT.

Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant

=to these men (i.e. the foot soldiers) the horse were taking back themselves

~to these the horse retired

I *singulī*, pl. m. nom. of *singulus*

II ***suæ salūtis,*** gen. with *causā.* Peculiar Genitive constructions are the following: The genitive is often used with the ablatives causā, grātiā, for the sake of; ergō, because of; and the indeclinable īnstar, like; also with prīdiē, the day before; postrīdiē, the day after; tenus, as far as. §359

III **versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (VERTO), *to turn often, keep turning, handle, whirl about, turn over*; In gen., *to be; to be circumstanced* or *situated*; In partic., *to occupy* or *busy one's self with any action, to be engaged in any thing*

hī

=these men (horse men) *~these*

sī quid erat dūrius[I] [II]

=if anything was more hard *~on any emergency*

concurrēbant[III] [IV]

=they ran together *~rushed together in hostility*

sī quī

=if any one *~if any one*

graviōre vulnere acceptō[V]

=with a very grave wound <having been> received *~upon receiving a very severe wound*

equō[VI] dēciderat[VII]

=should fall from (his) horse *~had fallen from his horse*

[eum] circumsistēbant[VIII] [IX]

=they stood around [him] *~they stood around him*

I ***dūrius***, sg. neut. pred. nom. comp. *dūrus*

II **dūrus, -a, -um**, ADJ., *hard* (to the touch); pl. n. as subst., *hardships, difficulties*

III ***sī…erat…concurrēbat,*** simple past cond. (See chart §514)

IV **concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus** (CON + CURRŌ), *to run together, assemble, flock together*; In partic. Milit., *to rush together in hostility, to engage in combat, to join battle, to fight*

V ***graviōre vulnere acceptō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

VI ***equō***, abl. of separ. §400

VII **dēcidō, -ere, -cidī, —** (DE + CADO), *to fall down, fall off, fall away*

VIII ***sī…dēciderat…circumsistēbant,*** simple past cond. (See chart §514)

IX **circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, -status** (CIRCUM + SISTŌ), *to take one's stand around, surround, stand around*

sī quō[I] [II] erat longius [sibi] prōdeundum[III]

=if it was <having> to be advanced more far (than usual) to anywhere [by him]

~if they needed to advance somewhat further than usual to any place

aut celerius recipiendum [erat][IV]

=or (if) it was <having> to be taken back more quickly (by them)

~or if they had to retreat more rapidly

tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne[V] celeritās[VI]

=the swiftness of these men (foot soldiers) was so great from (because) of (their) training

~so great, from practice, was their swiftness

I FORUM NOTE: I'd interpret *quo* as meaning *to where*. Remember that after *si, nisi, num, ne* (and a few other things), *quis, quid, quando, quot, quotiens, quo*, and any of those types of words, are indefinite (*si quis = if anyone, si quid = if anything, si quando = if at some time*, etc.) so, *si quo erat longius prodeundum* as, *if they needed to advance somewhat far*(*ther than usual*) *to anywhere*

II **quō**, ADV. AND CONJ. DAT. AND ABL. (OF QUI), Locat. and abl. uses, of place, *where, in what place, in what situation*; Indef., after *si* or *ne*, *any whither, to any place, in any direction*

III ***prōdeundum***, see v. *eō*

IV ***sī…erat…prōdeundum…recipiendum…erat,*** fut. pass. periphrastic in simple past cond. (See chart §196) & (See chart §514)

V ***exercitātiōne***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

VI **celeritās, -ātis**, F. (CELER), *swiftness, quickness, speed, celerity*

ut iubīs[I] [II] equōrum sublevātī cursum[III] adæquārent[IV] [V]

=that, (the men,) <having been> supported by <means of> the manes of the horses, equalled (their) speed

~that, supported by the manes of the horses, they could keep pace with their speed

To these the horse retired; these on any emergency rushed forward; if any one, upon receiving a very severe wound, had fallen from his horse, they stood around him: if it was necessary to advance further than usual, or to retreat more rapidly, so great, from practice, was their swiftness, that, supported by the manes of the horses, they could keep pace with their speed.

I ***iubīs***, abl. of means. §409

II **iuba, -æ**, F., the flowing hair on the neck of an animal, *the mane*

III **cursus, -ūs**, M. (CEL-), *a running, course, way, march, passage, voyage, journey*

IV ***ut…adæquārent,*** clause of result. §536

V **adæquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (AD + ÆQUŌ), *to make equal, equalize, level with*

I.XLIX

Cæsar fortifies a camp beyond Ariovistus.

I.XLIX.I

VBI EVM CASTRIS SE TENERE CÆSAR INTELLEXIT, NE DIVTIVS COMMEATV PROHIBERETVR, VLTRA EVM LOCVM, QVO IN LOCO GERMANI CONSEDERANT, CIRCITER PASSVS SESCENTOS AB HIS, CASTRIS IDONEVM LOCVM DELEGIT ACIEQVE TRIPLICI INSTRVCTA AD EVM LOCVM VENIT.

Vbi

=when	*~when*

eum castrīs[I] sē tenēre

=that he (Ariovistus) held himself in the camp	*~that Ariovistus kept himself in camp*

Cæsar intellēxit[II]

=Cæsar understood	*~Cæsar perceiving*

I **castrīs**, locative. abl., Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place where, by the Ablative with in (Locative Ablative). §426

II **eum…tenēre,** indir. disc. dependent on *intellēxit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

nē diutius commeātū[I] prohibērētur[II]

=<in order> that he might not be held back any longer from provisions

~so that he might not any longer be cut off from provisions

ultrā eum locum

=beyond that place

~beyond that place

quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant

=in which ~~place~~ the Germans had settled

~where the Germans had encamped

circiter passūs sescentōs ab hīs, castrīs[III] idoneum[IV] locum dēlēgit

=he chose an ideal place for the camp /beyond that place/ /in which the Germans had settled/ around six-hundred of paces from those men

~chose a convenient position for a camp // at about 600 paces from them

aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā[V] ad eum locum vēnit

=and with a triple battle line <having been> inserted, he came to that place

~and having drawn up his army in three lines, marched to that place

I ***commeātū***, abl. of separ. Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative. §400

II ***nē…prohibērētur,*** neg. clause of purp. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

III ***castrīs***, dat. of purp. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected. §382

IV **idōneus, -a, -um**, ADJ., *fit, meet, proper, becoming, suitable, apt, capable, convenient, sufficient*

V ***aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

Perceiving that Ariovistus kept himself in camp, Cæsar, that he might not any longer be cut off from provisions, chose a convenient position for a camp beyond that place in which the Germans had encamped, at about 600 paces from them, and having drawn up his army in three lines, marched to that place.

I.XLIX.II

PRIMAM ET SECVNDAM ACIEM IN ARMIS ESSE, TERTIAM CASTRA MVNIRE IVSSIT.

Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse[I]

=the first and second battle line to be in arms	*~the first and second lines to be under arms*

tertiam castra mūnīre[II]

=(and he ordered) the third to fortify the camp	*~the third to fortify the camp*

iussit

=he (Cæsar) ordered	*~he ordered*

[Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs

=this place // around six-hundred of paces from the enemy	*~this place // from the enemy about 600 paces*

utī dictum est

=(this place) as has been said	*~as has been stated*

aberat]

=was away	*~was distant*

He ordered the first and second lines to be under arms; the third to fortify the camp. This place was distant from the enemy about 600 paces, as has been stated.

I ***prīmam et secundam aciem…esse,*** indir. disc. dependent on *iussit.* §580

II ***tertiam…munīre,*** indir. disc. §580

I.XLIX.III

EO CIRCITER HOMINVM NVMERO SEDECIM MILIA EXPEDITA CVM OMNI EQVITATV ARIOVISTVS MISIT, QVÆ COPIÆ NOSTROS PERTERRERENT ET MVNITIONE PROHIBERENT.

Eō[I] circiter hominum numero sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit

thither, Ariovistus sent lightly-burdened troops, around sixteen-thousands of men in number, with all the cavalry

~thither Ariovistus sent light troops, about 16,000 men in number, with all his cavalry

quæ cōpiæ nostrōs perterrērent[II]

=which ~~forces~~ should frighten thoroughly our men

~which forces were to terrify our men

et mūnītiōne[III] prohibērent[IV]

=and they should hinder (them) from fortifying

~and hinder them in their fortification

Thither Ariovistus sent light troops, about 16,000 men in number, with all his cavalry; which forces were to intimidate our men, and hinder them in their fortification.

I **eō**, ADV. (I-), Locat. and abl. uses, *there, in that place*

II ***quæ…perterrērent …,*** rel. clause of purp. The ablative quō (= ut eō) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative. §531

III ***mūnītiōne***, abl. of separ. §400

IV ***quæ…prohibērent,*** rel. clause of purp. §531

I.XLIX.IV

NIHILO SETIVS CÆSAR, VT ANTE CONSTITVERAT, DVAS ACIES HOSTEM PROPVLSARE, TERTIAM OPVS PERFICERE IVSSIT.

Nihilō[I] sētius[II] Cæsar

=Cæsar, less than nothing *~Cæsar nevertheless*

ut ante cōnstituerat

=as he (Cæsar) had before determined *~as he had previously arranged*

duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre[III]

=/he ordered/ two battle lines to drive off the enemy *~two lines to drive off the enemy*

tertiam opus perficere[IV]

=(and) (he ordered) the third (battle line) to complete the work *~the third to execute the work*

iussit

=(Cæsar) ordered *~ordered*

Cæsar nevertheless, as he had before arranged, ordered two lines to drive off the enemy: the third to execute the work.

I ***nihilō***, abl. of degree of difference. The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative (This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point from which we reckon. Thus, “Cicero is eloquent”; but, starting from him we come to Cato, who is “more so than he.”) signifying than. §406

II **sētius**, ADV. COMP. (SEC-), *less, in a less degree*—Only with negatives, *nilo setius, nevertheless*

III ***duās aciēs…prōpulsāre,*** indir. disc. §580

IV ***tertiam…perficere,*** indir. disc. §580

I.XLIX.V

MVNITIS CASTRIS, DVAS IBI LEGIONES RELIQVIT ET PARTEM AVXILIORVM; QVATTVOR RELIQVAS LEGIONES IN CASTRA MAIORA REDVXIT.

Mūnītīs castrīs[V]

=with the camp <having been> fortified

~the camp being fortified

duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliorum

=he (Cæsar) left behind two legions and a part of the auxiliaries there

~he left there two legions and a portion of the auxiliaries

quattuor reliquās legiones in castra maiōra redūxit

=(and) he led back the four remaining legions into the larger camp

~and led back the other four legions into the larger camp

The camp being fortified, he left there two legions and a portion of the auxiliaries; and led back the other four legions into the larger camp.

V ***mūnītīs castrīs,*** abl. abs. §420

I.L

The Germans consult the spirits.

I.L.I

PROXIMO DIE INSTITVTO SVO CÆSAR E CASTRIS VTRISQVE COPIAS SVAS EDVXIT PAVLVMQVE A MAIORIBVS CASTRIS PROGRESSVS ACIEM INSTRVXIT; HOSTIBVSQVE PVGNANDI POTESTATEM FECIT.

Proximō diē[I] īnstitūtō suō[II] Cæsar e castrīs[III] utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit

=on the next day, with his own design, Cæsar led out his own forces from each camp

~the next day, in accordance with his design, Cæsar led out his forces from both camps

I **proximō diē,** abl. of time. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

II **īnstitūtō suō,** abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

III **ex castrīs,** abl. of place from which. Relations of Place are expressed as follows: The place from which, by the Ablative with ab, dē, or ex. §426

paulumque[I] ā maiōribus castrīs[II] prōgressus[III] aciem īnstrūxit

=and (he,) <having> advanced a little from the larger camp, drew up a battle line

~and having advanced a little from the larger one, drew up his line of battle

hostibusque[IV] pugnandī[V] potestātem fēcit

=and he made an opportunity of fighting for the enemy

~and gave the enemy an opportunity of fighting

The next day, according to his custom, Cæsar led out his forces from both camps, and having advanced a little from the larger one, drew up his line of battle, and gave the enemy an opportunity of fighting.

I.L.II

VBI NE TVM QVIDEM EOS PRODIRE INTELLEXIT, CIRCITER MERIDIE EXERCITVM IN CASTRA REDVXIT.

Vbi

=when

~when

I **paulum**, ADV. (PAULUS), *a little, somewhat*

II ***ā maiōribus castrīs,*** abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

III **prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, —** DEP. (PRO + GRADIOR), *to come forth, go forth, go forward, go on, advance, proceed*

IV ***hostibusque***, dat. of ref. The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference). §376

V ***pugnandī***, subj. gen. of the gerund. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive. §504

nē tum quidem[I] eōs prōdīre[II III]

=that not even then those men came forth | *~that they did not even then come out [from their intrenchments,]*

intellēxit

=he understood | *~he found*

circiter merīdiēm[IV V] exercitum in castra redūxit

=around mid-day, he led the army back into the camp | *~he led back his army into camp about noon*

When he found that they did not even then come out [from their intrenchments,] he led back his army into camp about noon.

I.L.III

TVM DEMVM ARIOVISTVS PARTEM SVARVM COPIARVM QVÆ CASTRA MINORA OPPVGNARET MISIT.

Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum

=then, at length, Ariovistus /sent/ part of his own forces | *~then, at length, Ariovistus // a portion of his forces*

I ***nē tum quidem***, The following adverbs require special notice: Nē ... quidem means not even or not ... either. The emphatic word or words must stand between nē and quidem: ego autem nē īrāscī possum quidem iīs quōs valdē amō; (Att. 2.19.1), but I cannot even get angry with those whom I love very much.§322

II ***nē…prōdīre,*** indir. disc. dependent on *intellēxit.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

III **prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itus** (PRŌ + EŌ), *to go forth, come forth, come forward*

IV ***merīdiēm***, abl. of time. §423

V **merīdiēs**, ACC. **-em**, M. (MEDIUS + DIES), *mid-day, noon*

quæ castra minora oppugnāret[I]

=*which should attack the lesser camp* ~*to attack the lesser camp*

mīsit

=*sent* ~*sent*

Then at last Ariovistus sent part of his forces to attack the lesser camp.

I.L.IV

ACRITER VTRIMQVE VSQVE AD VESPERVM PVGNATVM EST.

Ācriter utrimque[II] usque[III] ad vesperum pugnātum est

=*it was fought harshly on both sides all the way to the evening* ~*the battle was vigorously maintained on both sides till the evening*

The battle was vigorously maintained on both sides till the evening.

I.L.V

SOLIS OCCASV SVAS COPIAS ARIOVISTVS, MVLTIS ET INLATIS ET ACCEPTIS VVLNERIBVS, IN CASTRA REDVXIT.

Sōlis occāsū[IV] suās cōpiās Ariovistus

=*on the falling of the sun /with many wounds ... / Ariovistus /led back/ his own troops* ~*at sunset // Ariovistus // his forces*

I ***quæ…oppugnāret,*** rel. clause of purp. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī or a relative adverb (ubi, unde, quō, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause. §531

II **ūtrimque**, ADV. (UTERQUE), *from or on both sides or parts, on the one side and on the other*

III **usque**, ADV., Lit., *all the way to* or *from* any limit of space, time, etc.; Of place, *all the way, right on, without interruption, continuously, constantly*

IV ***sōlis occāsū,*** abl. of time. §423

multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus[V]

=with many wounds, both <having been> inflicted and <having been> received

~after many wounds had been inflicted and received

in castra redūxit

=led back // into the camp

~led back // into camp

At sunset, after many wounds had been inflicted and received, Ariovistus led back his forces into camp.

I.L.VI

CVM EX CAPTIVIS QVÆRERET CÆSAR QVAM OB REM ARIOVISTVS PRŒLIO NON DECERTARET, HANC REPERIEBAT CAVSAM, QVOD APVD GERMANOS EA CONSVETVDO ESSET VT MATRES FAMILIÆ EORVM SORTIBVS ET VATICINATIONIBVS DECLARARENT VTRVM PRŒLIVM COMMITTI EX VSV ESSET NECNE; EAS ITA DICERE: NON ESSE FAS GERMANOS SVPERARE, SI ANTE NOVAM LVNAM PRŒLIO CONTENDISSENT.

Cum ex captīvīs quæreret[II] Cæsar

=when Cæsar inquired from the captives

~when Cæsar inquired of his prisoners

V ***multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

II ***cum…quæreret,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

quam ob rem[I] Ariovistus prœliō[II] nōn dēcertāret[III] [IV]

=for what thing (reason) Ariovistus did not fight (it) out by (means of) a battle

~wherefore Ariovistus did not come to an engagement

hanc [esse] reperiēbat causam

=he ascertained [that] this [was] the reason

~he discovered this to be the reason

quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset[V]

=(namely,) that among the Germans, the custom was this

~that among the Germans it was the custom

I **quam ob rem**, ADV., INTERROG., *for what reason? on what account? wherefore? why?*

II ***prœliō***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

III ***quam ob rem…dēcertāret,*** indir. question. An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. §573

IV **dēcertō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (DĒ + CERTŌ), In battle, *to go through a contest, fight out*

V ***quod…esset,*** informal indir. disc. A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. §592

ut mātrēs familiæ eōrum sortibus[I] et vāticinātiōnibus[II III] dēclārārent[IV]

=that the mistresses of their family would pronounce by <means of> lots and soothsayings	*~for their matrons to pronounce from lots and divination*

utrum prœlium[V] committī ex ūsū esset[VI] necne[VII]

=whether or not it was from (of) use (advantage) that a battle be engaged in	*~whether it were of benefit to battle should be engaged in or not*

eās ita dīcere

=that those (mistresses) thus said	*~that they had said*

nōn esse fās[VIII IX] Germānōs superāre

=that it was not divine law to overcome Germans	*~that it was not possible that the Germans should conquer*

I **sors, -tis**, F. (SER-), *a lot*, consisting of bits of wood from a branch of a fruit-bearing tree, which were scattered at random over a white cloth and then picked up. these were inspired by, 'eddies of rivers and whirlings and noises of currents'

II ***sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus,*** abl. of means. §409

III **vāticinātio, -ōnis**, F. (VATICINOR), *a foretelling, soothsaying, prophesying; a prediction, vaticination*

IV ***ut…dēclārārent,*** subst. clause of result. Clauses of Result may be used substantively: as the object of faciō etc. (§568) §567

V subj. acc. of *committī*

VI ***utrum…esset,*** double indir. question. In Double or Alternative Questions, utrum or -ne, whether, stands in the first member; an, anne, or, annōn, necne, or not, in the second; and usually an in the third, if there be one. §335 & §573

VII **necne**, ADV. (NED + NE), *or not*, in the second part of an indirect alternative question

VIII ***nōn esse fās,*** indir. disc. dependent on *reperiēbat causam.* §580

IX **fās**, (ONLY NOM. AND ACC SG.) N. (FA-), *the dictates of religion, divine law*; In gen. (*justice, equity*, but usu. to be translated as an adjective); *right, proper, allowable, lawful, fit, permitted*; hence, *possible* (the predominant meaning of the word in prose and pœtry)

sī ante novam lūnam[I] prœliō contendissent[II]

=if they should haved contended in a battle before the new moon

~if they engaged in battle before the new moon

When Cæsar inquired of his prisoners, wherefore Ariovistus did not come to an engagement, he discovered this to be the reason-that among the Germans it was the custom for their matrons to pronounce from lots and divination, whether it were expedient that the battle should be engaged in or not; that they had said, *"that it was not the will of heaven that the Germans should conquer, if they engaged in battle before the new moon."*

I **lūna, -æ**, F. (LVC-), *the moon*

II ***sī…contendissent,*** protasis of fut. cond. in indir. disc. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows: The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive. §589

I.LI

Cæsar forces an engagement.

I.LI.I

POSTRIDIE EIVS DIEI CÆSAR PRÆSIDIO VTRISQVE CASTRIS QVOD SATIS ESSE VISVM EST RELIQVIT; ALARIOS OMNES IN CONSPECTV HOSTIVM PRO CASTRIS MINORIBVS CONSTITVIT, QVOD MINVS MVLTITVDINE MILITVM LEGIONARIORVM PRO HOSTIVM NVMERO VALEBAT, VT AD SPECIEM ALARIIS VTERETVR; IPSE TRIPLICI INSTRVCTA ACIE VSQVE AD CASTRA HOSTIVM ACCESSIT.

Postrīdiē eius diēī Cæsar præsidiō utrīsque castrīs[I]

=on the day after of this day, Cæsar // // for (the purpose of) defense for either camp

~the day following, Cæsar // // as a guard for both camps

quod satis esse vīsum est

=(the defense) which seemed to be enough

~what seemed sufficient

I **præsidiō utrīsque castrīs,** double dat. const. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected. §382

[id] relīquit

=left /(the defence) which seemed to be enough/ behind

~left

[et deinde] ālāriōs[I] [II] omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit

=[and then] (Cæsar) stationed all the auxiliary troops in sight of the enemy in front of the lesser camp

~[and then] drew up all the auxiliaries in sight of the enemy, infront of the smaller camp

quod minus multitūdine[III] mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat

=because, in <respect to> the multitude of legionary soldiers, he (Cæsar) was less strong in comparison with the number of enemy

~because he was not very powerful in the number of legionary soldiers, considering the number of the enemy

ut ad[IV] speciem[V] ālāriīs[VI] ūterētur[VII]

=that (thereby) he might use the auxiliary troops for appearance

~that [thereby] he might make use of his auxiliaries for appearance

ipse

=he himself (Cæsar)

~he himself

I The light-armed troops were called *ālārī*, because they usually stationed on the wings (*ālæ*) of an army

II **ālārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (ALA), *of the wing* (of an army): pl. as subst., *auxiliary troops*

III ***multitūdine***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

IV **ad**, PRÆP. INDECLFORM., *With the cause* or *reason, according to, at, on, in consequence of, for, in order to*

V **speciēs —, acc. -em**, F. (SPEC-), *a sight, look, view, appearance, aspect, mien*

VI ***ālāriīs***, abl. with the special v. *ūterētur.* The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative. §410

VII ***ut…ūterētur,*** purp. clause. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

triplicī īnstrūctā aciē[I]

=with a triple battle-line <having been> drawn up (e.g. after a battle-line was drawn up ...)

~having drawn up his army in three lines

usque ad castra hostium accessit

=(Cæsar) approached all the way to the camp of the enemy

~advanced to the camp of the enemy

The day following, Cæsar left what seemed sufficient as a guard for both camps; [and then] drew up all the auxiliaries in sight of the enemy, before the lesser camp, because he was not very powerful in the number of legionary soldiers, considering the number of the enemy; that [thereby] he might make use of his auxiliaries for appearance. He himself, having drawn up his army in three lines, advanced to the camp of the enemy.

I.LI.II

TVM DEMVM NECESSARIO GERMANI SVAS COPIAS CASTRIS EDVXERVNT GENERATIMQVE CONSTITVERVNT PARIBVS INTERVALLIS, HARVDES, MARCOMANOS, TRIBOCES, VANGIONES, NEMETES, SEDVSIOS, SVEBOS, OMNEMQVE ACIEM SVAM RÆDIS ET CARRIS CIRCVMDEDERVNT, NE QVA SPES IN FVGA RELINQVERETVR.

Tum dēmum necessāriō[II] Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs[III] ēdūxērunt

=then, at last, by (because of) necessity, the Germans drew their own forces out from the camp

~then at last of necessity the Germans drew their forces out of camp

I ***triplicī īnstrūctā aciē,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

II ***necessāriō***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

III ***castrīs***, abl. of separ. Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with ab or ex). §401

generātimque[I] cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs[II]

=and they (the Germans) placed /the Harudes, Marcomanni ... / by kinds, at equal distances	*~and disposed them canton by canton, at equal distances*

Harūdēs, Marcomanōs[III], Triboces[IV], Vangionēs[V], Nemetēs[VI], Sedusiōs[VII], Suēbōs

=Harudes, Marcomanni, Tribocci, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusii, Suevi	*~the Harudes, Marcomanni, Tribocci, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusii, Suevi*

omnemque aciem suam rædīs[VIII] et carrīs[IX] circumdedērunt

=and they surrounded all their own battle-line with <means of> travelling-carriages and baggage wagons	*~and surrounded their whole army with their travelling-carriages and wagons*

I **generātim**, ADV. (GENUS), *by kinds, by species, in classes, in detail; copias eduxerunt*, i.e. *by nations*

II ***paribus intervāllīs,*** abl. of place where. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: Often in indefinite words, such as locō, parte, etc. §429

III **Marcomannī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus

IV **Triboces, -um,** M. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg

V **Vangiones, -um,** M. pl., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms

VI **Nemetes, -um,** M. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine

VII **Sedusiī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a tribe of Germans

VIII **ræda, -æ**, F., Celtic, *a travelling-carriage with four wheels*

IX ***rædīs et carrīs,*** abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.§409

nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur[I]

=<in order> that not any hope might remain in flight *~so no hope might be left for flight*

Then at last of necessity the Germans drew their forces out of camp, and disposed them canton by canton, at equal distances, the Harudes, Marcomanni, Tribocci, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusii, Suevi; and surrounded their whole army with their chariots and wagons, that no hope might be left in flight.

I.LI.III

EO MVLIERES IMPOSVERVNT, QVÆ AD PRŒLIVM PROFICISCENTES PASSIS MANIBVS FLENTES IMPLORABANT NE SE IN SERVITVTEM ROMANIS TRADERENT.

Eō mulierēs imposuērunt

=thither, they placed the women *~there, they placed their women*

quæ ad prœlium proficīscentēs[II] passīs[III] manibus[IV] flentēs implōrābant

=(those women) whom, weepng with hands spread (out), implored (the soldiers) (who were) setting out for battle *~who // as they went forward to battle*

I ***ne…relinquerētur,*** neg. purp. clause. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

II ***proficīscentēs***, pres. part. *proficīscor*

III **pandō, -ere, -dī, passum** (PAT-), *spread* or *open* (out), *extend*

IV ***passīs manibus,*** abl. abs. §420

nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent[I]

=that they (the soldiers) might not hand themselves (the weeping women) over into servitude to the Romans

~not to deliver them into slavery to the Romans

On these they placed their women, who, with disheveled hair and in tears, entreated the soldiers, as they went forward to battle, not to deliver them into slavery to the Romans.

I ***nē…trāderent,*** neg. subst. purp. clause. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with ut (negative nē) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish. §563

I.LII

Desperate fighting, hand-to-hand.

I.LII.I

CÆSAR SINGVLIS LEGIONIBVS SINGVLOS LEGATOS ET QVÆSTOREM PRÆFECIT, VTI EOS TESTES SVÆ QVISQVE VIRTVTIS HABERET; IPSE A DEXTRO CORNV, QVOD EAM PARTEM MINIME FIRMAM HOSTIVM ESSE ANIMADVERTERAT, PRŒLIVM COMMISIT.

Cæsar singulīs legiōnibus[I] singulōs lēgātōs et quæstōrem præfēcit

=Cæsar set over single legions lieutenants and questor

~Cæsar appointed over each legion a lieutenant and a questor

I *singulīs legiōnibus,* indir. obj. with comp. v. *præfēcit.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

utī eōs testēs suæ quisque[I] virtūtis habēret[II]

=<in order> that each one might have those men (as) witnesses of his own valor

~that each might have them as witnesses of his own valor

ipse ā[III] dextrō cornū[IV]

=he (Cæsar) himself // from (the point of view of) the right wing

~he himself // at the head of the right wing

quod

=because

~because

eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse[V]

=that that part of the enemy was the least strong

~that part of the enemy to be the least strong

animadverterat[VI]

=had considered

~he had observed

I *quisque, each*, is used in close connection with *sē* and *suus*; *uti eos testes suæ quisque virtutis haberet, that each might have them as witnesses of his own valor* (I.LII)

II ***utī…habēret,*** clause of purp. Pure Clauses of Purpose, with ut (utī) or nē (ut nē), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause. §531

III *a, ab*, and sometimes *ex* are used to indicate a Local Relation, where we use on, *in*, or *at*; as, *a dextro cornu, on the right wing*, Lit. *from* (*the point of view of*) *the right wing* (I.LII)

IV ***ā dextrō cornū,*** abl. of place where. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with ab (rarely ex), properly meaning from.v§429ii

V ***eam partem…esse,*** indir. disc. dep. on *animadverterat.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

VI **animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus** (ANIMUM + ADVERTO), *to direct the mind, give attention to, attend to, consider, regard, observe*

prœlium commīsit

=he began the battle

~began the battle

Cæsar appointed over each legion a lieutenant and a questor, that every one might have them as witnesses of his valor. He himself began the battle at the head of the right wing, because he had observed that part of the enemy to be the least strong.

I.LII.II

ITA NOSTRI ACRITER IN HOSTES SIGNO DATO IMPETVM FECERVNT, ITAQVE HOSTES REPENTE CELERITERQVE PROCVRRERVNT, VT SPATIVM PILA IN HOSTES COICIENDI NON DARETVR.

Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō[I] impetum fēcērunt

=thus our men, with the signal <having been> given (e.g. by the sound of the trumpet), vigorously made an attack against the enemy

~thus our men, upon the signal being given, made an attack vigorously upon the enemy

itaque hostēs[II] repente[III] celeriterque prōcurrērunt[IV]

=and the enemy so suddenly and (so) quickly ran forward

~and the enemy so suddenly and rapidly rushed forward

I ***signō datō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

II ***hostēs***, nom. pl., subj. of *prōcurrērunt*

III **repēns, -entis**, ADJ., *sudden, hasty, unexpected, unlooked for*; Transf., Adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly*, **repentē**

IV **prōcurro, -ere, -cucurri, -cursum** (PRŌ + CURRO), *to run forth, rush forwards*, Lit., freq. of armies

ut spatium[I] pīla in hostēs coiciendī[II] nōn darētur[III]

=that a space of (for) hurling spears against the enemy was not given

~that there was no opportunity for casting the javelins at them

Accordingly our men, upon the signal being given, vigorously made an attack upon the enemy, and the enemy so suddenly and rapidly rushed forward, that there was no time for casting the javelins at them.

I.LII.III

REIECTIS PILIS COMMINVS GLADIIS PVGNATVM EST.

Reiectīs pīlīs comminus[IV] gladiīs[V] pugnātum est

=with the javelins <having been> thrown back, it was fought hand-to-hand by swords

~throwing aside [therefore] their javelins, they fought with swords hand to hand

Throwing aside [therefore] their javelins, they fought with swords hand to hand.

I ***spatium***, sg. nom., subj. of *darētur*

II Genitive after Nouns and Adjectives, and with *causa* and *gratia* expressing Purpose: war (I.II) *bellandi cupidi, desirous of waging; Galliæ impugnandæ causa, in order to attack* Gaul (I.XLIV)

III ***ut…darētur,*** clause of result. The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534). §536

IV **comminus**, ADV. (COM- + MANUS), *in close contest, hand to hand, at close quarters*

V ***reiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs,*** abl. abs. §420

I.LII.IV

AT GERMANI CELERITER EX CONSVETVDINE SVA PHALANGE FACTA IMPETVS GLADIORVM EXCEPERVNT.

At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētudine suā

=but, the Germans, from their own habit, quickly

~but the Germans, according to their custom, rapidly

phalange factā[I]

=with a phalanx <having been> made

~forming a phalanx

impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt[II]

=(the Germans) received the attacks of (our) swords

~sustained the attack of our swords

But the Germans, according to their custom, rapidly forming a phalanx, sustained the attack of our swords.

I.LII.V

REPERTI SVNT COMPLVRES NOSTRI MILITES QVI IN PHALANGAS INSILIRENT ET SCVTA MANIBVS REVELLERENT ET DESVPER VVLNERARENT.

Repertī sunt complūrēs[III] nostrī[IV] milites

=our several soldiers were found

~there were found very many of our soldiers

I ***suā phalange factā,*** abl. abs. §420

II **excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** (EX + CAPIO), *To take out, withdraw; To take up, catch, receive, capture, take; to take upon one's self, to receive, support, sustain* (the figure being taken from the reception of an enemy's blows or shots)

III ***complūrēs***, subj. nom., subj. of *repertī sunt*

IV ***nostrī***, nom. pl. m. of adj. *complūrēs*

quī in phalangas īnsilīrent[I] [II]

=(our several soldiers) who leaped on the phalanxes *~who leaped upon the phalanx*

et scūta manibus[III] revellerent[IV] [V]

=and they pulled away the shields (of the enemies) with <means of> (their) hands *~and with their hands tore away the shields*

et dēsuper[VI] vulnerārent[VII]

=and they wounded (the enemy) from above *~and wounded the enemy from overhead*

There were found very many of our soldiers who leaped upon the phalanx, and with their hands tore away the shields, and wounded the enemy from above.

I ***quī…īnsilīrent,*** rel. clause of char. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined. §535

II **īnsiliō, -īre, -uī, —** (IN + SALIO), *to leap in, spring up, throw oneself upon, bound, mount*

III ***manibus***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

IV ***quī…revellerent,*** rel. clause of char. §535

V **revellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus** (RE + VELLŌ), *to pluck away, pull away, tear out, tear off*

VI **dēsuper**, ADV. (DĒ + SUPER), Of motion, *from above, from overhead*

VII ***quī…vulnerārent,*** rel. clause of char. §535

I.LII.VII

CVM HOSTIVM ACIES A SINISTRO CORNV PVLSA ATQVE IN FVGAM CONVERSA ESSET, A DEXTRO CORNV VEHEMENTER MVLTITVDINE SVORVM NOSTRAM ACIEM PREMEBANT.

Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō[I] cornū[II] pulsa[III] [esset] atque in fugam conversa[IV] esset[V]

=although the battle line of the enemy <having been> (was) repulsed from the left wing and was turned into flight

~although the army of the enemy was routed on the left wing and wheeled about to flight

ā dextrō cornū[VI] vehementer multitūdine[VII] suōrum nostram aciem premēbant[VIII]

=they (nonetheless) pressed heavily on our battle-line from the right wing with a multitude of their own (troops)

~they [still] pressed heavily on our men from the right wing, by the great number of their troops

Although the army of the enemy was routed on the left wing and put to flight, they [still] pressed heavily on our men from the right wing, by the great number of their troops.

I ***ā sinistrō cornū,*** abl. of place where. The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances: Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with ab (rarely ex), properly meaning from. §429ii

II **cornū, -ūs**, N. (CAR-), *a horn, antler*; Of an army, *the wing, extremity, side*

III ***pulsa***, nom. sg. f. ppp. of *pellō*; predicate after *esset*

IV ***conversa***, nom. sg. f. ppp. of *convertō*; predicate after *esset*

V ***cum…conversa esset,*** *cum* clause. Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. Cum causal may usually be translated by since; cum concessive by although or while; either, occasionally, by when. §549

VI ***ā dextrō cornū,*** abl. of place where. §429ii

VII ***multitūdine***, abl. of means. §409

VIII **premō, -ere, -essī, -essus** (PREM-), *to press; To press, press upon, urge, drive, importune, pursue, press hard*

I.LII.VIII

ID CVM ANIMADVERTISSET P. CRASSVS ADVLESCENS, QVI EQVITATVI PRÆERAT, QVOD EXPEDITIOR ERAT QVAM EI QVI INTER ACIEM VERSABANTVR, TERTIAM ACIEM LABORANTIBVS NOSTRIS SVBSIDIO MISIT.

Id cum animadvertisset[I] P[ūblius] Crassus adulēscēns[II]

=when P[ublius] Crassus, an adolescent, had observed it (this)	*~on observing which, P. Crassus, a young man*

quī equitātuī[III] præerat

=(he) whom presided over the cavalry	*~who commanded the cavalry*

quod expedītior[IV] erat quam eī[V] [erant]

=because he (Crassus) was more disengaged than those men [were]	*~as he was more disengaged than*

quī inter aciem versābantur

=(those men) who were engaged among the battle-line	*~those who were employed in the fight*

I ***cum animadvertisset,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

II **adulēscēns, -entis**, ADJ. (PART. OF ADOLESCO), adj., *growing, near maturity, young, youthful*; Subst., comm. gen., *one who has not yet attained maturity, a youth, a young man; a young woman, a maiden* (between the *puer* and *juvenis*, from the 15th or 17th until past the 30th year, often even until near the 40th; but the same person is often called in one place *adulescens*, and in another *juvenis*)

III ***equitātuī***, indir. obj. with comp. v. *præerat.* §370

IV ***expedītior***, comp. deg. of the part. *expedītus*—pred.-adj. after *erat*

V ***eī***, nom. pl. m.

tertiam aciem [mīlitibus] labōrantibus[I] [II] nostrīs subsidiō[III] [IV] mīsit

=he sent the third battle-line for <the purpose of> assistance to our struggling [soldiers]

~sent the third line as a relief to our men who were distressed

On observing which, P. Crassus, a young man, who commanded the cavalry-as he was more disengaged than those who were employed in the fight-sent the third line as a relief to our men who were in distress.

I Participle: Expressing Characterization or Description; *victīs, venientēs, those beaten, those coming up, meaning those who had been beaten, those who were coming up* (I.XXV)

II ***labōrantibus***, pres. part. *labōrō*

III ***labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō,*** double dat. const. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows: The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected. §382

IV **subsidium, -ī**, N. (SUB + SED), In order of battle, *the troops in reserve, line of reserve, third line of battle, triarii*; Abstr., support in battle, *aid, help, relief, succor, assistance*

I.LIII

CÆSAR IS VICTORIOUS.

I.LIII.I

ITA PRŒLIVM RESTITVTVM EST, ATQVE OMNES HOSTES TERGA VERTERVNT NEC PRIVS FVGERE DESTITERVNT QVAM AD FLVMEN RHENVM MILIA PASSVVM EX EO LOCO CIRCITER QVINQVE PERVENERVNT.

Ita prœlium restitūtum est

=thus, the battle was restored

~thereupon the engagement was renewed

atque omnēs hostēs terga[I] vertērunt

=and all the enemy turned (their) backs

~and all the enemy turned their backs

nec prius fugere dēstitērunt

=nor did they cease to flee earlier

~nor did they cease to flee

I **tergum, -ī**, N. (TRAG-), *the back*; With *verto* or *do*, *to turn the back, turn back, take flight, run away, flee, retreat*

quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt

=than they arrived at the river Rhine, around five-thousand of paces from that place

~before they arrived at the river Rhine, about fifty miles from that place

Thereupon the engagement was renewed, and all the enemy turned their backs, nor did they cease to flee until they arrived at the river Rhine, about fifty miles from that place.

I.LIII.II

IBI PERPAVCI AVT VIRIBVS CONFISI TRANARE CONTENDERVNT AVT LINTRIBVS INVENTIS SIBI SALVTEM REPPERERVNT.

Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus[I] cōnfīsī[II] trānāre[III] contendērunt

=there, a few men, either <having> trusted in (their) (bodily) strength, endeavored to swim over

~there some few, either relying on their strength, endeavored to swim over

aut

=or

~or

lintribus inventīs[IV V]

=with skiffs <having been> found

~finding boats

I ***vīribus***, abl. with special v. *cōnfīsī*. Several verbs are followed by the Ablative. These are acquiēscō, dēlector, lætor, gaudeō, glōrior, nītor, stō, maneō, fīdō, cōnfīdō, cōnsistō, contineor. §431

II ***cōnfīsī***, ppp. of *cōnfīdō*: nom. pl. m., agreeing with *perpaucī*

III **trānō, -āre, -āvī, —** (TRANS + NO), *to swim over, swim across, swim through*

IV ***lintribus inventīs,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

V **inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus** (IN + VENIO), *to come upon, find, meet with, light upon*

sibi salūtem repperērunt

=they found safety for themselves

~procured their safety

There some few, either relying on their strength, endeavored to swim over, or, finding boats, procured their safety.

I.LIII.III

IN HIS FVIT ARIOVISTVS, QVI NAVICVLAM DELIGATAM AD RIPAM NACTVS EA PROFVGIT: RELIQVOS OMNES CONSECVTI EQVITES NOSTRI INTERFECERVNT

In hīs fuit Ariovistus,

=among those (latter) men was Ariovistus

~among the latter was Ariovistus

quī nāviculam[I] dēligātam[II] ad ripam nactus[III] eā[IV] profūgit

=who, a small <having been> obtained <having been> tied up to the bank, fled by <means of> this thing

~who meeting with a small vessel tied to the bank, escaped in it

reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt

=our horse <having> followed, killed all the remaining men

~our horse pursued and slew all the rest of them

Among the latter was Ariovistus, who meeting with a small vessel tied to the bank, escaped in it; our horse pursued and slew all the rest of them.

I **nāvicula, -æ**, F. DIM. (NAVIS), *a small vessel, boat, skiff*

II ***dēligātam***, ppp. of *dēligō*

III **nancīscor, -ī, nactus, —** DEP. (NAC-), *to get, obtain, receive, meet with, stumble on, light on, find*

IV ***eā***, abl. of means. The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. §409

I.LIII.IV

DVÆ FVERVNT ARIOVISTI VXORES, VNA SVEBA NATIONE, QVAM DOMO SECVM DVXERAT, ALTERA NORICA, REGIS VOCCIONIS SOROR, QVAM IN GALLIA DVXERAT A FRATRE MISSAM: VTRÆQVE IN EA FVGA PERIERVNT; DVÆ FILIÆ: HARVM ALTERA OCCISA, ALTERA CAPTA EST.

Duæ fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs

=two wives were of Ariovistus *~Ariovistus had two wives*

ūna Suēba nātiōne[I] [II] [fuit]

=one [was] a Suevan by birth *~one a Suevan by nation*

quam domō[III] sēcum dūxerat

=whom he led with himself from home *~whom he brought with him from home*

altera Nōrica [fuit], rēgis Vocciōnis[IV] soror

=the other [was] a Norican, the sister of king Vocion *~the other a Norican, the sister of king Vocion*

quam in Galliā duxerat ā frātre[V] missam

=whom he had led (into matrimony) in Gaul, she <having been> sent by (her) brother *~whom he had married in Gaul, she having been sent [thither for that purpose] by her brother*

I ***nātiōne***, abl. of spec. The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done. §418

II **nātiō, -ōnis**, F. (GEN-), *a birth, origin; A race of people, nation, people*

III ***domō***, abl. of place from which. With names of towns and small islands, and with domus and rūs, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows: Th e place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition. §427

IV **Vocciō, ōnis,** M., a king of Noricum

V ***ā frātre,*** abl. of agent. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with ā or ab. §405

utræque in eā fugā perierunt[VI]

=each of the two passed away in that flight *~both perished in that flight*

duæ fīliæ

=of (their) two daughters *~Of their two daughters*

hārum altera occīsa [est]

=one of these (ladies) was struck down *~one was slain*

altera capta est

=the other was captured *~the other captured*

Ariovistus had two wives, one a Suevan by nation, whom he brought with him from home; the other a Norican, the sister of king Vocion, whom he had married in Gaul, she having been sent [thither for that purpose] by her brother. Both perished in that flight. Of their two daughters, one was slain, the other captured.

I.LIII.V

C. VALERIVS PROCILLVS, CVM A CVSTODIBVS IN FVGA TRINIS CATENIS VINCTVS TRAHERETVR, IN IPSVM CÆSAREM HOSTES EQVITATV PERSEQVENTEM INCIDIT.

C[āius] Valerius Procillus

=C[aius] Valerius Procillus *~C. Valerius Procillus*

VI **pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum** (PER + EO), *to pass away, come to nothing, vanish, disappear, be lost; to pass away, be destroyed, perish*

cum ā custōdibus[I] in [eā] fugā trīnīs catēnīs[II] vīnctus[III] traherētur[IV V]

=as he was being dragged by (his) guards in [this] flight, <having been> bound by <means of> a triple chain

~as he was being dragged away by his guards in flight, bound with a triple chain

in ipsum Cæsarem hostēs [cum] equitātū[VI] persequentem[VII] incidit[VIII]

=he, pursuing the enemy [with] horse, fell into (the hands of) Cæsar himself

~fell in with Cæsar himself, as he was pursuing the enemy with his cavalry

C. Valerius Procillus, as he was being dragged by his guards in the fight, bound with a triple chain, fell into the hands of Cæsar himself, as he was pursuing the enemy with his cavalry.

I ***ā custōdibus,*** abl. of agent. §405

II ***trīnīs catēnīs,*** abl. of means. §409

III **vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus** (VI-), *to bind, bind about, fetter, tie, fasten, surround, encircle*

IV ***cum…traherētur,*** *cum* clause. A temporal clause with cum and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb. §546

V **trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus** (TRAG-), *to draw, drag, haul, train along, draw off, pull forth, drag away; To drag away violently, carry off, plunder*

VI ***equitātū***, abl. of means. §409

VII ***persequentem***, pres. part. of *īnsequor*

VIII **incidō, -ere, -cidī, —** (IN + CADO), *to fall in, fall, light, strike, reach, find the way; To light upon, meet, come upon, fall in with*

I.LIII.VI

QVÆ QVIDEM RES CÆSARI NON MINOREM QVAM IPSA VICTORIA VOLVPTATEM ATTVLIT, QVOD HOMINEM HONESTISSIMVM PROVINCIÆ GALLIÆ, SVVM FAMILIAREM ET HOSPITEM, EREPTVM E MANIBVS HOSTIVM SIBI RESTITVTVM VIDERAT, NEQVE EIVS CALAMITATE DE TANTA VOLVPTATE ET GRATVLATIONE QVICQVAM FORTVNA DEMINVERAT.

Quæ quidem rēs Cæsarī[I] nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem[II] attulit

=which thing, indeed, brought to Cæsar no less pleasure than the victory itself

~this circumstance indeed afforded Cæsar no less pleasure than the victory itself

quod

=because

~because

hominem honestissimum[III] prōvinciæ Galliæ

=that a most noble man of the province of Gaul

~a man of the first rank in the province of Gaul

suum familiārem et hospitem[IV]

=his own intimate acquaintance and (his own) friend

~his intimate acquaintance and friend

I ***Cæsarī***, indir. obj. with comp.. v. *attulit.* Many verbs compounded with ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super, and some with circum, admit the Dative of the indirect object. §370

II **voluptās, -ātis**, F. (VOL-), *satisfaction, enjoyment, pleasure, delight*

III **honestus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (HONOS), *regarded with honor, respected, honored, of high birth, distinguished, honorable, respectable, noble*

IV **hospes, -itis**, M. (HOSTIS + POT-), *an entertainer, host* (as a friend); *a friend, one bound by ties of hospitality*

ēreptum[I] e manibus hostium sibi restitūtum [esse]

=rescued from the hands of the enemy, (and) (he) [was] restored to him (to Cæsar)

~rescued from the hand of the enemy, and restored to him

viderat

=he saw

~he saw

neque eius calamitāte[II] dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne[III]

=nor by his calamity, from such joy and rejoicing (e.g. of that day)

~of the joy and rejoicing [of that day] by his destruction

quicquam fortūna dēminuerat

=had (Cæsar's) fortune diminished anything

~and that fortune had not diminished aught

This circumstance indeed afforded Cæsar no less pleasure than the victory itself; because he saw a man of the first rank in the province of Gaul, his intimate acquaintance and friend, rescued from the hand of the enemy, and restored to him, and that fortune had not diminished aught of the joy and exultation [of that day] by his destruction.

I.LIII.VII

IS SE PRÆSENTE DE SE TER SORTIBVS CONSVLTVM DICEBAT VTRVM IGNI STATIM NECARETVR AN IN ALIVD TEMPVS RESERVARETVR: SORTIVM BENEFICIO SE ESSE INCOLVMEM.

Is

=he (Procillus)

~He [Procillus]

I ***ēreptum***, ppp. of *ēripiō*

II ***calamitāte***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

III **grātulātiō, -ōnis**, F. (GRATULOR), *a manifestation of joy, wishing joy, congratulation, rejoicing*

sē præsente[IV]

=that, with himself <being> present	*~that, in his own presence*

dē sē ter sortibus[II] cōnsultum [esse][III]

=by <means of> lots, concerning him, it [was] thrice consulted	*~it was consulted three times by lots concerning him*

dīcēbat

=/he/ (Procillus) was saying	*~said*

utrum ignī[IV] statim[V] necārētur[VI] [VII]

=whether he should immediately be put to death by <means of> fire	*~whether he should immediately be put to death by fire*

an in aliud tempus reservārētur[VIII] [IX]

=or (if) he should be reserved until another time	*~or be reserved for another time*

IV ***sē presente,*** abl. abs. §420

II ***sortibus***, abl. of means. §409

III ***dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum [esse]***, indir. disc. dep. on *dīcēbat.* In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive. §580

IV ***ignī***, abl. of means. §409

V **statim**, ADV. (STA-), *steadily, regularly; On the spot, forthwith, straightway, at once, immediately, instantly*

VI ***utrum…necārētur,*** deliberative subj. The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) doubt, indignation, or (2) an impossibility of the thing's being done. The negative is nōn. §444

VII **necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** (NEC-), *to kill, slay, put to death*

VIII ***utrum…reservārētur,*** deliberative subj. §444

IX **reservo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (RE + SERVO), *to keep back, save up* (anything) *for future use; to reserve*

sortium beneficiō[I] sē esse[II] incolumem[III]

=that because of the favor of the lots, he was uninjured

~that by the favor of the lots he was uninjured

He [Procillus] said that, in his own presence, the lots had been thrice consulted respecting him, whether he should immediately be put to death by fire, or be reserved for another time: that by the favor of the lots he was uninjured.

I.LIII.VIII

ITEM M. METTIVS REPERTVS ET AD EVM REDVCTVS EST.

Item M[arcus] Mēttius repertus [est] et ad eum reductus est

=M[arcus] Mettius, also, was found, and he led back to him (Cæsar)

~M. Mettius, also, was found and brought back to him [Cæsar.]

M. Mettius, also, was found and brought back to him [Cæsar.]

I ***beneficiō***, abl. of cause. The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause. §404

II ***sē esse,*** indir. disc. §580

III **incolumis, -e**, ADJ. (IN + COLUMNIS), *unimpaired, uninjured, unharmed, safe, sound, entire, whole*

I.LIV

Cæsar goes to north Italy.

I.LIV.I

HOC PRŒLIO TRANS RHENVM NVNTIATO, SVEBI QVI AD RIPAS RHENI VENERANT DOMVM REVERTI CŒPERVNT; QVOS VBII QVI PROXIMI RHENVM INCOLVNT PERTERRITOS INSECVTI MAGNVM EX EIS NVMERVM OCCIDERVNT.

Hōc prœliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō[I]

=with this battle <having been> announced across the Rhine

~this battle having been reported beyond the Rhine

Suēbī

=the Suevi

~the Suevi

quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant

=who had come to the banks of the river

~who had come to the banks of that river

I ***hōc prœliō…nūntiātō,*** abl. abs. The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause. §420

domum[I] revertī cœpērunt

=began to return home | *~began to return home*

quōs Vbiī[II]

=(those men) (the Suevi) whom Ubiī | *~when the Ubii*

qui proximī[III] Rhēnum incolunt

=who dwell nearest to the Rhine | *~who dwelt nearest to the Rhine*

perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex eīs numerum occīdērunt

=(those men) (the Ubii) <having> followed the thoroughtly terrified men (the Seuvi), killed a great number from (of) those men | *~pressed upon them, while much alarmed, slew a great number of them*

This battle having been reported beyond the Rhine, the Suevi, who had come to the banks of that river, began to return home, when the Ubii, who dwelt nearest to the Rhine, pursuing them, while much alarmed, slew a great number of them.

I ***domum***, acc. of place to which. Special uses of place from which, to which, and where are the following: Domum denoting the place to which, and the locative domī, may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive. “dom um rēgis” (Deiot. 17), to the king's house. [But also “in M. Læcæ domum” (Cat. 1.8), to Marcus Lœca's house.] domī meæ, at my house; domī Cæsaris, at Cæsar's house. domī suæ vel aliēnæ, at his own or another's house. §428k

II **Ubiī, -ōrum,** M. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they afterwards settled

III ***proximī***, adj. used as prep. Certain Adverbs and Adjectives are sometimes used as Prepositions: The adverbs prīdiē, postrīdiē, propius, proximē, less frequently the adjectives propior and proximus, may be followed by the Accusative. §432

I.LIV.II

CÆSAR, VNA ÆSTATE DVOBVS MAXIMIS BELLIS CONFECTIS, MATVRIVS PAVLO QVAM TEMPVS ANNI POSTVLABAT IN HIBERNA IN SEQVANOS EXERCITVM DEDVXIT; HIBERNIS LABIENVM PRÆPOSVIT; IPSE IN CITERIOREM GALLIAM AD CONVENTVS AGENDOS PROFECTVS EST.

Cæsar ūnā æstāte[I] [II]

=Cæsar // in one summer	*~Cæsar // within one campaign*

duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs[III]

=with two extremely great wars <having been> completed	*~having concluded two very considerable wars*

mātūrius paulō[IV] quam tempus annī postulābat

=earlier by a little than the season of the year demanded	*~a little earlier than the season of the year required*

in hīberna in Sequanōs exercitum dēdūxit

=he (Cæsar) led away (his) army among the Sequani into winter quarters	*~conducted his army into winter quarters among the Sequani*

hībernīs Labiēnum præposuit[V]

=he set Labienus over the winter-quarters	*~he appointed Labienus over the winter-quarters*

I ***ūnā æstāte,*** abl. of time within which. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative. §423

II **æstās, -ātis**, F., *summer*

III ***duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs,*** abl. abs. §420

IV ***paulō***, abl. of deg. of dif. With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference. §414

V **præpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** (PRÆ + PŌNŌ), *to place in front, put upon, affix; To set over, make commander, intrust with, appoint, depute*

ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs[I] agendōs[II] profectus est

=he (Cæsar) himself departed into nearest Gaul for <the purpose of> conducting a meeting

~and set out in person for Hither Gaul to administer the meeting

Cæsar having concluded two very important wars in one campaign, conducted his army into winter quarters among the Sequani, a little earlier than the season of the year required. He appointed Labienus over the winter-quarters, and set out in person for Hither Gaul to hold the assizes.

I **conventus, -ūs**, M. (COM- + BA-, VEN-), *a meeting, assembly, throng*

II ***ad conventūs agendōs,*** acc. of the gerundive expressing purp. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition ad, to denote Purpose.§506

Appendix

Allen and Greenough's New Latin Grammar

§39

Declension

	1	2		3			3 (i-stem)			4		5	
Singular													
	F.	M.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	N.	M.	F.
Nom.	-a	-us	-um				-us	-us	-u	-us	-ū	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	-æ	-ī	-ī	-is	-is	-is	is	is	is	-ūs	-ūs	-ēī (-ē)	-eī (-ē)
Dat.	-æ	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-uī (-ū)	-ū	-ēī (-ē)	-eī (-ē)
Acc.	-am	-um	-um	-em	-em	Like nom.	-em	-em	e	-um	-ū	-em	-em
Abl.	-ā	-ō	-ō	-e (-ī)	-e (-ī)	-e (-ī)	-ī/e	-ī/e	-ī	-ū	-ū	-ē	-ē
Voc.	-a	-e	-um	Like nom.	Like nom.	Like nom.	-s	-s		-us	-ū	-ēs	-ēs

Declension

	1	2		3			3 (i-stem)			4		5	
Plural													
	F.	M.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	N.	M.	F.
Nom.	-æ	-ī	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-ium	-uum	-uum	ērum	ērum
Dat.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus	-ēbus
Acc.	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-ēs	a-	-ēs	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
Abl.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus	-ēbus
Voc.	-æ	-ī	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	-ēs

§113

The following nine adjectives with their compounds have the Genitive Singular in *-īus* and the Dative in *-ī* in all genders:

alius (N. aliud), *other*	tōtus, *whole*	alter, -terīus, *the other*
nūllus, *no, none*	ūllus, *any*	neuter, -trīus, *neither*
sōlus, *alone*	ūnus, *one*	uter, -trīus, *which* (of two)

Of these the singular is thus declined:

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utrī	utrī	utrī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnqm	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	terum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

i. The plural of these words is regular, like that of *bonus* (§110)

§146

Demonstrative Pronoun Charts:

The Demonstrative Pronouns are used to point out or designate a person or thing for special attention, either with nouns as Adjectives or alone as Pronouns. They are: *hīc, this; is, ille, iste, that*; with the intensive *ipse, self,* and *īdem, same*; and are

thus declined:

hīc, *this*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hīc	hæc	hōc	hī	hæ	hæc
Gen.	hûius	hûius	hûius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	hæc
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

is, *that*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eæ	ea
Gen.	êius	êius	êius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

ille, *that*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illæ	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	ilōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

ipse, *self*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsæ	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

īdem, *the same*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	īdem	īdem, eī	eædem	eadem
Gen.	êiusdem	êiusdem	êiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

§147

The Relative Pronoun *quī, who, which*, is thus declined:

Relative Pronouns

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quæ	quod	quī	quæ	quæ
Gen.	cûius	cûius	cûius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quæ
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

§148

The Substantive Interrogative Pronoun *quis, who? quid, what?* is declined in the Singular as follows:

Interrogative and Indefinate Pronouns

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	qius	quid	quī	quæ	quæ
Gen.	cûius	cûius	cûius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quæ
Abl.	quō	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

§170

The verb *sum, be*, is both irregular and defective, having no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

	Indicative	**Subjunctive**

Present

Singular	sum, *I am*	sim
	es, *you are*	sīs
	est, *he* (*she, it*)	sit
Plural	sumus, *we are*	sīmus
	estis, *you* (*all*) *are*	sītus
	sunt, *they are*	sint

Imperfect

Singular	eram, *I was*	essem
	eras, *you were*	essēs
	erat, *he* (*she, it*)	esset
Plural	erāmus, *we were*	essēmus
	erātis, *you were*	essētis
	erant, *they were*	essent

Future

Singular	erō, *I shall be*	
	eris, *you will be*	
	erit, *he* (*she, it*) *will be*	
Plural	erimus, *we shall be*	
	eritis, *you will be*	
	erunt, *they will be*	

Plurperfect

Singular	fueram, *I had been*	fuissem
	fuerās, *you had been*	fuissēs
	fuerat, *he* (*she, it*) *had been*	fuisset
Plural	fuerāmus, *we have been*	fuissēmus
	fuerātis, *you* (*all*) *had been*	fuissētis
	fuerant, *they had been*	fuissent

Future Perfect

Singular	fuerō, *I shall have been*	
	fueris, *you will have been*	
	fuerit, *he* (*she, it*) *will have been*	
Plural	fuerimus, *we shall have been*	
	fueritis, *you* (*all*) *have been*	
	fuerint, *they will have been*	

Imperative

Present Singular	es, *be you*	
Present Plural	este, *be you* (*all*)	
Future Singular	estō, *you/he* (*she, it*) *shalt be*	
Future Plural	estōte, *you* (*all*) *shall be*	
	suntō, *they shall be*	

Infinitive

Present	esse, *to be*	
Perfect	fuisse, *to have been*	
Future	futūrus esse (or fore), *to be about to be*	

Participle

Future	futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be*	

§181

In tenses formed upon the Perfect Stem, *v* between two vowels is often lost and contraction takes place.

a. Perfects in *-āvī, -ēvī, -ōvī*, often contract the two vowels into *ā, ē, ō*, respectively: as, *amăsse* for *amăvisse; amārim* for *amăverim*; *amăssem* for *amăvissem*; *cōnsuērat* for *cōnsuēverat*; *flēstis* for *flēvistis*; *nōsse* for *nōvisse*. So in perfects in *-vī*, where the *v* is a part of the present stem: as, *commōrat* for *commōverat*.

Note.--The first person of the perfect indicative (as, *amāvī*) is never contracted, the third very rarely.

§194

There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, known respectively as the First (or Active) and the Second (or Passive).

a. The First Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Future Active Participle with the forms of sum, and denotes a future or intended action.

b. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Gerundive with the forms of sum, and denotes obligation, necessity, or propriety.

c. The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly throughout the Indicative and Subjunctive and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

§196

Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amandus sum, *I am to be, must be*
IMPER.	amandus eram, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
FUT.	amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved*
PERF.	amandus fuī, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
PLUPERF.	amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved*
FUT. PERF.	amandus fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amandus sim
IMPERF.	amandus essem
PERF.	amandus fuerim
PLUPERF.	amandus fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amandus esse, *to have to be loved*
PERF.	amandus fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

§221

The uses of the Prepositions are as follows:

1. **Ā, ab**, *away from*, *from, off from*, WITH THE ABLATIVE.

    a. OF PLACE: as, *ab urbe profectus est, he set out from the city*.

    b. OF TIME: *from*: as, *ab hōrā tertiā ad vesperam, from the third hour till evening*; *just after*: as, *ab eō magistrātū, after [holding] that office*.

    c. IDIOMATIC USES: *ā reliquīs differunt, they differ from the others*; *ā parvulīs, from early childhood; prope ab urbe, near* (not far from) *the city*; *līberāre ab, to set free from; occīsus ab hoste (periit ab hoste), slain by an enemy; ab hāc parte, on this side; ab rē êius, to his advantage; ā rē pūblicā, for the interest of the state.*

2. **Ad**, *to, towards, at, near*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE (CF. IN, INTO):

    a. OF PLACE: as, *ad urbem vēnit, he came to the city; ad merīdiem, towards the south; ad exercitum, to the army; ad hostem, toward the enemy; ad urbem, near the city.*

    b. OF TIME: as, *ad nōnam hōram, till the ninth hour.*

    c. WITH PERSONS: as, *ad eum vēnit, he came to him.*

    d. IDIOMATIC USES: *ad supplicia dēscendunt, they resort to punishment; ad hæc respondit, to this he answered; ad tempus, at the [fit] time; adīre ad rem pūblicam, to go into public life; ad petendam pācem, to seek peace; ad latera, on the flank; ad arma, to arms; ad hunc modum, in this way; quem ad modum, how, as; ad centum, nearly a hundred; ad hōc, besides; omnēs ad ūnum, all to a man; ad diem, on the day.*

3. **Ante**, *in front of, before*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE (CF. POST, AFTER):

    a. OF PLACE: as, *ante portam, in front of the gate; ante exercitum, in advance of the army.*

    b. OF TIME: as, *ante bellum, before the war.*

    c. IDIOMATIC USES: *ante urbem captam, before the city was taken; ante diem quīntum* (a.d.v.) *Kal., the fifth day before the Calends; ante quadriennium, four years before* or *ago; ante tempus, too soon* (before the time).

4. **Apud**, *at, by, among*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE:

    a. OF PLACE (rare and archaic): as, *apud forum, at the forum* (in the marketplace).

    b. WITH REFERENCE TO PERSONS OR COMMUNITIES: as, *apud Helvētiōs, among the Helvetians; apud populum, before the people; apud aliquem, at one's house; apud sē, at home or in his senses; apud Cicerōnem, in [the works of] Cicero*.

5. **Circā**, *about, around*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE (CF. CIRCUM, CIRCITER).

    a. OF PLACE: *templa circā forum, the temples about the forum; circā sē habet, he has with him* (*of persons*).

    b. OF TIME OR NUMBER (in poetry and later writers): *circā eandem hōram, about the same hour; circā īdūs Octōbrīs, about the fifteenth of October; circā decem mīlia, about ten thousand.*

    c. FIGURATIVELY (in later writers), *about, in regard to* (CF. DĒ): *circā quem pūgna est, with regard to whom*, etc.; *circā deōs neglegentior, rather neglectful of* (i.e. in worshipping) *the gods*.

6. **Circiter**, *about*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

    a. OF TIME OR NUMBER: *circiter īdūs Novembrīs, about the thirteenth of November; circiter merīdiem, about noon*.

7. **Circum**, *about, around*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

    a. OF PLACE: *circum hæc loca, hereabout; circum Capuam, round Capua; circum illum, with him; lēgātiō circum īnsulās missa, an embassy sent to the islands round about; circum amīcōs, to his friends round about*.

8. **Contrā**, *opposite, against*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE. *contrā Ītaliam, over against Italy; contrā hæc, in answer to this.*

    a. OFTEN AS ADVERB: as, *hæc contrā, this in reply; contrā autem, but on the other hand; quod contrā, whereas, on the other hand*.

9. **Cum**, *with, together with*, WITH THE ABLATIVE.

    a. OF PLACE: as,—*vāde mēcum, go with me; cum omnibus impedīmentīs, with all [their] baggage*.

b. OF TIME: as,—*prīmā cum lūce, at early dawn (with first light).*

c. IDIOMATIC USES: *māgnō cum dolōre, with great sorrow; commūnicāre aliquid cum aliquō, share something with some one; cum malō suō, to his own hurt; cōnflīgere cum hoste, to fight with the enemy; esse cum tēlō, to go armed; cum silentiō, in silence*.

10. **Dē**, *down from, from*, WITH THE ABLATIVE (CF. AB, AWAY FROM; EX, OUT OF).

a. OF PLACE: as, *dē cælō dēmissus, sent down from heaven; dē nāvibus dēsilīre, to jump down from the ships.*

b. FIGURATIVELY, CONCERNING, ABOUT, OF: as, *cōgnōscit dē Clōdī cæde, he learns of the murder of Clodius; cōnsilia dē bellō, plans of war.*

c. IN A PARTITIVE SENSE (COMPARE *ex*), *out of, of*: as, *ūnus dē plēbe, one of the people.*

d. IDIOMATIC USES: *multīs dē causīs, for many reasons; quā dē causā, for which reason; dē imprōvīsō, of a sudden; dē industriā, on purpose; dē integrō, anew; dē tertiā vigiliā, just at midnight (starting at the third watch); dē mēnse Decembrī nāvigāre, to sail as early as December.*

11. **Ex**, **ē**, *from* (the midst, opposed to in), *out of*, WITH THE ABLATIVE (CF. AB AND DĒ).

a. OF PLACE: as, *ex omnibus partibus silvæ ēvolāvērunt, they flew out from all parts of the forest; ex Hispāniā, [a man] from Spain.*

b. OF TIME: as, *ex eō diē quīntus, the fifth day from that (four days after); ex hōc diē, from this day forth.*

c. IDIOMATICALLY OR LESS EXACTLY: *ex cōnsulātū, right after his consulship: ex êius sententiā, according to his opinion; ex æquō, justly; ex imprōvīsō, unexpectedly; ex tuā rē, to your advantage; māgnā ex parte, in a great degree; ex equō pūgnāre, to fight on horseback; ex ūsū, expedient; ē regiōne, opposite; quærere ex aliquō, to ask of some one; ex senātūs cōnsultō, according to the decree of the senate; ex fugā, in [their] flight (proceeding immediately from it); ūnus ē fīliīs, one of the sons.*

12. **In**, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE OR THE ABLATIVE.

1 WITH THE ACCUSATIVE, *into* (OPPOSED TO EX).

a. OF PLACE: as, *—in Ītaliam contendit, he hastens into Italy.*

b. OF TIME, *till, until*: as, *—in lūcem, till daylight.*

c. IDIOMATICALLY OR LESS EXACTLY: *in merīdiem, towards the south; amor in (ergā, adversus) patrem, love for his father; in āram cōnfūgit, he fled to the altar (on the steps, or merely to); in diēs, from day to day; in longitūdinem, lengthwise; in lātitūdinem patēbat, extended in width; in hæc verba iūrāre, to swear to these words; hunc in modum, in this way; ōrātiō in Catilīnam, a speech against Catiline; in perpetuum, forever; in pêius, for the worse; in diem vīvere, to live from hand to mouth (for the day).*

2 WITH THE ABLATIVE, *in, on, among.*

IN VERY VARIOUS CONNECTIONS: as, *—in castrīs, in the camp (cf. ad castra, to, at, or near the camp); in marī, on the sea; in urbe esse, to be in town; in tempore, in season; in scrībendō, while writing; est mihi in animō, I have it in mind, I intend; in ancorīs, at anchor; in hōc homine, in the case of this man; in dubiō esse, to be in doubt.*

13. **Īnfrā**, *below*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

a. OF PLACE: as, *ad mare īnfrā oppidum, by the sea below the town; īnfrā cælum, under the sky.*

b. FIGURATIVELY OR LESS EXACTLY: as, *—īnfrā Homērum, later than Homer; īnfrā trēs pedēs, less than three feet; īnfrā elephantōs, smaller than elephants; īnfrā īnfimōs omnīs, the lowest of the low.*

14. **Inter**, *between, among*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

inter mē et Scīpiōnem, between myself and Scipio; inter ōs et offam, between the cup and the lip (the mouth and the morsel); inter hostium tēla, amid the weapons of the enemy; inter omnīs prīmus, first of all; inter bibendum, while drinking; inter sē loquuntur, they talk together.

15. **Ob**, *towards, on account of*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

a. LITERALLY: OF MOTION (ARCHAIC): as, *ob Rōmam, towards Rome*

(Ennius); ob viam, to the road (preserved as adverb, in the way of). OF PLACE IN WHICH, BEFORE, IN A FEW PHRASES: as, *ob oculōs, before the eyes.*

b. FIGURATIVELY, IN RETURN FOR (MOSTLY ARCHAIC, PROBABLY A WORD OF ACCOUNT, BALANCING ONE THING AGAINST ANOTHER): as, *ob mulierem, in pay for the woman; ob rem, for gain*. HENCE APPLIED TO REASON, CAUSE, AND THE LIKE, ON ACCOUNT OF (A SIMILAR MERCANTILE IDEA), FOR: as, *ob eam causam, for that reason; quam ob rem (quamobrem), wherefore, why.*

16. **Per**, *through, over*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

a. OF MOTION: as, —*per urbem īre, to go through the city; per mūrōs, over the walls.*

b. OF TIME: as, —*per hiemem, throughout the winter.*

c. FIGURATIVELY, OF PERSONS AS MEANS OR INSTRUMENTS: as, —*per hominēs idoneōs, through the instrumentality of suitable persons; licet per mē, you (etc.) may for all me*. Hence, *stat per mē, it is through my instrumentality; so, per sē, in and of itself.*

d. WEAKENED, IN MANY ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS: as, —*per iocum, in jest; per speciem, in show, ostentatiously.*

17. **Præ**, *in front of*, WITH THE ABLATIVE.

a. LITERALLY, OF PLACE (IN A FEW CONNECTIONS): as, *præ sē portāre, to carry in one's arms; præ sē ferre, to carry before one*, (hence figuratively) *exhibit, proclaim ostentatiously, make known.*

b. FIGURATIVELY, OF HINDRANCE, AS BY AN OBSTACLE IN FRONT (COMPARE ENGLISH FOR): as, *præ gaudiō conticuit, he was silent for joy.*

c. OF COMPARISON: as, *præ māgnitūdine corporum suōrum, in comparison with their own great size.*

18. **Præter**, *along by, by*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

a. LITERALLY: as, *præter castra, by the camp (along by, in front of); præter oculōs, before the eyes.*

b. FIGURATIVELY, *beyond, besides, more than, in addition to, except*: as,

præter spem, beyond hope; præter aliōs, more than others; præter paucōs, with the exception of a few.

19. **Prō**, *in front of*, WITH THE ABLATIVE.

sedēns prō æde Castoris, sitting in front of the temple of Castor; prō populō, in presence of the people. So *prō rōstrīs, on [the front of] the rostra;prō contiōne, before the assembly* (in a speech).

a. IN VARIOUS IDIOMATIC USES: *prō lēge, in defence of the law; prō vitulā, instead of a heifer; prō centum mīlibus, as good as a hundred thousand; prō ratā parte, in due proportion; prō hāc vice, for this once; prō cōnsule, in place of consul; prō vīribus, considering his strength; prō virīlī parte, to the best of one's ability; prō tuā prūdentiā, in accordance with your wisdom.*

20. **Propter**, *near, by*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

propter tē sedet, he sits next you. Hence, *on account of* (CF. ALL ALONG OF): *as, propter metum, through fear*.

21. **Secundum**, *just behind, following*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

a. LITERALLY: as, *īte secundum mē (Plaut.), go behind me; secundum lītus, near the shore; secundum flūmen, along the stream* (CF. SECUNDŌ FLŪMINE, DOWN STREAM).

b. FIGURATIVELY, *according to*: as, *secundum nātūram, according to nature*.

22. **Sub**, *under, up to*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE OR THE ABLATIVE.

a. OF MOTION, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE: as, *sub montem succēdere, to come close to the hill.*

b. IDIOMATICALLY: *sub noctem, towards night; sub lūcem, near daylight; sub hæc dicta, at (following) these words*.

c. OF REST, WITH THE ABLATIVE: as, *sub Iove, in the open air* (under the heaven, personified as Jove); *sub monte, at the foot of the hill.*

d. IDIOMATICALLY: *sub eōdem tempore, about the same time* (just after it).

23. **Subter**, *under, below*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE (SOMETIMES, IN POETRY, THE ABLATIVE).

subter togam (LIV.), *under his mantle*; but, *subter lītore* (CATULL.), *below the shore*.

24. **Super**, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE OR THE ABLATIVE.

    1 WITH THE ACCUSATIVE, *above, over, on, beyond, upon*.

    a. OF PLACE: *super "vāllum præcipitārī"* (IUG. 58), *to be hurled over the rampart; super "laterēs coria indūcuntur"* (B.C. 2.10), *hides are drawn over the bricks; super "terræ tumulum statuī"* (LEGG. 2.65), *to be placed on the mound of earth; super "Numidiam"* (IUG. 19), *beyond Numidia*.

    b. IDIOMATICALLY OR LESS EXACTLY: *vulnus super vulnus, wound upon wound; super "vīnum"* (Q. C. 8.4), *over his wine*.

    2 WITH THE ABLATIVE, *concerning, about* (THE ONLY USE WITH THIS CASE IN PROSE).

    hāc super rē, concerning this thing; super tālī rē, about such an affair; litterās super tantā rē exspectāre, to wait for a letter in a matter of such importance.

    a. POETICALLY, IN OTHER SENSES: *līgna super focō largē "repōnēns"* (HOR. OD. 1.9.5), *piling logs generously on the fire; nocte super mediā* (AEN. 9.61), *after midnight*.

25. **Suprā**, *on top of, above,* WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

    suprā terram, on the surface of the earth. SO ALSO FIGURATIVELY: as, —*suprā hanc memoriam, before our remembrance; suprā mōrem, more than usual; suprā quod, besides.*

26. **Tenus** (POSTPOSITIVE), *as far as, up to*, REGULARLY WITH THE ABLATIVE, SOMETIMES WITH THE GENITIVE (CF. § 359. B).

    1 WITH THE ABLATIVE: *Taurō tenus, as far as Taurus; capulō tenus, up to the hilt*.

    2 WITH THE GENITIVE: *Cumārum tenus* (FAM. 8.1.2), *as far as Cumæ*.

    NOTE 1.--*Tenus* IS FREQUENTLY CONNECTED WITH THE FEMININE OF AN ADJECTIVE PRONOUN, MAKING AN

ADVERBIAL PHRASE: as, *hāctenus, hitherto; quātenus, so far as; dē hāc rē hāctenus, so much for that* (about this matter so far).

NOTE 2.--*Tenus* WAS ORIGINALLY A NEUTER NOUN, MEANING LINE OR EXTENT. IN ITS USE WITH THE GENITIVE (MOSTLY POETICAL) IT MAY BE REGARDED AS AN ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE (§ 397. A).

27. **Trans**, *across, over, through, by*, WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

a. OF MOTION: as, *trāns mare currunt, they run across the sea; trāns flūmen ferre, to carry over a river; trāns æthera, through the sky; trāns caput iace, throw over your head.*

b. OF REST: as, *trāns Rhēnum incolunt, they live across the Rhine.*

28. **Ultrā**, *beyond* (on the further side), WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

cis Padum ultrāque, on this side of the Po and beyond; ultrā eum numerum, more than that number; ultrā fidem, incredible; ultrā modum, immoderate.

NOTE.--SOME ADVERBS APPEAR AS PREPOSITIONS: as, *intus, īnsuper* (SEE § 219).

§282

A noun used to describe another, and standing in the same part of the sentence with the noun described, is called an Appositive, and is said to be in apposition.

§283

With *sum* and a few other intransitive or passive verbs, a noun or an adjective describing or defining the subject may stand in the predicate. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective.

The verb *sum* is especially common in this construction, and when so used is called the copula (i.e. connective).

Other verbs which take a predicate noun or adjective are the socalled copulative verbs signifying *to become, to be made, to be named, to appear*, and the like.

§289

Neuter Adjectives are used substantively in the following special senses:

iv. A neuter adjective may be used as an attributive or a predicate adjective with an infinitive or a substantive clause

§291

Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows:

a. The Comparative denotes a considerable or excessive degree of a quality: as,—*brevior, rather short*; *audācior, too bold*.

b. The Superlative (of eminence) often denotes a very high degree of a quality without implying a distinct comparison: as,—*mōns altissimus, a very high mountain*.

c. With *quam, vel*, or *ūnus* the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree.

§293

Superlatives (and more rarely Comparatives) denoting order and succession—also *medius*, [*cēterus*], *reliquus*—usually designate not what object, but what part of it, is meant.

§301

Special uses of the Reflexive are the following:

vi. *Inter sē* (*nōs, vōs*), *among themselves* (*ourselves, yourselves*), is regularly used to express reciprocal action or relation.

§306

A Relative generally agrees in gender and number with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number.

§307

The Antecedent Noun sometimes appears in both clauses, but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted.

a. The antecedent noun may be repeated in the relative clause:

> "*locī nātūra erat hæc quem locum nostrī dēlēgerant*" (II.XVIII), *the nature of the ground which our men had chosen was this.*

b. The antecedent noun may appear only in the relative clause, agreeing with the relative in case:

> *"quās rēs in cōnsulātū nostrō gessimus attigit hīc versibus"* (ARCH. 28), *he has touched in verse the things which I did in my consulship.*

> *quæ prīma innocentis mihi dēfēnsiō est oblāta suscēpī* (SULL. 92), *I undertook the first defence of an innocent man that was offered me.*

> NOTE.--IN THIS CASE THE RELATIVE CLAUSE USUALLY COMES FIRST (CF. § 308. D) AND A DEMONSTRATIVE USUALLY STANDS IN THE ANTECEDENT CLAUSE:

> *"quæ pars cīvitātis calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps pœnās persolvit"* (I.XII), *that part of the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty*.

c. The antecedent may be omitted, especially if it is indefinite.

> *"quī decimæ legiōnis aquilam ferēbat"* (IV.XXV), *[the man] who bore the eagle of the tenth legion.*

> *"quī cōgnōscerent mīsit"* (I.XXI), *he sent [men] to reconnoitre.*

§308

In the use of Relatives, the following points are to be observed:—

a. The relative is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English:—

> *liber quem mihi dedistī, the book you gave me*.

> *is sum quī semper fuī, I am the same man I always was*.

> *eō in locō est dē quō tibi locūtus sum, he is in the place I told you of.*

b. When two relative clauses are connected by a copulative conjunction, a relative pronoun sometimes stands in the first and a demonstrative in the last:—

"erat profectus obviam legiōnibus Macedonicīs quattuor, quās sibi conciliāre pecūniā cōgitābat eāsque ad urbem addūcere" (FAM. 12.23.2), he had set out to meet four legions from Macedonia, which he thought to win over to himself by a gift of money and to lead (them) to the city.

c. A relative clause in Latin often takes the place of some other construction in English,—particularly of a participle, an appositive, or a noun of agency:—

lēgēs quæ nunc sunt, the existing laws (the laws which now exist).

Cæsar quī Galliam vīcit, Cæsar the conqueror of Gaul.

"iūsta glōria quī est frūctus virtūtis" (PISON. 57), *true glory [which is] the fruit of virtue.*

ille quī petit, the plaintiff (he who sues).

quī legit, a reader (one who reads).

d. In formal or emphatic discourse, the relative clause usually comes first, often containing the antecedent noun (CF. § 307. B):—

"quæ pars cīvitātis Helvētiæ īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps pœnās persolvit" (I.XII), *the portion of the Helvetian state which had brought a serious disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.*

NOTE.--In colloquial language, the relative clause in such cases often contains a redundant demonstrative pronoun which logically belongs in the antecedent clause: as, *ille quī cōnsultē cavet, diūtinē ūtī bene licet partum bene* (PLAUT. RUD. 1240), *he who is on his guard, he may long enjoy what he has well obtained.*

e. The relative with an abstract noun may be used in a parenthetical clause to characterize a person, like the English such:—

"quæ vestra prūdentia est" (CÆL. 45), *such is your wisdom.* [EQUIVALENT TO *prō vestrā prūdentiā*.]

"audīssēs cōmœdōs vel lēctōrem vel lyristēn, vel, quæ mea līberālitās, omnēs" (PLIN. EP. 1.15), *you would have listened to comedians, or a reader, or a lyre-player, or—such is my liberality—to all of them.*

f. A relative pronoun (or adverb) often stands at the beginning of an independent sentence or clause, serving to connect it with the sentence or clause that precedes.—

> *"Cæsar statuit exspectandam classem; quæ ubi convēnit"* (III.XIV), *Cæsar decided that he must wait for the fleet; and when this had come together*, etc.
>
> *quæ quī audiēbant, and those who heard this (which things).*
>
> *quæ cum ita sint, and since this is so.*
>
> *"quōrum quod simile factum"* (CAT. 4.13), *what deed of theirs like this?*
>
> *quō cum vēnisset, and when he had come there (whither when he had come).*
>
> NOTE.--This arrangement is common even when another relative or an interrogative follows. The relative may usually be translated by an English demonstrative, *with* or *without and.*

g. A relative adverb is regularly used in referring to an antecedent in the Locative case; so, often, to express any relation of place instead of the formal relative pronoun:—

> *"mortuus Cūmīs quō sē contulerat"* (LIV. 2.21), *having died at Cumæ, whither he had retired.* [HERE IN *quam* URBEM MIGHT BE USED, BUT NOT IN *quās*.]
>
> *locus quō aditus nōn erat, a place to which (whither) there was no access.*
>
> *"rēgna unde genus dūcis"* (Aen. 5.801), *the kingdom from which you derive your race.*
>
> *unde petitur, the defendant (he from whom something is demanded).*

h. The relatives *quī, quālis, quantus, quot*, etc. are often rendered simply by as in English:—

> *idem quod semper, the same as always.*

"cum esset tālis quālem tē esse videō" (Mur. 32), *since he was such a man as I see you are.*

"tanta dīmicātiō quanta numquam fuit" (ATT. 7.1.2), *such a fight as never was before.*

"tot mala quot sīdera" (OV. TR. 1.5.47), *as many troubles as stars in the sky.*

i. The general construction of relatives is found in clauses introduced by relative adverbs: as, *ubi, quō, unde, cum, quārē*.

§317

Two or more Singular Subjects take a verb in the Plural:

ii. If the subjects are connected by disjunctives (§223i), or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is usually singular.

NOTE. Almost always when the subjects are abstract nouns.

§322

The following adverbs require special notice:

a. **Etiam** (*et iam*), *also, even*, is stronger than *quoque*, also, and usually precedes the emphatic word, while *quoque* follows it.

b. **Nunc**, means definitely *now*, in the immediate present, and is rarely used of the immediate past.

Iam means *now, already, at length, presently*, and includes a reference to previous time through which the state of things described has been or will be reached. It may be used of any time. With negatives *iam* means (*no*) *longer*.

Tum, *then*, is correlative to *cum*, when, and may be used of any time. *Tunc*, then, at that time, is a strengthened form of *tum*:

ut iam anteā dīxī, as I have already said before.

"sī iam satis ætātis atque rōboris habēret" (Rosc. Am. 149), if he had attained a suitable age and strength (Lit. if he now had, as he will have by and by).

nōn est iam lēnitātī locus, there is no longer room for mercy.

quod iam erat īnstitūtum, which had come to be a practice (had now been established).

tum cum rēgnābat, at the time when he reigned.

c. **Certō** means *certainly, certē* (usually) *at least, at any rate*:—

certō sciō, I know for a certainty; ego certē, I at least.

d. **Prīmum** means *first* (*first in order*, or *for the first time*), and implies a series of events or acts. *Prīmō* means *at first*, as opposed to *afterwards*, giving prominence merely to the difference of time:

hōc prīmum sentiō, this I hold in the first place.

ædīs prīmō ruere rēbāmur, at first we thought the house was falling.

e. **Quidem**, *indeed*, gives emphasis, and often has a concessive meaning, *especially* when followed by *sed, autem*, etc.:

"hōc quidem vidēre licet" (Læl. 54), *THIS surely one may see.* [Emphatic.]

f. **Nē ... quidem** means *not even* or *not ... either*. The emphatic word or words must stand between *nē* and *quidem*:

"sed nē Iugurtha quidem quiētus erat" (Iug. 51), *but Jugurtha was not quiet either.*

ego autem nē īrāscī possum quidem iīs quōs valdē amō; (Att. 2.19.1), but I cannot even get angry with those whom I love very much.

§323

Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar constructions, and are regularly followed by the same case or mood that precedes them.

§326

Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative.

a. Many compounds or phrases of which *nōn* is the first part express an

indefinite affirmative:

nōn nūllus, some; nōn nūllī (=aliquī), some few.

nōn nihil (=aliquid), something.

nōn nēmō (=aliquot), sundry persons.

nōn numquam (=aliquotiēns), sometimes.

b. Two negatives of which the second is nōn (belonging to the predicate) express a universal affirmative:

nēmō nōn, nūllus nōn, nobody [does] not, i.e. everybody [does]. [Cf. nōn nēmō, not nobody, i.e. somebody.]

nihil nōn, everything. [Cf. nōn nihil, something.]

numquam nōn, never not, i.e. always. [Cf. nōn numquam, sometimes.]

§335

In Double or Alternative Questions, *utrum* or *-ne*, whether, stands in the first member; *an*, *anne*, or, *annōn, necne*, or *not*, in the second; and usually an in the third, if there be one.

§343

The Possessive Genitive denotes the person or thing to which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs.

NOTE 1. The Possessive Genitive may denote (1) the actual owner (as in Alexander's dog) or author (as in Cicero's writings), or (2) the person or thing that possesses some feeling or quality or does some act (as in Cicero's eloquence, the strength of the bridge, Catiline's evil deeds). In the latter use it is sometimes called the Subjective Genitive; but this term properly includes the possessive genitive and several other genitive constructions (nearly all, in fact, except the Objective Genitive, §347).

ii. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb (Predicate Genitive).

§345

The Genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective.

a. The genitive of quality is found in the adjective phrases *êius modī, cûius modī* (equivalent to tālis*, such*; quālis*, of what sort.*)

b. The genitive of quality, with numerals, is used to define measures of length, depth, etc. (Genitive of Measure.)

§346

Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs.

a. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are:

1. Nouns or Pronouns.

pars mīlitum, part of the soldiers. quis nostrum, which of us?

nihil erat reliquī, there was nothing left.

"nēmō eōrum" (VII.LXVI), *not a man of them.*

"māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt" (II.XXIII), *they killed a large part of them.*

2. Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like *alius, alter, nūllus*, etc.

"mīlia passuum sescenta" (IV.III), *six hundred miles* (thousands of paces).

"*Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium"* (IV.I), *the tribe of the Suevi is far the largest and most warlike of all the Germans.*

"nūlla eārum" (IV.IIVIII), *not one of them* (the ships).

3. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, used as nouns:—

"plūs dolōris" (I.XX), *more grief.*

Note 1.--In classic prose neuter adjectives (not pronominal) seldom

take a part. genitive, except *multum, tantum, quantum*, and similar words.

Note 2.--The genitive of adjectives of the third declensionis rarely used partitively: *nihil novī* (genitive), *nothing new*; but, *nihil memorābile* (nominative), *nothing worth mention* (not *nihil memorābilis*).

4. Adverbs, especially those of Quantity and of Place:—

5. *"plūrimumtōtīus Galliæ equitātū valet"* (V.III), *is strongest of all Gaul in cavalry.*

b. The poets and later writers often use the part. genitive after adjectives, instead of a noun in its proper case:—

> *"nigræ lānārum"* (Plin. H. N. 8.193), *black wools*. [For *nigræ lānæ*.]
>
> "*expedītī mīlitum*" (Liv. 30.9), *light-armed soldiers*. [For *expedītī mīlitēs*.]
>
> "*hominum cūnctōs*" (Ov. M. 4.631), *all men*. [For *cūnctōs hominēs*;]

c. Cardinal numerals (except *mīlia*) regularly take the Ablative with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē* instead of the part. genitive. So also, quīdam, *a certain one*, *commonly*, and other words occasionally.

> *ūnus ex tribūnīs, one of the tribunes*. [But also, *ūnus tribūnōrum*]
>
> *"paucī dē nostrīs cadunt"* (I.XI), *a few of our men fall.*

d. *Uterque*, *both* (properly *each*), and *quisque, each*, with Nouns are regularly used as adjectives in agreement, but with Pronouns take a part. genitive:—

1. *uterque cōnsul, both the consuls; but, uterque nostrum, both of us*.
2. *ūnus quisque vestrum, each one of you*.
3. *utraque castra, both camps*.

e. Numbers and words of quantity including the whole of any thing take a case in agreement, and not the part. genitive. So also words denoting a

part when only that part is thought of:—

nōs omnēs, all of us (*we all*). [Not *omnēs nostrum*.]

quot sunt hostēs, how many of the enemy are there?

multī mīlitēs, many of the soldiers.

nēmō Rōmānus, not one Roman.

§347

The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

§348

Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object.

NOTE. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase *odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar*, the *hate* in a passive sense belongs to *Cæsar*, as *odium*, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as *hate*. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase *amor patris, love of a father*, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive).

cāritās tuī, affection for you.
vacātiō mūneris, relief from duty.
fuga malōrum, refuge from disaster.
contentiō honōrum, struggle for office.
dēsīderium ōtī, longing for rest.
grātia beneficī, gratitude for kindness.
precātiō deōrum, prayer to the gods.
opīniō virtūtis, reputation for valor.

§349

Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the Objective Genitive include:

a. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites govern the genitive.

b. Participles in *-ns* govern the genitive when they are used as adjectives, i.e. when they denote a constant disposition and not a particular act.

§350

Verbs of remembering and forgetting take either the Accusative or the Genitive of the object:

ii. *Meminī* takes the Genitive when it means to be mindful or regardful of a person or thing, to think of somebody or something (often with special interest or warmth of feeling).

So *oblīvīscor* in the opposite sense,—*to disregard*, or *dismiss from the mind*,—and the adjective *oblītus*, *careless* or *regardless*.

iii. *Reminīscor* is rare. It takes the Accusative in the literal sense of *call to mind, recollect*; the Genitive in the more figurative sense of *be mindful of*.

§359

Peculiar Genitive constructions are the following:

a. A poetical genitive occurs rarely in exclamations, in imitation of the Greek (Genitive of Exclamation.)

b. The genitive is often used with the ablatives *causā, grātiā, for the sake of*; *ergō, because of*; and the indeclinable *īnstar, like*; also with *prīdiē, the day before*; *postrīdiē, the day after*; *tenus, as far as*.

§364

Certain verbs may take either the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (in a different sense) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing.

Such are *dōnō, impertiō, induō, exuō, adspergō, īnspergō, circumdō*, and in poetry *accingō, implicō*, and similar verbs.

§367

Many verbs signifying to *favor, help, please, trust*, and their contraries; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon*, and *spare*, take the Dative.

i. Some verbs apparently of the same meanings take the Accusative. Such are

iuvō, adiuvō, help; *lædō, injure*; *iubeō, order*; *dēficiō, fail*; *dēlectō, please*.

NOTE. II. Some common phrases regularly take the dative precisely like verbs of similar meaning. Such are—*præstō esse, be on hand* (cf. *adesse*); *mōrem gerere, humor* (cf. *mōrigerārī*); *grātum facere, do a favor* (cf. *grātificārī*); *dictō audiēns esse, be obedient* (cf. *obœdīre*); *"cui fidem habēbat"* (B. G. 1.19), *in whom he had confidence* (cf. *cōnfidēbat*).

§368

The Dative is used:

a. With the impersonals *libet* (*lubet*), *it pleases*, and *licet*, *it is allowed*.

b. With verbs compounded with *satis, bene*, and *male*.

c. With *grātificor, grātulor, nūbō, permittō, plaudō, probō, studeō, supplicō, excellō*.

§369

Some verbs ordinarily intransitive may have an Accusative of the direct object along with the Dative of the indirect.

§370

Many verbs compounded with *ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, super*, and some with *circum*, admit the Dative of the indirect object.

§372

Intransitive verbs that govern the dative are used impersonally in the passive (§208iv). The dative is retained (cf. §365).

§373

The Dative is used with *esse* and similar words to denote Possession.

Note. The Genitive or a Possessive with *esse* emphasizes the possessor; the Dative, the fact of possession: as,—*liber est meus, the book is MINE* (and no one's else):

est mihi liber, I HAVE a book (among other things).

ii. *Dēsum* takes the dative; so occasionally *absum* (which regularly has the ablative).

§374

The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests.

This is the regular way of expressing the agent with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§196).

§376

The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference).

The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed.

§377

The Dative of Reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word.

§381

Many verbs of taking away and the like take the Dative (especially of a person) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§401).

Such are compounds of *ab, dē, ex*, and a few of *ad*.

The distinct idea of motion requires the ablative with a preposition—thus generally with names of things (§426i).

§382

The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of

the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows:

The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected.

NOTE I. This construction is often called the Dative of Service, or the Double Dative construction. The verb is usually *sum*. The noun expressing the end for which is regularly abstract and singular in number and is never modified by an adjective, except one of degree (*māgnus, minor*, etc.), or by a genitive.

§383

The Dative is used after Adjectives or Adverbs, to denote that to which the given quality is directed, for which it exists, or towards which it tends.

§384

The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites.

Adjectives of this kind are *accommodātus, aptus; amīcus, inimīcus, īnfestus, invīsus, molestus*; *idōneus, opportūnus, proprius*; *ūtilis, inūtilis*; *affīnis, fīnitimus, propinquus, vīcīnus*; *pār, dispār, similis, dissimilis*; *iūcundus, grātus*; *nōtus, īgnōtus*, and *others*.

§388

Certain special verbs require notice:

a. Many verbs apparently intransitive, expressing feeling, take an accusative, and may be used in the passive.

b. Verbs of motion, compounds of *circum, trāns*, and *præter*, and a few others, frequently become transitive, and take the accusative.

c. The accusative is used after the impersonals *decet, dēdecet, dēlectat, iuvat, oportet, fallit, fugit, præterit*.

§390

An intransitive verb often takes the Accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner.

This construction is called the Cognate Accusative or Accusative of Kindred Signification.

§393

Verbs of naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object.

§396

Some verbs of asking and teaching may take two accusatives, one of the Person (direct object), and the other of the Thing (secondary object).

i. Some verbs of asking take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, always, *petō* (*ab*), *quærō* (*ex, ab, dē*); usually *poscō* (*ab*), *flāgitō* (*ab*), *postulō* (*ab*), and occasionally others.

§400

Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative.

§401

Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with *ab* or *ex*).

§402

Verbs compounded with *ā, ab, dē, ex*, (1) take the simple Ablative when used figuratively; but (2) when used literally to denote actual separation or motion, they usually require a preposition.

§403

The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists.

§404

The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause.

iii. The ablatives *causā* and *grātiā, for the sake of*, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement.

§405

The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action.

Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires *ā* or *ab*) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus *occīsus gladiō, slain by a sword*; but, *occīsus ab hoste, slain by an enemy*.

Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule.

ii. The personal agent, when considered as instrument or means, is often expressed by *per* with the accusative, or by *operā* with a genitive or possessive.

§406

The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative (This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point from which we reckon. Thus, *"Cicero is eloquent"*; but, starting from him we come to Cato, who is *"more so than he."*) signifying *than*.

§407

The comparative may be followed by *quam, than*. When *quam* is used, the two

things compared are put in the same case:

a. The construction with *quam* is required when the first of the things compared is not in the Nominative or Accusative.

b. In sentences expressing or implying a general negative the ablative (rather than *quam*) is the regular construction when the first member of the comparison is in the nominative or accusative.

After the comparatives *plūs, minus, amplius, longius*, without *quam*, a word of measure or number is often used with no change in its case.

§408

Means, Instrument, Manner, and Accompaniment are denoted by the Instrumental Ablative (see §398), but some of these uses more commonly require a preposition. As they all come from one source (the old Instrumental Case) no sharp line can be drawn between them, and indeed the Romans themselves can hardly have thought of any distinction. Thus, in *omnibus precibus ōrābant, they entreated with every [kind of] prayer*, the ablative, properly that of means, cannot be distinguished from that of manner.

§409

The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.

§410

The deponents *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative.

i. *Potior* sometimes takes the Genitive, as always in the phrase *potīri rērum*, *to get control* or *be master of affairs* (§357i).

§411

Opus and *ūsus*, signifying need, take the Ablative.

i. With *opus* the ablative of a perfect participle is often found, either agreeing with a noun or used as a neuter abstract noun.

§412

The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with *cum*, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun.

cum celeritāte vēnit, he came with speed. But,—

summā celeritāte vēnit, he came with the greatest speed.

"quid rēfert quā mē ratiōne cōgātis" (LÆL. 26), *what difference does it make in what way you compel me?*

a. But *cum* is often used even when the ablative has a limiting adjective. *"quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit"* (I.XVII), *at what risk he did this.*

b. With such words of manner as *modō, pactō, ratiōne, rītū, vī, viā*, and with stock expressions which have become virtually adverbs (as *silentiō, iūre, iniūriā*), *cum* is not used. *apis Matīnæ mōre modōque carmina fingō* (HOR. OD. 4.2.28), *in the style and manner of a Matinian bee I fashion songs.*

§414

With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference.

i. The ablatives *quō* ... *eō* (*hōc*), and *quantō* ... *tantō*, are used correlatively with comparatives, like the English *the* ... *the*.

Note. To this construction are doubtless to be referred all cases of *quō* and *eō* (*hōc*) with a comparative, even when they have ceased to be distinctly felt as degree of difference and approach the Ablative of Cause.

§415

The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality.

In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but physical qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative.

§416

The price of a thing is put in the Ablative.

Note. To this head is to be referred the Ablative of the Penalty.

§417

Certain adjectives of quantity are used in the Genitive to denote indefinite value. Such are *māgnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris*.

Note. These are really Genitives of Quality (§345ii).

§418

The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done.

i. To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative expresses that in accordance with which anything is or is done.

Note. As the Romans had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the ablative. The ablative of specification (originally instrumental) is closely akin to that of manner, and shows some resemblance to means and cause.

§419

A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute.

Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (*absolūtus*, i.e. *free* or *unconnected*). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause.

i. An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the Ablative Absolute construction

§420

The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause.

Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance.

§423

Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative.

a. Ablative:—

> *cōnstitūtā diē, on the appointed day; prīmā lūce, at daybreak.*
>
> *quotā hōrā, at what o'clock?*
>
> *tertiā vigiliā, in the third watch.*
>
> *"tribus proximīs annīs"* (Iug. 11), *within the last three years.*
>
> *"diēbus vīgintī quīnque aggerem exstrūxērunt"* (XII.XXIV), *within twenty-five days they finished building a mound.*

b. Accusative:—

> *diēs continuōs trīgintā, for thirty days together.*
>
> *"cum trīduumiter fēcisset"* (II.XVI), *when he had marched three days.*
>
> Note.--The Ablative of Time is locative in its origin (§421); the Accusative is the same as that of the extent of space (§425).

§424

Special constructions of time are the following:

a. The Ablative of time within which sometimes takes in, and the Accusative of time how long *per*, for greater precision.

b. Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative.

c. Time *during which* or *within which* may be expressed by the Accusative or Ablative of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral.

d. Many expressions have in Latin the construction of time when where in English the main idea is rather of place.

e. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the Accusative with *ad, in*, or *sub* is used. Such are the following.

Distance of time before or after anything is variously expressed.

In Dates the phrase *ante diem* (a.d.) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition.

The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute, usually without a conjunction.

§425

Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative.

ii. Distance when considered as extent of space is put in the Accusative; when considered as degree of difference, in the Ablative (§414).

§426

Relations of Place are expressed as follows:

a. The place from which, by the Ablative with *ab, dē*, or *ex*.

b. The place to which (or end of motion), by the Accusative with <*>*d* or *in*.

c. The place where, by the Ablative with in (Locative Ablative).

§427

With names of towns and small islands, and with *domus* and *rūs*, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows:

a. The place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition.

b. The place to which, by the Accusative without a preposition.

c. The place where, by the Locative.

§428

Special uses of place from which, to which, and where are the following:

a. With names of towns and small islands *ab* is often used to denote *from the vicinity of*, and *ad* to denote *towards*, *to the neighborhood of*.

> *"ut ā Mutinā discēderet"* (PHIL. 14.4), *that he should retire from Modena (which he was besieging)*.
>
> *"erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra"* (VII.XLV), *there was from about Gergovia a view into the camp.*
>
> *"ad Alesiam proficīscuntur"* (VII.LXXVI), *they set out for Alesia*.
>
> *"ad Alesiam perveniunt"* (VII.LXXIX), *they arrive at Alesia* (i.e. in the neighborhood of the town).
>
> *"D. Lælius cum classe ad Brundisium vēnit"* (B. C. 3.100), *Decimus Lælius came to Brundisium with a fleet* (arriving in the harbor).

b. The general words *urbs, oppidum, īnsula*, require a preposition to express the place from which, to which, or where:—

ab (ex) urbe, from the city.	*in urbe, in the city*.
ad urbem, to the city.	*Rōmæ in urbe, in the city of Rome*.
in urbem, into the city.	*Rōmā ex urbe, from the city of Rome*.
ad urbem Rōmam (Rōmam ad urbem), to the city of Rome.	

c. With the name of a country, *ad* denotes *to the borders*; *in* with the accusative, *into* the country itself. Similarly *ab* denotes *away from* the outside; *ex, out* of the interior.

> Thus *ad Ītaliam pervēnit* would mean *he came to the frontier*, regardless of the destination; *in Ītaliam, he went to Italy*, i.e. to a place within it, to Rome, for instance.
>
> So *ab Ītaliā profectus est* would mean *he came away from the frontier*,

regardless of the original starting-point; *ex Ītaliā, he came from Italy, from within*, as from Rome, for instance.

d. With all names of places at, meaning near (not in), is expressed by *ad* or *apud* with the accusative.

pūgna ad Cannās, the fight at Cannæ.

"conchās ad Câiētam legunt" (DE OR. 2.22), *at Caieta* (along the shore).

ad (apud) īnferōs, in the world below (near, or among, those below).

Note.-- *In the neighborhood of* may be expressed by *circā* with the accusative; *among*, by *apud* with the accusative:—

ad forīs, at the doors.	*ad iānuam, at the door.*

Note 2.--In citing an author, *apud* is regularly used; in citing a particular work, *in*. Thus, *apud Xenophōntem, in Xenophon*; but, *in Xenophōntis Oeconomicō, in Xenophon's Œconomicus*

apud Græcōs, among the Greeks.	*apud mē, at my house.*
"apud Solēnsīs" (LEG. 2.41), *at Soli.*	*circā Capuam, round about Capua.*

e. Large islands, and all places when thought of as a territory and not as a locality, are treated like names of countries:—

in Siciliā, in Sicily.

"in Ithacā leporēs illātī moriuntur" (PLIN. H. N. 8.226), *in Ithaca hares, when carried there, die*. [Ulysses lived at Ithaca would require Ithacæ .]

f. The Ablative without a preposition is used to denote the place from which in certain idiomatic expressions.

"cessisset patriā" (MIL. 68), *he would have left his country.*

patriā pellere, to drive out of the country.

manū mittere, to emancipate (let go from the hand).

g. The poets and later writers often omit the preposition with the place from which or to which when it would be required in classical prose:—

> *"mānīs Acheronte remissōs"* (AEN. 5.99), *the spirits returned from Acheron.*
>
> *"Scythiā profectī"* (Q. C. 4.12.11), *setting out from Scythia.*
>
> *"Ītaliam ... Lāvīniaque vēnit lītora"* (AEN. 1.2), *he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.*
>
> *"terram Hesperiam veniēs"* (AEN. 2.781), *you shall come to the Hesperian land.*
>
> *"Aegyptum proficīscitur"* (TAC. ANN. 2.59), *he sets out for Egypt.*

h. In poetry the place to which is often expressed by the Dative, occasionally also in later prose:—

> *"it clāmor cælō"* (AEN. 5.451), *a shout goes up to the sky.*
>
> *"facilis dēscēnsus Avernō"* (ID. 6.126), *easy is the descent to Avernus.*
>
> *"diadēma capitī repōnere iussit"* (VAL. MAX. 5.1.9), *he ordered him to put back the diadem on his head.*

i. The preposition is not used with the supine in *-um* (§ 509) and in the following old phrases:—

> *exsequiās īre, to go to the funeral.*
>
> *pessum īre, to go to ruin.*
>
> *īnfitiās īre, to resort to denial.*
>
> *pessum dare, to ruin* (CF. PERDŌ).
>
> *vēnum dare, to sell* (give to sale). [HENCE *vēndere.*]
>
> *vēnum īre, to be sold* (go to sale). [HENCE *vēnīre.*]
>
> *forās* (USED AS ADVERB), *out*: as, *forās ēgredī, to go out of doors.*
>
> *suppetiās advenīre, to come to one's assistance.*

j. When two or more names of place are used with a verb of motion, each must be under its own construction:—

> *"quadriduō quō hæc gesta sunt rēs ad Chrȳsogonum in castra L. Sullæ*

Volā terrās dēfertur" (ROSC. AM. 20), *within four days after this was done, the matter was reported TO Chrysogonus IN Sulla's camp AT Volaterræ*.

NOTE.--The accusative with or without a preposition is often used in Latin when motion to a place is implied but not expressed in English (SEE K, N.).

k. *Domum* denoting the place to which, and the locative *domī*, may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive.

"domum rēgis" (DEIOT. 17), *to the king's house*. [But also *"in M. Læcæ domum"* (CAT. 1.8), *to Marcus Læca's house*.]

domī meæ, at my house; domī Cæsaris, at Cæsar's house.

domī suæ vel aliēnæ, at his own or another's house.

Note.--At times when thus modified, and regularly when otherwise modified, in *domum* or *in domō* is used:—

in domum prīvātam conveniunt (TAC. H. 4.55), *they come to gether in a private house.*

"in Mārcī Crassī castissimā domō" (CÆL. 9), *in the chaste home of Marcus Crassus*. [CF. *ex Anniānā Milōnis domō*, § 302. E.]

§429

The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances:

Often in indefinite words, such as *locō, parte*, etc.

Frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives (regularly when *tōtus* is used.)

In many idiomatic expressions which have lost the idea of place.

Freely in poetry:

The way by which is put in the Ablative without a preposition. Note. In this use the way by which is conceived as the means of passage.

Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with *ab* (rarely *ex*), properly

meaning from.

§431

Several verbs are followed by the Ablative. These are *acquiēscō, dēlector, lætor, gaudeō, glōrior, nītor, stō, maneō, fidō, cōnfidō, cōnsistō, contineor*.

§432

Certain Adverbs and Adjectives are sometimes used as Prepositions:

a. The adverbs *prīdiē, postrīdiē, propius, proximē*, less frequently the adjectives *propior* and *proximus*, may be followed by the Accusative.

b. *Ūsque* sometimes takes the Accusative, but *ūsque ad* is much more common.

c. The adverbs *palam, procul, simul*, may be used as prepositions and take the Ablative.

§434

Some Prepositions and Adverbs which imply comparison are followed, like comparatives, by *quam*, which may be separated by several words, or even clauses.

Such words are *ante, prius, post, posteā, prīdi, postrīdiē*; also *magis* and *præ* in compounds.

§439

The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an exhortation or a command. The negative is *nē*.

§444

The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) doubt, indignation, or (2) an impossibility of the thing's being done. The negative is *nōn*.

In many cases the question has become a mere exclamation, rejecting a suggested possibility.

§450

Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by *nōlī* with the Infinitive, (2) by *cavē* with the Present Subjunctive, or (3) by *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive.

§452

The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with *est* and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative.

§457

Many verbs take either a Subjunctive Clause or a Complementary Infinitive, without difference of meaning.

Such are verbs signifying willingness, necessity, propriety, resolve, command, prohibition, effort, and the like.

§459

The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used with verbs and other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (Indirect Discourse, § 579):—

"*dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī*" (I.XXII), *he says that the hill is held by the enemy*. [Direct: *mōns ab hostibus tenētur*.]

§463

The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the Nominative.

Note. This construction is not strictly historical, but rather descriptive, and is never used to state a mere historical fact. It is rarely found in subordinate clauses. Though occurring in most of the writers of all periods, it is most frequent in the historians Sallust, Livy, Tacitus. It does not occur in Suetonius.

§467

The Present sometimes denotes an action attempted or begun in present time, but never completed at all (Conative Present).

§469

The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect.

Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.)

§470

The Imperfect denotes an action or a state as continued or repeated in past time.

Note. The Imperfect is a descriptive tense and denotes an action conceived as in progress or a state of things as actually observed. Hence in many verbs it does not differ in meaning from the Perfect. Thus *rēx erat* and *rēx fuit* may often be used indifferently; but the former describes the condition while the latter only states it. The English is less exact in distinguishing these two modes of statement. Hence the Latin Imperfect is often translated by the English *Preterite*.

§481

The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses were habitually used in certain fixed connections with the tenses of the main verb.

These connections were determined by the time of the main verb and the time of the dependent verb together. They are known, collectively, as the Sequence of Tenses.

§495

Participles are often used as Predicate Adjectives. As such they may be joined to the subject by *esse* or a copulative verb:

1. *"Gallia est dīvīsa"* (I.I), *Gaul is divided.*
2. *"locus quī nunc sæptus est"* (Liv. 1.8), *the place which is now enclosed.*

3. *"vidētis ut senectūs sit operōsa et semper agēns aliquid et mōliēns"* (Cat. M. 26), *you see how busy old age is, always aiming and trying at something.*

4. *"nēmō adhūc convenīre mē voluit cui fuerim occupātus"* (Cat. M. 32), *nobody hitherto has [ever] wished to converse with me, to whom I have been "engaged."*

Note. From this predicate use arise the compound tenses of the passive,—the participle of completed action with the incomplete tenses of *esse* developing the idea of past time: as, *interfectus est, he was* (or *has been*) *killed*, Lit. *he is having-been-killed* (i.e. *already slain*).

§493

The Latin has no Perfect Participle in the active voice. The deficiency is supplied —

In deponents by the perfect passive form with its regular active meaning.

"*nam singulās [nāvīs] nostrīcōnsectātīexpūgnāvērunt*" (III.XV), *for our men, having overtaken them one by one, captured them by boarding*.

Note.--The perfect participle of several deponent verbs may be either active or passive in meaning (§ 190. b).

§496

The Present and Perfect Participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be more natural.

In this use the participles express time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic (or description), manner, means, attendant circumstances.

"*damnātum pœnam sequī oportēbat*" (I.IV), if condemned, punishment must overtake him. [Condition.]

Note 1.--These uses are especially frequent in the Ablative Absolute (§ 420).

Note 2.--A coördinate clause is sometimes compressed into a perfect participle:—

"*ut hōs trāductōs necāret*" (V.VI), *that he might carry them over and put them to death*.

§497

A noun and a passive participle are often so united that the participle and not the noun contains the main idea:

a. The perfect participle with a noun in agreement, or in the neuter as an abstract noun, is used in the ablative with *opus, need* (cf. § 411. a):—

> "*mātūrātō opus est*" (Liv. 8.13.17), *there is need of haste*.

b. The perfect participle with *habeō* (rarely with other verbs) has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the continued effect of the action of the verb:

> "*cohortīs in aciē LXXX cōnstitūtās habēbat*" (B. C. 3.89), *he had eighty cohorts stationed in line of battle*.

§503

When the Gerund would have an object in the Accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have had.

§504

The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive.

a. The genitive of the gerund sometimes takes a direct object, especially a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used substantively.

b. The genitive of the gerund or gerundive with *causā* or *gratiā* expresses purpose (§533. ii.)

c. The genitive of the gerund is occasionally limited by a noun or pronoun (especially a personal pronoun in the plural) in the objective genitive instead of taking a direct object.

§506

The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition *ad*, to denote Purpose.

The Accusative of the gerund with a preposition never takes a direct object in classic Latin.

§507

The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used:

to express manner, means, cause, etc.

after Comparatives.

after the propositions *ab, dē, ex, in*, and (rarely) *prō*.

§508

The Supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension (§94ii), having no distinction of tense or person, and limited to two uses. (1) The form in *-um* is the Accusative of the end of motion (§428i). (2) The form in *-ū* is usually Dative of purpose (§382), but the Ablative was early confused with it.

§509

The Supine in *-um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case.

§510

The Supine in *-ū* is used with a few adjectives and with the nouns *fās*, *nefās*, and *opus*, to denote an action in reference to which the quality is asserted.

The only common supines in *-ū* are *audītū, dictū, factū, inventū, memorātū, nātū, vīsū*. In classic use this supine is found in comparatively few verbs. It is never followed by an object-case.

Note 1. The supine in *-ū* is thus in appearance an Ablative of Specification (§418).

§513

Conditions are either (i) Particular or (ii) General:

a. A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time.

b. A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time.

§514

The principal or typical forms of Conditional Sentences may be exhibited as follows:

SIMPLE CONDITIONS (nothing implied as to fulfilment):

Present Time	Pres. Indic. in both clauses.
Past Time	Imperf. or Perf. Indic. in both clauses.

FUTURE CONDITIONS (as yet unfulfilled):

More Vivid	Fut. Indic. in both clauses
	Fut. Perf. Indic. in protasis, Fut. Indic. in apodosis.
Less Vivid	Pres. Subj. in both clauses.
	Perf. Subj. in protasis, Pres. Subj. in apodosis.

CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT:

Present Time	Imperf. Subj. in both clauses.
Past Time	Pluperf. Subj. in both clauses.

GENERAL CONDITIONS

General Conditions do not usually differ in form from the Conditions above, but are sometimes distinguished in the cases following:	
Present General Condition (Indefinite Time)	Pres. Subj. 2nd. per. sg. (Indefinite Subject) in protasis, Pres. Indic. in apodosis.
	Perf. Indic. in protasis, Pres. Indic. in apodosis:
Past General Condition (Repeated Action in Past Time)	Pluperf. Indic. in protasis, Imperf. Indic. in apodosis.
	Imperf. Subj. in protasis, Imperf. Indic. in apodosis.

PARTICULAR CONDITIONS

Simple Present and Past Conditions	Nothing Implied.

§516

Future Conditions may be more vivid or less vivid.

In a more vivid future condition the protasis makes a distinct supposition of a future case, the apodosis expressing what will be the logical result.

In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what would be the result in the case supposed:

a. In the more vivid future condition the Future Indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis.

b. In the less vivid future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis.

§524

Conditional Clauses of Comparison take the Subjunctive, usually in the Present or Perfect unless the sequence of tenses requires the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Such clauses are introduced by the comparative particles *tamquam*, *tamquam sī,*

quasi, ac sī, ut sī, velut sī (later *velut*), *poetic ceu* (all meaning *as if*), and by *quam sī* (*than if*).

§526

The concessive idea is rather vague and general, and takes a variety of forms, each of which has its distinct history. Sometimes concession is expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive in a sentence grammatically independent (§440), but it is more frequently and more precisely expressed by a dependent clause introduced by a concessive particle. The concessive force lies chiefly in the Conjunctions (which are indefinite or conditional in origin), and is often made clearer by an adversative particle (*tamen*, *certē*) in the main clause. As the Subjunctive may be used in independ ent clauses to express a concession, it is also employed in concessive clauses, and somewhat more frequently than the indicative.

§527

The Particles of Concession (meaning although, granting that) are *quamvīs, ut, licet, etsī, tametsī, etiam sī, quamquam*, and *cum*.

Some of these take the Subjunctive, others the Indicative, according to the nature of the clause which each introduces.

§529

The Subjunctive in the clause of Purpose is hortatory in origin, coming through a kind of indirect discourse construction.

Thus, *mīsit lēgātōs quī dīcerent* means *he sent ambassadors who should say*, i.e. *who were directed to say*; in the direct orders the verb would be *dīcite*, which would become *dīcant* in the Indirect Discourse of narrative (§588) or dīcerent in the past (cf. hortatory subjunctive in past tenses, §439. b). The Subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* is, in general, similar in origin.

§531

Final Clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut* (*utī*), negative *nē* (*ut nē*), or by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb.

Pure Clauses of Purpose, with *ut* (*utī*) or *nē* (*ut nē*), express the purpose of the

main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun *quī* or a relative adverb (*ubi, unde, quō*, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

The ablative *quō* (= *ut eō*) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative.

§534

The relative clause of Characteristic with the Subjunctive is a development peculiar to Latin. A relative clause in the Indicative merely states something as a fact which is true of the antecedent; a characteristic clause (in the Subjunctive) defines the antecedent as a person or thing of such a character that the statement made is true of him or it and of all others belonging to the same class. Thus,— *nōn potest exercitum* is *continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn continet* (indicative) means simply, *that commander who does not* (as a fact) *restrain himself cannot restrain his army*; whereas *nōn potest exercitum* is *continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn contineat* (subjunctive) would mean, *that commander who is not such a man as to restrain himself*, etc., that is, who is not characterized by self-restraint.

This construction has its origin in the potential use of the subjunctive (§445) Thus, in the example just given, *quī sē ipse nōn contineat* would mean literally, *who would not restrain himself* (in any supposable case), and this potential idea passes over easily into that of general quality or characteristic. The characterizing force is most easily felt when the antecedent is indefinite or general. But this usage is extended in Latin to cases which differ but slightly from statements of fact, as in some of the examples below.

The use of the Subjunctive to express Result comes from its use in Clauses of Characteristic. Thus, *nōn sum ita hebes ut hæc dīcam* means literally, *I am not dull in the manner* (degree) *in which I should say this*, hence, *I am not so dull as to say this*. Since, then, the characteristic often appears in the form of a supposed result, the construction readily passes over into Pure Result, with no idea of characteristic; as,— *"tantus in cūriā clāmor factus est ut populus concurreret"* (Verr. 2.47), *such an outcry was made in the senate-house that the people hurried together*.

§535

A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined.

When the time of the main clause and that of the temporal clause are absolutely identical, *cum* takes the Indicative in the same tense as that of the main verb.

§536

The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534).

§537

Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut, so that* (negative, *ut nōn*), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb.

Pure Clauses of Result, with *ut* or *ut nōn*, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

§539

Causal Clauses take either the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to their construction; the idea of cause being contained, not in the mood itself, but in the form of the argument (by implication), in an antecedent of causal meaning (like *propterеā*), or in the connecting particles.

Quod is in origin the relative pronoun (stem *quo-*) used adverbially in the accusative neuter (cf. §214. d) and gradually sinking to the position of a colorless relative conjunction (cf. English that and see §222). Its use as a causal particle is an early special development. *Quia* is perhaps an accusative plural neuter of the relative stem *qui-*, and seems to have developed its causal sense more distinctly than *quod*, and at an earlier period. It is used (very rarely) as an interrogative, *why?* (so in classical Latin with *nam* only), and may, like *quandō*, have developed from an interrogative to a relative particle.

Quoniam (for *quom iam*) is also of relative origin (*quom* being a case-form of the pronominal stem *quo-*). It occurs in old Latin in the sense of when (cf. *quom, cum*), from which the causal meaning is derived (cf. *cum* causal). The Subjunctive with *quod* and *quia* depends on the principle of Informal Indirect Discourse (§592).

Quandō is probably the interrogative *quam* (*how?*) compounded with a form of the pronominal stem *do-* (cf. *dum, dō-nec*). It originally denoted time (first interrogatively, then as a relative), and thus came to signify cause. Unlike *quod*

and *quia*, it is not used to state a reason in informal indirect discourse and therefore is never followed by the Subjunctive.

§540

The Causal Particles *quod* and *quia* take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another.

Note 1. *Quod* introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. *Quia* regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. *Quoniam*, *inasmuch as, since, when now, now that*, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative.

ii. Causal clauses introduced by *quod, quia, quoniam*, and *quandō* take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see §580).

§543

The particles *postquam* (*posteāquam*), *ubi, ut* (*ut prīmum, ut semel*), *simul atque* (*simul ac*, or *simul* alone), take the Indicative (usually in the perfect or the historical present).

§545

A temporal clause with *cum*, *when*, and some past tense of the Indicative dates or defines the time at which the action of the main verb occurred.

When the time of the main clause and that of the temporal clause are absolutely identical, cum takes the Indicative in the same tense as that of the main verb.

§546

A temporal clause with *cum* and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb.

§549

Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. *Cum* causal may usually be

translated by *since*; *cum* concessive by *although* or *while*; either, occasionally, by *when*.

§551

Antequam and *priusquam* take sometimes the Indicative sometimes the Subjunctive:

a. With *antequam* or *priusquam* the Perfect Indicative states a fact in past time.

b. With *antequam* or *priusquam* the Imperfect Subjunctive is common when the subordinate verb implies purpose or expectancy in past time, or when the action that it denotes did not take place.

c. *Antequam* and *priusquam*, when referring to future time, take the Present or Future Perfect Indicative; rarely the Present Subjunctive.

§553

Dum and *quoad*, *until*, take the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive in temporal clauses implying intention or expectancy.

§555

Dum, dōnec, and *quoad*, as long as, take the Indicative.

§556

Dum, while, regularly takes the Present Indicative to denote continued action in past time.

In translating, the English Imperfect must generally be used.

A past tense with *dum* (usually *so long as*) makes the time emphatic by contrast; but a few irregular cases of *dum* with a past tense occur where no contrast is intended.

§557

The original meaning of *quīn* is *how not? why not?* (*quī-nē*), and when used with the Indicative or (rarely) with the Subjunctive it regularly implies a general negative. Thus, *quīn ego hōc rogem? why shouldn't I ask this?* implies that there is no reason for not asking. The implied negative was then expressed in a main clause, like *nūlla causa est* or *fierī nōn potest*. Hence come the various dependent constructions introduced by *quīn*.

Quōminus is really a phrase (*quō minus*), and the dependent constructions which it introduces have their origin in the relative clause of purpose with *quō* and a comparative (see §531i).

§558

A subjunctive clause with *quīn* is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negatived, either expressly or by implication.

i. *Quīn* is especially common with *nōn dubitō, I do not doubt, nōn est dubium, there is no doubt*, and similar expressions.

ii. Verbs of hindering and refusing often take the subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus* (= *ut eō minus*), especially when the verb is not negatived.

§560

A clause which is used as a noun may be called a Substantive Clause, as certain relative clauses are sometimes called' adjective clauses. But in practice the term is restricted to clauses which represent a nominative or an accusative case, the clauses which stand for an ablative being sometimes called adverbial clauses.

Even with this limitation the term is not quite precise. The fact is rather that the clause and the leading verb are mutually complementary; each reinforces the other. The simplest and probably the earliest form of such sentences is to be found in the paratactic use (see §268) of two verbs like *volō abeās, dīcāmus cēnseō, adeam optimum est*. From such verbs the usage spread by analogy to other verbs, and the complementary relation of the clause to the verb came to resemble the complementary force of the accusative, especially the accusative of cognate meaning (§390).

§561

A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive Clause.

A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive, or as a Predicate Nominative or Accusative.

§562

Substantive Clauses are classified as follows:

a. Subjunctive Clauses (*ut, nē, ut nōn*, etc.). a. Of purpose (command, wish, fear) (§563, §564). b. Of result (happen, effect, etc.) (§568).

b. Indicative Clauses with *quod*: Fact, Specification, Feeling (§572).

c. Indirect Questions: Subjunctive, introduced by an Interrogative Word. (§573, §576).

d. Infinitive Clauses a. With verbs of ordering, wishing, etc. (§563). b. Indirect Discourse (§579 ff.).

§563

Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish.

§564

Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive, with *nē* affirmative and *nē nōn* or *ut* negative.

In this use *nē* is commonly to be translated by *that*, *ut* and *nē nōn* by *that not*.

§565

Volō and its compounds, the impersonals *licet* and *oportet*, and the imperatives *dīc* and *fac* often take the Subjunctive without *ut*.

i. Verbs of commanding and the like often take the subjunctive without *ut*.

Note. The subjunctive in this construction is the hortatory subjunctive used to express a command in Indirect Discourse.

§566

A Substantive Clause used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when the verb is put in the passive (Impersonal Construction.)

ii. Some verbs that take an infinitive instead of a subjunctive are used impersonally in the passive, and the infinitive becomes the subject of the sentence.

§567

Clauses of Result may be used substantively:

a. as the object of *faciō* etc. (§568)

b. as the subject of these same verbs in the passive, as well as of other verbs and verbal phrases (§569)

c. in apposition with another substantive, or as predicate nominative etc.

§568

Substantive Clauses of Result with *ut* (negative *ut nōn*) are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort—Such are especially *faciō* and its compounds (*efficiō, cōnficiō*, etc.)
Verbs and phrases taking an *ut*-clause of result as subject or object are *accēdit, accidit, additur, altera est rēs, committō, cōnsequor, contingit, efficiō, ēvenit, faciō, fit, fierī potest, fore, impetrō, integrum est, mōs est, mūnus est, necesse est, prope est, rēctum est, relinquitur, reliquum est, restat, tantī est, tantum abest*, and a few others.

§569

Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the subject of the following:

Of passive verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort.

Fore (or *futūrum esse*) *ut* with a clause of result as subject is Often used instead of the Future Infinitive active or passive; so necessarily in verbs which have no

supine stem.

§572

A peculiar form of Substantive Clause consists of *quod* (in the sense of *that, the fact that*) with the Indicative.

The clause in the Indicative with *quod* is used when the statement is regarded as a fact.

Note. Like other substantive clauses, the clause with *quod* may be used as subject, as object, as appositive, etc., but it is commonly either the subject or in apposition with the subject.

§573

An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt.

In grammatical form, exclamatory sentences are not distinguished from interrogative (see the third example below).

§576

In colloquial usage and in poetry the subject of an Indirect Question is often attracted into the main clause as object (Accusative of Anticipation).

An indirect question is occasionally introduced by *sī* in the sense of whether.

§577

The use of the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (ōrātiō oblīqua) is a comparatively late form of speech, developed in the Latin and Greek only, and perhaps separately in each of them. It is wholly wanting in Sanskrit, but some forms like it have grown up in English and German.

The essential character of Indirect Discourse is, that the language of some other person than the writer or speaker is compressed into a kind of Substantive Clause, the verb of the main clause becoming Infinitive, while modifying clauses, as well as all hortatory forms of speech, take the Subjunctive. The person of the

verb necessarily conforms to the new relation of persons.

The construction of Indirect Discourse, however, is not limited to reports of the language of some person other than the speaker; it may be used to express what any one—whether the speaker or some one else—says, thinks, or perceives, whenever that which is said, thought, or perceived is capable of being expressed in the form of a complete sentence. For anything that can be said etc. can also be reported indirectly as well as directly.

The use of the Infinitive in the main clause undoubtedly comes from its use as a case-form to complete or modify the action expressed by the verb of saying and its object together. This object in time came to be regarded as, and in fact to all intents became, the subject of the infinitive. A transition state is found in Sanskrit, which, though it has no indirect discourse proper, yet allows an indirect predication after verbs of saying and the like by means of a predicative apposition, in such expressions as *"The maids told the king [that] his daughter [was] bereft of her senses."*

The simple form of indirect statement with the accusative and infinitive was afterwards amplified by introducing dependent or modifying clauses; and in Latin it became a common construction, and could be used to report whole speeches etc., which in other languages would have the direct form. (Compare the style of reporting speeches in English, where only the person and tense are changed.)

The Subjunctive in the subordinate clauses of Indirect Discourse has no significance except to make more distinct the fact that these clauses are subordinate; consequently no direct connection has been traced between them and the uses of the mood in simple sentences. It is probable that the subjunctive in indirect questions (§574), in informal indirect discourse (§592), and in clauses of the integral part (§593) represents the earliest steps of a movement by which the subjunctive became in some degree a mood of subordination.

The Subjunctive standing for hortatory forms of speech in Indirect Discourse is simply the usual hortatory subjunctive, with only a change of person and tense (if necessary), as in the reporter's style.

§580

In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive.

i. The verb of saying etc. is often not expressed, but implied in some word or in

the general drift of the sentence:

§583

A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative.

§584

The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is present, past, or future with reference to the verb of saying etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced, such as:

cadō	I am falling.
dīcit sē cadere	he says that he is falling.
dīxit sē cadere	he said that he was falling.
cadēbam	I was falling.
cecidī	I fell, have fallen.
cecideram	I had fallen.
dīcit sē cecidisse	*he says that he was falling* (*fell, has fallen, had fallen*).
dīxit sē cecidisse	*he said that he fell* (*had fallen*).
cadam	I shall fall.
dīcit sē cāsūrum [esse]	*he says that he shall fall.*
dīxit sē cāsūrum [esse]	*he said that he should fall.*
ceciderō	I shall have fallen.
dīcit fore ut ceciderit [rare]	*he says that he shall have fallen.*
dīxit fore ut cecidisset [rare]	*he said that he should have fallen.*

i. All varieties of past time are usually expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Perfect Infinitive, which may stand for the Imperfect, the Perfect, or the Pluperfect Indicative of the Direct.

Note. Continued or repeated action in past time is sometimes expressed by the Present Infinitive, which in such cases stands for the Imperfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse and is often called the Imperfect Infinitive.

The present infinitive *posse* often has a *future sense—"totīus Galliæ sēsē potīrī posse spērant"* (I.III), *they hope that they shall be able to get possession of all Gaul.*

§586

A question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

A real question, asking for an answer, is generally put in the Subjunctive; a rhetorical question, asked for effect and implying its own answer, is put in the Infinitive.

§587

A Deliberative Subjunctive (§444) in the Direct Discourse is always retained in the Indirect.

§588

All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well.

§589

Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows:

The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive.

The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive.

i. The Present Subjunctive in the apodosis of less vivid future conditions (§516ii) becomes the Future Infinitive like the Future Indicative in the apodosis of more vivid future conditions.

Thus there is no distinction between more and less vivid future conditions in the Indirect Discourse.

ii. In changing a Condition contrary to fact (§517) into the Indirect Discourse, the following points require notice:

a. The Protasis always remains unchanged in tense.

b. The Apodosis, if active, takes a peculiar infinitive form, made by combining the Participle in *-ūrus* with *fuisse*.

c. If the verb of the Apodosis is passive or has no supine stem, the periphrasis *futūrum fuisse ut* (with the Imperfect Subjunctive) must be used.

d. An Indicative in the Apodosis becomes a Perfect Infinitive.

§592

A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker.

When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question, expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse.

§593

A clause depending upon a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause.

§597

In connected discourse the word most prominent in the speaker's mind comes first, and so on in order of prominence.

This relative prominence corresponds to that indicated in English by a graduated stress of voice (usually called emphasis).

[*] a. The difference in *emphasis* expressed by difference in order of words is illustrated in the following passages:—

[*] Note.--This stress or emphasis, however, in English does not necessarily show any violent contrast to the rest of the words in the sentence, but is infinitely varied, constantly increasing and diminishing, and often so subtle as to be unnoticed except in careful study. So, as a general rule, the precedence of words in a Latin sentence is not mechanical, but corresponds to the prominence which a good speaker would mark by skilfully managed stress of voice. A Latin written

sentence, therefore, has all the clearness and expression which could be given to a spoken discourse by the best actor in English. Some exceptions to the rule will be treated later.

The first chapter of Cæsar's Gallic War, if rendered so as to bring out as far as possible the shades of emphasis, would run thus:—

GAUL[I], in the widest sense, is **divided**[II] into three parts[III], which are inhabited[IV] (as follows): **one**[V] by the Belgians, **another**[VI] by the Aquitani, **the third** by a people called in *their own*[VII] language Celts, in *ours* Gauls. THESE[VIII] in their **language**[IX], **institutions**, and **laws** are *all* of them[X] different. The GAULS[XI] (proper) are separated[XII] from the **Aquitani** by the river *Garonne*, from the

I ***GAUL***: emphatic as the subject of discourse, as with a title or the like.

II ***Divided***: opposed to the false conception (implied in the use of *omnis*) that the country called *Gallia* by the Romans is one. This appears more clearly from the fact that Cæsar later speaks of the *Gallī* in a narrower sense as distinct from the other two tribes, who with them inhabit *Gallia* in the wider sense.

III ***Parts***: continuing the emphasis begun in *dīvīsa*. Not three parts as opposed to any other number, but into parts at all.

IV ***Inhabited***: emphatic as the next subject, *"The inhabitants of these parts are, etc."*

V ***One***: given more prominence than it otherwise would have on accountof its close connection with *quārum*.

VI ***Another***, etc.: opposed to one.

VII ***Their own, ours***: strongly opposed to each other.

VIII ***THESE (tribes)***: the main subject of discourse again, collecting under one head the names previously mentioned.

IX ***Language, etc.***: these are the most prominent ideas, as giving the striking points which distinguish the tribes. The emphasis becomes natural in English if we say *"these have a different language, different institutions, different laws."*

X ***All of them***: the emphasis on all marks the distributive character of the adjective, as if it were *"every one has its own, etc."*

XI ***GAULS***: emphatic as referring to the Gauls proper in distinction from the other tribes.

XII ***Separated***: though this word contains an indispensable idea in the connection, yet it has a subordinate position. It is not emphatic in Latin, as is seen from the fact that it cannot be made emphatic in English. The sense is: The Gauls lie between the Aquitani on the one side, and the Belgians on the other.

Belgians by the *Marne* and *Seine*. Of THESE[I] (TRIBES) the bravest of **all**[II] are the *Belgians*, for the reason that they live **farthest**[III] *away* from the CIVILIZATION and REFINEMENT of the **Province**, and because **they** are LEAST[IV] of all of them subject to the visits of *traders*[V], and to the (consequent) importation of **such things** as[VI] tend to *soften*[VII] their warlike spirit; and are also **nearest**[VIII] to the *Germans*, who live *across the Rhine*[IX], and with whom they are *incessantly*[X] at war. For **the same** reason the HELVETIANS, as well, are superior to all the *other* Gauls in valor, because they are engaged in *almost daily* battles with the Germans, either defending **their own** boundaries from *them*, or **themselves** making war on *those of the Germans*. Of ALL THIS country, **one** part —the one which, **as** has been said, the *Gauls* (proper) occupy—BEGINS at the river Rhone. Its **boundaries** are the *river Garonne*, the *ocean*, and the *confines* of the Belgians. It even REACHES on the side of the *Sequani* and *Helvetians* the

I ***Of THESE***: the subject of discourse.

II ***All***: emphasizing the superlative idea in "bravest"; they, as Gauls, are assumed to be warlike, but the most so of all of them are the Belgians.

III ***Farthest away***: one might expect *absunt* (*are away*) to have a more emphatic place, but it is dwarfed in importance by the predominance of the main idea, the effeminating influences from which the Belgians are said to be free. It is not that they live farthest off that is insisted on, but that the civilization of the Province etc., which would soften them, comes less in their way. It is to be noticed also that *absunt* has already been anticipated by the construction of *cultū* and still more by *longissimē*, so that when it comes it amounts only to a formal part of the sentence. Thus,—*"because the civilization etc. of the Province* (which would soften them) *is farthest from them."*

IV ***LEAST***: made emphatic here by a common Latin order, THE CHIASMUS § 598F

V ***Traders***: the fourth member of the chiasmus, opposed to *cultū* and *hūmānitāte*.

VI ***Such things as***: the importance of the nature of the importations overshadows the fact that they are imported, which fact is anticipated in traders.

VII ***Soften***: They are brave because they have less to soften them, their native barbarity being taken for granted.

VIII ***Nearest***: the same idiomatic prominence as in noteI above, but varied by a special usage combining chiasmus and anaphora §598. f.

IX ***Across the Rhine***: i.e. and so are perfect savages.

X ***Incessantly***: the continuance of the warfare becomes the all-important idea, as if it were *"and not a day passes in which they are not at war with them."*

river Rhine. Its *general direction* is towards the north. The BELGIANS begin at the **extreme** *limits* of Gaul; they **reach** (on this side) as far as the lower part of the Rhine. They *spread* to the northward and eastward. AQUITANIA extends from the **Garonne** to the Pyrenees, and that part of the ocean that lies towards Spain. It **runs off** westward and northward.

[*] b. The more important word is never placed last for emphasis. The apparent cases of this usage (when the emphasis is not misconceived) are cases where a word is added as an afterthought, either real or affected, and so has its position not in the sentence to which it is appended, but, as it were, in a new one.

§598

The main rules for the Order of Words are as follows:—

a. In any phrase the determining and most significant word comes first:—

1. Adjective and Noun:—

> *omnīs hominēs decet, EVERY man ought(opposed to some who do not).*

2. Word with modifying case:—

> *"quid magis Epamīnōndam, Thēbānōrumimperātōrem, quamvictōriæ Thēbānōrum cōnsulere decuit"* (INV. 1.69), *what should Epaminondas, commander of the THEBANS, have aimed at more than the VICTORY of the Thebans?*
>
> *lacrimā nihil citius ārēscit* (ID. 1.109), *nothing dries quicker than a TEAR.*
>
> *"nēmō ferēlaudis cupidus"* (DE OR. 1.14), *hardly any one desirous of GLORY.*

b. Numeral adjectives, adjectives of quantity, demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns and adverbs, tend to precede the word or words to which they belong:—

> *"cum aliquā perturbātiōne"* (OFF. 1.137), *with SOME disturbance.*
>
> *"hōc ūnō præstāmus"* (DE OR. 1.32), *in THIS one thing we excel.*

cēteræ ferē artēs, the OTHER arts.

Note.--This happens because such words are usually emphatic; but often the words connected with them are more so, and in such cases the pronouns etc. yield the emphatic place:—

"causa aliqua" (DE OR. 1.250), *some CASE.*

stilus ille tuus (ID. 1.257), *that well-known STYLE of yours*. [*Ille* is idiomatic in this sense and position.]

"Rōmam quæ apportāta sunt" (VERR. 4.121), *what were carried to ROME* (in contrast to what remained at Syracuse).

c. When *sum* is used as the Substantive verb (§ 284B), it regularly stands first, or at any rate before its subject:—

"est virī māgnī pūnīre sontis" (OFF. 1.82), *it is the duty of a great man to punish the guilty*.

d. The verb may come first, or have a prominent position, either (1) because the idea in it is emphatic; or (2) because the predication of the whole statement is emphatic; or (3) the tense only may be emphatic:—

1. *dīcēbat idem Cotta* (OFF. 2.59), *Cotta used to SAY the same thing* (opposed to others' boasting).

   idem fēcit adulēscēns M. Antōnius (ID. 2.49), *the same thing was DONE by Mark Antony in his youth*. [Opposed to *dīxī* just before.]

   facis amīcē; (LÆL. 9), *you ACT kindly*. [Cf. *amīcē facis, you are very KIND* (*you act KINDLY*).]

2. *"prōpēnsior benīgnitās esse dēbēbit in calamitōsōs nisi forte erunt dīgnī calamitāte"* (OFF. 2.62), *liberality ought to be readier toward the unfortunate unless perchance they REALLY DESERVE their misfortune*.

   præsertim cum scrībat (Panætius) (ID. 3.8), *especially when he DOES SAY* (*in his books*). [Opposed to something omitted by him.]

3. *fuimus Trōes, "fuit Īlium"* (AEN. 2.325), *we have CEASED to be Trojans, Troy is now no MORE.*

> *"loquor autem dē commūnibus amīcitiīs"* (OFF. 3.45), *but I am SPEAKING NOW of common friendships*.

e. Often the connection of two emphatic phrases is brought about by giving the precedence to the most prominent part of each and leaving the less prominent parts to follow in inconspicuous places:—

> *"plūrēs solent esse causæ"* (OFF. 1.28), *there are USUALLY SEVERAL reasons*.
>
> *quōs āmīsimus cīvīs, "eōs Mārtis vīs perculit"* (MARC. 17), *WHAT fellow-citizens we have LOST, have been stricken down by the violence of war*.
>
> *maximās tibi omnēs grātiās agimus* (ID. 33), *we ALL render you the WARMEST thanks.*
>
> *hæc rēs ūnīus est propria Cæsaris* (ID. 11), *THIS exploit belongs to Cæsar ALONE.*
>
> *"obiūrgātiōnēs etiam nōn numquam incidunt necessāriæ"* (OFF. 1.136), *OCCASIONS FOR REBUKE also SOMETIMES occur which are unavoidable*.

f. Antithesis between two pairs of ideas is indicated by placing the pairs either (1) in the same order (anaphora) or (2) in exactly the opposite order (chiasmus):—

1. *"rērum cōpia verbōrum cōpiam gignit"* (DE OR. 3.125), *ABUNDANCE of MATTER produces COPIOUSNESS of EXPRESSION.*

2. *lēgēs suppliciō improbōs afficiunt, "dēfendunt ac tuentur bonōs"* (LEGG. 2.13), *the laws VISIT PUNISHMENTS upon the WICKED, but the GOOD they DEFEND and PROTECT.*

   Note.--Chiasmus is very common in Latin, and often seems in fact the more inartificial construction. In an artless narrative one might hear, *"The women were all drowned, they saved the men."*

3. *"nōn igitur ūtilitātem amīcitia sed ūtilitās amīcitiam cōnsecūta est"* (LÆL. 51), *it is not then that friendship has followed upon advantage, but advantage upon friendship.* [Here the chiasmus is only grammatical, the ideas being in the parallel order.]

g. A modifier of a phrase or some part of it is often embodied within the phrase (cf. a):—

> *dē commūnī hominum memoriā*; (TUSC. 1.59), *in regard to the UNIVERSAL memory of man*.

h. A favorite order with the poets is the interlocked, by which the attribute of one pair comes between the parts of the other (synchysis):—

> *"et superiectō pavidæ natārunt æquore dammæ"* (HOR. OD. 1.2.11).

> Note.--This is often joined with chiasmus: as, *arma nōndum expiātīs ūncta cruōribus* (ID. 2.1.5).

i. Frequently unimportant words follow in the train of more emphatic ones with which they are grammatically connected, and so acquire a prominence out of proportion to their importance:—

> *"dictitābat sē hortulōs aliquōs emere velle"* (OFF. 3.58), *he gave out that he wanted to buy some gardens.* [Here *aliquōs* is less emphatic than *emere*, but precedes it on account of the emphasis on *hortulōs*.]

j. The copula is generally felt to be of so little importance that it may come in anywhere where it sounds well; but usually under cover of more emphatic words:—

> *cōnsul ego quæsīvī, cum vōs mihi essētis in cōnsiliō*; (REP. 3.28), *as consul I held an investigation in which you attended me in council.*

> *falsum est id tōtum* (ID. 2.28), *that is all false.*

k. Many expressions have acquired an invariable order:—

> *rēs pūblica; populus Rōmānus*; *honōris causā; pāce tantī virī*.

> Note.--These had, no doubt, originally an emphasis which required such an arrangement, but in the course of time have changed their shade of meaning. Thus, *senātus populusque Rōmānus* originally stated with emphasis the official bodies, but became fixed so as to be the only permissible form of expression.

l. The Romans had a fondness for emphasizing persons, so that a name or a pronoun often stands in an emphatic place:—

> [*dīxit*] *"vēnālīs quidem sē hortōs nōn habēre"* (OFF. 3.58), [*said*] *that he did n't have any gardens for sale, to be sure.*

m. Kindred words often come together (*figūra etymologica*):—

> *"ita sēnsim sine sēnsū ætās senēscit"* (CAT. M. 38), *thus gradually, without being perceived, man's life grows old.*

§601

In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed:

c. In coördinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted (asyndeton). In such cases the connection is made clear by some antithesis indicated by the position of words.

§640

Anastrophe: inversion of the usual order of words.

Apodosis: the conclusion of a conditional sentence (see Protasis).

Asyndeton: omission of conjunctions (§323ii).

Ellipsis: omission of a word or words necessary to complete the sense.

Hendiadys (hen dia duoin): the use of two nouns, with a conjunction, instead of a single modified noun.

Protasis: a clause introduced by a conditional expression (*if, when, whoever*), leading to a conclusion called the Apodosis (§512).

Glossary

ab, ā, abs, præp. with abl., from, away from; To denote the side or direction from which an object is viewed in its local relations (=a parte), at, on, in—Gallia Celtica attingit ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum, on the side of the Sequani, i.e. their country

abdō, -ere, -idī, -itus (ab + dō), to put away, remove, set aside; Prægn., to hide, conceal, put out of sight, keep secret

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ab + dūcō), to lead away, take away, carry off, remove, lead aside

abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (abs + teneo), to keep back, keep off, hold back; Neutr., abstinere, to abstain from a thing—constr. with abl., ab, inf., quin or quominus, the gen., or absol.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (ab + sum), In general, to be away from, be absent

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, cessūrus (ad + cēdō), accidō, -ere, -cidī, — (ad + cado), to fall upon or down upon a thing, to reach it by falling; In gen., to fall out, come to pass, happen, occur; and With Dat. pers., to happen to, to befall one. (The distinction between the syn. evenio, accido, and contingo is this: evenio, i.e. ex-venio, is used of either fortunate or unfortunate events: accido, of occurrences which take us by surprise; hence it is used either of an indifferent, or, which is its general use, of an unfortunate occurrence: contingo, i.e. contango, indicates that an event accords with one's wishes; and hence is generally used of fortunate events.)

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ad + capio), to take without effort, receive, get, accept; Of voluntary taking, to take, accept, take into possession, receive; To bear, endure, suffer any thing disagreeable or troublesome

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ad + causa), to call to account, make complaint against, reproach, blame, accuse

aciēs, -ēī, f. (ac-), a sharp edge, point, cutting part; Transf. Of the sense or faculty of sight, Keenness of look or glance, sharpness of vision or sight, “ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum ferre potuisse,” (I.XXIX); Milit., the front of an army (conceived of as the edge of a sword), line of battle, battle-array; The battlearray, “aciem instruere,” (I.XXII), “dirigere,” (VI.VIII); The battlearray; in concr., an army drawn up in order of battle, “hostium acies cernebatur,” (VII.LXII), “tertiam aciem laborantibus subsidio mittere,” (I.LII)

ācriter, adv. with comp. ācrius, and sup. ācerrimē (ācer), sharply, fiercely

ad, præp. with acc., In space, to, toward; Nearness or proximity in gen. (= apud), near to, by, at, close by; In number or amount, near, near to, almost, about, toward; With verbs which designate going, coming, moving, bearing, bringing near, adapting, taking, receiving, calling, exciting, admonishing, etc., when the v. is compounded with ad, the præp. is not always repeated, but the constr. with the dat. or acc. employed—lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit, he undertakes the office of ambassador to the states (I.III); In other relations,, with regard to, in respect of, in relation to, as to, to, in; With names of towns after verbs of motion, ad is used in answer to the question Whither? instead of the simple acc., but commonly with this difference, that ad denotes to the vicinity of, the neighborhood of

adæquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ad + æquō), to make equal, equalize, level with

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ad + amō), to fall in love with, conceive desire for, desire eagerly

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ad + dūcō), to lead to, bring to, bring along; To bring, lead, prompt, move, induce, prevail upon, persuade, incite

adequito, āre, āvi, ātum (ad + equito), With ad., To ride to or toward a place, to gallop up to

adficio, adficere, adfēci, adfectum (ad + facio), to do something to one, i.e. to exert an influence on body or mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state; With acc. and abl., to affect a person or (rarely) thing with something; In a good sense, to bestow upon, grace with; In a bad sense, to visit with, inflict upon

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (ad + habeō), to hold toward, turn to, apply, add to; Esp. Of persons, to bring one to a place, to summon, to employ

aditus, -ūs, m. (adeo), a going to, approach, access

Admagetobriga, -æ, f., a place in Gauladmīr or, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (ad + mīror), to regard with wonder, admire; To regard with wonder, wonder at, be astonished

admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ad + mittō), to send to, let go, let loose, let come, admit, give access; Of a horse, to let go, give reins

adorior, -īrī, -ortus, — dep. (ad + orior), to approach as an enemy, fall upon, assail, assault, attack

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (ad + sum), to be at, be present, be at hand

adulēscēns, -entis, adj. (part. of adolesco), adj., growing, near maturity, young, youthful; Subst., comm. gen., one who has not yet attained maturity, a youth, a young man; a young woman, a maiden (between the puer and juvenis, from the 15th or 17th until past the 30th year, often even until near the 40th; but the same person is often called in one place adulescens, and in another juvenis)

adulēscentia, -æ, f. (adulescens), youthadven tus, -ūs, m. (ad + ba-, ven-), a coming, approach, arrival

adversum, -ī, n., the opposite direction; Fig., opposed, contrary, hostile, adverse, unfavorable, unpropitious

ædificium, -ī, n. (ædifico), a building, edifice, structure

ægre, ægrius, ægerrime, adv., scarcely, with difficulty, painfully, hardly; reluctantly, uncomfortably

Æmilius, -ī, m., Lucius Æmilius, a decurion in charge of a squad of Gallic cavalry

æquitās, -ātis, f. (æquus), uniformity, evenness; with animi, calmness, repose, equability, equanimity; Equity, fairness, humanity, kindness

æquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (æquus), æstās, -ātis, f., summer

afficio, affēci, affectum, affere (ad + facio), to do something to one, i.e. to exert an influence on body or mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state; With acc. and abl., to affect a person or (rarely) thing with something; In a good sense, to bestow upon, grace with; In a bad sense, to visit with, inflict upon; supplicio affici, to be put to death

affīnitas, -ātis, f. (affinis), Relationship or alliance by marriage, Esp. between a father and son-in-law

ager, -grī, m. (ago), productive land, a field, farm, estate, arable land, pasture; A territory, district, domain

aggredior, -ī, aggressus, — dep., to go against, fall upon, attack, assault

agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus (ag-), to put in motion, move, lead, drive, tend, conduct; To pursue, carry on, think, reflect, deliberate, treat, represent, exhibit, exercise, practise, act, perform, deliver, pronounce; Of public transactions, to manage, transact, do, discuss, speak, deliberate; Either in the most general sense, like the Engl. do, for every kind of mental or physical employment; or, in a more restricted sense, to exhibit in external action, to act or perform, to deliver or pronounce, etc., so that after the act is completed nothing remains permanent, e.g. a speech, dance, play, etc

alacritās, -ātis, f. (alacer), liveliness, ardor, eagerness, alacrity, cheerfulness, encouragement

ālārius, -a, -um, adj. (ala), of the wing (of an army): pl. as subst., auxiliary troops

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. (alius). In gen., that belongs to another person, place, object, etc., not one's own, another's, of another, foreign, alien; Averse, hostile, unfriendly, unfavorable to; Transf. to things, as in the histt., alienus locus, a place or ground unfavorable for an engagement, disadvantageous

aliqui, adv. (prop. abl. = aliquo modo), in some way, somehow; The forms aliqua, Neut. pl., and aliquam, acc., and aliquā, abl., used adverbially, may also be referred to the adj. ali-qui, aliqua, aliquod; aliquamdiū (= aliquam + diū), adv., somewhat long, for a while

alius, -a, -ud, adj. pronom. (al-), another, other, different; alius ... alius, one ... another—in pl., some ... others (See chart: alius (N. aliud), other §113)

Allobrogēs, -um, m., a Gallic people in the northern part of the province—Acc. sg., Allobrogem, an Allobrogian

alō, -ere, aluī, altus (al-), to feed, nourish, support, sustain, maintain

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., Alps, general term for the mountains separating Cisalpine Gaul from Transalpine Gaul and Germany

alter, -tera, -terum, pronom. adj. (al-), one, another, the one, the other (of two); Esp., as a numeral, the second, next (See chart: alter, -terīus, the other §113)

altitūdō, -dinis, f. (altus), height, altitude; Meton., depth

altus, -a, -um, adj. (P. of alo), nourished, grown great, high, lofty, tall; deep

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people east of the Arar (Saone), near its junction with the Rhoneamīcitia, -æ, f. (amicus), friendship

amīcus, -ī, m. (amicus), a loved one, loving one, friend

āmittō, -ere, -īsī, -issus (ab + mitto), to send away, dismiss, part with

amor, -ōris, m. (am-), love (to friends, parents, etc.; and also in a low sense; hence In gen., like amo, while caritas, like diligere, is esteem, regard, etc.; hence amor is used also of brutes, but caritas only of men; v. amo init.)

amplus, -a, -um, adj. (am- (for ambi-) + ple-), of large extent, great, ample, spacious, roomy; Of external splendor, great, handsome, magnificent, splendid, glorious; Comp., amplius, more, longer, further, besides—of time, number, and action (while plus denotes more in quantity, measure, etc.; magis, more, in the comparison of quality, and sometimes of action; and potius, rather, the choice between different objects or acts), constr. absol., with comp. abl., and, in the case of numerals, like minus, plus, propius, q. v., without quam with the nom., acc., or gen., or rarely with the abl. comp., or with quam

anceps, -cipitis, adj. (an- + cap, in caput), two-headed, twofold, double—anceps prœlium, battle on two fronts

angustus, -a, -um, adj. (ang-), narrow, strait, contracted

animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus (animum + adverto), to direct the mind, give attention to, attend to, consider, regard, observe

animus, -ī, m. (an-), the rational soul; Of the mind, the mental powers, intelligence, reason, intellect, mind

annus, -ī, m. (ac-), a yearannuus, -a, -us, adj. (annus), of a year, lasting a year; that returns, recurs, or happens every year, yearly, annual

ante, adv. and præp. (ant-), Adv., of space, before, in front, forwards; Præp. with acc, before

anteā, adv., before, earlier, formerly, aforetime, previously

antīquus, -a, -um, adj. (ante), ancient, former, of old times

apertus, -a, -um, adj. (part. of aperio), without covering, uncovered; Fig., open, avowed, plain, clear, manifest

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ad + pello), to address, speak to, apply to, accost; To call by name, term, name, entitle

appetō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, ītus (ad + peto), Trans, to strive for, reach after, grasp at; Fig., to strive after, long for, desire, seek, courtapril, -is, the month of April, April

apud, præp. indecform., præp. gov. acc., with, at, by, near; In respect of persons, in (whose) presence or before whom any thing is done or takes place; Of persons, of inhabitants of cities or countries, among whom one is, or something is, is done or happens, among (= inter)

Aquileia, -æ, m., a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea

Aquitānus, -a, -um, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; In pl., as subst., the Aquani or Aquitanians, inhabiting south-western Gaul

Arar, -aris, acc. -im, m., presently known as the Saone; pronounced 'Sōn.' It rises the Vosges (vōzh) Mts., and flows southward into the Rhone

arbitrium, -ī, n. (arbiter), In law, a judgment, decision of an arbitrator; Mastery, dominion, authority, power, will, free-will, choice, pleasure

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (arbiter), In law, of witnesses, to testify on information and belief, depose to one's best knowledge; In gen., to be of an opinion, believe, consider, think

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus intens. (accedo), to cause to come, call, send for, invite, summon, fetch

Ariovistus, -ī, m., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans

arma, -ōrum, n., Lit. What is fitted to the body for its protection, defensive armor, as the shield, coat of mail, helmet, etc.; Implements of war, arms, both of defence and offence (but of the latter only those which are used in close contest, such as the sword, axe, club; in distinction from tela, which are used in contest at a distance); Trop., means of protection, defence, weapons; war

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (arma), to furnish with weapons, arm, equip

arrogantia, -æ, f. (arrogans), An assuming, presumption, arrogance, conceitedness

arrogo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ar + rogo), To ask or inquire of one, to question; adv., arroganter, with assumption, arrogantly, haughtily, proudly, insolently

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., of the Arverni, a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne

arx, arcis, f. (arc-), a castle, citadel, fortress, stronghold

ascēnsus, -ūs, m. (ascendo), a climbing, ascent

atque, conj. indeclform., and, and also; After words expressing Similarity, or the Opposite, atque or ac has the force of than, as; as, in parem ... condicionem atque ipsi erant, into the same condition ... as themselves, Lit. as (and) they themselves were (I.XXVIII)

atque or ac (only before consonants), conj. (ad + que), and (like -que, it connects words or thoughts which form a whole, but unlike -que gives prominence rather to what follows, and is rarely repeated); Copulative. Connecting single words and expressions, and, as well as, together with; With the dem. pron. hic, is, and besides, and that, and that too

attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus (ad + tango), to touch, come in contact with; Of places, to be near, border on, adjoin, touch

auctōritās, -ātis, f. (auctor), origination, production; Of persons, influence, weight, dignity, reputation, authority

audax, -ācis, adj. (from audeo), daring, in a good, but oftener in a bad sense, bold, courageous, spirited; audacious, rash, presumptuous, foolhardy; Meton., violent, fierce, proud—audacter, comp

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum (av-), to venture, dare, be bold, dare to do, risk

audiō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītus (av-), to hear; To hear, to listen to, to obey, heed; only with acc., but also With Dat.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus (avg-), to increase, augment, enlarge, spread, extend

Aulus, -ī, m., a Roman first nameaut, conj., introducing an antithesis to what precedes, or; So introducing successive alternatives, or ... or; Introducing two alternatives, aut ... aut, either ... or

autem, conj., an adversative particle which regularly follows an emphatic word, or two or more closely connected words, but, on the other hand, on the contrary, however

auxilium, -ī, n. (avc-), help, aid, assistance, support, succor

avāritia, -æ, f. (avarus), inordinate desire, greed, avarice, covetousness

āvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus (ā + vertō), to turn away, avert, turn off, remove; To avert, ward off, turn away

avus, -ī, m. (av-), a grandfatherbarbarus, -a, -um, adj. with comp., Prop., foreign, strange, barbarous, opp. to Greek or Roman; In gen., for any hostile people (among the Romans, after the Aug. age, Esp. the German tribes, as, among the Greeks, after the Persian war, the Persians); Transf., foreign, strange, in mind or character. In mind, uncultivated, ignorant; rude, unpolished

Belgæ, -ārum, m., the Belgæ or Belgians, a nation of mixed German and Celtic origin, inhabiting northern Gaul

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. pos. (bellicus; bellum), warlike, martial, valorous, given to fighting

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (bellum), to wage war, carry on war, war

bellum, -ī, n. (dva-, dvi-), warbeneficium, -ī, n. (bene + fac-), a favor, benefit, service, kindness

Bibracte, -is, m., capital of the Æduans, situated on a mountain now called Mont Beuvray (height 2690')

biennium, -ī, n. (bi- + annus), a period of two years, two years

bipertitus, -a, -um, adj. (bi + pars), divided in two parts

Biturīgēs, -um, m. pl., a people in Central Gaul

Boiī, -ōrum, m. pl., Boians, Boii, a Celtic people once widely diffused over Europe

bonitas, ātis, f. (bonus), the good quality of a thing, goodness, excellence

bonus, -a, -um, adj., as comp. in use melior, -ōris, better; as sup. optimus, best. (ap-, op-), good; With animus, good spirits, kindly

bracchium, -ī, n., the forearm, lower armbre vis, -e, adj. (breg-), In space and time, little, of small extent

Caburus, -ī, m., the personal name of Gaius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul, made a Roman Citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus

cadō, -ere, cecidī, casūrus (cad-), to fall, fall down, descend; To fall off, fall away, fall out, drop off, be shed

calamitās, -ātis, f. (scal-), loss, injury, damage, mischief, harm, misfortune, calamity, disaster; Esp., the misfortunes of war, disaster, overthrow, defeat

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus (cap-), to take in hand, take hold of, lay hold of, take, seize, grasp; In partic.

captīva, -æ, f. (captivus), a female captive, woman prisoner

caput, -itis, n. (cap-), the head; Lit. head; Trop. a man, person, or animal

carrus, -ī, m., a wagon for freight, baggagewagon (with four wheels)

Cassius, -ī, m., Lucius Cassius Longinus, prætor 111 B.C.; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the Tigurians in the territory of the Allobroges, and was defeated and slain

castellum, -ī, n. dim. (castrum), a castle, fort, citadel, fortress, stronghold

Casticus, -ī, m., a certain prominent Sequanian

castrum, -i, n. (kindred with casa), In sg., any fortified place, a castle, fort, fortress; In pl., castra, -ōrum, n. Lit., several soldiers' tents situated together; hence, a military camp, an encampment; among the Romans a square (quadrata)

Catamantālœdis, -ī, m., a leader among the Sequanians before Cæsar's time

catēna, -æ, f. (cat-), a chain, fetter, shackleC aturīgēs, -um, m. pl., a Gallic people in the eastern part of the province

causa, -æ, f. (cav-), that by, on account of, or through which any thing takes place or is done; a cause, reason, motive, inducement, "ob eas causas," (I.X); also, in gen., an occasion, opportunity; Esp. "

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus (cav-), to be on one's guard, take care, take heed, beware, guard against, avoid

celeritās, -ātis, f. (celer), swiftness, quickness, speed, celerity

celeriter, adv. (celer), quickly, swiftly, speedily, in haste, immediately, promptly

Celtæ, -ārum, m., Celts, the people of central Gaul

cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus (cas-), to tax, assess, rate, estimate; Of senators, to be of opinion, propose, vote, move, give judgment, argue, insist, urge

cēnsus, -ūs, m. (censeo), a registering of citizens and property by the censors, census, appraisement; The register of the census, censor's lists

centuriō, -ōnis, m. (centuria), a commander of a century, captain, centurion (next in rank to the tribunes of the legion)

certus, -a, -um, adj. pos. (ppp. of cerno), determined, resolved, fixed, settled, purposed, certain; With facere, to inform, apprise one of a thing

cēterus, -a, -um, adj. (ca-, ci-), the other, remainder, rest—As subst. m., the others, all the rest, everybody else

Ceutronēs, -um, m. pl., A Belgic people, subject to the Nervians; A people in the eastern part of the province

cibāria, -ōrum, n., food, nutriment, victuals, provisions, fare, ration, fodder

Cimberius, -ī, m., a leader of the SuebiCim brī, -ōrum, m. pl., Cimbrians, Cimbro, a Germanic people that joined with the Teutones in the invasion of Gaul

cingō, -ere, -xī, -īnctus, to go around, surround, encompass, environ, gird, wreathe, crown; Of places, to surround, encircle, invest, enclosecircinus, -ī, m., A pair of compasses

circiter, adv. and præp. (circus), adv. of duration or distance, with numerals, about, not far from; Præp. with acc., of time, about, near

circuitus, -ūs, m. (circumeo), a going round, circling, revolving, revolution; A circuit, compass, way around

circum, (acc. of circus), adv. and præp., Adv., around, round about, all around; Præp. with acc. (sometimes following its case), around, about, all around; In the neighborhood of, around, about, at, near by

circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus (circum + dō), to place around, cause to surround, set around

circumdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ctus (circum + dūcō), to lead around, draw around

circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, -status (circum + sistō), to take one's stand around, surround, stand around

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (circum- + veniō), to come around, be around, encircle, encompass, surround; Specif., to surround in a hostile manner, to encompass, beset, invest

citer, -tra, -trum, adj., on this sidecitrō, adv. (dat. of citer), to this side; only in the phrase ultro citroque, ultro et citro, or, ultro citro, hither and thither, this way and that, here and there, to and fro, backwards and forwards, reciprocally

cīvitās, -ātis, f. (civis), the condition of a citizen, citizenship, freedom of the city, membership in the community; A community of citizens, body-politic, state

claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus (clav-), to shut, close, shut up

cliēns, -entis, m. (P. of clueo), a personal dependant, client; A client, retainer, follower

coëmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus (com- + emo), to purchase, buy up, forestall

cœpiō, -ere, cœpī, cœptus (com- + ap-), to begin, commence

coërceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus (com- + arceo), to enclose on all sides, hold together, surround, encompass; Morally, to hold (some fault, some passion, etc., or the erring or passionate person) in check, to curb, restrain, tame, correct, etc.

cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus (com- + (g)nōscō), cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus (com- + ago), to drive together, collect, crowd, bring together, summon, congregate, convene; To urge, force, compel, constrain; Esp. with acc., inf., ut, ad, in or absol., to urge one to any action, to force, compel, constrain

cohors, -rtis, f. (com- + her-), Lit., the multitude enclosed, fenced in; hence, Milit., a company of soldiers, a division of an army, a cohort, the tenth part of a legion, comprising three manipuli or six centuriæ (always written cohors); prætoria, the prœtorian or bodyguard of the general

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (com- + hortor),

colligo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (col + ligo), to bind, tie, or fasten together, to connect, bind, tie up

collis, -is, m. (cel-), an elevation, high ground, hill

colloco, -āre, āvi, ātum (col- + loco), to place together, to arrange, to station, lay, put, place, set; set up, erect, etc., a thing (or person) somewhere; Esp. To give in marriage

colloquium, -ii, n. a conversation, conference, discourse

colloquor, -cūtus, collocūtus sum, — dep. (col- + loquor),

combūrō, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstus (pvr-), to burn up, consume

commeātus, -ūs, m. (commeo), a going to and fro, passing back and forth; provisions, supplies

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (com + memorō), to recall to memory, call to mind, be mindful of, keep in mind, remember; To bring to mind, remind of, recall

commeō, commeāre, commeāvī, commeatum (com + meo), visit or travel to; to frequent; to and fro

comminus, adv. (com- + manus), in close contest, hand to hand, at close quarters

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (com + mittō), To bring together, join, combine, put together, connect, unite; With ut, to be guilty or be in fault, so that, to give occasion or cause, that, to act so as that; Transf., of a battle, war: prœlium, certamen, bellum, etc., To arrange a battle or contest, to enter upon, engage in, begin, join, commence, "Cæsar cohortatus suos prœlium commisit" (I.XXV); With ut, to be guilty or be in fault, so that, to give occasion or cause, that, to act so as that: With cur or quare: "neque commissum a se, quare timeret," (I.XIV)

commodē, adv. (commodus), duly, properly, completely, rightly, well, skilfully

commodus, -a, -um, adj. (com + modus), that has a due or proper measure; Of things, suitable, fit, convenient, opportune, commodious, easy, appropriate, favorable, friendly; Subst., commodum, -i, n., A convenient opportunity, favorable condition, convenience

commonefaciō, -ere -fēcī, -factus, 3rd conj. iō-var, irreg. pass. voice (commoneo + facio), to recall, bring to mind; To remind, put in mind, admonish, impress upon

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (com + moveō), To put in violent motion, move, shake, stir; To throw into disorder, physical or mental; to unbalance, unsettle, shake, disturb—with abl. or absol.

commūne, -is, n. (communis), that which is common

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f. (commuto), a changing, change, alteration

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (com + mūtō), to alter wholly, change entirely

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (com + parō), to prepare, make ready, set in order, furnish, provide

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertus (par-), to disclose wholly, lay open (a fact), without the access. idea of communicating the thing disclosed (which aperio expresses; v. aperio); to obtain a knowledge of a thing, to find out with certainty, to have or gain certain information, to ascertain, learn, etc. (class. in prose and poetry)

complector, -ī, -plexus, — dep. (parc-, plec-),

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus (com- + ple-), to fill up, fill full, fill out, make full, cram, crowd; Esp. Milit., To make the army, a legion, etc., of a full number, to complete, fill up

complūrēs, -ium, adj. (com + plūrēs), more than one, not a few, several, a number, many

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (com + portō), to bring in, carry together, collect, accumulate, gather

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (con + cēdō), Intrans, to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove; To yield, submit to one's will, comply with one's wishes—impers.

concīdo, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum (con + cīdo), to cut up, cut through, cut away, cut to pieces, to bring to ruin, destroy, etc; To cut to pieces in war, to cut down, destroy, kill

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (concilium), to bring together, unite, reconcile, make friendly, win over, conciliate; To procure, purchase, obtain, acquire, win, gain

concilium, -ī, n. (com- + cal-), a meeting, rendezvous; A collection of people, meeting, assembly

concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus (con + currō), to run together, assemble, flock together; In partic. Milit., to rush together in hostility, to engage in combat, to join battle, to fight

concursus, -ūs, m. (con + curro), a running together, concourse, throng, mob, tumult; An assault, onset, attack, charge

condiciō, -ōnis, f. (com- + dic-), an agreement, stipulation, condition, compact, proposition, terms, demand; Of things, a situation, condition, nature, mode, manner: agri vitæ, manner of living

condōnō -āre, -āvī, -ātus (con + dōnō), to give, present, deliver, surrender, abandon; To pardon, remit, overlook, forbear to punish

condūcō -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, (con + dūcō), to draw together, assemble, collect, gather, unite

confacio, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (con + facio), to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil

cōnferō, cōnferrē, contulī, conlātus (cōn + ferrō), to bring together, collect, gather, unite, join; With se, to betake oneself, turn, have recourse

cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj., pressed close, crowded, thick, dense; Close, compact, in close array

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (com- + facio), to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil;

confīdo, -fisus, -sum (con + fīdo), cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (cōn + firmō), to make firm, make strong, establish, strengthen; To confirm, give full assurance of a fact, corroborate an assertion, settle, fix, establish, to prove, demonstrate the truth of a thing, etc

congredior, -ī, -gressus, — dep. (com- + gradior), to come together, meet, have an interview; To meet in strife, fight, contend, engage, join battle

coniacio, -ere, -iēci, -iactum (con- + iacio), to throw, cast, urge, drive, hurl, thrust, put, place

cōniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (com- + iacio), To throw together, unite, collect; To throw, cast, urge, drive, hurl, put, place, etc., a person or thing with force, quickly, etc., to or towards

coniungo, -ere, -nxi, -nctum (con + iungo), to bind together, connect, join, unite

coniūrātio, -ōnis, f. (coniūro), a swearing together; In a bad sense, a conspiracy, plot

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep., to undertake, endeavor, attempt, try, venture, seek, aim, make an effort, begin, make trial of

conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus (com + quæro), to seek for, hunt up, search out, procure, bring together, collect

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, adj. (cōn + sanguineus), of the same blood, related by blood, kindred, fraternal; Subst. m., a brother, f. a sister; pl., kindred, kinsmen

conscisco, -ere, -scīvi, -scītum (con + scisco), Publicists' t. t., to approve of, decree, determine or resolve upon something in common; Transf. from the sphere of state affairs; aliquid sibi or absol.; Lit., to adjudge, appropriate to one's self; hence, with the access. idea of personal action, to inflict or bring upon one's self (most frequently death); With sibi, “mortem,” to kill one's self

cōnscrībō, -ere, -īpsī, -īptus (cōn + scrībō), Lit., to write together, i.e., To write together in a roll or list, to enroll; very freq. as a milit. t. t., of the levying of troops

consensus, -üs, m. (consentio), agreement, accordance, unanimity, concord

cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus (cas-), to tax, assess, rate, estimate; Of senators, to be of opinion, propose, vote, move, give judgment, argue, insist, urge

cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus, — dep. (cōn + sequor), to follow, follow up, press upon, go after, attend, accompany, pursue

cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus (cōn + sīdō),
consilium, -ii, n. (con + sal-), deliberation, consultation, a considering together, counsel; Meton. In abstr., A conclusion made with consideration, a determination, resolution, measure, plan, purpose, intention

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (cōn + sōlor), to encourage, animate, console, cheer, comfort

cōnspectus, -ūs, m. (com- + spec-), a seeing, look, sight, view, range of sight, power of vision—"pæne in conspectu exercitūs nostri," before the eyes

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (com- + spec-), to get sight of, descry, see, perceive

cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus (com- + statuo), to put, place, set, station; To fix, appoint, determine, define, decide, decree; To establish, set in order, organize, manage, administer, regulate, arrange, dispose; Milit. To station or post troops somewhere, to draw up, set in order

cōnstō, āre, stitī, statūrus (cōn + stō), to agree, accord, be consistent, correspond, fit; To be certain, be ascertained, be known, be settled, be established

consuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus inch., to become used, accustom oneself—Hence, perf, to be wont, be accustomed

consuētūdo, -inis, f. (consuesco), A being accustomed, custom, habit, use, usage; With prepp., ex consuetudine, pro consuetudine, and absol. consuetudine, according to or from custom, by or from habit, in a usual or customary manner, etc.

cōnsul, -ulis, m. (com- + sal-), a consul—the highest magistracy of the Roman republic was vested in two consuls, chosen annually; In dates, defining the year; usu. abl absol.—Messalā et Pisone consulibus, in the consulship of

cōnsultum, -ī, n. (consultus), deliberation, consideration; A decree, decision, resolution, plan; senatūs, a decree of the senate

cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus (cōn + sūmō), to use up, eat, devour; Fig., to consume, devour, waste, squander, annihilate, destroy

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus (con + tendo), to stretch, stretch out vigorously, to draw tight, strain; Trop. (freq. in prose and poetry); act., to strain eagerly, to stretch, exert, to direct one's mental powers to something, to pursue or strive for earnestly; or neutr., to exert one's self, to strive zealously for something, etc., In partic., To direct or bend one's course eagerly somewhere; or, neutr., to strive to get to a place, to seek to arrive at, to go, march, or journey hastily to, etc., With inf. (freq.): “Bibracte ire,” (I.XXIII), so, “ire cum his legionibus,” (I.X), “in Britanniam proficisci,” (IV.XX), “in provinciam reverti,” (III.VI); Neutr. (so most freq.): “in Italiam magnis itineribus,” (I.X), cf.: “huc magnis itineribus,” (I.XXXVIII), “huc magno cursu,” (III.XIX), “inde in Italiam,” (I.XXXIII), “in fines Sigambrorum,” (IV.XVIII), “in castra,” (IV.XXXVII), “ex eo loco ad flumen,” (II.IX), “ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum,” (I.XXVII), “ad oppidum Noviodunum,” (II.XII), “ad castra,” (II.XIX), “ad hostes,” (V.IX), “domum,” (II.XXIV).(Neutr.); To measure or try one's strength with, with weapons, by words, in action, etc.; to strive, dispute, fight, contend against, vie with; constr. with cum aliquo, contra or adversus aliquem, the dat., inter se, or absol., Contra aliquem: “contra populum Romanum armis,” (II.XIII); Inter se: “hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent,” (I.XXXI), “interim prœlio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur,” the contest was carried on, (II.IX), “prœlio,” (I.XLVIII), “non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam prœlio contendissent.” (I.L); “ut magis virtute contenderent quam dolo aut insidiis niterentur.,” (I.XIII)

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (com- + teneo), to hold together, bound, limit, comprise, enclose, surround, environ; Of places, to bound, limit, enclose; With the access. idea of hindering, preventing motion, to keep, keep still, detain, restrain, repress, enclose; Trop., to hold back, detain, repress, hold in check, curb, check, stay, stop, tame, subdue, etc.; Adv., continenter, In time, continuously, without interruption

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus (com- + tango), to touch, reach, take hold of, seize; To touch, adjoin, border on, reach, extend to

continuus, -a, -um, adj. (com- + ta-), joining, connecting, uninterrupted, continuous, unbroken; Fig., of time, successive, continuous

contrā, adv. and præp., adv. Of Position, in opposition, opposite, face to face, in front, on the other side; Præp., with acc. (in prose before its case, except sometimes a rel. pron.), Of Position, before, against, facing, towards, opposite to, contrary to, over against; Against, in opposition to, as the opponent of

contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus (con + trahō), to draw together, collect, assemble

contumēlia, -æ, f. (com- + TEM-), insult, abuse, affront, reproach, invective, contumely

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (con + veniō), to come together, meet, assemble, gather, come in a body; To address, accost, meet, visit, obtain an interview with

conventus, -ūs, m. (com- + ba-, ven-), a meeting, assembly, throng

convertō, -ere, -tī, -sus (con + vertō), Act., to turn or whirl round, to wheel about, to cause to turn, to turn back, reverse; In partic.

convincō, -ere, -vīcī, -vīctus (con + vincō), to overcome, convict, refute, expose; To prove incontestably, show clearly, demonstrate, expose

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (con + vocō), to call together, convoke, assemble, summon

cōpia, -æ, f. (co + ops), Of material objects. Of possessions, resources, wealth, supplies, riches, prosperity; Milit. copia, and far more freq. in pl. copiæ, -ārum, men, troops, forces, army

cōram, adv. and præp. (com- + ōs), Object., in the presence of, before the eyes of, in the face of, before; Subject. adv., present in one's own person or presence, personally

cornū, -ūs, n. (car-), a horn, antler; Of an army, the wing, extremity, side

cotīdiē, adv. (quot- + dies), daily, every dayc ottīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. (cottidie; quot + dies), Prop.

Crassus, -ī, m., Marcus Licinius Crassus, member of the triumvirate with Cæsar and Pompey, consul in 55 B.C., perished in disastrous Parthian expedition; Publius Licinius Crassus, younger son of the triumvir, lieutenant of Cæsar in Gaul, 58-56 B.C., returning to Rome in 55 B.C. he followed his father to the East and fell in the same battle, 53 B.C.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (car-), to burn, consume by fire

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (cer-), to bring forth, produce, make, create, beget, give origin to; In partic., to make or create for any jurisdiction or office, i.e. to choose, elect

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus (cer-), to come into being, spring up, Fig., to grow, increase, be enlarged, be strengthened

cruciātus, -ūs, m. (crucio), torture, torment, a torturing, execution

crūdēlitās, -ātis, f. (crudelis), harshness, severity, cruelty, barbarity

crūdēliter, adv. (crudelis), cruelly, fiercely, in a cruel manner

cultus, -ūs, m. (col-), labor, care, cultivation, culture; Style, care, way of life, cultivation, civilization, refinement, luxury

cum, conj. (ca-), conj. cum, præp. with abl. (sec-), with, together with, in the company of, in connection with, along with, together, and, “qui unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant,” (II.III); In designating the relations, circumstances, way, and manner with which any act is connected, by which it is accompanied, under or in which it takes place, etc., with, in, under, in the midst of, among, to, at: “cum magno provinciæ periculo,” (I.X), “multis cum lacrimis aliquem obsecrare,” amid many tears, (I.XX); In partic.

cupiditās, -ātis, f. (cupidus), a longing, desire, passion, eagerness

cupidus, -a, -um, adj. (cvp-), longing, desiring, desirous, eager, zealous, wishing, loving, fond; Hence, cupidē, adv., eagerly, In a good and bad sense, zealously, passionately, vehemently, ardently, warmly, partially, etc.

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus (cvp-), to long for, desire, wish; Pregn., to be well disposed, be favorable or inclined to one, to favor, to wish well, to be interested for, etc.

cūra, -æ, f. (cav-), trouble, care, attention, pains, industry, diligence, exertion; Anxiety, solicitude, concern, disquiet, trouble, grief, sorrow

cūrō, -āre, āvī, -ātus (cura), to care for, take pains with, be solicitous for, look to, attend to, regard; With acc. and gerundive, to have done, see to, order

cursus, -ūs, m. (cel-), a running, course, way, march, passage, voyage, journey

custōs, -ōdis, m. and f. (scv-), a guard, watch, preserver, keeper, overseer, protector, defender, attendant

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (damnum), to adjudge guilty, condemn, convict

dē, præp., with abl., Of separation, in space, from, away from, down from, out of; Of duration, De nocte, de vigilia, etc., to designate an act which begins or takes its origin from the night time, Eng. during or in the course of the night, at night, by night, etc.—"Cæsar de tertia vigilia e castris profectus,"

dēbeo, -ēre, -uī, -itus (de + habeo), to withhold, keep back; With inf., to be bound, in duty bound to do something—I ought, must, should, etc., do it (in class. prose always in the sense of moral necessity)

dēcertō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (dē + certō), In battle, to go through a contest, fight out

dēcidō, -ere, -cidī, — (de + cado), to fall down, fall off, fall away

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (de + capio), to catch, ensnare, entrap, beguile, elude, deceive, cheat; Fig., to deceive, elude

decuriō, -ōnis, m. (decuria), dēditīcius, -ī, adj. (deditus),

dēditiō, -ōnis, f. (dedo), a giving up, surrender, capitulation

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (dē + fatīgō), to weary out, tire, fatigue, exhaust

dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sus (dē + fendō), to ward off, repel, avert, keep off; To defend, guard, protect, cover

dēfetīscor, -ī, -fessus, — dep., to become tired, grow weary, faint

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (de + iacio), to throw down, hurl down, precipitate, prostrate, raze, fell, cut down, tear down, destroy; To prevent from obtaining, deprive, rob of

deinde, adv., In space, then, next, thereafter, thence

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (de + libra, balance), to weigh well in one's mind, to consider maturely, deliberate respecting a thing; to take counsel, consult, advise upon

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus (de + lego), to choose, pick out, select, elect, designate, single out

dēminuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus (dē + minuō), to make smaller, lessen, diminish

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (dē + mōnstrō), to point out, indicate, designate, show; Fig., to designate, indicate, show, prove, demonstrate, establish

dēmum, adv. (de), ending, at length, at last, not till then, just, precisely, only

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (dē + negō), to reject, refuse, deny

dēnī, -æ, -a, adj. (decem), ten each, ten at a time, by tens

dēnique, adv., and thenceforward, and thereafter, at last, at length, finally, lastly, only, not until

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (dē + nūntiō), to announce, declare, denounce, menace, threaten, intimate, order, command

dēperdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (dē + perdō), to destroy, ruin; To lose

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (dē + pōnō), to lay away, put aside, set down, lay, place, set, deposit; Trop. With a predominant notion of putting away, removing, etc., to lay down, lay aside, give up, resign, get rid of

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (dē + populor), to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage

dēprecātor, -ōris, m. (deprecor), an averter, intercessor

dēsero, -ere, -rui, -rtum (dē + sero), to undo or sever one's connection with another; hence, with Esp. reference to the latter, to leave, forsake, abandon, desert, give up

dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (dē + sīgnō), to mark out, point out, trace, designate, define; Fig., to point out, mark, denote, designate, describe, represent

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus (dē + sistō; to stand, sta-), to leave off, cease, give over, desist from

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (dē + spērō), to be hopeless, have no hope, despair of, give up

dēspiciō, -ere, -ēxī, -ectus (de + specio), to look down upon; With acc, to look down upon, despise, disdain

dēstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus (de + statuo), to set down, set forth, put away, bring forward, leave alone; Fig., to forsake, abandon, desert, betray

dēstringo, -ere, -inxī, -ictus (dē + stringo), to strip off

dēsum, -dēesse, -fuī, dēfutūrus (dē + sum), to be away, be absent, fail, be wanting, be missing; To fail, be wanting, abandon, desert, neglect

dēsuper, adv. (dē + super), Of motion, from above, from overhead

dēterior, -ius, adj. comp. (deter; from de), down; hence, lower, inferior, worse, worse, poorer, meaner

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (dē + terreō), dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus (dē + trahō), to draw off, take down, pull down, take away, remove, withdraw, drag, bring

deus, -ī, m. (div-), a god, deitydextra, -æ, f. (dexter), sc. manus, the right hand (freq. a sign of greeting, of fidelity; a symbol of strength, courage, etc.)

diciō, -ōnis, f. (dic-), dominion, sovereignty, authority, sway, control, rule; Milit. and polit., dominion, sovereignty, authority, rule, sway, power

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus (dic-), to say, speak, utter, tell, mention, relate, affirm, declare, state, assert; To appoint, set apart, fix upon, settle

dictio, -ōnis, f. (dico), a saying, speaking, uttering, delivery; In gen. "causæ," a defending, pleading

dictum, -ī, n. (dic-), something said, a saying, word, assertion, remark; An order, command

diēs, diēī, m. f. (div-), Lit. difficilis, -e, adj. (dis- + facilis), hard, difficult, troublesome, impracticable, laborious, perilous

dīgnitās, -ātis, f. (dignus), worth, merit, desert, character

dīligentia, -æ, f. (diligens), attentiveness, earnestness, diligence, industry, assiduity, care, faithfulness

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (dī + mittō),diri mō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus (dis- + emo), to take apart, part, separate, divide, cut off; Fig., to break off, interrupt, disturb, put off, delay

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (dis + cēdō), to go apart, part asunder, divide, separate, disperse, scatter; (With the notion of cedere predominating), to depart from any place or person, to go away from, to leave—Lit. In gen. constr. with ab, ex, or absol.; Trop. In gen., to depart, deviate, swerve from; to leave, forsake, give up

disciplīna, -æ, f. (discipulus), instruction, tuition, teaching, training, education; Meton. (causa pro effectu), all that is taught in the way of instruction, whether with reference to single circumstances of life, or to science, art, morals, politics, etc., learning, knowledge, science, discipline

discō, -ere, didicī, — (dic-), to learn, learn to know, acquire, become acquainted with

dīsiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (dis + iacio), to throw asunder, drive asunder, scatter, disperse, break up, tear to pieces

dispergo, -ere, -si, -sum (di + spergo), to scatter on all sides, to scatter about, disperse

dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (dis + pōnō), to place here and there, array, distribute, set in order, arrange, dispose

diū, adv. with comp. diūtius, and sup. diūtissimē (div-), by day, all day; Lit., a space of time, a while; hence, with intens. signif., A long time, long while, long, "diu atque acriter pugnatum est," (I.XXVI), "ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare" (I.XVI); Comp., diūtius, longer; In the historians freq. = a long while, very long, no comparison being intended, "ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur," (I.XLIX)

diurnus, -a, -um, adj. (div-), of the day, by day; Daily, of one day, of each day

diūturnitās, -ātis, f. (diuturnus), length of time, long duration, durability

dīves, -itis, adj. (div-), rich, wealthy, opulent

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., an Æduan of influence, loyal to Cæsar, who at his intercession pardoned Dumnorix and the Bellovaci

Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., leader of the Helvetians in their war with Cassius, 107 B.C., and head of an embassy to Cæsar, 58 B.C.

dīvidus, -a, -um, adj. (divido), separated; in ppp. as adj., divided

dō, -are, dedī, datus (da-), to give; and hence, with the greatest variety of application, passing over into the senses of its compounds, derivatives, and synonyms (edere, tradere, dedere; reddere, donare, largiri, concedere, exhibere, porrigere, præstare, impertire, suppeditare, ministrare, subministrare, præbere, tribuere, offerre, etc.), as, to give away, grant, concede, allow, permit; give up, yield, resign; bestow, present, confer, furnish, afford; offer, etc.; Designating the effect, to cause, make, bring about, inflict, impose

dolor, -ōris, m. (dal-), pain, smart, ache, suffering, anguish; dolor; Esp, indignation, wrath, animosity, anger, resentment

dolus, -ī, m., a device, artifice, contrivanced omus, -ūs, f. (dom-), a house, dwelling-house, building, mansion, palace; A home, dwelling, abode, residence

domicilium, -ī, n. (domus + cal-), a habitation, dwelling, domicile, abode

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (donum), To give as a present, present, bestow, grant, vouchsafe, confer

Dubis, -is, m., a river in Gaul, tributary of the Arar (Saône), now the Douba

dubitātiō, -ōnis, f. (dubito), uncertainty, doubt, perplexity; A wavering, hesitating, hesitancy, irresolution, delay

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (dubius), to waver in opinion, be uncertain, be in doubt, be perplexed, doubt, question; de quā (legione) non dubitaret, had full confidence

dubius, -a, -um, adj. (dva-), moving two ways, fluctuating; Fig., wavering in opinion, doubting, doubtful, dubious, uncertain

dūcō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctus (dvc-), to lead, conduct, guide, direct, draw, bring, fetch, escort; To calculate, compute, reckon; With regard to time, to draw out, extend, protract, prolong—put off, delayed; to lead a person, as regards his will or opinions, in any direction—In a bad sense, to cheat, deceive; to move, incite, induce, allure, in a good or bad sense; uxorem, to lead a wife home, i. e. to marry: “filiam Orgetorigis in matrimonium,” (I.IX), “Duæ fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum eduxerat” (I.LIII); In milit. lang.

dum, conj. (dum), while, whilst, at the time that, during the time in which, where; Of immediate succession, to the time when, all the time till, until

Dumnorix, -īgis, m., an Æduan, brother of Diviciacus, and son-in-law of Orgatorix; a bitter enemy of Cæsar, and leader of an Æduan anti-Roman party; slain by Cæsar's orders while trying to escape from him, 54 B.C.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard (to the touch); pl. n. as subst., hardships, difficulties

dux, ducis, a leader, conductor, guide; In partic., Milit., a leader, commander, general-in-chief.

ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (ē + dō), to give out, put forth, bring forth, raise, set up; Of other objects, to produce, perform, bring about, cause

ēdūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus (ex + dūcō), to lead forth, draw out, bring off, take away

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ex + femina), to make feminine, represent as feminine; Fig., to make womanish, effeminate, enervate

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus (ex + fero), to carry out, take out, bring forth, take away, remove

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (ex + facio), to make out, work out, bring to pass, bring about, effect, cause, produce, make, form, execute, finish, complete, accomplish

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, — dep. (ex + gradior), Intrans, to go out, come forth, march out, go away; Trans, to go beyond, pass out of, leave

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. (ex + grex), extraordinary, distinguished, surpassing, excellent, eminent

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, — (ē + migrō), to move, depart, emigrate

ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ē + mittō), to send out, send forth—"scutum manu," to throw away, throw aside (I.XXV.IV)

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus (em-), to buy, purchase

enim, conj. (usu. after the first word in its clause). In explaining or specifying, for, for instance, namely, that is to say, I mean, in fact

ēnuntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ē + nuntio), to say out (Esp. something that should be kept secret), to divulge, disclose, to report, tell

eō, īre, īvī or iī, itūrus (i-), to go, walk, ride, sail, fly, move, pass; To go, march, move, advance (against a foe)

eō, adv. abl. of pron. (i-), Locat. and abl. uses, there, in that place; In dat. uses, With the idea of motion, to that place, thither (=in eum locum)

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. (eques), of a horseman, equestrian; In partic. Of or belonging to cavalry—"prœlium" (I.XVIII.IX)

equitātus, -ūs, m. (equito), cavalryēripiō, -ere, -ipuī, -eptus (ex + rapio), to snatch, tear, or pull out; to snatch away, take away (freq. and class.; cf.: capio, prehendo, sumo, demo, adimo, rapio, furor). In gen.: "vela, armamenta, copias," (III.XIV), cf.: "aliquem e manibus hostium," (I.XLIII), With se, to take one's self off, to flee, escape: "per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit," (I.IV), "se latebris," (VI.XLIII), cf.: "se ex manibus militum," (VII.XLVI); Trop., to take away, snatch away: "omnem usum navium," (III.XIV)

Error: Reference source not found

etiam, adv. (et + iam), Of time, now too, yet, as yet, even yet, still, even now; conj. Freq. with comp. (such as quīn) for the sake of intensity, yet, still

etsī, conj. (et + sī), Introducing a concession, though, although, albeit

ēvellō, -ere, -vellī, -volsus (ē + vellō), to tear out, pluck out, extract

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ex + capio), To take out, withdraw; To take up, catch, receive, capture, take; to take upon one's self, to receive, support, sustain (the figure being taken from the reception of an enemy's blows or shots)

exemplum, -ī, n. (em-), a sample, specimen; A way, manner, kind, nature

exeō, -īre-, -iī, -itus (ex + eo), to go out, go forth, go away, depart, withdraw, retire

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (ex + arceo), to drive, keep busy, keep at work, oversee, work, agitate; Fig., to engage busily, occupy, employ, exercise, train, discipline

exercito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (exerceo), to exercise diligently or frequently, practise; Hence, exercitātus, -a, -um, (P. a.), Well exercised, practised, versed, trained

exercitus, -ūs, m. (exerceo), a disciplined body of men, army

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, f. (existimo), a judging, judgment, opinion, supposition, decision, estimate, verdict

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ex + æstimo), to value, estimate, reckon; To appreciate, value, esteem, judge, consider, suppose, think, expect

expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus (ex + pes), to extricate, disengage, let loose, set free, liberate; expedītus, -a, -um, (P. a.), unimpeded, unincumbered, disengaged, free, easy, ready, at hand

experior, -īrī, -pertus, — dep. (par-), to try, prove, test, experience, endure; To try, undertake, attempt, make trial, undergo, experience

explōrātor, -ōris, m. (exploro), an explorer, spy, scout

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus (ex + premo), to press out, force out, squeeze forth; Fig., to wring out, extort, wrest, elicit

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ex + pūgnō), to take by assault, storm, capture, reduce, subdue

exquīrō, -ere, -uī, -ītum (ex + quæro), to ask about, to inquire into; to search, to examine

exsequor, -ī, -cūtus, — dep. (ex + sequor), to follow to the grave; To follow up, prosecute, carry out, enforce, perform, execute, accomplish, fulfil

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ex + spectō), to look out for, await, wait for

extrā, adv. and præp. (exter), adv., on the outside, without; præp., with acc., outside of, without, beyond

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. sup. (exter), outermost, utmost, extreme, farthest, last

exūrō, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstus (ex + ūrō), to burn out, burn up, consume; To consume, destroy

Fabius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name—Esp. Quinus Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Arverni in B.C. 121 on the Rhone; Gaius Fabius, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul; Lucius Fabius, a centurion

facilis, -e, adj. (fac-), easy to do, easy, without difficulty

facinus, -oris, n. (fac-), a deed, act, action, achievement; A bad deed, misdeed, outrage, villainy, crime

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus (fac-), to make, construct, fashion, frame, build, erect, produce, compose; In pass., to make; in all senses, to do, perform, accomplish, prepare, produce, bring to pass, cause, effect, create, commit, perpetrate, form, fashion, etc.; Of actions, to do, perform, make, carry on, execute; factus, -a, -um, P. a.

factiō, -ōnis, f. (fac-), a making, doing, preparing; A company, association, class, order, sect, faction, party

factum, -ī, n. (part. neut. of facio), a deed, act, exploit, achievement

facultās, -ātis, f. (facilis), capability, possibility, power, means, opportunity, skill, ability

familia, -æ, f., the slaves in a household, a household establishment, family servants, domestics (not family, i.e. wife and children)

familiāris, -e, (abl. sing. regularly familiari; familiare), adj., familia., of or belonging to a house, household, or family; household, domestic, family, private: "his rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse" (I.XVIII), Absol.: "per C. Valerium Procillum familiarem suum cum eo colloquitur," (I.XIX)

fās, (only nom. and acc sg.) n. (fa-), the dictates of religion, divine law; In gen. (justice, equity, but usu. to be translated as an adjective); right, proper, allowable, lawful, fit, permitted; hence, possible (the predominant meaning of the word in prose and pœtry)

fātum, -ī, n., an utterance, prophetic declaration, oracle, prediction; That which is ordained, destiny, fate

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus (fav-), to be favorable, be well disposed, be inclined towards, favor, promote, befriend, countenance, protect

fēlīcitās, -ātis, f. (felix), fertility, happiness, felicity, good-fortune, luck; Person., Good Fortune

ferē, adv. (fer-), closely, quite, entirely, fully, altogether, just; Of degree, nearly, almost, well-nigh, within a little, for the most part, about

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (fer-, tal-), to bear, carry, support, lift, hold, take up; To carry, take, fetch, move, bear, lead, conduct, drive, direct

ferrum, -ī, n. (firmus), iron; Transf., any thing made of iron, an iron implement—as a plough

fidēs, —, usu. (fid-), trust, faith, confidence, reliance, credence, belief; An assurance that produces confidence, a promise, engagement, word, assurance, confirmationf īlia, -æ, f. (fe-), a daughter

filius, -ī, m. (fe-), a sonfingō, -ere, finxī, fictus (fig-), to touch, handle, stroke, touch gently; Of the countenance, to alter, change, put on, feign

fīnis, -is, m. (fid-), that which divides, a boundary, limit, border; Borders, territory, land, country

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj. (finis), bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; Subst., fīnitimi, -ōrum, m., neighbors

firmus, -a, -um, adj. (fer-), firm (in opp. to frail, destructible), steadfast, stable, strong, powerful; Trop., firm in strength or durability, also in opinion, affection, etc., fast, constant, steadfast, immovable, powerful, strong, true, faithful

Flaccus, -ī, m., a Roman name, see Valerius flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (flag-), to demand urgently, require, entreat, solicit, press, importune, dun

fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētus (fla-), to weep, cry, shed tears, lament, wail

flētus, -ūs, m., a weeping, wailing, lamenting

florentissimus, -a, -um, adj. (super. of flōrens), greatly blooming; greatly flourishing

flūmen, -inis, n. (flv-), a flowing, flood, stream, running water; river

fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus (flv-), to flow, stream

fortis, -e, adj. (fer-), strong, powerful, mighty; Strong, vigorous, firm, steadfast, stout, courageous, brave, manly, valiant, bold, fearless

fortitūdo, -inis, f. (fortis), strength; Mentally, firmness, manliness shown in enduring or undertaking hardship; fortitude, resolution, bravery, courage, intrepidity

fortūna, -æ, f. (fors), chance, hap, luck, fate, fortune

fossa, -æ, f. (fossus; to dig, fod-), a dilch, trench, fosse

frangō, frēgi, frāctus, -ere (frag-), to break in pieces, dash to pieces, shiver, shatter, fracture; Fig., to break down, subdue, overcome, crush, dishearten, weaken, diminish, violate, soften

frāter, -tris, m., a brother; Transf., Like our word brother, as a familiar appellation of friends and lovers.

frāternus, -a, -um, adj. (frater), of a brother, brotherly, fraternal

frīgus, -oris, n. (frig-), cold, coldness, coolness, chilliness—In pl.

frūmentum, -ī, n. (fvg-), corn, grain, harvested grain

fuga, -æ, f. (fvg-), a fleeing, flight, running away

furor, -ōris, m. (furo), a raving, rage, madness, fury, passion

Gabīnius, -ī, m., Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Calpurnius Piso, 58 B.C.

Gallia, -æ, f., Gaul, the country of the Gaulli, including France, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland, Italy north of the Po, and the Rhine provinces of Germany

Garumna, -æ, river of S.W. Gaul—now the Garonne

generātim, adv. (genus), by kinds, by species, in classes, in detail; copias eduxerunt, i.e. by nations

Geneva, -æ, m., a city of the Allobroges, on the Lacus Lemanus, now Geneva

genus, -eris, n. (gen-), a race, stock, family, birth, descent, origin; Of things, a kind, sort, description, class, order, character, division

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus (ges-), to bear about, bear, carry, wear, have, hold, sustain; To carry out, administer, manage, regulate, rule, govern, conduct, carry on, wage, transact, accomplish, do, perform

glōria, -æ, f. (clv-), glory, fame, renown, praise, honor—with gen.

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (gloria), to boast, vaunt, glory, brag, pride oneself

Græcus, -a, -um, adj., of the Greeks, Greek —As a noun, a Greek, the Greeks

Graiocelī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people in the Alps

grandis, -e, adj. (gar-), Of things, full-grown, large, great, full, abundant

grātia, -æ, f. (gratus), favor, esteem, regard, liking, love, friendship, partiality

grātulātiō, -ōnis, f. (gratulor), a manifestation of joy, wishing joy, congratulation, rejoicing

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (gratus), to manifest joy, be glad, congratulate, rejoice; Supine. acc., To give thanks, render thanks, thank

gravis, -e, adj. with comp. gravior, and sup. gravissimus (gar-), heavy, weighty, ponderous, burdensome, loaded, laden, burdened; Trop. In a bad sense, heavy, burdensome, oppressive, troublesome, grievous, painful, hard, harsh, severe, disagreeable, unpleasant

graviter, adv. with comp. gravius, and sup. gravissimē (gravis), weightily, heavily, ponderously; Vehemently, strongly, violently; Fig., vehemently, violently, deeply, severely, harshly, unpleasantly, disagreeably, sadly

gravor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (pass. of gravo), to be burdened, feel incommoded, be vexed, take amiss, bear with reluctance, regard as a burden, hesitate, do unwillingly

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (hab-), to have, hold, support, carry, wear; To hold, to make, do, perform, prepare, utter, pronounce, produce, cause; To hold or keep a person or thing in any condition; to have, hold, or regard in any light; With a double object, Esp. freq. with the part. perf. pass., to have, hold, or possess a person or thing in any quality or capacity, as any thing; to have, hold, or possess an action as completed, finished; To hold, account, esteem, consider, regard a person or thing in any manner or as any thing; to think or believe a person or thing to be so or so

Hæduus, -a, -um, adj., of the Hædui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône—As a noun, a Hæduan, the Hædui

Harūdes, -um, m. pl., a German tríbe originally from the great expidition of the Cimbri

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine)

hībernus, -a, -um, adj. pos. (hiems), of winter, wintry, winter-; pl. n. as subst., winter-quarters

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus (hiems), to winter, pass the winter, keep winter-quarters

Hispānia, -æ, f., Spain; Pl., Spanish provinces; referring to the division into the two parts, “Hispānia citerior,” Hither Spain, “Hispānia ulterior,” Further Spain

homō, -inis, m. and f., a human being, man, person

honestus, -a, -um, adj. (honos), regarded with honor, respected, honored, of high birth, distinguished, honorable, respectable, noble

honor, -is, m., call, honor, repute, esteem in which a person or thing is held

hōra, -æ, f., an hour (one twelfth of the day between sunrise and sunset)

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep., hospes, -itis, m. (hostis + pot-), an entertainer, host (as a friend); a friend, one bound by ties of hospitality

hospitium, -ii, n. (hospes), Hospitalityhostis , -is, m. and f. (has-), a stranger, foreigner; An enemy in arms or of one's country (opp. inimicus, a private enemy, or one who is inimically disposed).

hūc, adv. (ho- of hic, + -ce), to this place, hither

hūmānitās, -ātis, f. (humanus), human nature, humanity; Civilization, cultivation, good-breeding, elegance, refinement

iacto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to throw, cast, hurl; Lit.—"semen," to scatter;

iam, adv. (ia), Of time, denoting a point or moment of time as coinciding with that of the action, etc., described. Of present time, at this time, now, just now, at present;

ibī, adv. (i-), in space, in that place, thereīct us, -ūs, m. (ic-), a blow, stroke, stab, cut, thrust, bite, sting, wound

Id, -ūs (4th decl.), Ides, the 13th of April—the Ides denotes the time of the month when there is a full moon

īdem, eadem, idem, pron. (i- + -dem), the same

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, meet, proper, becoming, suitable, apt, capable, convenient, sufficient

īgnis, -is, m. (ag-), fireīgnōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (gna-), not to know, to be unacquainted, be ignorant, mistake, misunderstand; In pass., not to be known or recognized

īgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus (in + (g)nosco), to pardon, forgive, excuse, overlook, allow, indulge, make allowance

illīc, adv. (illi + ce), in that place, yonder, there

immortālis, -e, adj., undying, immortalimp edīmentum, -ī, n. (imp-), a hinderance, impediment; Pl., travelling equipage, luggage

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus (ped-), to entangle, ensnare, shackle, hamper, hinder, hold fast

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (in + pellō), To strike against, push, drive, smite, strike, reach; Trop. To move to a thing; to impel, incite, urge; Esp., to instigate, stimulate, persuade—constr. usu. with aliquem, in or ad aliquid and ut

impendeō, -ēre, —, — (in + pendeō), to hang over, overhang

imperātor, -ōris, m. (impero), a commander-in-chief, general

imperītus, -a, -um, adj. (in + perītus), inexperienced, unversed, unfamiliar, not knowing, unacquainted with, unskilled, ignorant

imperium, -ī, n. (impero), With abl., a command, order, direction, injunction; Supreme power, sovereignty, sway, dominion, empire, supremacy, authority

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (in + paro), to command, order, enjoin, bid, give an order

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (in + patro; pat-), to gain one's end, achieve, bring to pass, effect, get, obtain, procure

impetus, -ūs, m. (in + pet-), an attack, assault, onset

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (in + ploro), to invoke with tears; To call to help, call for aid, appeal to, invoke, beseech, entreat, implore; To pray for, beg earnestly, implore

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (in + pōnō), ere, to place upon, set on, impose, establish, introduce, set, place

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (in + portō), to bring in, introduce, bring from abroad, import

improbus, adj. (in + probus), not good, bad, wicked, reprobate, abandoned, vile, base, impious, bold, shameless, wanton

imprōvīsus, -a, -um, adj. (in + provisus), not foreseen, unforeseen, unexpected; Hence, adv., imprōvīso, on a sudden, unexpectedly

impūne, adv. (impunis), without punishment, unpunished, with impunity

impūnitās, -ātis, f. (impunis), freedom from punishment, safety, impunity

in, præp. with acc. or abl.,incendō, -ere, -dī, -sus (candi-), to set fire to, kindle, burn

incidō, -ere, -cidī, — (in + cado), to fall in, fall, light, strike, reach, find the way; To light upon, meet, come upon, fall in with

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (in + citō), to set in rapid motion, urge on, hurry, hasten, accelerate, quicken; Fig, to put in motion, rouse, disturb

incolō, -ere, -luī, — (in + colō), to be at home, abide, dwell

incolumis, -e, adj. (in + columnis), unimpaired, uninjured, unharmed, safe, sound, entire, whole

incommodum, -ī, n. (incommodus), inconvenience, trouble, disadvantage, detriment, injury, misfortune, loss

incrēdibilis, -e, adj. (in + crēdibilis), not to be believed, incredible, beyond belief, extraordinary, unparalleled

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (in + causa), to accuse, complain of, find fault with, blame

inde, adv. (i + im-), Of place, from that place, thence; Of time, from that time, thenceforward, since; After that, thereafter, thereupon, then

indicium, -ī, n. (in + dic-), a notice, information, discovery, disclosure, charge, evidence

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (index), to point out, indicate, inform, show, declare, disclose, make known, reveal, betray

indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (in + ducō), to lead in, bring in, introduce, conduct, lead up, bring forward; To move, excite, persuade, induce, mislead, seduce

inermis, -e, adj. (in + arma), unarmed, without weapons, defenceless

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus (īn + ferō), to bring in, introduce, bring to, carry in; Milit., signa (arma) in hostem, or hosti, to bear the standards against the enemy, to attack, make an attack upon; in phrases, with bellum, gradum, or pedem, to make an attack

īnferus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. infra), below, beneath, underneath, lower

īnflectō, -ere, -ēxī, -exus (īn + flectō), to bend, bow, curve, turn aside

īnfluō, -ere, -uxī, -uxus (īn + fluō), to flow in, run in

iniciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus (in + iacio), to throw in, put in, hurl upon, put on, cast on, set into; Fig., to bring into, inspire, suggest, impress, infuse, occasion, cause

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj. (in + amicus), unfriendly, hostile, inimica

initium, -ī, n. (in + eo), a going in, entrance; Fig., a beginning, commencement

iniūria, -æ, f. (iniurius; in + iūs), any thing that is done contrary to justice and equity, injury, wrong, violence; Transf., injurious, unlawful, or unjust conduct; Act., injustice, wrongdoing

iniussus, -ūs, m., only in the abl. (in + jussus), without command

innāscor, -ī, -nātus, — dep. (in + nāscor), to be born in, grow upon, spring up in; Fig., to arise in, originate in, be produced in

innocentia, -æ, f. (in + nocentia), blamelessness, innocence

inopia, -æ, f. (inops), want, lack, scarcityino pīnāns, gen. inopīnantis, adj., unaware, off guard; unexpected, not expecting

īnsciēns, -entis, adj. (īn + sciēns), unknowing, without knowledge, unaware

īnsequor, -ī, -cūtus, — dep. (īn + sequor), to follow, follow after, come next; To pursue, follow up, press upon

īnsidiæ, -ārum, f. (sed-), a snare, trap; Fig., artifice, crafty device, plot, snare

īnsīgne, -is, n. (insignis), a mark, sign, signal; a distinctive mark, a badge of office (class.); a sign or badge of office or honor, a decoration:—Esp. in plur., insignia, attire, uniform, costume, regalia, etc., "tectis insignibus suorum," militaria, ornaments, probably on the helmets of the officers, (VII.XLV)

īnsīgnis, -e, adj. (in + signum), distinguished by a mark, remarkable, noted, eminent, distinguished, prominent, extraordinary; militaria, ornaments, probably on the helmets of the officers

īnsiliō, -īre, -uī, — (in + salio), to leap in, spring up, throw oneself upon, bound, mount

īnsolenter, adv. (insolens), unusually, contrary to custom; Immoderately, haughtily, insolently

īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus (in + statuo), to put in place, plant, fix, set; To teach, instruct, train up, educate

īnstitūtum, -ī, n. (P. of instituo), a purpose, intention, design; A practice, custom, usage, habit

īnstō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus (īn + stō), to stand upon, take a position; Absol., to draw nigh, approach; to impend, threaten

īnstruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus (īn + struō), to build in, insert; Of troops, to form, set in order, draw up, array

intellegō, -ere -ēxī, -ēctus (inter + lego; leg-), to come to know, see into, perceive, understand, discern, comprehend, gather

inter, præp. with acc. (ana-), between, betwixt; Esp., with pronouns, to express all reciprocal relations, among, with, or between one another; mutually, together

intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (inter + cēdō), to come between, intervene, be between

interclūdō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsus (inter + claudo), interdīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus (inter + dīcō), to interpose by speaking, forbid, prohibit, interdict

interdiū, adv. (div-), during the day, in the daytime, by day

interdum, adv. (inter + dum), sometimes, occasionally, now and then

intereā, adv. (inter + ea), meanwhile, in the meantime, in the interim

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter + facio), to put out of the way, destroy, bring to naught; To kill, slay, murder

interim, adv. (inter + i-), meanwhile, in the meantime

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (inter + mitto), to leave off, intermit, omit, suspend, interrupt, neglect

interneciō, -ōnis, f. (inter + nec-), a massacre, slaughter, carnage, extermination, destruction

interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -posītus (inter + pōnō), to put between, place

interpres, -etis, m. and f. (prat-), intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (inter + sum), to be between, lie between

intervāllum, -ī, n. (inter + vāllum), Prop., the space between palisades, an intermediate space, interval, distance

intrā, præp. with acc., within, in, intointueo r, -ērī, -itus, — dep., to look upon, look closely at, gaze at

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (in + venio), to come upon, find, meet with, light upon

invīctus, -a, -um, adj. (in + vīctus), unconquered, unsubdued, unconquerable, invincible

invītus, -a, -um, adj. (in + vicitus?), against one's will, unwilling, reluctant; As subst. m., reluctant, unwilling

ipse, -a, -um, gen. ipsīus. pron. demonstr., In gen., to express eminence or emphasis. Self, in person (often rendered by an emphatic he, or by very, just, precisely); To emphasize one of the subjects of a common predicate., With et, he too, himself in person, even he; To make prominent one of two or more subjects of any predicate, for his part, he too, also, as well (See Demonstrative Pronoun Charts: §146)

īrācundus, -a, -um, adj. (ira), irascible, irritable, passionate, choleric, angry, ireful, easily provoked

irrīdiculē, adv. (in + ridicule), unwittilyita, adv. (i-), In gen., referring to what precedes, in this manner, in this wise, in such a way, so, thus, accordingly, as has been said; Referring to what follows, thus, in the following manner, as follows, in this way; Of a natural consequence or inference, so, thus, accordingly, under these circumstances, in this manner, therefore; Prægn., of kind or quality, so, such, of this nature, of this kindItalia, -æ, f., Italy

item, adv. (i- + tam), likewise, besides, also, further, moreover, too, as well

iter, -itineris, n. (i-), a going, walk, way; A going, journey, passage, march, voyage;

iterum, adv., again, a second time, once more, anew; With other adv., Esp. with semel, tertium, etc., again and again, repeatedly

iuba, -æ, f., the flowing hair on the neck of an animal, the mane

iubeo, -iusse, -iussi, -iussum, to order one to do something, to bid, tell, command

iūdicium, -ii, n., a judgment, i.e. a judicial investigation, trial; a judicial sentence

iūdico, -ere, -āvi, -ātum (iudex), to examine judicially, to judge, be a judge, pass judgment, decide; Transf. beyond the legal sphere, To judge, judge of a thing; To determine, resolve, conclude

iugum, -i, n., a yoke for oxen, a collar for horses; Esp. as the symbol of humiliation and defeat, a yoke (consisting of two upright spears, and a third laid transversely upon them, under which vanquished enemies were made to pass)

iūmentum, -i, n., a beast used for drawing or carrying, draught-cattle, a beast of burden, Esp. a horse, mule, or ass

iungo, -iungere, -nxi, -nctum, to join or unite together, connect, attach, fasten, yoke, harness

Iūra, -æ, m., a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone

iūro, -āre, -ātum, — dep. (iūror), to swear, to take an oath

iūs, iūris, n. (iv-), that which is binding, right, justice, duty; Abl. As adv., by right, rightfully, with justice, justly

iūs, iūrandum, -ris -i, an oathiustitia, -æ, f. (iustus), justice, equity, righteousness, uprightness

iuvo, -arī, iūvi, iūtum (div-), to help, aid, assist, support, benefit

Kalendæ, -ārum, f. (cal-), Prop. the day when the order of days was proclaimed; hence, the Calends, the first day of the month

Labiēnus, -ī, m., Titus Labienus, the most prominent of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic War; in the Civil War he went over to the side of Pompey, but displayed small abilities as commander, and fell at the battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (labor), to labor, take pains, endeavor, exert oneself, strive

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus (lac-), to excite, provoke, challenge, exasperate, irritate

lacrima, -æ, f., a tearlacus, -ūs, m. (lac-), an opening, hollow, lake, pond, pool

lapis, -idis, m., a stonelargior, -īrī, -ītus, — dep. (largus), to give bountifully, lavish, bestow, dispense, distribute, impart; To give largesses, bribelargiter, adv., in abundance

largītiō, -ōnis, f. (largior), a giving freely, granting, bestowing, dispensing, generosity, largess

lātitūdō, -inis, f. (latus), breadth, widthLato brīgī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people near people near the Helvetians

Latovicī, -ōrum, m. pl, the Latobrigi, a Celtic tribe who joined the Helvetii in their migration attempt

lātus, -a, -um, adj. (ster-), broad, wide, extensive

laus, laudis, f. (clv-), praise, commendation, glory, fame, renown, esteem

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f. (lego), the office of ambassador, embassy, legation

legiō, -ōnis, f. (leg-), a body of soldiers, legion (containing 10 cohorts of foot-soldiers and 300 cavalry, in all between 4200 and 6000 men. These were Roman citizens; only on pressing necessity were slaves admitted. The legions were numbered in the order of their levy, but were often known by particular names); Pl., legions, soldiers

Lemammus, -ī, m., with lacus, Lake Geneva

lēnitās, -ātis, f. (lenis), softness, smoothness, gentleness, mildness

Leucī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle

lēx, lēgis, f. (leg-), a formal proposition for a law, motion, bill (offered by a magistrate to the people); A law, precept, regulation, principle, rule, mode, manner

līber, -era, -erum, adj. (lib-), free, unrestricted, unrestrained, unimpeded, unembarrassed, unshackled; Hence, adv., līberē, freely, unrestrictedly, without let or hinderance; frankly, openly, bold

līberālitās, -ātis, f. (liberalis), a characteristic of a freeman, ingenuousness, frankness, affability; In partic., generosity, liberality

līberī, -erōrum (liber), free persons; hence, the children of a family, children

lībertās, -ātis, f. (liber), freedom, liberty, absence of restraint, permission

liceor, -ērī, licitus, — dep. (lic-), to bid, make a bid

licet, -ēre, -cuit (and citum est), impers. (lic-), It is lawful, is allowed, is permitted, with or without dat. of person—Without subject

Lingonēs, -um, m., a Gallic people west of the Sequanians

lingua, -æ, f., the tongue, the tongue; A tongue, utterance, speech, language

linter, -tris, f., a trough, vat, tub; Transf., a boat, skiff, wherry

Liscus, -ī, m., a prominent Æduanlittera, -æ, f. (li-), a letter, alphabetical sign, written sign of a sound; trans. Usu. pl. litteræ, -ārum, f., a letter, epistle

locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (locus), to place, put, lay, set, dispose, arrange; To place in marriage, give away, give in marriage, marry

locus, -ī, m. (loca), a place, spot; Fig. Place, position, situation, condition, relation, state

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. (longus), far removed, far off, remote, distant; Long, of long duration, prolonged, lasting, continued, tedious

longitūdo, -inis, f. (longus), lengthlongus, -a, -um, adj. (leg-), long, extend; Distant, remote, long delayed; longē, long, in length; To be far away, i.e. to be of no assistance, of no avail; Widely, greatly, much, very much, by far—Esp. with sup. and comp.

loquor, -ī, -cūtus, — dep. (lac-), to speak, talk, say, tell, mention, utter

Lūcius, -ī, m., a Roman first name; Abr., L.l ūna, -æ, f. (lvc-), the moon

lūx, lūcis, f. (lvc-), light, brightness; In partic., the light of day, daylight, day; "primā luce ad eum accurrit," at daybreak, dawn of day (I.XXII.I)

magis, adv. comp. (mac-), more, in a higher degree, more completely—With adj. or adv.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. (magister), the office of master, magisterial office, civil office, magistracy; Collect., the body of magistrates, the municipal administration

māgnoperē (or māgnō opere), adv. (abl. of magnum opus), very much, greatly, exceedingly, particularly

magnus, -a, -um, Lit., of physical size or quantity, great, large; Of things, vast, extensive, spacious, etc.; Trop. In gen., great, grand, mighty, noble, lofty, important, of great weight or importance; Esp. Of measure, weight, quantity, great, much, abundant, considerable, etc.;

maleficium, -ī, n. (maleficus), evil-doing, nefarious, vicious, wicked, criminal

malus, -a, -um, adj. (mal-), it adopts as comp. and sup. pēior and pessimus (ped), bad, not good;

mandātum, -ī, n. (ppp. of mando), a charge, commission, injunction, command, order

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (manus + do), to put in hand, deliver over, commit, consign, intrust, confide, commission—"fugæ sese," betake himself to flight

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus (man-), to stay, remain, abide, tarry; To remain, last, endure, continue, abide, persist

manus, -ūs, f. (ma-), a hand; Milit., an armed force, corps of soldiers—"si nova manus cum veteribus copiis se conjunxisset"

Marcomannī, -ōrum, m. pl., a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus

Mārcus, -ī, m., a Roman first name, equiv. to english Mark

Marius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name—Esp. Gaius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and the Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion

Martona, -æ, m., the Marnematara, æ, f., Celtic, a javelin, pike, Celtic lance

māter, -tris, f. (ma-), a mothermātrimōnium , -ī, n. (mater), wedlock, marriage, matrimony

mātūrō, āvī, -ātus, -āre (maturus), to make ripe, ripen, bring to maturity; Fig., to make haste, hasten, accelerate, quicken, despatch, expedite

maturrimus, -a, -um (super. of mātūrus), ripest, most or very mature; timely, seasonable

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. with comp. mātūrior, and sup. mātūrissimus, or mātūrrimus, ripe, mature; ripe, mature, of age, proper, fit, seasonable, timely

māximē, adv. sup. (maximus), in the highest degree, most particularly, especially, exceedingly, altogether, very

māximus, -a, -um, sup. (mac-), Of size, large, great, big, high, tall, long, broad, extensive, spacious

Maximus, -ī, m. (sup. of magnus, as noun), a Roman family name

mediocriter, adv. (mediocris), moderately, tolerably, ordinarily, not very, not remarkably, slightly, somewhat; non mediocriter, in no moderate degree

medius, -a, -um, adj. (med-), in the middle, in the midst, mid, mean, middle

memoria, -æ, f. (memor), memory, remembrance

mēnsis, -is, m. (ma-), a monthmercātor, -ōris, m. (mercor), a trader, merchant, wholesale dealer

mercēs, -ēdis, f. (smar-), price, hire, pay wages, salary, fee, reward

meritus, -a, -um adj., mereor, -ērī, itus, — dep., to deserve, merit, to be entitled to, be worthy of a thing; constr. with acc., with ut, with ne, with inf., and absol; meritō, adv., according to desert, deservedly, justly; meritum, -ī, n., (ppp

mereor, -ērī, -itus, — dep. (smar-), to deserve, merit, be entitled to

merīdiēs, acc. -em, m. (medius + dies), mid-day, noon

Messāla, -æ, m., a Roman namemētior, -īrī, mēnsus, — dep. (ma-), to measure, mete; To measure out, deal out, distribute

Mēttius, -ī, m., a Gaul in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus

mīles, -itis, m. and f. (mil-), a soldiermīlle, pl. mīlia, num. adj. (mil-), a thousand, ten hundred; In the phrase, mille passuum, a thousand paces (a Roman mile, about 1618 English yards)

minimē, adv. sup. (minimus), least of all, in the smallest degree, least, very little

minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus (man-), to make small, lessen, diminish, divide into small pieces; Fig., to lessen, diminish, lower, reduce, weaken, abate, restrict

mīror, -ārī, -ātus, — dep., to wonder, marvel, be astonished, be amazed, admire

mīrus, -a, -um, adj. (mi-), wonderful, marvellous, astonishing, extraordinary, amazing

miseror, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (miser), to lament, deplore, commiserate

mitto, -ere, mīsi, missum, to set in motion, to cause to go, let go, send, to send off, despatch, etc.; To send, throw, hurl, cast, launch

modo, adv. (orig. abl. of modus), Qs., by measure, expressing, like tantum, a restriction of the idea, only, merely, but; Negatively, non modo ... sed (verum) etiam (et, or simply sed), not only ... but also

modus, -ī, m. (ma-), a measure, extent, quantity; A way, manner, mode, method, fashion, style

mōlīmentum, -ī, n. (molior), a great exertion, trouble, effort

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, to grindmoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (man-), to remind, put in mind of, admonish, advise, warn, instruct, teach

mōns, montis, m. (man-), a mountain, mount, range of mountains

morior, -ī, mortuus, — dep. (mar-), to die, expire

moror, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (mora), to delay, tarry, stay, wait, remain, linger, loiter

mors, -tis, f. (mar-), deathmōs, mōris, m. (ma-), manner, custom, way, usage, practice, fashion, wont, as determined not by the laws, but by men's will and pleasure, humor, self-will, caprice

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus (mv-), to move, stir, set in motion, shake, disturb, remove

mulier, -eris, f. (mal-), a woman, femalemul titūdo, inis, f. (multus), a great number, multitude; In partic. Of people, a great number, a crowd, multitude, “tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjiciebat, ut, etc.,” (II.VI); Of the common people, the crowd, the multitude

multus, -a, -um, adj., Pl., with subst., or with adj. used as subst, many, a great number

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (mœnia), to wall, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect, secure, strengthen

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. (munio), a defending, fortifying, protecting; A defence, fortification, rampart, bulwark, intrenchment, walls

mūnus, -eris, n. (mv-), a service, office, post, employment, function, duty; Transf., a present, gift

mūrus, -ī, m. (mv-), a wall, city wallnam, conj., To introduce a confirmation or explanation, for (always in prose beginning the sentence)—Introducing an explanation or fuller statement of something already said

Nammeius, -ī, m., a Helvetian sent as envoy to Cæsar

nancīscor, -ī, nactus, — dep. (nac-), to get, obtain, receive, meet with, stumble on, light on, find

Nasua, -æ, m., a chieftain of the Suebinātiō, -ōnis, f. (gen-), a birth, origin; A race of people, nation, people

nātūra, -æ, f., birth; Nature, natural constitution, property, quality

nāvicula, -æ, f. dim. (navis), a small vessel, boat, skiff

nāvis, -is, f. (na-), a shipnē, adv. and conj., adv., the primitive Latin negative particle, no, not; whereas the negative particle non is a derivative; Ne ... quidem, applies the negation with emphasis to the word between them, not even; In intentional clauses, and after verbs of fearing and avoiding, ne becomes a conjunction. In intentional clauses for ut ne, that not, lest

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. (necesse), unavoidable, inevitable, indispensable, pressing, needful, requisite, necessary, compulsory; Subst. m. and f., a relation, relative, kinsman, connection, friend, client, patron

necessitūdō, -inis, f. (necesse), necessity, compulsion, inevitableness, want, need, distress; A close connection, personal union, relationship, friendship, intimacy, bond

necne, adv. (ned + ne), or not, in the second part of an indirect alternative question

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (nec-), to kill, slay, put to death

neglegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctus (nec + lego), to disregard, not heed, not trouble oneself about, not attend to, slight, neglect, be regardless of, be indifferent to

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ag-), to say no, deny, refuse

negōtium, -ī, n. (nec + otium), a business, employment, occupation, affair

Nemetes, -um, m. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine

nēmō, m. and f. (ne + homo), no man, no one, nobody

neque (or ne que), conj. or adv., conj. In gen. = et non, and not, also not; In contrasts, but not, not however

nervus, -ī, m., a sinew, tendon, muscle; Fig., a sinew, nerve, vigor, force, power, strength

nēve (or neu), adv. and not, nor, and that not, and lest

nihil, (or contr. nīl), n. indecl. (ne + hilum; not the least), nothing; nihilo, with comp., by nothing, no—nihilō minus, none the less, no less, nevertheless, notwithstanding; Adv., not (as a strengthened non), in nothing, in no respect, not at all

nītor, -ī, nīxus, — dep. (cni-), to bear upon, press upon, lean, support oneself; To rest, rely, depend upon

nōbilis, -e, adj. (gna-), that is known, well-known, famous, noted, celebrated, renowned; High-born, of noble birth, noble (usu. of families from which the high offices of state had been filled)

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. (nox), of night, by night, nocturnal

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (ne + volo), to wish ... not, will ... not, not to wish, to be unwilling

nōmen, -inis, n. (gna-), a means of knowing, name, appellation

nōminātim, adv., by name, expressly, one by one, in detail

nōndum, adv. (non + dum), the while, a while, now, yet, not yet

Nōricus, -ī, m., of the Norici, Norican—now Neumarks

noster, nostra, nostrum, pron. poss. (nos), our, our own; ours, of us; In partic. Of or belonging to us, one of ours, one of us, our friend, ours

novus, -a, -um, adj. (nv-), new, not old, young, fresh, recent—novæ res signifies political innovations, a revolution; Transf., in the sup., novissimus, -a, -um, the latest, last, hindermost, extreme——So as subst., novissimi, -ōrum, the rear of an army, the soldiers in the last line

nox, noctis, f. (nec-), night—ad multam noctem: (up) to late in the night

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum (neb-), to veil oneself, be married, marry, wed

nūllus, nūllīus, adj. (ne + ullus), not any, none, no (See chart: nūllus, no, none §113)

num, adv. (nv-), Of time, now; As interrog particle. Introducing a direct question, usu. expecting a negative answer, then, now (often only rendered by the interrogative form of the sentence): num videntur convenire hæc nuptiis? dœs this look like a wedding?

numerus, -ī, m. (nem-), a number; In partic. A certain collective quantity, a body, number of persons or things

numquam, adv. (ne + umquam), at no time, never

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (nuntius), to announce, declare, report, relate, narrate, make known, inform, give intelligence of, etc;

nūper, adv. (nv-), newly, lately, recently, freshly, not long ago, just

nūtus, —, abl. -ū (only nom sing. and acc. and abl sing. and plur.) m. (nv-), a nodding, nod; Command, will, pleasure

ob, præp., with acc. With verbs of motion, towards, to; Transf., to indicate the object or cause, on account of, for, because of, by reason of, etc

obærātus, -a, -um, adj. (ob + æs), involved in debt; pl. m. as subst., debtors

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (ob + iacio), to throw before, throw to, cast, offer, present, expose; In partic., to throw or place before by way of defence or hinderance; to cast in the way, set against, oppose

oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus, — dep. (ob + liv-), with gen. of person or thing, to forget; To forget, disregard, omit, neglect, be indifferent to, cease from

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ob + sacro), to beseech, entreat, implore, supplicate, conjure

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ob + servō), to watch, note, heed, observe, take notice of, attend to

obses, obsidis (ob + sedeō), a hostageobstrin go, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum (ob + stringo), To bind, bind up, close up by binding; ppp. obstrictus, -a, -us, bound, obliged

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (ob + teneō), to hold fast, have, occupy, possess, preserve, keep, maintain

occāsus, -ūs, m. (ob + cad-), a falling, going down, setting

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus (ob + cædo), to strike down, knock down; To cut down, cut off, kill, slay

occulō, -ere, -culuī, -cultus (ob + cal-), to cover, cover over; To cover up, hide, conceal

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ob + cap-), to take into possession, seize, occupy, master, win

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus (ob + curro), to run up, run to meet, go to meet, meet, fall in with; To obviate or seek to obviate, to meet, resist, oppose, counteract

Ōceanus, -ī, m., the great sea, outer sea, ocean

Ocelum, -ī, a town of the Graioceli in the Alps, west of modern Turin

oculus, -ī, m. (ac-), an eyeōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, defect. (od-), to hate

offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus (ob + fendo), to hit, thrust, strike, dash against;

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f. (offendo), a striking against, tripping, stumbling; Trop., An offence given to any one, disfavor, aversion, disgust, dislike, hatred, discredit, bad reputation; An offence which one receives; displeasure, vexation

officium, -ī, n. (opus + fac-), a service, kindness, favor, courtesy; In gen., an obligatory service, an obligation, duty, function, part, office

omnīnō, adv. (omnis), altogether, wholly, entirely, utterly, at all; In partic. With numerals, in all, altogether, only, but, just

omnis, -e, adj., Pl, all, every; Sg., every, all, the whole—"Gallia est omnis divisa," the whole of Gallia

oportet, -ēre, -uit, — impers. (ob + par-), it is necessary, is proper, is becoming, behooves

oppidum, -ī, n. (ob + ped-), a town, city, collection of dwellings

opportūnus, -a, -um (opor-), adj. (ob + par-), fit, meet, adapted, convenient, suitable, seasonable, opportune

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ob + pugno), to fight against, attack, assail, assault, storm, besiege, war with

(ops,) opis (no nom. or dat. sg.), f. (ap-), power, might, strength, ability, in abstr.; In concr., means of any kind that one possesses; property, substance, wealth, riches, treasure; military or political resources, might, power, influence, etc. (in this signif. mostly in pl.)

opus, -eris, n. (ap-), work, labor, toil; Transf., abstr. in nom. and acc., need, necessity; hence,

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. (oro), a speaking, speech, discourse, language, faculty of speech, use of language; A set speech, harangue, discourse, oration

ōrdō, -inis, m. (ol-), a row, line, series, order, rank

Orgetorix, -īgis, m., a Helvetian nobleman who formed a plot to seize supreme power

oriēns, -entis, m. (ppp. of orior), the rising sun, morning sun; The East, Orient

orior, orīrī, ortus, — dep. (ol-), to arise, rise, stir, get up; Fig., to rise, come forth, spring, descend, grow, take origin, proceed, start, begin, originate

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (os), to speak; To pray, beg, beseech, entreat, implore, supplicate

ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus (obs + tendo), to stretch out or spread before one; hence, to expose to view, to show, exhibit, display; Trop.

pābulātio, -ōnis, f. (pabulor), pasture; Transf., milit., a collecting of fodder, a foraging

pāco, -āre, -avi, -ātum (pax), to bring into a state of peace and quietness, to make peaceful, to quiet, pacify, subdue, soothe

pæne, adv., nearly, almost, as I may saypāgu s, -ī, m. (pac-), a district, canton, hundred, province, region

palūs, -ūdis, f. a swamp, marsh, morass, bog, fen, pool

pandō, -ere, -dī, passum (pat-), spread or open (out), extend

pār, paris, adj. (par-), equalpāreō, -ēre, -uī, — (par-), to appear, be visible, be at hand; To obey, be obedient, submit, comply

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (pra-), to make ready, prepare, furnish, provide, arrange, order, contrive, design; Transf., to procure, acquire, get, obtain

pars, partis, f. (par-), parvus, -a, -um, adj. (pav-), Of magnitude, little, small, petty, puny, inconsiderable; Sup. adj., minimus, -a, -um, very small, very little; least, smallest, etc.: "quā minima altitudo fluminis erat," (I.VIII); Adv., Comp., minus, less; Comp., minor, -us., less, lesser, smaller, inferior

passus, -ūs, m. (pat-), a step, pacepateō, -ēre, -uī, — (pat-), to stand open, lie open, be open; To stretch out, extend

pater, -tris, m. (pa-), a father, sirepatior, -ī, passus, — dep., to bear, support, undergo, suffer, endure; To suffer, endure, bear, allow, permit, let

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (pav-), few, little

paulātim, adv., by little and little, by degrees, gradually

pāx, pācis, f. (pac-), a compact, agreement, treaty, peace, treaty of peace, reconciliation

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (pik-, to be angry of), to miss, mistake, do amiss, transgress, commit a fault, offend, sin

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus (pal-), to beat, strike, knock, push, drive, hurl, impel, propel; In partic. To drive out or away, to thrust or turn out, expel, banish; Esp. milit., to drive back, discomfit, rout the enemy—constr. with abl., with ex, rarely with de; also with ab and abl. of the place from which one is repelled or driven back, but has not entered

pendō, -ere, -pependī, -pēnsus (pandi-), to suspend, weigh, weigh out; To weigh out in payment, pay, pay out; Fig., to pay, suffer, undergo

per, præp. with acc., In space, through, across, through the midst of, from side to side of, traversing; Of agency, through, by, by the hands of, by the agency of

percontātiō, -ōnis, f. (percontor), a persistent asking, questioning, inquiry

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (per + dūcō), To lead, bring, conduct, guide a person or thing to any place

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum (per + eo), to pass away, come to nothing, vanish, disappear, be lost; to pass away, be destroyed, perish

perfacilis, -e, adj. (per + facilis), very easyper ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (per + ferō), to bear through, bring home; To bear, support, endure to the end; In gen., to bear, suffer, put up with, brook, submit to, endure

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (per + facio), to achieve, execute, carry out, accomplish, perform, despatch, bring about, bring to an end, finish, complete

perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus (per + frango), to break through, break in pieces, shiver, shatter

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, — (per + fugiō), to flee for refuge; In partic., to go over or desert to the enemy (class.)

perīculōsus, -a, -um, adj. (periculum), dangerous, hazardous, perilous

perīculum, -i, n. (par-), a trial, experiment, attempt, test, proof, essay; Risk, hazard, danger, peril (which acompanies an attempt)

perītus, -a, -um, adj. (par-), experienced, practised, trained, skilled, skilful, expert

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (per + mittō), to let pass, let go, let loose; To let go, reach with, cast, hurl; To give leave, let, allow, suffer, grant, permit

permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (per + moveō), to move deeply, rouse, excite, agitate, influence, lead, induce, prevail on

perniciēs, -ēi, f. (per + nec-), destruction, death, ruin, overthrow, disaster, calamity, mischief

perpaucus, -a, -um, adj. (per + paucus), very little, very few

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. (per + pat-), continuous, unbroken, uninterrupted, constant, entire, whole, perpetual

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus (per + rumpō; rvp-), to break through, force a way through, get across

persequor, -ī, -cūtus, — dep. (per + sequor), to follow perseveringly, follow after, follow up, pursue

persevērō, -are, -āvī, -ātus (perseverus), to abide, adhere strictly, continue steadfastly, persist, persevere

persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus (per + solvō), to unravel, solve, explain; To pay, give, show, render, suffer

perspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus (spec-), to look through, look into, look at, see through; Transf., to look closely at, to view, examine, inspect

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus (per + suādeō), to convince, persuade

perterreō, -ēre, —, -itus (per + terreō), to frighten thoroughly, terrify

pertinācia, -æ, f. (pertinax), perseverance, persistence, stubbornness, obstinacy, pertinacity

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, — (per + teneo), to stretch out, reach, extend; To have a tendency, tend, lead, conduce; To have a tendency, to tend or lead to an object or result

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (per + turbō), to confuse, disturb, confound, throw into disorder; Fig., to disturb, discompose, embarrass, confound

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (per + veniō), to come up, arrive

petō, -ere, -īvī, petītus (pet-), phalanx, -angis, f., a compact body of heavy armed men in battle array, battalion, phalanx

pīlum, -ī, n. (pis-), Pīsō, -ōnis, m., a Roman name

placeō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus (plac-), to please, give pleasure, be approved, be pleasing, be agreeable, be acceptable, suit, satisfy; With Dat. Transf., placet mihi (tibi, etc.), or simply placet, it pleases me, it seems good, right, or proper to me; it is my opinion, I am of opinion, I hold, believe, intends decided, resolved, determined (mihi, nobis, etc., or absol.)

plānities, -ēi, f., a flat or even surface, level ground, a plain

plēbs, plēbis, f. (ple-), the common people, commons, commonalty, plebeians, folk

plērus, -a, -um, adj. (ple-), very many, a very great part, most; Neut. adv., plerum (like plerumque, v. plerusque), for the most part, mostly, commonly

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. sup. (plus), most, very much, very many; Adv., plūrimum

pœna, -æ, f., indemnification, compensation, recompense, retribution, satisfaction, expiation, punishment, penalty, price

polliceor, -ērī, -itus, dep. (pro + liceor), to hold forth, offer, promise

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus (port- (pro) + sino), to put or set down a person or thing, to put, place, set, lay, etc. (syn.: colloco, statuo); constr. with acc. alone, or with in and abl., or with adv. of place; sometimes with in and acc., or absol.; Lit.

pōns, -ontis, m. (pat-), a bridgepopulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (scal-), to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage, spoil

populor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (scal-), to lay waste, ravage, devastate, spoil, plunder, pillage

populus, -ī, m. (ple-), a people, nation; In Rome, the whole body of citizens, people

portō, -are, -āvī, -ātus (par-), to bear, carry, convey, take

portōrium, -ī, n. (par-), a tax, toll, duty, impost, custom, tariff

pōscō, -ere, popōscī, — (prec-), to ask urgently, beg, demand, request, desire

possessiō, -ōnis, f. (sed-), Transf. In abstr., a possessing, holding, possession, occupation; In concr., a thing possessed, a possession, property, Esp. an estate

possīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus (por (for pro) + sido), to take possession of, occupy, seize

possum, posse, potuī, — irreg. (potis + sum), to be able, have power, can; In partic. To be able, to have influence or efficacy, to avail; In gen. With gen., able, mighty, powerful, potent

post, adv. (pos-), Of place, behind, back backwards; Of time, afterwards, after, later

posteā, adv. (post + eā), after this, after that, hereafter, thereafter, afterwards, later; posteaquam (or separately as, postea quam), after that

posterus, adj. with comp. posterior, -us, and sup. postremus (post), Posit., coming after, following, next, ensuing, subsequent, future

postquam (or post quam), conj. (post + quam),

postrīdiē, adv. (posteri + die), on the day after, the next day

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (prec-), to ask, demand, claim, require, request, desire

potēns, -entis, adj. (part. of possum), able, mighty, strong, powerful, potent; To be able, be strong, be powerful, have influence, be efficacious, avail, accomplish

potentia, -æ, f. (poten), might, force, power; Fig., political power, authority, sway, influence, eminen

potestās, -ātis, f. (potis), Lit., In gen., ability, power of doing any thing; power, ability, possibility, opportunity —"potestatem sui facere," to give an opportunity of fighting with one

potior, -īrī, -ītus, — dep. (potis), to become master of, take possession of, get, obtain, acquire, receive

præcaveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautus (præ + caveō), to take care, take heed, use precaution, be on one's guard, beware; Neut., to take care or heed, to use precaution, to be on one's guard, to beware

præcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (præ + cēdō), to go before, precede, lead the way, lead; Trop., to surpass, outstrip, outdo, excel, be superior

præcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (præ + capio), to take beforehand, get in advance; To give rules, advise, admonish, warn, inform, instruct, teach, enjoin, direct, bid, order

præcipuus, -a, -um, adj. (præ + cap-), taken before others, particular, peculiar, especial; Hence, adv., præcipuē, chiefly, principally, eminently

prædicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (præ + dicō), to make known by proclamation, announce, publish, proclaim; To make known, announce, proclaim, herald, relate, declare openly

præfectus, ī, m. (P. of præficio), an overseer, director, superintendent

præficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (præ + facio), to set over, place in authority over, place at the head, appoint to command

præmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (præ + mittō), to send forward, despatch in advance

præmium, -ī, n. (præ + em-), an advantage, prerogative, favor, license, privilege

præoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (præ + optō), to choose rather, desire more, prefer

præpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (præ + pōnō), to place in front, put upon, affix; To set over, make commander, intrust with, appoint, depute

præscrībo, -ere, -psi, -ptum (præ +scrībo), to write before, in front, or previously, to prefix in writing; Trop., to order, appoint, direct, command, prescribe; dictate

præscrīptum, -ī, n. (P. n. of præscribo; præ + scribo), a previous direction, precept, limitation, proviso, regulation

præsentia, -æ, f. (præsens), a being at hand, presence

præsertim, adv. (ser-), especially, chiefly, principally, particularly

præsidium, -ī, n. (præses), defence, protection, guardianship, help, aid, assistance; A guard, escort, convoy, garrison

præstō, -āre, -itī, -itus (præ + stō), to stand out, stand before, be superior, excel, surpass, exceed, be excellent; Impers. with subject-clause, it is preferable, is better

præsum, esse, -fuī, præfutūrus (præ + sum), to be before, be set over, preside over, rule, have charge of, command, superintend

præter, adv. (pro-), except, besides, unless, save, other than, not

prætereā, adv. (præter + ea), in addition, beyond this, further, besides, moreover

prætereō, -īre, -iī, -itus (præter + eō), to go by, go past, pass by, pass; Subst., præterita, -ōrum, n., things gone by, the past

prætor, -ōris, m. (præ + i-), a leader, head, chief, president, chief magistrate, chief executive, commander

prætōrius, -a, -um, adj. (prætor), of the prætor, of prætors, prætorian; Of or belonging to a general—“prætoria cohors,” the cohort or body-guard attached to every general, a prœtorian cohort (I.XL.XV)

prēndo, -ere, -dī, -sus (hed-), to lay hold of, grasp, snatch, seize, catch, take

prex, precis, f. (prec-), a prayer, request, entreat

prīdiē, adv. (from the obsol. pri (whence prior, primus, pridem) and dies.), on the day before, the previous day; Lit., on the day before (class.; opp. postridie).— Constr. absol., with acc. of the day from which the reckoning was made, or with quam; also, with gen. (class. only in the phrase pridie ejus diei); With gen., “pridie ejus diei,” on the day before this day, the day before, (I.XLVII)

prīmus, -a, um, adj. sup. (pro-), the first, first; With ut, ubi, simulac, cum., as soon as ever, as soon as; prīmum, at first, first, in the first place, in the beginning—In enumerations, with a foll. deinde, tum

prīnceps, -cipis, adj. pos. (primus + cap-), first in order, foremost; The first, chief, most eminent, most noble

prīncipātus, -ūs, m. (princeps), a beginning, origin; The first place, pre-eminence, chief part, supremacy, leadership; The chief command, post of commander-in-chief

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj. (prius + tinus; pro-), former, early, original, primitive, pristine

prius, -ōris, adj. comp. (pro-), former, previous, prior, first; Adv., before, sooner, first, previously; With quam, and often joined in one word—priusquam, before, before that

prīvātim adv. (privatus), apart from State affairs, as an individual, in private, privately, in a private capacity

prīvātus, -a, -um, adj. (P. of privo), apart from the State, peculiar, personal, individual, private

prō, præp. with abl. (pro-), Of place, before, in front of, in face of; Prep. with abl., before, in front of.; With verbs of motion, “Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit,” before the camp, (I.XLVIII); On account of, for the sake of; Of relation or proportion, for, in proportion, in comparison with, in accordance with, according to, conformably to, by virtue of

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (probus), to make good, esteem good, approve, esteem, commend; To make credible, show, prove, demonstrate

Procillus, -ī, m., a Roman nameprōcurro, -ere, -cucurri, -cursum (prō + curro), to run forth, rush forwards, Lit., freq. of armies

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (prō + eō), to go forth, come forth, come forward

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (pro + do), to put forth, exhibit, reveal; To put forth, relate, report, record, hand down, transmit

prœlium, -ī, n, a battle, combatprofectiō, -ōnis, f. (pro + fac-), a going away, setting out, departure

proficīscor, -ī, -fectus, dep. (proficio; pro + facio), to set forward, set out, start, go, march, depart; To set out, begin, commence, start

profugiō, -ere, -fūgī, — (pro- + fugiō), to flee, run away, escape

prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, — dep. (pro + gradior), to come forth, go forth, go forward, go on, advance, proceed

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (pro + habeo), to hold before, hold back, keep away, check, restrain, hinder, prevent, avert, keep off, debar; To keep away, keep, preserve, defend, protect

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (pro + iacio), to throw forth, cast before, throw out, throw down, throw

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (prō + moveō), to move forward, cause to advance, push onward, advance

prope, adv. and prep. pro. and demonstr. (suff. -pe), Adv., near, nigh; Prep. with acc., Lit., in space, near, near by, hard by

prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (prō + pellō), to drive forward, drive forth, drive away, drive out; To drive away, keep off

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. (prope), near, nigh, neighboring

prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positus (prō + pōnō), to put forth, set forth, lay out, place before, expose to view, display, "proponere vexillum," (II.XX); Trop.

propter, adv. and prep. contr. for propiter, (from prope), adv., near, hard by, at hand; Trop., in stating a cause, on account of, by reason of, from, for, because of

propterea, adv. (propter), therefore, for that cause, on that account; Esp., in the phrase, propterea quod, because

prōspiciō, -ere, -ēxī, -ectus (spec-), to look forward, look into the distance, have a view, look out, look, see; Fig., to look to beforehand, see to, exercise foresight, look out for, take care of, provide for

prōvincia, -æ, f., A province, i.e. a territory out of Italy, acquired by the Romans (chiefly by conquest), and brought under Roman government; also, to be rendered provincial administration, employment, etc.

proximē, adv. sup. (proximus), Of place, nearest, very near, next; Fig., of time, very lately, just before, most recently, last before

proximus, -a, -um, adj. sup. (prope), the nearest, next; Subst. n., the neighborhood, vicinity, nearest place

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. (contr. from populicus, from populus), of or belonging to the people, State, or community; that is done for the sake or at the expense of the State; public, common;

Pūblius, -ī, m., a Roman first namepudor, -ōris, m. (pv-), a shrinking from blame, desire of approval, shame, shamefastness, modesty, decency, propriety

puer, -erī, m. (pv-), a male child, boy, lad, young man—Hence, pl. pueri, children; In partic. a male child, a boy, lad, young man (strictly till the seventeenth year, but freq. applied to those who are much older)

pūgna, -æ, f. (pac-), a hand-to-hand fight, fight at close quarters, battle, combat, action, engagement

Pupius, -ī, m., a Roman namepūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (purus + AG-), to free from what is superfluous, make clean, make pure, clean, cleanse, purify; In partic. To clear from accusation, to excuse, exculpate, justify (syn. excuso)

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (putus), to clean, cleanse, trim, prune; To judge, suppose, account, consider, suspect, believe, think, imagine

Pyrēnæus, -a, -um, adj., of Pyrene —"Pyrēnæōs montēs," the Pyrenees Mountains

quā, adv. (abl. fem. of qui), of place, on which side, at which place, in what direction, where, by what way

quærō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus (quæs-), to seek, look for; To seek to learn, make inquiry, ask, inquire, interrogate

quālis, -e, pronom. adj. (ca-), Interrog. how constituted, of what sort, of what nature, what kind of a

quam, adv. (qui), Relat., in what manner, to what degree, how greatly, how, how much, "quam potuit," as far as he was able, (Val. Max. 4, 1, 5.)—With possum and a sup.: "concede huc ab isto, quam potest longissime," as far as possible; With ellips. of tam, as much as, to the extent that, as ... as; In partic. In comparisons, as, than

quam ob rem, adv., Interrog., for what reason? on what account? wherefore? why?

quantus, -a, -um, pronom. adj. (ca-), Relat., correl. with tantus, of what size, how much, as Interrog or Adj., how great? how much? of what amount

quārē (or quā rē) adv. (quā + rē), Interrog., by what means? how?; Transf., for joining on a consecutive clause, for which reason, wherefore, therefore, Lit. by which matter (thing)

queror, -ī, questus, — dep. (ques-), to express grief, complain, lament, bewail

quī, quæ, quod, gen. cuius, pron. (ca-), Interrog, who? which? what? what kind of a?; sg. n., what, as far as, as much as, to the extent that (mostly adj., as subst., qui asks the nature or character, quis the name); Rel., who, which, what, that, referring to a substantive or pronoun as antecedent. As a simple rel. The antecedent is sometimes repeated after the rel.: "erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus, etc.," (I.VI); With an accessory signif., causal or final, joined to the subj. as, because, seeing that, since; To express a purpose, design, in order that, to, "Cæsar equitatum præmisit, qui viderent," (I.XV); Indef., any one, any; with si, num, ne, v. quis, "si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat," (I.LXVIII) (See chart: §147 & §148)

quicquam, n. pron. indef. (quic + quam), As adj., any, any one;

quīcumque, quæcumque, quodcumque, pron. rel., whoever, whatever, whosoever, whatsoever, every one who, everything that, all that

quidem, adv. Expressing emphasis or assurance, assuredly, certainly, in fact, indeed; In the phrase, ne ... quidem, not even—"ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem redimere potuisse"

quin, conj., As an interrog. particle, why not? wherefore not?; Transf. As a rel. particle, prop. quī or qui ne, and mostly where the rel. stands for a nom. masc. or for abl. of time, who ... not, that not, but that, but, often = Eng. without and a participial clause; Lit. used after negatives, that or but that

Quīntus, -ī, m., As a Roman prænomen (orig. the fifth-bron?)

quis, quis, quid, pron indef. (CA-), any one, anybody, anything, some one, somebody, something; aliquis, aliquid is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but quis, quid are commonly used after sī, nisi, num, and nē as an indefinite—who = anyone; what = anything (See Error: Reference source not found §148)

quis, quid, pron. interrog. (ca-), Neut., what, what thing?; Transf. Quid? how? why? wherefore?

quisquam m., quicquam, n. pron. indef. (quis, quid + quam), As adj., any, any one; As subst., any man, anybody, any person, any one whatever, anything

quisque, quæque, quidque, and (adj.) quodque, pron. indef. (quis, quæ, quid ... + que), whoever it be, whatever, each, each one, every, everybody, every one, everything (of more than two); With sup., to express universality (quisque is then placed after the sup.; with sg. and neut. pl.; rare with pl. m. and f.)

quō, adv. and conj. dat. and abl. (of qui), Locat. and abl. uses, of place, where, in what place, in what situation; Indef., after si or ne, any whither, to any place, in any direction

quoniam, adv. (quom + iam), since now, since then, since, seeing that, as, because, whereas

quoque, conj. (que + quo), also, tooquot, indecl. Lit., how many, as many, as: quot sunt?; Transf., in specifications of time, all, each, every; hence, quod annis, every year, yearly, annually

quotiēns, adv. (quot), how often? how many times

rādīx, -īcis, f. (rad-), a root; radish; Trans. In pl. The root, i.e. the lower part of an object, the foot of a hill, mountain, etc.

ræda, -æ, f., Celtic, a travelling-carriage with four wheels

rapīna, -æ, f. (rap-), an act of robbery, robbery, plunder; Esp. in pl., robbery, plundering, pillage, rapine

ratiō, -ōnis, f. (ra-), a reckoning, numbering, casting up, account, calculation, computation; In rhet., a showing cause, argument,

ratis, -is, f. (ar-), A vessel made of logs fastened together, a raft

Rauracī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people along the upper Rhine, north of the Helvetians

recēns, -entis, adj., lately arisen, not long in existence, fresh, young, recent

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (re + capio), to take back, bring back, carry back, retake, get back, regain, recover; to get back, receive again, regain, recover, repossess; With se, to draw back, withdraw from or to any place, to betake one's self anywhere; Milit., to retire, retreat

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (re- + causa), to make an objection against, decline, reject, refuse, be reluctant to do

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (red + dō), To give back, return, restore

redēmptō, -āre, —, — (redimo), to ransom, redeem

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (red + eo), Of persons, to go back, turn back, return, turn around

redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus (red- + ago), to drive back, force back, lead back, bring back; To bring down, bring, reduce, force, compel, subdue

redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus (red- + emo), to buy back, repurchase, redeem; to buy, purchase; To gain, acquire, obtain, procure any thing desirable

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (red + integrō), to make whole again, restore, renew, recruit, refresh

reditiō, -ōnis, f. (red- + i-), a going back, coming back, returning, return

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (re- + dūcō), to lead back, bring back, conduct back, escort back, accompany

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (re- + ferō), to bear back, bring back, drive back, carry back; Referre pedem or gradum, as a milit. t. t., to draw back, retire, withdraw, retreat; In partic. To pay back, give back, repay—Esp. in the phrase, referre gratiam, to return thanks, show one's gratitude (by deeds), to recompense, requite; to bring, convey, deliver any thing as an official report, to report, announce, notify (= renuntiare)

regnum, -i, n. (rex), rēiciō, -ere, -rēiēcī, -iectus (re- + iacio), to throw back, fling back, hurl back

relinquo, -ere, -līquī, -lictus (re + linquo), to leave behind, not take along, not stay with, leave, move away from, quit, abandon; To leave a thing behind; to leave remaining; to allow or permit to remain, to let remain, leave; Pass., to be left, to remain

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. (re- + lic-), left, left over, remaining

reminīscor, reminīscī, rementus sum, — dep., with gen., recollect or remember

removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (re- + moveō), to move back, take away, set aside, put off, drive away, withdraw, remove—Hence, remōtus, -a, -um, P. a., removed, i.e. afar off, distant, remote

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (re + nūntiō), to bring back word, carry tidings back, report, give notice, declare, announce

repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus (re + pellō), to drive back, thrust back, drive away, reject, repulse, repel

repēns, -entis, adj., sudden, hasty, unexpected, unlooked for; Transf., Adv., suddenly, unexpectedly, repentē

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj. (repens), sudden, hasty, unlooked for, unexpected, impetuous

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus (par-), repetō, -ēre, -īvī, -ītus (re + petō), to fall upon again, attack anew, strike again; To seek again, return to, revisit

repræsentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (re + præsentō), to make present, set in view, show, exhibit, display, manifest, represent, depict; To make present, perform immediately, realize, do now, accomplish instantly, hasten

reprehendō, -ere, -endī, -ēnsus (re- + prehendō), to hold back, hold fast, take hold of, seize, catch; In partic., to check, restrain an erring person or (more freq.) the error itself; hence, by meton., to blame, censure, find fault with, reprove, rebuke, reprehend

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (repudium), to cast off, put away, reject

repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (re + pūgnō), rēs, reī, f. (ra-), a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case; thus, res + novus, as, revolution; Effects, substance, property, possessions

rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus (re + scindō), to cut off, cut loose, cut down, tear open: pontem, i.e. break down

rescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus (re + scrībō), to write back, write in return, reply in writing; to write again, write anew, enroll anew, re-enlist; In partic., Milit., to enroll anew, to re-enlist

reservo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (re + servo), to keep back, save up (anything) for future use; to reserve

resistō, -ere, -stitī, — (re + sistō), to stand back, remain standing, stand still, halt, stop, stay, stay behind, remain, continue; In war, to withstand, oppose, resist, make opposition

respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus (re + spondeō), to answer, reply, respond, make answer

respuō, -ere, -uī, -us (re + spuō), to spit back, discharge by spitting, cast out, cast off, eject, expel; Fig., to reject, repel, refuse, spurn, dislike, disapprove

restituō, -ere, -ūī, -ūtus (re- + statuo), to set up again, replace, restore, reconstruct, rebuild, revive, renew, reform, rearrange; In partic., to give back, deliver up, return, restore a thing belonging to a person or place; Trop., to restore to a former condition, to re-establish, etc.

retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (re- + teneo), (With the signif. of the re predominating.) To hold or keep back, not let go; to detain, retain; to restrain; Lit.: “concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet,” (I.XVIII), “ab his fit initium retinendi Silii, etc.,” (III.VIII); (With the signif. of the verb predominant.) To hold fast, keep, retain, preserve, maintain, etc.,

revellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus (re + vellō), to pluck away, pull away, tear out, tear off

revertor, revertī, reversus sum, — (re + verto), to turn back, turn about; to come back, return

revertor, revertī, reversus sum, — dep. (re + verto), to return

rēx, rēgis, m. (reg-), an arbitrary ruler, absolute monarch, king

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the RhineRhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhone

rīpa, -æ, f. (ric-), a bank, margin (of a river)

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (etym. dub.), to ask, question, interrogate; To invite, ask a visit from; Transf., to ask, beg, request, solicit one for a thing; With ut or ne, “transisse Rhenum sese non suā sponte sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis,” (I.XLIV); With a simple final clause without ut, “Caesar consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat,” (I.XX)rota, -æ, f. (ar-), a wheel

rūrsus, adv. (ppp. of reverto), turned back, back, backwards; denoting return to a former action or its repetition, back again, again, anew

Rutēnī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe on the borders of the province

sæpe, adv. (sac-), often, oft, oftentimes, many times, frequently

sæpis, -e, adj., that happens often, frequents alūs, -ūtis, f. (salvus), soundness, health, good health, vigor; Fig., health, welfare, prosperity, safety, soundness, preservation, deliverance

sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus (sac-), Of a law or treaty, to make sacred, render inviolable, fix unalterably, establish, appoint, decree, ordain, confirm, ratify, enact; To ratify, confirm, consecrate, enact, approve

sānitās, -ātis, f. (sanus), soundness of body, health; Fig., soundness, right reason, good sense, discretion, sanity

Santonēs, -um (or pl., Santonī, -ōrum), m., sarcina, -æ, f. (sar-), a package, bundle, burden, load, pack; Pl., packs, luggage, baggage

satis, adj. n. indecl. (sa-), Only nom. and acc, enough, sufficient, satisfactory, ample, adequate

satisfaciō (or satis faciō), -ere, -fēcī, -factus (satis + faciō; FAC-), to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; To give satisfaction, make amends, make reparation, make excuse, apologize

scelus, -eris, n. (scel-), a wicked deed, heinous act, crime, sin, enormity, wickedness

scientia, -æ, f. (sciens), a knowing, knowledge, science

sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus (sac-), to know, understand, perceive, have knowledge of, be skilled in

scīscō, -ere, scīvī, scītus, inch. (scio), Of the people, to accept, approve, assent to, enact, decree, ordain

scūtum, -i, n., an oblong shield, made of boards fastened together, and covered with leather, a buckler (whereas clipeus denotes a round shield, target of metal

sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus (sē + cernō), to put apart, sunder, sever, part, divide, separate; Subst., sēcrētum, -i, n., something secret, secret conversation; a mystery, secret

sēcrētum, -ī, n. (ppp. n. of secerno), a hidden thing, mystery, secret; A hidden place, hiding-place, retirement, solitude, retreat

secundus, -a, -um, adj. (sequor), In time or order, following, next, second; pl. n. as subst., favorable circumstances, good fortune

sed, conj., After a negative clause and introducing a direct opposition, but, on the contrary, but also, but even, but in fact; Introducing a climax, usu. in the formula, non modo or non solum . . . sed (or sed etiam), not only, not merely . . . but, but also, but even, but indeed

sēdēs, -is, f. (sed-), a seat, bench, chair, throne; A seat, dwelling-place, residence, habitation, abode, temple

sēditiōsus, adj. (seditio), full of discord, factious, turbulent, mutinous, seditious

Sedusiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of GermansSe gusiāvī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people, subject to the Æduans

semel, adv. num. (sa-), once, a single timesē mentis, -is, f. (semen), semen, a seeding, sowing

senātus, -ūs, m. (sen-), In Rome, the council of the elders, council of state, Senate, body of senators

senex, senis, adj. (senior, sen-), old, aged, advanced in years; Subst. m. posit., an old man, aged person, graybeard

sententia, -æ, f. (from sentio), a way of thinking, opinion, judgment, sentiment; a purpose, determination, decision, will, etc.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus (sent-), sēparātim, adv. (separatus), asunder, apart, separately

septentriōnes, -um, prop. (septemtrio), the seven plough-oxen; hence, a constellation; Lit., the seven stars near the north pole (called also the Wain, and the Great or Little Bear); Transf. The northern regions, the north (as a quarter of the heavens)

sepultūra, -æ, f., a burial, interment, funeral obsequies, sepulture

Sēquana, -æ, m., the SeineSēquanus, -a, -um, adj., of the Sequaní, a tribe of Gaul, oń the Rhone, north of Macon); m. sg., one of the Sequani, a Sequanian; m. pl., the Sequani

sequor, -ī, secūtus, — dep. (sec-), to follow, come after, follow after, attend, accompany

servitūs, -ūtis, f. (servus), the condition of a servant, slavery, serfdom, service, servitude

servus (or servos), -ī, m. (servus), a slave, servant, serf, serving-man

sētius, adv. comp. (sec-), less, in a less degree—Only with negatives, nilo setius, nevertheless

sī, conj. (sovo-), as a cond. particle.—With indic., in conditions assumed as true, or (with fut.) which will probably be fulfilled, if, when, inasmuch as, since; With quod, and if, but if, if however, if

sīc, adv., Referring to something done or pointed out by the speaker, thus, in this way, as I do, as you see (colloq.); Referring to what precedes, so, thus, in this manner, in such a manner, in the same way or manner, in like manner, likewise—With a clause of deg., to such a degree, so, so far

sīgnum, -ī, n., a mark, token, sign, indication, proof; A military standard, ensign, banner; Milit., signa (arma) in hostem, or hosti, to bear the standards against the enemy, to attack, make an attack upon

silva, -æ, f. (ser-), a wood, forest, woodland

simul, adv. (sa-), at the same time, together, at once, simultaneously; Introducing an independent sentence, at the same time, also, likewise,

simulātiō, -ōnis, f. (simulo), an assumption, false show, feigning, shamming, pretence, feint, insincerity, deceit, hypocrisy, simulation

sīn, conj., an adversative conditional particle, if however, if on the contrary, but if—With a preceding si, nisi, quando, dum. After si, or without a preceding si, nisi, etc. (where the foregoing particle is usu. clearly implied by the context)

sine, præp. with abl. (si + ne), withoutsingul us, -a, -um, single; apiece; every; one each, one at a time

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., of uncertain origin, left, on the left, on the left hand, at the left side; Subst. f. (sc. manus), sinistrā impeditā, with the left hand impeded

sīve, conj. (sī + ve), or if; In the formula, sive ... sive, be it that ... or that, if ... or if, whether ... or

sīve (or sue), conj. (si + ve), Put once, preserving the conditional signif. of the si.

socer, -erī, m., a father-in-lawsocius, -ī, m., a fellow, sharer, partner, comrade, companion, associate

sōl, sōlis, m. (ser-), the sunsolum, -ī, the lowest part, bottom, ground, base, foundation, floor, pavement, site; The ground, earth, soil

sōlus, sōlīus, adj. (sal-), alone, only, single, sole—Hence, adv., (sōlum), alone, only, merely, barely—Negatively: non solum, nec (neque) solum ... sed (verum) etiam (et), etc., not only (not merely, not barely) ... but also, etc. (See sōlus, alone §113)

soror, -ōris, f. a sistersors, -tis, f. (ser-), a lot, consisting of bits of wood from a branch of a fruit-bearing tree, which were scattered at random over a white cloth and then picked up. these were inspired by, 'eddies of rivers and whirlings and noises of currents'

spatium, -ī, n. (spa-), a space, room, extent; A portion of time, space, interval, period

speciēs —, acc. -em, f. (spec-), a sight, look, view, appearance, aspect, mien

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (specio), to look on, look at, behold, gaze at, watch, observe, inspect, attend; Of localities, to look, face, lie, be situated towards any quarter

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep. (specula), to spy out, watch, observe, examine, explore

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (spes), to hope, look for, trust, expect, promise oneself

spēs, speī, f. (spa-), hopespīritus, -ūs, m. (cf. spiro), a breathing, breath; Spirit, high spirit, energy, courage, haughtiness, pride, arrogance

spons, spontis, f., sponte, in good prose always joined with meā, tuā, suā—of free will, of one's own accord, of one's self, freely, willingly, voluntarily, spontaneously

statim, adv. (sta-), steadily, regularly; On the spot, forthwith, straightway, at once, immediately, instantly

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus (status), to cause to stand, set up, set, station, fix upright, erect, plant; To decide, determine, with reference to a result, to settle, fix, bring about, choose, make a decision; With cognoscere, to examine (officially) and decide; With indef. obj., generally with in and acc.—aliquid gravius in aliquem, to proceed severely against

stipendiārius, -a, -um, adj. (stipendium), of or belonging to tribute, liable to impost or contribution, tributary (of imposts payable in money; whereas vectigalis denotes those payable in kind; the former was held to be the most humiliating)

studium, -ī, n. (studeo), application, assiduity, zeal, eagerness, fondness, inclination, desire, exertion, endeavor, study; In partic. Zeal for any one; good-will, affection, attachment, devotion, favor, kindness, etc

sub, præp. with acc. and abl., With abl., of position in space, under, below, beneath, underneath, behind; Transf., of lofty objects, at the foot of which, or in whose immediate neighborhood, any thing is situated, under, below, beneath, at the foot of, at, by, near, before; Of time, in, within, during, at, by; In gen., of subjection, domination, stipulation, influence, effect, reason, etc., under, beneath, with; Trop., under, subject to, in the power of; during, in the time of, upon, etc.; With acc., to point out the object under which a thing comes, goes, extends, etc., under, below, beneath; Of space, usu. with verbs of motion; Of time, denoting a close approximation, Before, towards, about, shortly before, up to, until

subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (sub + dūcō),
subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (sub + eō), to come under, go under, enter; Hence, with tectum, i.e. enter a house; to subject oneself to, take upon oneself, undergo, submit to, sustain, accept, endure, suffer

subiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus (sub + iacio), to throw under, place under, cast below

subitō, adv. (subitus), suddenly, immediately, unexpectedly, at once, off-hand

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (sub + levō), to lift from beneath, raise up, hold up, support; To sustain, support, assist, encourage, console, relieve

subsidium, -ī, n. (sub + sed), In order of battle, the troops in reserve, line of reserve, third line of battle, triarii; Abstr., support in battle, aid, help, relief, succor, assistance

subsistō, -ere, -stitī, — (sub + sistō), to take a stand, take position, stand still, remain standing, stop, halt

subsum, -esse, subfuī, —, irreg. conj. (sub + sum), to be under, be behind; Of places and persons, to be near, to be at hand

subvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus (sub + vehō), to bear, carry, convey, draw, to support and convey, bring up, transport, conduct, carry up

succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (sub + cedo), to go below, come under, enter; To approach, draw near, march on, advance, march up

Suēbī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Swabians, Suebi, a powerful German people

suī (gen.), dat. sibi or sibī, acc. and abl. sē or (more emphatic) sēsē, Prop., as pron. reflex., of an object considered as receiving or affected by its own act, himself, herself, itself, themselves. In all clauses, referring to the grammatical subject of the clause. As direct obj. of verb; With prepp. pro se quisque = unusquisque, every one, each one singly, etc., pro se quisque = unusquisque, every one, each one singly, etc., "Boiosque receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt," (I.V); In partic., in reported words or thoughts (orat. obliqua) referring to the person to whom they are ascribed. As subj. or obj., direct or indirect, with inf, "nuntium mittit ... sese diutius sustinere non posse," (II.VI); Esp., in subordinate clauses (sub-oblique), with subj. expressing the assertion or view of the person reported as speaking: "magnam Cæsarem injuriam facere, qui vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret," (I.XXXVI); Pron. recipr., each other, one another, so very rare, except in phrase: inter se, one another, each other, mutually, reciprocally, "inter se differre" (I.I); Idiomatic uses. Sibi pleonast. as dat. of the interested person: "ipse autem Ariovistus tantus sibi spiritus sumpserat" (I.XXXIII)

Sulla, -æ, m., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, born 138 B.C.; consul 88, dictator 81-79 B.C.; leader of the aristocratic party in the first Civil War, enemy of Marius; died 78 B.C.; Faustus Cornelius Sulla, son of the dictator; Publius Cornelius Sulla, nephew of the dictator, who fought under Cæsar

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (es-; fev-), As a predicate, asserting existence, to be, exist, live, “flumen est Arar, quod ...” (I.XII); Of circumstances or condition, to be, be found, be situated, be placed; With Dat., to belong, pertain, be possessed, be ascribed; With gen. possess., to belong to, pertain to, be of, be the part of, be peculiar to, be characteristic of, be the duty of; Of events, to be, happen, occur, befall, take place; Est ut, it is the case or fact, that, etc.: “non erat, ut fieri posset, mirarier umquam,” Lucr. 5, 979: “futurum esse ut omnes pellerentur,” (I.XXXI); As a copula, to be any thing or in any manner. With abl.: “esse magnā gratiā,” (I.VIII); fore for futurum esse (See chart §170)

summa, -æ, f. (summus), Fig., the chief place, highest rank, leadership, supremacy; An amount, sum, aggregate, whole, quantity

sumministrō, -āvī, -trātum, -āre, give; furnish; afford; supply

summoveo, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum (sum + moveo), to send or drive off or away, to remove

summus, -a, -um, adj. sup., uppermost, highest, topmost; Of rank or degree, highest, greatest, loftiest, first, supreme, best, utmost, extreme

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus (sub + emo), to take, take up, take in hand, lay hold of, assume; Fig., to take, take up, assume

sūmptus, -ūs, m. (sumo), outlay, expense, cost, charge

superbus, -a, -um, adj., haughty, proud, vain, arrogant, insolent, discourteous, supercilious, domineering; Hence, adv., haughtily, proudly, superciliously

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (superus), to go over, rise above, overtop, surmount, transcend; Trop. (freq. and class.).

supersum, -esse, -fuī, irreg. conj. (super + sum),

superus, -a, -um, adj. (super), suppetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus (sub + peto), to be at hand, be in store, be present, be available

suppliciter, adv., like a petitioner, humbly, submissively, suppliantly

supplicium, -ī, n. (supplex), supplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (supplex), to kneel down, humble oneself, pray humbly, beseech, beg, implore, supplicate

supportō, -āre, -āvī, — (sub + portō), to convey, bring up, bring forward, conduct

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (sub + capio), to take, catch, take up, lift up, receive; Fig., to undertake, assume, begin, incur, enter upon (voluntarily)

suspīciō, -ōnis, f. (sub + spec-), mistrust, distrust, suspicion

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (sub + teneo), to hold up, hold upright, uphold, bear up, keep up, support, sustain; Lit. In gen.: se, to support one's self, hold one's self up, stand, etc., “ut venientes sustineret” (I.XXV); In partic., to hold or keep back, to keep in, stay, check, restrain, control, etc.,“equos,” (IV.XXXIII); In partic., To bear, undergo, endure; to hold out against, withstand, “alicujus imperia,” (I.XXXI), “vulnera,” (I.XLV), “neque jam sustineri poterat,” (II.VI); To hold in, stop, stay, check, restrain; to keep back, put off, defer, delay, “impetum hostis,” (I.XXIV), “Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent” (I.XXVI), “fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent” (II.XI)

tabernāculum, -ī, n. (taberna), a tenttabula, -æ, f. (ta-), a board, plank; A writing-tablet, writingbook, slate; also, a tablet written upon, a writing, as a letter, contract, account, list, will, etc.

taceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus (tac-), to be silent, not speak, say nothing, hold one's peace

tam, adv. (ta-), correl. with quam in comparisons, implying equality of degree, in such a degree, as much, so, so much; With a general comp. clause understood (= sic, ita), so (so much) as I do, as you do, as he did, as I said before, as he is, as you are, etc. With adj.—“tam necessario tempore,” tam propinquis hostibus,” at so urgent a time as this (I.XVI.IV)

tamen, adv. (ta-), After a concessive or cond. particle, notwithstanding, nevertheless, for all that, however, yet, still (beginning the clause or after its emphatic word)

tametsī, conj. (tamen + etsi), In concession, notwithstanding that, although, though

tandem, adv. (tam + the demonstr. ending dem), at length, at last, in the end, finally

tantus, -a, -um, adj. (ta-), Fol. by a clause of comp., of such size, of such a measure, so great, such; to be valued, prized, or esteemed so highly; to be of such consequence or importance; Followed by a clause of result., so great, such; Esp. in phrase tantō opere; freq. as one word, tantopere, so greatly, in so high a degree, so very, etc

tēctum, -ī, n. (P. n. of tego), a covered structure, roofed enclosure, shelter, house, dwelling, abode, roof

tēlum, -ī, n. (tec-), a missile weapon, missile, dart, spear, shaft, javelin

temerārius, -a, -um, adj. (temere), rash, heedless, thoughtless, imprudent, inconsiderate, indiscreet, unadvised, precipitate

temerē, adv. (ety. in the darkness), by chance, by accident, at random, without design, casually, fortuitously, rashly, heedlessly, thoughtlessly, inconsiderately, indiscreetly

temperantia, -æ, f. (temperans), moderateness, moderation, sobriety, discreetness, temperateness, temperance, as a moral quality:

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (tempus), to observe proper measure, be moderate, restrain oneself, forbear, abstain, be temperate, act temperately

tempto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (tendo), to handle, touch, feel a thing; to try; to prove, put to the test; to attempt, essay a course of action, etc—In gen., constr. with acc., with inf., with rel. clause, with ut, or absol.

tempus, -ōris, n., a portion of time, time, period, season, interval

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, — (ta-), to hold, keep, have, grasp, hold fast; Fig., to hold in mind, take in, understand, conceive, comprehend, know

tergum, -ī, n. (trag-), the back; With verto or do, to turn the back, turn back, take flight, run away, flee, retreat

terrēnus, -a, -um, adj. (terra), of the globe, on the earth, earthly, terrestrial, terren

testāmentum, -ī, n. (testor), a last will, testament, will

testis, -is, comm., one who attests any thing (orally or in writing), a witness

Teutonī, -um, m. pl., Teutons, TeutoniTigu rīnus, -a, -um, adj., Tigurian. As a noun, Tigurīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Tigurians, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians

timeō, -ēre, uī, — (tem-), to fear, be afraid, be fearful, be apprehensive, be afraid of, dread, apprehend

timidus, -a, -um, adj. (tem-), fearful, afraid, faint-hearted, cowardly, timid

timor, -ōris, m. (tem-), fear, dread, apprehension, timidity, alarm, anxiety

Titus, -ī, m., a Roman first name; Abb., Tto lerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (tal-), to bear, endure, support, sustain, suffer; To support, nourish, maintain, sustain, preserve

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus (tal-), to lift, take up, raise, elevate, exalt; To take up, take away, remove, carry off, make way with

totidem, adj. num indecl. (tot + dem), just so many, just as many, the same number of

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtīus (tv-), all, all the, all at once, the whole, entire, total (See chart: tōtus, whole §113)

trādūco, -ere, -xi, -ctum (trans + duco), to lead, bring, or conduct across; to lead, bring, or carry over any thing

trāgula, -æ, f. (traho), A kind of javelin or dart attached to a strap by which it was swung when thrown

trānō, -āre, -āvī, — (trans + no), to swim over, swim across, swim through

trāns, præp. with acc. (ter-), Of motion, across, over, to the farther side of; Of Position, across, beyond, on the other side of

trānseō, -īre, -iī, (or -īvī), -itus (trāns + eō), to go over, go across, cross over, pass over, pass by, pass

trānsfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus (trāns + fīgō), to pierce through, transpierce, transfix

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (trāns + portō), to carry over, take across, carry, convey, remove, transport

trēs, tria, gen. trium, card; num., threeTrēve rī, -ōrum, m. pl., Treverans, Treveri, a Belgic people near the Rhine

Triboces, -um, m. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus (tribus), to assign, impart, allot, bestow, confer, yield, give; With multum, plurimum, or magnopere, to value highly, set great store by, make much of

trīduum, -ī, n. (tres + dies), (sc . spatium), three days' time, three days

triplex, -icis, adj. (ter+ parc-), threefold, triple

Tulingī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people near the Helvetians

tumultus, -ūs, an uproar, bustle, commotion, disturbance, disorder, tumult, panic; A national peril, social disturbance, general alarm, civil war, insurrection, rebellion

tumulus, -ī, m. (tv-), a heap of earth, mound, hill, hillock

turpis, -e, adj. (tarc-), ugly, unsightly, unseemly, repulsive, foul, filthy

ubī, adv. (quo + bi), Lit. A relative local particle, denoting rest in a place, in which place, in what place, where; Transf. Most freq. of time, when, whenever, as soon as, as, "ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt," (I.VII)

Ubiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they afterwards settled

ulcīscor, -ī, -ūltus, — dep., ūllus, -a, -um, adj. pos., With a negation, expressed or implied, any, any one (See chart: ūllus, any §113)

ūlterior, -ius, adj. comp, farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote

ūltrā, adv., on the other side; Of time or degree, beyond, farther, over, more, besides, in addition

ūltrō, adv. (abl. of ulter), from beyond, from the other side, i.e. without influence or assistance from this side, on his part, on their part, of himself, of themselves, etc.; of one's own accord, without being asked, spontaneously, voluntarily

unde, adv., Of place. Relat., from which place, whence

undique, adv. (unde + que), from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides, all around, on every part, everywhere

ūnus, -a, -um, adj., Prop. In gen., one, a single, Corresponding to alter: "Helvetii continentur unā ex parte flumine Rheno, alterā ex parte monte Jurā," (I.II)—With gen. part, "Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres: quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam ...", (I.I); alone: "erat omnino in Galliā ulteriore legio una," (I.VII); adv., ūnā, in one and the same place, at the same time, in company, together (See chart: ūnus, one §113)

usque, adv., Lit., all the way to or from any limit of space, time, etc.; Of place, all the way, right on, without interruption, continuously, constantly

ūsus, -ūs, m. (av-), use, practice, employment, exercise, enjoyment

ut, conj. and adj. (ut), conj., with subj., Of effect or result, that, so that; Adv. Rel. adv. of manner (=eo modo quo), as; Causal, as, = prout, pro eo ut. Introducing a general statement, in correspondence with the particular assertion of the principal clause, ut = as, considering ... that, in accordance with; Of manner.

uter, utra, utrum, pron. (ca-), Interrogative, which of two, which, whether (See uter, -trīus, which (of two) §113)

ūtor, uti, ūsus, — dep., Prop., to use; With abl. To make use of, employ

ūtrimque, adv. (uterque), from or on both sides or parts, on the one side and on the other

uxor, -ōris, f. a wife, spouse, consortvacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (etym. dub.), to be empty, be void, be vacant, be without, not to contain; Lit. Of Space. uninhabited, uncultivated

vadum, -ī, n. (ba-), a shallow place, shallow, shoal, ford

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, — dep., vagus, to stroll about, go to and fro, ramble, wander, roam, range, rove

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus (val-), to be strong, be vigorous, have strength, be able; To have power, be valid, be effective, have influence, avail, prevail, be strong, succeed

Valerius, -ī, m., a Roman namevāllum, -ī, n. (vallus), an earthen wall or rampart set with palisades, a palisaded rampart, intrenchment, circumvallation, "castra vallo fossāque munire," (II.V); Fig., a wall, rampart, fortification

Vangiones, -um, m. pl., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (vastus), to make empty, deprive of occupants, desert, vacate, void, empty, lay 'waste, desolate, ravage, devastate, destroy

vāticinātio, -ōnis, f. (vaticinor), a foretelling, soothsaying, prophesying; a prediction, vaticination

vectīgal, -ālis, n. (vag-), a payment to the state, revenue, toll, tax, impost, excise, duty, tribute

vectīgālis, -e, adj. (vectigal), of imposts, of taxes

vehementer, adv. (vehemens), eagerly, impetuously, ardently, violently, earnestly, vehemently

vel, conj., or; and ... orvaleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus (val-), to be strong, be vigorous, have strength, be able;

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj. (vol-), swift, quick, fleet, rapid, speedy

velut, adv. (vel- + ut), In a comparison, even as, just as, like as, like; To introduce a hypothetical comparative clause, just as if, just as though, as if, as though—Usually velut si

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus (ba-), to comeVerbi genus, -ī, m., Verbigen, Verbigenus, a canton of the Helvetians

verbum, -ī, n., a wordvereor, -ērī, -itus, — dep. (vel-), to feel awe of, to reverence, revere, respect; to fear, be afraid of any thing (good or bad); to fear or be afraid to do a thing, etc.; constr. with acc., with an inf., the gen., a foll. ne, ut; With acc.: "non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum," (I.XXXIX), "periculum," (V.XLVIII); a rel.-clause, or absol.—With a rel.-clause, to await with fear, to fear, dread, With dat. (very rare): "eo minus veritus navibus, quod, etc.," for the ships (V.IX), "nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur" (I.XIX), "vereri se ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur" (I.XLII), "primum quod vererentur ne, omni pacata Gallia, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur" (II.I)

vergō, -ere, —, — (verg-), to bend, turn, be inclined, lie, be situated; Neut., to bend, turn, incline itself; Of places, to lie, be situated in any direction

Vergobretus, -ī, m., vergobret, title of the chief magistrate of the Æduans

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (verto), to turn often, keep turning, handle, whirl about, turn over; In gen., to be; to be circumstanced or situated; In partic., to occupy or busy one's self with any action, to be engaged in any thing

Veruclœtius, -ī, m., a Helvetian who went as envoy to Cæsar

vērus, -a, -um, adj. (vel-), true, real, actual, genuine; vērō, in truth, in fact, certainly, truly, to be sure, surely, assuredly; Transf., as a strongly corroborative adversative particle, but in fact, but indeed,

Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., chief city of the Sequanians, on the Dubis (Doubs) river, now Besançon

vesper, -erī, m. (vsas-), the evening-star; The evening, even, eve, even-tide

vetus, -a, -um, adv., old, aged, ancient; long-standing; former, previous

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (veho), to shake, jolt, toss violently; Transf., In gen., to injure, damage, molest, annoy, distress, plague, trouble, maltreat, abuse, vex, harass, disquiet, disturb, torment, etc.

vīctor, -ōris, m. (vic-), a conqueror, vanquisher, victor

vīctōria, -æ, f. (victor), In war, victoryvīctus, -ūs, m. (viv-), that which sustains life, means of living, sustenance, nourishment, provisions, victuals

vīcus, -ī, m. (vic-), a row of houses, street, quarter, ward; A village, hamlet

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus (vid-), to see, discern, perceive; Pass, to be looked upon, be regarded, seem, appear

vigilia, -æ, f. (vigil), a watching, wakefulness, sleeplessness, lying awake; In partic. Lit., a keeping awake for the security of a place, Esp. of a city or camp, a watching, watch, guard; A watch, i.e. the time of keeping watch by night, among the Romans a fourth part of the night (I.XII.III), (I.XL.XIV); The watch, i. e. those standing on guard, watchmen, sentinels (I.XXI.III)

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus (vi-), to bind, bind about, fetter, tie, fasten, surround, encircle

vinclum, -ī, n. (vincio), a means of binding, fastening, band, bond, rope, cord, fetter, tie; Fig., a bond, fetter, restraint

vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus (vic-), In war, to conquer, overcome, get the better of, defeat, subdue, vanquish, be victorious

virtūs, -ūtis, f. (vir), manliness, manhood, i.e. the sum of all the corporeal or mental excellences of man, strength, vigor; bravery, courage; aptness, capacity; worth, excellence, virtue, etc.; Milit. talents, courage, valor, bravery, gallantry, fortitude

vīs, —, abl. vī, f., strength, force, vigor, power, energy, virtue; Hostile strength, force, violence, compulsion

vīta, -æ, f. (viv-), lifevītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (vic-), to shun, seek to escape, avoid, evade

vix, adv., with difficulty, scarcely, barelyVocc iō, ōnis, m., a king of Noricum

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (voc-), to call upon, summon, invoke; to call together, convoke, etc.

Vocontiī, ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people in the province

volō, velle, voluī, — (vol-), to will, wish, want, purpose, be minded, determine

vultus, -ūs, m., an expression of countenance, the countenance, visage, as to features and expression; hence, often to be translated by features, looks, air, mien, expression, aspect

voluntās, -ātis, f. (vol-), will, free-will, wish, choice, desire, inclination; Abl., of one's own will, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily

voluptās, -ātis, f. (vol-), satisfaction, enjoyment, pleasure, delight

vōx, vōcis, f. (voc-), a voice, sound, tone, utterance, cry, call

vulgus, -i. n., common people/general public/multitiude/common herd/rabble/crowd/mob; flock;

vulnero, -are, -āvi, -ātum (vulnus), to wound, to hurt, or injure by a wound

vulnus, -eris, n. (vul-), a wound